

Copyright is owned by the Author of the thesis. Permission is given for a copy to be downloaded by an individual for the purpose of research and private study only. The thesis may not be reproduced elsewhere without the permission of the Author.

HE PĀTAKA MOMO-KŌRERO
HE KETE MOMO KĪPEHA
Māori Text Types and Figures of Speech

He kaupapa i tuhia mō te

TOHU KAIRANGI

Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi

Te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa, Papaioea,
Aotearoa

Darryn James Joseph

2008

HE TĀPAETANGA

*Hinga ana a Rau-whakawaho e,
Whakaritorito ana a Awhi-rito e.
E Rito, e Rito, e te pā harakeke e,
Tūī! Tuia te muka tangata e i¹.*

Mā ōku mātua:

Jenny Joseph nee Sarten	3.9.1942 - 21.8.2002
James Timi Hēmi Joseph (Hōhepa)	10.2.1937 - 7.11.2007

Mā āku tamariki:

Nīkau Timi Hēmi Joseph	22.11.2005
Tūī Margaret Joseph	15.11.2007

¹ *Elder flax blades are severed,
Parent flax blades shoot upwards.
O little bundle of potential, o tiny one, o family,
Let the tūī herald a new beginning!
The many fibres of humanity are intertwined.*

HE WHAKARĀPOPOTO

I roto i ngā toru ngahuru tau kua tupu haere ngā kaupapa mātauranga mō te reo Māori mai i te kōhanga reo, ki te kura kaupapa Māori, ki te whare kura tae atu ki ngā whare wānanga Māori. Nā tērā whanaketanga o ngā kura reo Māori i rerekē ai te whakaako. Ka kitea ka huri te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako, ā, nā reira ka nui haere ngā kupu ā-kaupapa.² Kātahi ka whakaputaina he marautanga reo Māori hei āwhina mā ngā kaiako ki te whakatutuki i ngā whāinga ako i roto i te akomanga. Engari, kāore i kitea te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te marautanga reo Māori, ahakoa e tāia ana te manomano rauemi. Kāore i whakanahanaha te takoto i ngā momo-kōrero hei āwhina mā ngā pouako reo Māori. Ahakoa he mea nui tērā inā ka whakaakona te reo matatini³ ki te reo Māori.

Kei te tapanga, *He Pātaka Momo-Kōrero*, *He Kete Momo Kīpeha*, ngā whāinga nui o tēnei rangahau mō te reo matatini, mō te mātātuhi⁴ hoki. Tuatahi, ka whakaemia tētehi huinga momo-kōrero Māori, kātahi ka whakarōpūtia aua momo-kōrero ki ētehi anga momo-kōrero. He tātai momo-kōrero, me kī. Tuarua, ka tīpakohia tētehi o aua rōpū hei āta tātari. Koia ko te kīpeha me ngā anga momo kīpeha. Ka whakaaturia te wetereo, te tikanga, te whakamahia o aua kīpeha ki ngā kupu ake a ngā kaiuru me ētehi tauira mātātuhi. Ka tohea he tino whai pānga aua āhuatanga reo kia mōhio ai te tangata ki te whakakounga i te reo Māori.

Ka toko ake ngā kōrero nei i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru 28. Ka arotakea ngā anga reo e tētehi atu rōpū tāngata, tekau nei, kia kitea ai mēnā he whai hua, he whai māramatanga ki te hāpori reo Māori. He nui kē atu ngā kōrero ka whakahokia mai mō te kounga o te reo pērā i te aronga Māori, i te kaupapa Māori, i te takotoranga Māori. Heoi, ko tētehi kitenga nui o tēnei rangahau, ki tā te Māori titiro, he wāhanga nui te reo peha kia kounga te momo-kōrero, ā, kei tēnei tuhinga kairangi ētehi whakamāramatanga o aua kīpeha hei manaaki i te mauri ora o te reo Māori.

² technical language, subject specific

³ literacy

⁴ literature

He Kupu Mihi

Kei ngā mate i hinga atu, i hinga mai i roto i ngā tau. Haere i tā koutou haere i whakaritea ai mā tātou te tangata. Kei tōku māmā, Jen, e takoto mai rā i tō rua mahana e anga ai ki uta, ki tai, ki a Rua Taranaki me te takutai moana i te manaakitanga o Te Āti Awa Nui Tonu. Ki a Uncle Pop, e okioki i tō moenga ki Bunnythorpe i te takiwā o Rangitāne. Ā, auē taukiri e, kei taku pāpā, Jim, i moe i ngā wiki tata nei. Kei te takoto mai rā koe me tō tātai ūkaipō ki Taranaki; ko Te Inupō i te raki, ko Hiapoto i te tonga. E tangi tonu nei mōu, e pā e, e pōuri tonu nei. Kāti ake rā, koutou ki a koutou i te rangi, te tira mātai pō, mātou ki a mātou i te whenua, te tira mātai ao.

Kei ngā kaiuru, e tika ana kia mihi ake ki a koutou, nāu tēnei kaupapa i rangatira ai. He nui ngā kōrero, he nui ngā manaakitanga i tēnei tangata e patapatai haere ana, e kōrero haere ana i tēnei kaupapa. He pakari ake tō koutou reo, he koi ake ō koutou whakaaro i tēnei e tuhi atu nei. Kāore e whakaaetia te whakahua ake te ingoa, heoi anō, rau rangatira mā tēnei ka mihi ake rā.

E mihi ana hoki ki *Te Ohu Whakamaru i Ngā Momo Kōrero* i huihui i roto i ngā tau nei ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi hei arataki i te rewatanga o te rangahau mō te momo-kōrero. Karin, Pēti, Frances, Sandy, Brian, Ian, Grace, Tai. Nā koutou te kaupapa i hoe whakamua ai kia kore ai e tītaha, e tīkoki, ā, e tūmanako ia nei he tika ngā taringa huru mangu o Hōhepa ki te mau, ki te whiu i ngā kōrero ki a ringa, tau ana ki a pepa.

Ka tika ka mihi ki te Tanetinorau Opataia Trust. Nāna au i āwhina mai i te Tohu Paetahi ki te Tohu Kairangi. Ka nui hoki ngā mihi ki Te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa, nāna i homai te Massey Scholarship mō tētehi tau hei whakawātea i a au ki te mahi i ngā mahi, ki te kōrero i ngā kōrero. Ka mutu, Bob, e te pūwhero, i waiho te pūpango ki te mahi i tāna mahi. Nā aua huruhuru i tau ai te kaupapa nei ki tōna pae.

E kore nei hoki e mutu aku mihi ki ōku kaitautoko matua ki a Tai Black, ki a Ian Christensen hoki, i mua i te wehenga atu ki tāu mahi hou. Tēnā kōrua. Ka tika hoki me mihi ki ngā huruhuru o Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi, o Te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa whānui tonu. Nā koutou i akiaki mai, i pakipaki mai. Tae atu hoki ki a koe, Mason, ki tōu rōpū

tākutatanga i hui ki tōu tari i roto i ngā tau. Tūturu, ki te kore aku hoamahi i akiaki mai kia ū tonu, kua waiho kē tēnei kaupapa i runga i te whatinga mai o ngaru-tū-ātea. Nei rā a mihi.

Kei taku hāpori reo Māori, kei taku hāpori wānanga, me kore ake koutou kua korekore rawa tēnei tuhinga e puta ki te ao mārama. Will, nāu ngā kupu akiaki kia kōkiri ake ai tēnei kaupapa. Keri, nāu i tirotiro te takoto o te reo kia kore ai ngā mata o waho e whererei noa. Fay, nāu i tiro te āhua o te tuhinga ki tā ngā tikanga whare wānanga. Susan, e te hoa tākutatanga, nāu au i wewero kia pakari haere ngā whakaaro me te takoto o tēnei tuhinga. Auē, Margaret, nāu i āwhina tēnei ware ki ngā tikanga whare wānanga kia tika ake ai. Ka mutu, e *Tīwaha*, e te rōpū kapu kawhe, Fay, Anja, Lachlan, ko koutou hei pari kārangaranga i tōna wā. E hoa mā e, ka nui tōku aroha ki a koutou, e ngā piringa karanga maha.

Tae atu ki ōku mātua whāngai, ki a Rhys rāua ko George. Nā kōrua ngā kupu akiaki, ngā kupu atawhai kia puta ai taku ihu ki te whare wānanga. Ngā manaakitanga!

Nā, nei rā ko aku mihi ki a koe Ange, e tōku whakapāpito e. Tōku whakaaio whenua; tōku whakawhiti o te rā. Mai i tō tāua kitenga tuatahitanga i te onepū i Ngāmotu i ngā tau ngahuru mā rima, taka mai ana ki tēnei wā ko koe tēnā e pupuri ana i taku ringa me te haumiri i aku taringa kia tū tōtika, kia puta ai ko te tama taretare nei. Kei taku tau o Ngāti Wehiwehi, o Ngāti Raukawa, anō te mihi me ngā kihi.

Kāti ake rā, tēnā rā koutou katoa ōku nei pou whirinaki, ōku nei pou herenga waka i kōrerotia ake ki runga nei. Anō rā te mahi a te mihi.

Darryn Joseph

Paengawhāwhā, 2008.

HE WHAKATŪWHERATANGA KŌRERO

Kā tonu ko te Ahi

Tihei Mauri ora!

E pupū ake ana te aroha

Whātoro haere ki te tautara

Takoto mai nā e pā, Moera⁵.

Manaakitia mai rā e koe i tō rua kōiwi

Ko tō kōawaawa, papa kāinga, Otewa.

Pūngatangata ana a Kirimangu, a Wiremu⁶

I te kotahitanga o te whakaaro,

Titiro atu ki Rangitoto,

ki Te Nehenehenui, ki te awa ko Waipā

E rere mai rā i te ūkaipō, kā tonu ko te ahi.

Rukuhia, kauria, ka pā atu ki te wai rā,

Waipā, Waikato, wai māpunapuna, wai māreparepa.

Waikato horo pounamu, Waikato Taniwha rau.

Ka mihi ake ki Tūrangawaewae mō te ao katoa,

Te Atairangikāhu⁷, hapainga tō torona kīngitanga

Painga pouaru, painga pani, painga rawakore ē.

E kīia nei te kōrero, ‘Mōkau ki runga, Tāmaki ki raro,

Mangatoatoa ki waenganui! Aue, aue aue hā!’

⁵ Ko Moera kei te takoto i te urupā i runga hiwi, tata atu ki tētehi o ngā marae i Otewa, ki Te Nehenehenui.

⁶ Ko Kitty (Kirimangu) rāua ko Bill kei te takoto ngātahi i te urupā o Te Nehenehenui. He uri hoki a Kirimangu nō Tānetinorau o Waitomo.

⁷ I te ora te Kuini Māori i te wā i tukuna tuatahitia tēnei kōrero hei tauparapara.

Ko te torohanga atu ki Te Kuititanga o ngā whakaaro
 ka huri Te Rāwaho ki Te Tokanga-nui-a-noho
 te whare whakairo nā Te Kooti Arikirangi Te Tūruki
 i tuku hei whakaaro ki Maniapoto iwi
 I te rohe Pōtae mō te ngāhuru tau⁸.
 Ka rere whakarunga, me ngā kupu ōhākī a taku tupuna⁹,
 ‘Me mihi ki a Taranaki maunga kei reira hoki ō tūpuna e moe mai rā’.
 Ka mihi taku ngākau ki a Taranaki whānui,
 Tau ana ki Te Ātiawa,
 Te toki tē tangatanga i te rā.
 Ngāmotu, Puke Ariki, tiakina a matua Rei¹⁰
 E anga atu rā ki Parihāmore¹¹ i rō Te Awanui,
 Te Hēnui tē unu i te ao i te pō.

 Ka rongo ake au ki te parihakatanga o ngā mātua,
 Māwhiti atu rā me ngā kupu a Tāwhiao,
 ‘E te Tekau mā rua, haere atu, mate atu.
 He kīwei ki Taranaki, he kīwei ki Waikato,
 Kotahi te kete’. ‘E Whiti, e Tohu

⁸ Hei te kōrero ko Te Rāwaho te ingoa tuatahi o te whare nei nā Te Kooti i tuku mai. Nā wai ā, ka nukuhia, ka tapaina e Taonui ko Te Tokanga-nui-a-noho. He whakamahara ake ki te hononga ā-kaupapa ki iwi kē. Tirohia Te Tari Taiwhenua (1990:221). *Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau 1769-1869*, Te Kooti Arikirangi Te Tūruki.

⁹ Nā Moera Anderson tēnei kōrero ki a Jim Joseph i a rāua e taraiwa ana ki Taranaki, ki Puketapu. Ko Te Inupō tētehi o aua tupuna rā nō roto o Taranaki ki te raki. Ko Hiapoto nō roto o Taranaki ki te tonga ki Waitotara. *Tanetīnorau Memorial Booklet* (2005:5).

¹⁰ Ko Rei te matua kēkē o te kaituhi. I nehua ki te urupā ki Te Awanui i Ngāmotu. I nehua tōna tuakana, a Jim, te pāpā o te kaituhi, ki reira i te 10 o Noema i te tau 2007.

¹¹ He pā tawhito tēnei e kitea atu ana i te urupā, i Te Awanui, me te rere o te awa Te Hēnui ki waenganui. He kupu raweke, he kōrero mō te tupuna wahine nei nō Taranaki, mō Te Inupō. Taka rawa mai ki te tau 2002 koia te okiokinga whakamutunga o Jennifer Joseph nee Sarten, te māmā o te kaituhi.

Rapua te mea ngaro hoki ake nei au’.

Kauria ko te awa Waitotara

Ia rere atu rā ngā mihi ki te maunga tītohea,

E te whakamarumarū, e te maunga koikoi tū torotika ki te rangi!

Ka anga atu taku titiro ki te kāhui maunga,

Tongariro, Ngāuruhoe, Ruapehu te maunga kōrero.

Heke whakateawa, ‘Ko au te awa, ko te awa ko au.’

Te Āti Haunui-a-Pāparangi, takoto kau e whae Erana¹²

Takarangi, taka kau ko te ngutu awa Whanganui

He muka nō te taura whiri a Hine Ngākau.

Miromiro e rere, tēnā koe e whaea Mākere¹³,

E moe i te āhurutanga o tō hāhi Rātana,

Ō nā kupu i tau ai te puehu i Mātene, Ngāti Apa

I te tū pāpakutanga o pā Piringa¹⁴,

Tērā te reo kuikui, “Kei te pai e tama kei te awa tonu tōna kuia.’

Māmā ana taku tau ki Whakaari, Ngāti Kauwhata

Ka tika, me mihi, me rere, rere ao, rere rangi,

Aorangi, Manaihu, ki Kawakawa ngā rau aroha

He iti nā Mōtai kei te mihi.

Ka huri te kanohi ki te Tairāwhiti

¹² Nō te awa o Wanganui tēnei tupuna o te whānau.

¹³ Koia nei a Maggie Dockerty, te tuakana o Kirimangu, e takoto mai rā i te urupā o Rātana.

¹⁴ Ko te okiokinga o Tame Piringa Joseph kei te urupā i Marton. Ko te koroua o te kaituhi.

Ki ngā tukemata o Kahungunu

Te marae, te whenua, te tangata.

E hika, ko Te Kahika!

Porowhita nei te tipuna whare¹⁵ hei tā Kēnana

Kei te awa Mōhaka takina ko te kawa

Ki a Paikea, āe rā kia ea!¹⁶

‘Whū! E rere taku reti pāua whakamau kahawai

i te wai kaha rere!’

Tangata takakai i te hua o te whānau, i te hua o te tangata.

Ka hoki mai a kōmako

Ki te kōkī, korihi mai nei ki taku pā harakeke,

‘Kō kō kotahitanga o te whakaaro! Tū tū ka takatū!’

E whiri nei! E ranga nei! Kōtuitui ē!

Tūī, tūī, tuituia ko te whānau Kirimangu, Hōhepa, Te Kahika e!

Whakamaua ko te kahu o te wānanga mā ngā uri whakatipu!

E takatū tonu tātou i te rua mano tau!

Hui ē! Hui ē! Tāiki ē!

¹⁵ He porowhita tētehi wāhanga o tēnei marae o Ngāti Pahauwera. I kuraina tuatahitia te kaituhi i Mohaka, ā, ko ōku mātua i tapahi i te karaehe o te marae i tērā wā.

¹⁶ Ka karakia a Jim Joseph rāua ko Bill Te Kahika ki a Paikea me ngā Atua i mua i te hīnga ika. Nā Bill a Jim i ako ki te hanga reti. He papa hī ika ka terea ki ngā ngaru whawhati me te ia kaha i te awa o Mohaka. I mua i te parakuihi ka riro mai i a Jim ngā kahawai e iwa i roto i te haurua haora.

Kā tonu ko te Ahi

I whakahīa ake te pātere nei, *Kā Tonu ko te Ahi*, i te tau rua mano i te marama o Paengawhāwhā hei whakatūwhera i te hui-ā-whānau a te tipuna wahine nei a Kirimangu ‘Kitty’ Anderson, me ōna hoa rangatira, a Tame ‘Tom’ Piringa Hōhepa, a Wiremu ‘Bill’ Te Kahika. Ehara i te mea hei whakautu taunu pērā i ngā pātere o mua, he whakanui kē i te whānau te take matua i hīa ai taua momo waiata. Ko tāna he tūhonohono haere i te whānau, he whakaaraara i ngā whakaaro mō te whānau, ka mutu, he whakaatu i ngā hikoī a te whānau ki te Ika-a-Māui puta noa.

I takina hei tauparapara i te wā i whakatau ai ngā manuhiri me te whānau ki rō Tāne-whakapiripiri, ki te hōro i Bunnythorpe. He mea hanga tēnei momo-kōrero i runga i te aroha me te whakamomori ki te wā kāinga, me te noho haere, te mate haere o tēnā o tēnā o te whānau ki waho atu o te Rohe Pōtae. Me te mea hoki, e kore nei te ahi e mātao ina hokihoki ai tātou kia pā mai te mahana o te hau kāinga me te rongo atu i te hau kakara o te nohotahitanga, o te whanaungatanga. He kōrero hoki tēnei hei tūhonohono i ngā pānga ā-iwi, kia kore ai hoki e wareware i ngā uri whakatupu.

Nā taku matua kēkē a Rua Anderson ngā kupu i tirotiro me tāna paku whakatika mai me tāna tautoko mai hoki i mua i tōna moe i te moenga roa. He hīnga tēnei hei rangaranga anō i te takapau whāriki o te whānau. He momo rongoā tā te kupu.

Hei Whakataui i te Kaupapa

Naumai, tauti mai ki tēnei pātaka iringa kōrero, *He Pātaka Momo-Kōrero, He Kete Momo Kīpeha* hei whakakā i tō kete kupu. He nui ngā kiko o roto hei mau atu. He rau MOMO-KŌRERO¹⁷, he ngahuru MĀTĀPONO MĀTĀTUHI¹⁸, he hokotoru KĪPEHA¹⁹. He kaupapa e aroha nui ana i te reo Māori me ōna tikanga tini.

Ki te hui te tangata, ā, ki te hiahia rātou ki te whakawhiti whakaaro, tērā ka puta he kōrerorero. He nui ngā tūmomo kōrero, ā, mō tēnei tuhinga kairangi ka kīia he MOMO-KŌRERO. Heoi, ehara i te mea he kōrero ā-waha anake, koia ko te taha tuhituhi, te taha ataata, te taha rorohiko, te taha rotarota hoki (Crystal, 2003: 2). Arā, mehemea he kupu āna, e kīia ana he MOMO-KŌRERO, ahakoa he momo-kōrero ā-waha pērā i te pakiwaitara; he momo-kōrero ā-tuhi pērā i te reta; he momo-kōrero ā-mata rānei pērā i te mahere. He kaupapa whānui tonu.

He mea nui te momo-kōrero mō te REO MATATINI²⁰. Kia whaihua te reo matatini mā te tangata, he mea nui kia whai wāhi atu te huhua o ngā momo-kōrero tūturu nei i a ia e kuraina ana. Mō te kura, ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero he tino whai pānga ki tētehi marautanga, ko ētehi atu e kore e kitea i ētehi atu kaupapa. Ahakoa tērā kei te tuia ngā momo-kōrero ki roto i ngā marautanga katoa: Te Reo Māori, Te Pāngarau, Te Pūtaiao, Te Hangarau, Te Tikanga ā-iwi, Ngā Toi me Te Hauora. Waihoki rā, ka rangona, ka kitea ngā momo-kōrero i ngā kokonga katoa o te hāpori. He pūtakekanga tō ia momo-kōrero mō tētehi hui. Mehemea ka mōhiotia e te tangata aua momo-kōrero o te kura, o te hāpori me ngā pūtakekanga o ngā momo-kōrero e hāngai ana ki a ia, tērā ka mauritau te noho i ngā nekeneketanga o te iwi.

Mō te whānuitanga o ngā momo kōrero, anei tētehi whārite i hangaia ai i ngā kōrero a Kucer (2005: 200). Ko te N te rahinga o ngā momo-kōrero, ko ērā anō āhuatanga, mai i te ahurea (C) tae noa ki te tānetanga, wahinetanga (SO), he āhuatanga tangata. Taihoa ēnei ka whakamāramahia (tirohia 2.8) heoi te take nui, ki te uia te tangata he

¹⁷ text type

¹⁸ principles about Māori literature

¹⁹ figure of speech

²⁰ literacy. Ki tā Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 2007

aha ngā momo-kōrero, katoa ngā āhukatanga tangata nei hei tūāpapa mō tana whakautu mai. Āe, he rereke tēnā tangata me tana kete momo-kōrero i tēnā.

Te Whānuitanga o ngā Momo Kōrero

$$N = C + SS/C + G + O + O + R + P + N + F + A + SO^{21}$$

Nō reira, mai i aua whakaaro ko tā te tuhinga kairangi nei he whakakao i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero i runga tonu i te mōhiotanga he nui kē atu pea ngā momo-kōrero a tēnā tangata, a tēnā tangata e mau ana. Engari, kāore anō kia rangahaua whānuitia ngā momo-kōrero me te whakatakoto haere i aua momo-kōrero ki ētehi tātai momo-kōrero hei āwhina mā ngā pouako ki te ako i te reo matatini. Koia tētehi o ngā hua o tēnei tuhinga kairangi. He whakanahanaha i te huhua o ngā momo-kōrero.

Mō te whakakounga i te momo-kōrero ka āta tirohia tēnei peka o te reo, ko te KĪPEHA²². Kia ahatia? Kia taea ai e te ākongā te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero te tūhura. Arā, me pēhea te ākongā e tuhi ai i tētehi arotakenga? Ko tētehi huarahi, mā te kimi i ngā kīpeha o roto i te momo-kōrero tētehi taha ōna. Me pēhea hoki te kaituhi e whakanikoniko ai i āna ake anō tuhinga? Mā te kuhu rawa i te reo peha ki āna tuhinga hei whakakākahu i ōna whakaaro, i āna kupu. He itiiti noa iho ngā rauemi e hāngai ana ki aua āhukatanga reo i te reo Māori hei āwhina mā te pouako, mā te ākongā kia tutuki pai ai ngā mahi. Tino korekore nei e kitea ngā āhukatanga reo i te wāhi kotahi, i te reo Māori. Nā reira, mā tēnei rangahau e whakakīkī taua whāwhārua.

He tuatahitanga tēnei te whakahuihui pēnei, te titiro pēnei ki ngā kīpeha nei me ōna whakamārama i roto tonu i ngā kupu ake o te tangata e taunga ana ki tēnei momo reo. Āe, ko te tūmanako hei tautoko mā te pouako, hei āwhina mā te ākongā, hei painga mā te reorua. Ko te whāinga he paku anga whakamua te huinga momo-kōrero me te kohinga kīpeha mā te hunga reo Māori hoki e ngākau nui ana ki te wetewete i te reo mā te reo. Ka mutu, he kōkiri ake i tēnei mātauranga reo hei kaupapa ako mō roto i ngā kura wānanga. Ko te whakaaro, he huarahi atu anō hei manaaki i te ora o tō tātou nei reo Māori.

²¹ The number of texts known by a person time is influenced by culture, socioeconomic status/class, gender, organisations, occupation, religion, psychological groups, nationality, family, age, and sexual orientation (Kucer, 2005: 200).

²² figures of speech

NGĀ IHIRANGI

He Tāpaetanga	iii
He Whakarāpopoto	v
He Kupu Mihi	vi
He Tūwheratanga Kōrero	vii
Hei Whakatau i te Kaupapa	xiii
Ngā Ihirangi	xv
Te Whakarārangi i ngā Whakaahua	xx
Ngā Tikanga Tuhituhi	xxiv
He Tikanga Tuhituhi mā te Kaipānui	xxvi
Te Tuhinga o Tētehi Tākutatanga ki te Reo Māori	xxvii
He Rārangi mō ngā Kupu Ahureo	xxx
Te Wāhanga Tuatahi: Tō Tātou Nei Reo Tūāuri Whāioio	1
1.1 Hei Wāhi i te Kaupapa	1
1.2 He Kōrero mō te Kairangahau	7
1.3 Ngā Pātai Rangahau	11
1.4 He Tirohanga Whānui ki te Tuhinga	14
Te Wāhanga Tuarua: Te Whakarārangi i ngā Momo-Kōrero Mātauranga	19
2.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	20
2.2 Ngā Kōrero Māori, Ngā Tānga Reo Māori	21
2.3 Te Momo-Kōrero	36
2.3.1 Te Momo-Kōrero me te Reo Matatini	41
2.3.2 He Kete Momo-Kōrero tā Tēnā, tā Tēnā	46
2.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero kei ngā Pukapuka Whakaako	49
2.5 Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori	52
2.5.1 Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa	55
2.6 Toi te Kupu	57
2.7 He Puna Kupu Māori	60
2.8 He Whakarārangi Momo-Kōrero	66
2.9 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	68

Te Wāhanga Tuatoru: Te Whakamahere i ngā Momo-Kōrero Māori	71
3.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	72
3.2 He Kupenga Hao i ngā Momo-kōrero	72
3.2.1 Tā te Hapori	73
3.2.2 Tā te Kaupapa Here me te Whakatairanga	82
3.2.3 Tā te Pāpāho Whānui	86
3.2.4 He Momo-Kōrero Tā ia Kaupapa	89
3.3 He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero	91
3.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero: te Katoa, ngā Mea Whai Mana Rānei?	96
3.5 Te Whakamahere i ngā Momo-Kōrero	100
3.6 He Tātai Momo-Kōrero	113
3.7 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	119
 Te Wāhanga Tuawhā: Te Arotakenga i te Tātai Momo-Kōrero	 123
4.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	124
4.2 Te Whakamātauria o te Tātai Momo-Kōrero	124
4.2.1 Te Whaihua	126
4.2.2 Te Whakamahi	127
4.2.3 Te Rauemi	131
4.2.4 Te Māramatanga	134
4.2.5 Te Hononga ki te Marautanga Reo Māori	139
4.3 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero	141
4.3.1 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: He Pūtaketanga	147
4.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	150
 Te Wāhanga Tuarima: Ngā Tikanga Rangahau	 151
5.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	152
5.2 Tā te Māori Titiro, Tā Māui Rangahau	152
5.2.1 Te Tūhonotanga o ngā Mātauranga	156
5.2.2 Te Rangahau Reo Māori	160
5.2.3 Te Rangahau Māori	163
5.2.4 He Mātāpono Kaupapa Māori	165
5.2.5 He Matatika Whare Wānanga	172
5.2.5.1 Ko te Tautokona Mai o te Kaupapa	173

5.3 Ngā Āhuatanga o te ‘Ine i te Kounga’	177
5.4. Ngā Mahi Rangahau	178
5.4.1 Ngā Pātai Rangahau	179
5.4.2 He Kōtui Tuhinga	182
5.4.3 Te Whiringa i ngā Kaiuru	183
5.4.4 Te Kōrero Tahī me ngā Kaiuru	184
5.4.5 Te Wetewete i te Kōrero Kaiuru	188
5.4.6 Te Whakamātautau i te Mahere Momo-Kōrero	189
5.4.7 Tā te Tuakana Arotake	190
5.4.8 Te Kawenga atu o ngā Whakakitenga	191
5.5 Te Kimihanga i ngā Kupu Ahureo	195
5.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	197
 Te Wāhanga Tuaono: He Kōrero Mātāputu, He Kōrero Kounga	199
6.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	199
6.2 Tā Kui Ani: ‘Kua riro koe i te paki o Hewa?’	200
6.3 Tā Koro Ānaru: ‘E Māori ana te wairua o tō kōrero?’	208
6.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	226
 Te Wāhanga Tuawhitu: He Mātāpono Mātātuhi, He Mātāpono Mātākōrero	227
7.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	228
7.2 He Mātāpono Mātātuhi, he Mātāpono Mātākōrero	229
7.2.1 Te Aronga ā-iwi, Te Aronga Māori	231
7.2.2 Te Kaupapa Māori	239
7.2.3 Te Pūtaketanga	244
7.2.4 Te Rongo ā-ngākau	249
7.2.5 Te Reo ā-iwi, te Reo ā-kaupapa	251
7.2.6 Te Reo Peha Māori	254
7.2.7 Te Whakatakotoranga Māori	257
7.2.8 Te Momo-Kōrero	262
7.2.9 Te Tikanga Māori	263
7.2.10 Te Kōrero Whaihua	272
7.3 He Anga Mātāpono: Mātātuhi, Mātākōrero	275
7.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	279

Te Wāhanga Tuawaru: He Nuka Reo, He Kīpeha	281
8.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	282
8.2 He Aha te Aronga o te Nuka Reo?	283
8.2.1 Te Whanaketanga o te Ahureo	286
8.2.2 Hei Aha te Nuka Reo?	291
8.2.3 He Tūmomo Kīpeha	300
8.3 He Kīpeha Whakawhere	303
8.4 He Kīpeha Whakatangi	307
8.5 He Kīpeha Huatau	313
8.5.1 Te Huahuatau	315
8.5.2 Te Kīwaha	326
8.5.3 Te Kupu Hautanga	335
8.5.4 Te Kupu Whakarite	338
8.5.5 Te Pepeha	341
8.5.6 Te Tairitenga	344
8.5.7 Te Tohu	349
8.5.8 Te Tohutoro	352
8.5.9 Te Whakatangata	356
8.5.10 Te Whakataukī	359
8.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	365
 Te Wāhanga Tuaiwa: Ngā Āhuetanga Reo o Tētehi Waiata Rerehua	 369
9.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	369
9.2 Tīmoti Kāretu	370
9.3 Ko te Tātaringa i Tētehi Waiata-ā-ringa: <i>Te Aumangea</i>	372
9.4 He Taunga Whakaaro mō <i>Te Aumangea</i>	387
9.5 He Ine-kounga	389
9.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero	393

Te Wāhanga Tuangahuru: He Whakakitenga, He Taunga Whakaaro	395
10.1 Te Kupu Whakataki	396
10.2 He Reo Hou: Me Aro Nui ki te Whānuitanga o te Momo-Kōrero	399
10.3 He Reo Wānanga: Mā te Tātari Āhuatanga Reo e Kitea ai te Kouna	404
10.4 He Reo Rerehua: Mā te Reo Peha e Kouna ai te Reo Māori	409
10.5 He Reo nō te Horopaki: Mā te Wā, mā te Wāhi, mā te Tangata e Tohutohu	411
10.6 He Reo Rangatira: Ki te Ora te Reo, me Rangatira te Whakaora	416
10.7 He Reo ā-Hāpori: He Whakawhanaunga, he Whakamanene	418
10.8 Te Whakarāpopoto Tuhinga Kairangi	420
 He Āpitihanga	
1. He Rārangi, he Kupu Momo-Kōrero: te Tuhituhi me te Kōrero	423
2. He Rārangi Kupu mō te Mātātuhī	453
3. He Kīpeha, he Nuka Reo i rō Momo-Kōrero o te Kura	485
4. Te Reta Whakamōhio Kaupapa	499
5. Te Puka Whakamōhio mō te Rangahau	501
6. Te Puka Whakaae a te Kaiuru	503
7. Te Rārangi Pātai	505
8. He Rārangi Taputapu mō te Kaiuru	507
9. Te Puka Rāhui Kōrero mā te Kaipato Kupu	509
10. He Tuhinga Māhorahora	511
11. He Whakahokinga nō Taku Hāpori	515
12. Te Whakatupua o te Tātai Momo Kōrero	517
 Ngā Kōrero i Tirohia	 523

TE WHAKARĀRANGI I NGĀ WHAKAAHUA

Te Tuhinga o Tētehi Tākutatanga ki te Reo Māori

Te Whakaahua: He Āheinga Reo hei Tautoko i te Tuhia o Tēnei Tuhinga

xxix

Te Wāhanga Tuatahi

1.1: He Tirohanga nā Reweti Kohere ki ngā Hē o te Reo	3
1.2: Ngā Whāinga mō te Whakaora i tētehi Reo	7
1.3: Te Kōrari me ngā Momo-Kōrero	10
1.4: Te Hanganga Tuhinga Kairangi	15

Te Wāhanga Tuarua

2.1: Te Whanaketanga o ngā Tānga Māori	22
2.2: He Whakarāpopoto o ngā Tānga Māori i te Takanga o te Wā	25
2.3 Ngā Kaituhi me ngā Kaitito Rongonui i roto i te kohinga <i>Te Ao Mārama</i>	31
2.4: He Mahere Reo: Te Hanganga, Te Whakamahinga	38
2.5: He Tū Momo-Kōrero	39
2.6: He Kaupapa Reo: Ahurea, Horopaki, Whiringa reo, Momo-Kōrero	40
2.7: Ko te Whanaungatanga o Roto i te Kōrero me ngā Pūnaha o te Reo	45
2.8: Te Kete Momo-Kōrero: Tekau mā Tahī ngā Āhuatanga	46
2.9: Te Mōhio ki te Kōrero: He Tūmomo Kaupapa, ngā Mahi me ngā Tauira	48
2.10: He Momo-Kōrero, He Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori	51
2.11: Ngā Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi o te Marautanga Reo Māori	54
2.12: He Momo-Kōrero o <i>Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa</i>	56
2.13: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i Toi Te Kupu	59
2.14: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i te Pātengi Raraunga nei, i Te Puna	62
2.15: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i Te Puna, i Toi Te Kupu, i Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori me Ētehi Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori	65
2.16: He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero o ētehi Kaupapa Mātauranga	67

Te Wāhanga Tuatoru

3.1: He Huarahi hei Whakaora i Te Reo Māori	73
3.2: He Āheinga Reo, he Momo-Kōrero i te Kāinga	75
3.3: He Momo-Kōrero nō te Marae	77
3.4: Ko ngā Aromatawai Matua o Tētehi Wānanga Reo	78

3.5: He Marautanga o Tētehi Wānanga Reo: Kura Awatea	79
3.6: He Momo-Kōrero i ngā Hautaka Whare Wānanga	81
3.7: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i te Akomanga me te Whakamātautau Te Toi Reo Māori	83
3.8: Public Sector Māori Language Proficiency Exam (PSM)	85
3.9: He Whakapāhotanga, he Huinga Momo-Kōrero	86
3.10: Ngā Tino Momo-Kōrero Māori ki Aotearoa Whānui	88
3.11: He Whakamahere Momo-Kōrero: He Momo-Kōrero kē tā ia Kaupapa	90
3.12: He Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, he Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi, he Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata	92
3.13: He Momo-Kōrero hei Whakaako i te Reo Slovenian	99
3.14: Me ako i Ehea Momo-Kōrero?	100
3.15: He Momo Kōrero i te Reo Ingarihi i te British National Corpus Index	102
3.16: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero Reo Ingarihi nā Biber	105
3.17: He Ripanga Momo-Kōrero nā Oglan	106
3.18: Ko te Pūtaketa, ko te Momo-Kōrero	107
3.19: He Wehewehenga Momo Kōrero: Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi	109
3.20: He Wāhi Momo-Kōrero	110
3.21: Ngā Pūoro Reo a te Māori	112
3.22: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero	115
3.23: Ngā Momo Karakia i Te Wakareo ā-Ipurangi	117
 Te Wāhanga Tuawhā	
4.1: He Tirohanga, he Urupounamu hei Arotake i te Mahere	125
4.2: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero: A Taxonomy of Māori Text Types	141
4.3: He Huinga Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi, ā-Mata	142
4.4: He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: Tā te Tuhinga	148
4.5: He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: Tā te Kōrero	149
 Te Wāhanga Tuarima	
5.1: Ngā Mātāpono Pūrākau me Ngā Kōrero Rangahau	155
5.2: He Peka Mātauranga hei Tūāpapa mō Tēnei Tuhinga Kairangi	159
5.3: Te Wehewehenga, Te Maha o ngā Rangahau mō te Reo Māori	161
5.4: He Whakarāpopotonga i Te Reo Māori Literacy Curriculum Map	162
5.5: Te Anga Reo i <i>Ngā Tauaromahi Marautanga o Aotearoa</i> .	163
5.6: He Matatika e ai ki a Mead	166
5.7: Tekau ngā Āhuatanga hei Āwhina i te Rangahau mō te Māori	167
5.8: He Kohinga Kupu mō Tētehi Huinga Whanonga, Kaupapa, Kare-ā-roto: Tā te Pai	170

5.9: He Kohinga Kupu mō Tētehi Huinga Whanonga, Kaupapa, Kare-ā-roto: Tā te Kino	171
5.10: He Meneti o te Hui mō Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero	175
5.11: He Whakaaro Noa mō te Whakarōpū Momo-Kōrero	176
5.12: He Kupu hei Whakamaumahara i te Kōrero Kaiuru	185
5.13: He Rautaki hei Kawe atu i ngā Whakakitenga	194
5.14: Te Whanaketanga o Tētehi Kupu Ahureo	196

Te Wāhanga Tuawhitu

7.1: He Mātāpono hei Whakaū i te Momo-kōrero	231
7.2: He Reo ā-Iwi	251
7.3: Kaua e Whai i tā te Reo Pākehā	258
7.4: He Tikanga Motuhake mō te Tukupū	265
7.5: He Ruri hei Whakaatu i te Tikanga Tukupū	266
7.6: He Anga Mātāpono: Mātātuhi, Mātākōrero	276
7.7: He Pātai mō ia Mātāpono	278

Te Wāhanga Tuawaru

8.1: He Huinga Nuka Reo	284
8.2: Te Whanaketanga o te Ahureo Māori	288
8.3: He Kīpeha e Āhua Mōhiotia Whānuitia ana	289
8.4: Tā Kāretu Whakamahi i ngā Nuka Reo, he Arotake Mātātuhi	295
8.5: He Whai Pānga te Nuka Reo	298
8.6: E Toru ngā Peka o te Kīpeha	301
8.7: He Kīpeha Whakawhere	306
8.8: He Kīpeha Whakatangi	308
8.9: He Kīpeha Huatau	314
8.10: Te Hanganga o te Huahuatau: he Waka, he Take	316
8.11: He Huahuatau: He Whakatairite i ngā Mea e Rua	316
8.12: Tā te Māori Titiro ki te Mate me te Taiao	318
8.13: He Wetereo Huahuatau: He Whakatairite i ngā Mea e Rua	319
8.14: He Huahuatau i te Papakupu Wiremu: He Tairitenga Aha?	321
8.15: ‘Me kī’ – Hei Tohu he Huahuatau kei te Puta, kua Puta Rānei	323
8.16: He Huahuatau: Ngā Āhuatanga Manu me ngā Āhuatanga Tangata	325
8.17: He Whānau Kīwaha: Tā te Wetereo	328
8.18: He Whānau Kīwaha: Tā te Āheinga Reo	329
8.19: He Kīwaha nō te Reo Ingarihi	330
8.20: Te Rerekētanga o te Kīrehu me te Kīwaha	334

8.21: Kupu Hautanga: He Wāhanga mō te Katoa	335
8.22: Kupu Hautanga: He Wāhanga mō Tētehi Kaupapa Kē: Te Kanohi	336
8.23: Metonymy: He Āhutatanga mō te Katoa	337
8.24: Te Wetereo o te Kupu Whakarite	339
8.25: He Ngohe mō ngā Kupu Whakarite	340
8.26: He Hanganga o te Pepeha, he Kupu Tārara	343
8.27: Te Tairitenga, te Momo Kīpeha, te Tikanga	345
8.28: He Tairitenga: He Kaupapa Kōrero, He Kaupapa Kē	347
8.29: He Whakatairite i te Huinga Kupu: Te Waka ki te Reo Māori	348
8.30: He Tohu: He Mea Kikokiko mō te Whakaaro Waitara	350
8.31: Tohutoro: He Kupu Ruarua mō Tētehi atu Kōrero	355
8.32: He Kaupapa Whakataukī	359
8.33: He Whakapapa tō te Whakataukāki	361
8.34: He Kupu Akiaki te Whakataukāki	362
8.35: Te Hanga Whakataukī Hou	364

Te Wāhanga Tuaiwa

9.1: He Tuhinga, he Kōrero nā Tīmoti Kāretu	371
9.2: He Kupu Waiata, He Kīpeha nō <i>Te Aumangea</i>	374
9.3: Ngā Tūmomo Kīpeha kei <i>Te Aumangea</i>	386
9.4: He Take ka Whaihua Tēnei Waiata Tangi	388
9.5: He Whārite Ine-Kounga	390
9.6: He Ine-Kounga	390
9.7: He Kounga Rawa Atu <i>Te Aumangea</i>	391
9.8: Ngā Kupu Peha o <i>Te Aumangea</i>	392

Te Wāhanga Tuangahuru

10.1: He Rārangi Pātai mō ngā Momo-Kōrero	403
10.2: Te Hononga o ngā Momo-Kōrero me ngā Kīpeha	405
10.3 He Kīpeha, he Nuka Reo i rō Momo-Kōrero o te Kura	406
10.4: He Rārangi Pātai mō ngā Āhutatanga Reo	408
10.5: He Kīnga Kounga: Te Huri i te Kupu	409
10.6: He Reo Peha, he Reo More: He Whakaaro Noa	410
10.7: Kia Oti a Runga, kia Oti a Raro, ka Kounga te Momo-Kōrero	412
10.8: He Rārangi Aroro Reo hei Whakarākei i te Momo-Kōrero: He Pitopito Whakaaro	414
10.9: He Rerehua rānei, he Rerekē rānei	415
10.10: Ki te Kore e Mārama ki te Reo o te Hunga, he Rāwaho Koe	419

Ngā Tikanga Tuhituhi

Mō ngā tikanga tuhi, ka whai i tā te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori aratohu i whakahau ai. Āe rā, ko te tohutō tērā mō te pūare roa. Mō ngā tikanga tuhi wānanga o te tuhinga kairangi nei, ka whāia ētehi āhuatanga taketake hei arataki mā te kaupānui. He mea whai atu i tā Palmer (1976) mō te whakapūmatua i ngā KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA²³. Mō te whakapākehātanga i te kupu ā-kaupapa whakatakotoria ai ki raro iho i te whārangi, kua whai i tā te Wānanga o Raukawa (Opai, 2006). Atu i tērā, ka riro nā ngā aratohu wānanga mō te American Psychology Association (A.P.A.) i arataki te whakatakoto i ngā KŌRERO TAUNAKI²⁴. Kua whakarārangitia ētehi kupu where wānanga, ētehi kupu ahureo i ngā rārangi kupu e whai nei. He whakamārama mō ia NUKA REO²⁵ kei te Āpitianga 2. He kupu, he kupu Ingarihi, he tauira, he kupu taurite, he tohutoro hoki. He nui ngā kupu hou i puta i te hou rawa o te kaupapa nei. He mea tiki atu ētehi o ngā kupu ā-kaupapa i a *Wiremu*, i a *Matatiki*, heoi anō, he mea wānanga i te rangahautanga, arā, i waenganui i ngā kōrerotanga me ngā kaiuru. Anei ngā kupu rāpopoto o te where wānanga i heke mai i te reo *Latin* pēnei i te ‘reira tonu’ mō *ibid*, i te ‘mā’ mō te *et al*.

He Whakarāpopotanga Kupu Where Wānanga

Tohu rāpopoto	Tikanga whānui	Tikanga <i>Rātini</i> , <i>Ingarihi</i>	Tohu rāpopoto
i	i roto i	in	
reira tonu	i reira tonu	ibidem	ibid
wh.	te whārangi	page	p.
whā.	ngā whārangi	pages	pp
mā	rātou mā	et alli	et al
anō	taua kōrero anō	opere citato	op. cit
He mea whai i tā Mea, 1999		after X, 1999	
He mea tiki atu i Y		source	
Tirohia		See	
Inā rā, hei tauira		for example	

²³ technical words, jargon

²⁴ references

²⁵ literary device

Memehea kei te reo Ingarihi tētehi kōrero hei taunaki i te kaupapa, nāku anō i whakamāori kia noho tāhuhu tonu ko te reo Māori. Heoi, mehemea i reo Ingarihi te kaiuru, ka mana atu. Kei muri i ia wāhanga aua kōrero taketake hei titiro mā te kaipānui. Ka whāia i tā Christensen (2001). Ka mutu, mehemea kei te reo Ingarihi ētehi kupu, nāku anō i titaha, pērā i tā te reo *English* whakamahi ki tētehi kupu tauhou. Ka tītaha hoki ko ngā tapanga pukapuka.

Ki te pānuihia te kiko o te kaupapa i te nuinga o ngā wāhanga, ka kitea kāore au e whakamahi ana i te TŪPOU²⁶ ‘ahau’, ‘mōku’. Ka whai ahau i tā te tari Māori nei i kī ai, inā rā kia ‘tawhiti atu’ te waha o te kaituhi kia ‘mātau ake’ ai te tiroiro ki te kaupapa. Heoi anō rā he nui tonu ngā tuhinga Māori e kaha kitea ana te noho mai a te kaituhi ki roto tonu i te kōrero, inā te kōrero e kī ana, ‘anei tāku’, ‘māku e kī atu’, ‘ki taku nei mōhio’ (tirohia ngā tuhinga a Kāretu), ā, ehara i te mea e kore nei e eke panuku aua tuhinga. Inā hoki, he kaupapa e mea ana me kuhu ka tika i te reo tonu o te tangata ki roto i te tuhinga. Mā reira e kitea ai ki hea noho ai te kairangahau i roto i te rangahau, i tōna ao. Heoi anō, mō tēnei wā ka ‘wairua pūtaiao’ mai te tuhinga kairangi nei i runga tonu i te mōhio ko tōku waha, ko tāku titiro ki te kaupapa nei i roto i ngā tū kupu, i ngā momo tauira, i ngā tūmomo ariā e whārikitia mai ana. Ka mutu, ko te Wāhanga 5 ka whakamahia nuitia ngā tūpou tuatahi hei whakaatu i te reo o te kairangahau. I te mea he māmā ake te whakamārama i aku nei hīkoitanga rangahau.

Nci rā ngā tikanga tuhituhi i whāia i roto i tēnei tuhinga kairangi hei arataki mā te kaipānui.

²⁶ pronoun

He Tikanga Tuhituhi mā te Kaipānui

PŪMATUA RIKI (E 9 te MOMOTUHI²⁷)

He KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA²⁸ i te kitenga tuatahi (ki tā Palmer, 1976).

PŪMATUA NUI (12 te momotuhi)

He HUAHUATAU ARORO²⁹ te rerenga kōrero (ki tā Lakoff rāua ko Johnson, 2003 ed).

Inā, HE TAONGA TE REO (tirohia te Wāhanga Tuawaru).

Noti Wae

He whakapākehātanga o te kupu ā-kaupapa kei raro iho o te whārangi (ki tā Opai, 2006).

Noti whakamutunga

He whakapākehātanga o te whakataukītanga kōrero a tāngata kē kei muri i te wāhanga (ki tā Christensen, 2001).

Kupu Tītaha

He kaupapa reo, inā rā ko ngā kupu ā-kaupapa kei te kōrerohia (ki tā Palmer, 1976).

He kupu manene (*foreign words*) i te rerenga reo Māori (ki tā Joseph, 2003b).

He tapanga pukapuka (ki tā Said, 1994).

‘Pikorua’

He kupu, he kīanga e whakamahia ana hei kupu ā-kaupapa, heoi anō rā, kei te tohua ‘pēneitia’ kia pātaitia te pātai, he tika tonu taua kupu, kāore rānei (ki tā Palmer, 1976).

Me āta whakaaro pea he kupu atu anō ā tōna wā.

²⁷ font

²⁸ technical word, jargon

²⁹ conceptual metaphor

Te Tuhinga o Tētehi Tākutatanga ki te Reo Māori

Ko tētehi mea nui o te rangahau, tērā e kitea ko ngā āhuetanga o te kairangahau i roto i te rangahau, inā rā ko te tuakiri, ko te mātāpono, ko te whakaponu kei ngā kōrero whakakitenga (Denscombe, 2003:89). Arā ake, he tāne te kairangahau i whānau mai i te tau 1969. He arero reorua. He kaiako reo Māori. He kaiako mā ngā reorua. He kaituhi reo Māori. He pāpā reo Māori. He ākonga whare wānanga. He pūkenga nō te whare wānanga. Katoa ēnei āhuetanga kei te tuhinga kairangi nei e mau ana.

He nui ngā āwangawanga i roto i a au mō te tuhituhi i tēnei tuhinga kairangi ki roto i tōku nei reo tuarua, ko te whakatakotoria o te kupu ki tā te arero rua whakatakoto i te kupu. E kore nei rānei e eke pānuku atu te kounga o te tuhi i a au e tuhi nei mō te kounga o te reo? E kore rānei e tika te whakamahia o ētehi rerenga kōrero, o ētehi kīanga, o ētehi kupu? E kore rānei e āta whakamāramatia atu tāku i pīrangi ai; kei hē, kei hapa, kei kōtiti kē? Ko ngā mea nui i whakatau ai i ēnei ui makihoi: ko te whakatupu tonu i ngā momo tuhinga kairangi kua tuhia ki roto i tō tātou reo Māori; ko te whakapakari, ko te whakawhanake i tōku anō arero Māori i a au e tuhi atu nei; ā, ko te tino take nei pea, ko te whakaritorito i tētehi kōrero Māori mō ngā momo kōrero me ngā kīpeha ki te reo Māori hei hākari mā ngā waha Māori, reotahi mai, reorua mai. He kaupapa Māori, me reo Māori te kaupapa. Koia hoki te whakahau a ngā kaiuru.

Ki konei pea whakaaturia ai ngā mahinga reo e rima i whakamahia e au kia tutuki tēnei taha o te tuhituhi. Tuatahi, ka tuhituhi ki roto i tētehi hautaka, he TUHINGA MĀHORAHORA³⁰ (tirohia te Āpitihanga 10). Me āta wānanga kia tuhituhi i tētehi rangahau pēnei te roa, nā reira ka tuhia ōku whakaaro ki rō hautaka i ia rā, i ia wiki i roto i te reo Māori: kotahi te rerenga, haurua whārangi rānei te roa. He mea harihari ki ngā hui, ā, ka mau atu tāku i kite ai, i rongo ai me te wā, te rā, te kaikōrero, te whakaaro, te aha atu anō e hāngai ana ki te kaupapa.

Tuarua, i tuhia tētehi puka e mau ana ōku whakaaro mō te tuhituhi. Inā rā, me pēwhea e tuhia ai te tuhinga roa? Kei te Whakaahua e whai ake nei ētehi o ngā āheinga reo i whiriwhirihia (E iwa ngā kīanga whakawhiti i tā Fogiel mā, 1996; e rua tekau i tā

³⁰ free writing

Houia-Roberts, 2004:80). I raro iho o ēnei āheinga reo ka whakarārangihia ētehi tauiratanga kōrero hei whakamaumaharatanga māku ki te whakatakoto haere o te kōrero. Ko ētehi he torutoru noa iho ngā tauira, ko ētehi atu neke noa atu i te rua tekau. Hei āwhina pea tēnei mā te ākonga kē.

Tuatoru, ka pānui, ka whakarongo, ka mātakitaki, āe rā ka kōrero Māori ia rā. Nā reira i kapohia ai ētehi tauira rerenga kōrero, ētehi kupu mai i ngā pukapuka reo Māori, mai i ngā hōtaka reo Māori, mai i ngā hoa kōrero Māori hei kuhu mai ki te tuhinga roa nei. Ki te kore e rumakingia te kairangahau, te kaituhi ki te reo Māori, kātahi pea te whāinga uaua rawa atu hei whakatutuki i te tuhinga o te rangahau ki te reo Māori.

Tuawhā, ka rangahaua tēnei mea te tuhituhi hei āwhinatanga māku. Pēnei tonu i ngā TUKANGA WHAKAARO³¹ hei whakaarotanga i a au e tuhituhi atu ana: Mai i te kōrero whānui ki te mea whāiti – whāiti ki te whānui rānei; ko te pūtake me te pānga; ko te pātai me te whakautu; ko te raruraru me te whakataunga; ko te whakatairite me te whakataurite, ko te hāngai me te tōrino, ko te aha atu anō rānei (tirohia Day, 1996:101-102; Houia-Roberts, 2004:80).

Tuarima, ko ngā rautaki ako mō te tuhituhi. Hokihoki ai au ki te pānui *How to Write a Thesis* nā Rowena Murray (2002). Ka tū hei kaitautoko mōku, ā, he nui ngā ara hei hīkoitanga atu mā te ākonga tākutatanga pēnei i te upoko tuawaru 'It's Never Too Late To Start'. Ki te hoe.

³¹ thought processes: Hei tauira: general to specific; specific to general; cause and effect; question and answer; problem and solution, compare and contrast, linear and spiral.

Te Whakaahua: He Āheinga Reo hei Tautoko i te Tuhia o Tēnei Tuhinga

Āheinga Reo	Whakapākehā	Tauira
Hei tīmatanga	<i>beginning</i>	Tērā, ka kitea i reira, Nā, Ko...
Hei tohu wā	<i>time phrases</i>	Nō te tau X, ka..., i tērā tau, ināianei...
Hei whakaraupapa	<i>sequencing</i>	Ka tahi, kātahi, whai muri, e whai ake...
Hei whakatauirā	<i>examples</i>	Hei tauira ake, inā rā, kia tīkina atu...
Hei whakatau kīnga	<i>quoting</i>	E ai ki a Mea, hei tā, ko Mea e kī ana...
Hei taunaki	<i>evidence</i>	E tohea ana e Mea, ki te rangahau a Mea
Hei tūhonohono	<i>prepositions</i>	Nō reira, heoi anō rā, waihoki, engari...
Hei whai whakaaaro	<i>expounding</i>	Hei āta wetewete i tērā, kia pēnei pea ...
Hei taunga tika	<i>concession</i>	Hāunga tērā, ahakoa, āna rā...
Hei āpiti whakaaaro	<i>commentary</i>	Mōku ake, he pai ake pea...
Hei arotake	<i>evaluation</i>	Ko te painga, kei te raruraru...
Hei āpitihanga	<i>addition</i>	Waihoki, āpitingia atu, arā atu anō...
Hei taunga whakaaaro	<i>results</i>	Tērā ka kite, nā reira, ko te hua...
Hei taki take	<i>causation</i>	Nā whai anō, i tērā ka, heoi anō...
Hei whakamārama	<i>explanation</i>	Ko tā X, he Y, he nui ngā take...
Hei whakaū kaupapa	<i>focusing</i>	Ko te matū, kāore i te aro ki...
Hei whakawhiti	<i>transitioning</i>	Ka huri te titiro, kia titiro ake ki...
Hei whakatairite	<i>comparison</i>	He pērā hoki, e rua e rua, he rite ki tā...
Hei whakataurite	<i>contrast</i>	Engari, ahakoa rā, heoi anō tā...
Hei whakarāpopoto	<i>summary</i>	Hei whakakapi, kia pēnei, nō reira...
Hei whakatau pono	<i>hedging</i>	Tērā, tērā pea, āhua, ehara i te mea...

He Rārangi mō ngā Kupu Ahureo

āheinga reo	language function
āhua	form
ahureo	metalanguage
anga kōrero	plot
arapū	alphabet
ariā	theory
ariā reo	language notion
aronga Māori	Māori way of seeing, Māori concepts
aronga kē	connotation
aroro	concept
hā	tone
hanganga	structure
huahuatau	metaphor
huahuatau aroro	conceptual metaphor
huahuatau roa	extended metaphor
huarite	rhyme
hui	literary event
huri i te kupu	turn a phrase
hononga ā-kōrero	intertextuality
horopaki	context
kapapori	class system
kārawarawatanga	punctuation
karere	message
kaupapa	theme
kete momo-kōrero	repertoire of text types
kiripuaki	character
kīanga	phrase
kiko	content
kīnga	utterance
kīpeha	figure of speech
kīpeha huatau	figure of thought, trope
kīpeha whakatangi	figure of sound

kīpeha whakawhere	figure of rhetoric, schemes
kīrehu	idiom
kīwaha	colloquialism
kounga	quality, aesthetically pleasing
kupu ātete	litotes
kupu ā-kaupapa	technical language
kupu hākiki	irony, satire
kupu hautanga	synecdoche, metonymy
kupu hou	neologism
kupu huarite	homonym
kupu huri hāngai	antimetabole
kupu maninohea	cliché
kupu mino	loan word
kupu ororite	onomatopoeia
kupu peha	quip
kupu pōhēhē	malapropism
kupu raweke	pun
kupu tārara	parallelism
kupu tātā	oxymoron
kupu tauaro	antonym, antithesis
kupu taurite	synonym
kupu tautata	collocation
kupu tūhono	compound word
kupu waiata	lyrics
kupu whakapehapeha	hyperbole
kupu whakarite	simile
Mātākōrero	oral literature
Mātātuhi	written literature
miramira	bold
mita	accent
‘mōhio ki te kōrero’	literacy
momo-kōrero	text type
momo-kōrero auau	discourse habit
momo-kōrero tene	extemporised text type
momo tuhinga	genre

momo tumu	parts of speech
mōteatea	lament, in-depth poem
nuka reo	literary device
oro	sound
orokati	consonant
oropuare	vowel
oropuare tārua	assonance
orokati tārua	alliteration
orokati tārua kē	consonance
pakimaero	novel
pepeha	tribal maxim
punga	particle
pūtaketanga	purpose
rangirua	ambiguity
raupapatanga	sequence
rēhita	register
rehurehutanga	nuance
reo ā-iwi	dialect
reo ā-motu	standardisation
reo ihiihi	expressive language
reo matatini	literacy
reo more	literal language
reo peha	figurative language
reo tika	correct usage
reo whakawhere	rhetoric, language of persuasion
rerehua	aesthetic
rerenga kētanga	paradox
rerenga kōrero	sentence structure
rongo ā-ngākau	emotional connection
ruri	light poem
taera	style
taera taketake	traditional style
take	tenor, subject of the metaphor
takotoranga kupu	syntax
takotoranga Māori	Māori syntax, phrasing

tairitenga	analogy
tāruarua	repetition
tapanga	title
tā te kaitito takoto	poetic license
tā te Māori titiro	Māori ontology
tātari mātātuhi	literary criticism
tātoru	triplication
tikanga	convention
tikanga ā-kupu	denotation
tirohanga	point of view
tohu	symbol
tohutoro	allusion
tohutoro ai	double entendre
toitōi manawa	motivation
tumu	base word
ture wetereo	grammar rule
uara	value
ui makihoi	rhetorical question
ūngerī	rhythm
wāhi me te wā	setting
waitara	abstract
waka	vehicle for metaphor
wairua	mood
weteoro	phonology
wetereo	grammar
wetewete kōrero	critical literacy
whaihua	effective
whakaminenga	audience
whakatangata	personification
whakataukī	proverb
whakatauākī	specific proverb, aphorism
whakatairite haere	figurative chains
whakataurite rerekē	comparison
whakanikoniko	embellish with figures of speech
whiti	verse, stanza

TE WĀHANGA TUATAHI

Tō Tātou Nei Reo Tūāuri Whāioio

Whakarongo! Ki te reo Māori e karanga nei...

Ngoi Pēwhairangi¹

Kāore te reo i haere mai i te rangi!

He mea akoako nā te tangata!

Ruka Broughton²

Te Whanganui-a-Tara, 1983

- 1.1 Hei Wāhi i te Kaupapa
- 1.2 He Kōrero mō te Kairangahau
- 1.3 Ngā Pātai Rangahau
- 1.4 He Tirohanga Whānui ki te Tuhinga

1.1 Hei Wāhi i te Kaupapa

He taonga te reo Māori nō Aotearoa. He mea kawē mai e ngā mātua tūpuna mā ngā waka pererua i ngā moutere o Poronihia, ā, ka tiritiria, ka poupoua te mauri o tēnei reo ki te whenua nei i te mano tau ki muri. Nā wai ā, ka tupu te mauri ora o tēnei reo, ka tupu te mātauranga, ā, ka pūāwai te reo nei. Ka noho ko ngā reo ā-iwi ki tēnā tai, ki tēnā tai, ki tēnā uru, ki tēnā uru. Koia te aronga kei ngā kupu a Waikerepuru (1995):

Kā noho te tangata ki te mātakitaki ake i tōna ao, ka rongo i te hau matangi e āwhiowhio ana me te hāorooro mai o te moana e whati rā i te takutai. Ka rongo i te hauangi kōkihi i te Kāuru o Tāne, i te karekare wai e rere rā i ngā koikoiawa, te tiotio o te riroriro, o te tīrairaka e topatopa i tōna aroaro, te kāhu e kē mai rā i te waru.

¹ Kāretu, T. (1987: 91)

² Waikerepuru, H. (1995)

Ka taka te wā, ka tae mai te manene mā runga kaipuke, ā, ka kaha rerekē te reo Māori i tōna tutukinga ki te reo Ingarihi. Tau mai ana ki nāianei, ko te reo Māori e mōhio nei tātou, koia ko te reo taketake o Aotearoa. Me kī pēnei ake mō te reo, ahakoa he kākano i ruia mai i Rangiatea, ā, ko ōna tuākana kei Rarotonga, kei Tahiti, kei Hawai'i rā anō, taketake nō tēnei whenua tō tātou nei reo Māori: kupu mai, whakahua mai, whakatakotoranga mai, kōrero mai, tikanga mai, whakaaro mai.

Ko te reo te tāhuhu o te hinengaro. Mā te reo e kawe te whakaaro Māori, mā te reo e whakaora ngā tikanga Māori. I te mōhio mārire tātou ki te hononga o te reo ki te tuakiri tangata, arā ake, 'ko te reo Māori te mauri o te mana Māori' (Tihei Mauriora, 1992). Koia nei tā Apirana Ngata mō tō tātou nei reo, "Ko te reo te tino taonga, ki te ngaro tēnei, e kore ētahi peka o te Māoritanga e ora. Ka noho pōhara te iwi, kāore he mana, kāore he rangatira" (Kaa & Kaa, 1996a: 309). Nō reira, e tika rawa atu ana kia whawhai tātou kia ora tonu tō tātou nei reo tūāuri whāioio. He whawhai kia Māori tonu te arero me te hinengaro.

Ahakoa piki, heke o te taupori kōrero Māori, kīhai te reo Māori i ngaro mai i te taunga mai o Kupe, o Toi-kai-rākau, tae noa mai ki nāianei. Heoi ka pērā te reo i ngā reo katoa puta noa i te ao, ka rerekē haere. Nō reira ngā āwangawanga o ngā tohunga reo o tēnā whakatipuranga, o tēnā whakatipuranga ki ēnei rerenga kētanga. Me kī, ko te kotiti haere o te āhua o te reo, ko te tupuria mai o te hapa, o te whati, o te hē. Ki a Reweti Kohere i ngā tau 1900 he maha ngā āhuatanga reo kāore e tika ana ki a ia. Kia tipakohia atu ētehi o ērā āhuatanga reo hei whakapotonga mai, koia ko te tika o te whakahua, ko te tika o te wetereo, ko te tika o te kupu, ko te tika o te tikanga (Kaa & Kaa, 1994: 47-50). Tirohia te Whaakahua 1.1. Ka kitea ko tāna i kī ai kia tika te rere o te whakahua; kia whai i tā te Māori whakatakoto (*passive usage*) – kaua i tā te reo Pākehā (*active usage, pronouns for animals, loan words*); ka mutu, kia tika te whakamahia o ngā kupu ki tā te Māori titiro ki te Ika-a-Māui, arā, ko runga whakateupoko, ko raro whakatehiku.

Te Whakaahua 1.1: He Tirohanga nā Reweti Kohere ki ngā Hē o te Reo

Āhuatanga reo	Hē	Tika
ko te whakahua tika	‘na’ ‘wh’	‘nga’ ‘f’
ko te wetereo tika	<i>active voice</i> ‘Kei runga a Rangi i te one.’	<i>passive voice</i> ‘Kei te one a Rangi.’
ko te kupu tika	‘Kāhore te hoiho i reira, i motu i a ia te taura.’ ‘pōhara’	‘Kāhore te hoiho i reira, i motu te taura.’ ‘rawakore’
ko te tikanga tika	‘runga’ (<i>north</i>)	‘raro’ (<i>north</i>)

Ka pērā rawa te ngau o tēnei take, o te kounga o te reo ki te koroua nei, ki a Reweti, ka tuhi atu ia ki te niupepa, ki *Te Pipiwharauora*, me te whakahau, “Ko te Māori anō kei te kaha te patu i tōna reo... Tērā atu te nuinga o ngā kupu pōriro kei te whaoria ki roto i tō tāua reo pai, ā, āpōpō ka rite tō tāua reo ki a tāua anō, ka awhekaihe, he awhekaihe tangata awhekaihe reo”(Pipiwharauora, 1903, 70: 2-3). Ko te tāmia o te reo Māori e te reo Ingarihi tāna i āwangawanga rā i tērā wā tonu, i te wā o te tōnuitanga.

Tau mai ana ki tēnei rautau kei reira tonu te māharahara e hē haere ana te reo me ngā auē a ētehi tohunga reo Māori e haere ana ki te taha. Inā rā te kī a Tā Kīngi Ihaka mō te āhua o te reo me ōna tikanga (Kāretu, 1993:1), “...me te kotiti o te reo, te pāpaku o ngā whakaaro me te kūware ki ngā tikanga a ngā mātua tūpuna.” Ka pēnei hoki a Miria Simpson mō te haere ngātahi o te kounga o te reo me te whakaora i te reo Māori (1995: 105):

E whai nei hoki tātou kia ora mai tō tātou reo?

Kia tino ora mai. Kia tōtika rawa atu nei te whakaora mai – nē hā?

He aha hoki rā te painga o te āhua ora noa iho – heoi anō, he reo Māori!

Aiiii – Taukuri rā ia ē! Kātahi rawa te hē!

Pai kē atu te tuku kia ngaro, kia noho pōhara noa tātou. Kia riro tātou mā te whakamā hei patu – te iwi kore reo nei; te iwi hauarea nei te reo...kia rangatira tonu te whakaora mai.

Kia hoki noa ake ki te kōrero a Ngata, inā rā ka ngaro te reo Māori ka noho pōhara te iwi Māori. Kia kīia atu i konei, ki te mau tonu i a tātou te reo Māori me te kore aro ki te kounga o te reo, ka noho rangatira tonu te iwi ahakoa rā kua rawakore te reo? E meatia ana i konei kia rangatira te reo rangatira, kātahi ka rangatira te iwi. Ka kōrerotia ēnei āhuatanga i tēnei tuhinga whakapae e eke ai te reo Māori ki te taumata, me kī, e mau tonu nei te reo Māori ki tōna tino rangatiratanga, me mau tonu i te reo te aha? Me mau tonu ngā āhuatanga e Māori tonu ai te reo Māori.

Nā, ki a Miria anō rā, ko rātou te taumata o te reo. Arā, ko rātou i whāngotea ki te waiū o te kupu i te āhurutanga o te hau kāinga. Ka tika ko rātou ka whakatauiria i te kounga, 'Iti nei kei ngā pukapuka – kei ngā tuhituhi a ngā tohunga o mua, pērā i a Reweti Kōhere mā, i a Pei Te Hurinui, i a Āpirana Ngata, kei te Paipera Tapu hoki' (reira tonu: 110). Ā, kei te reo kōrero o te hunga matatau te mauri tū o te reo. Engari rā, ia tau, ia tau hinga atu, hinga mai ana ngā kaumātua o te motu, ā, he kura reo ērā e kore nei e hokia. E kīia ana mā te hē ka mōhio ki te tika, heoi ki te ngaro te hunga nōna te REO TIKA³, ā, ki te nui rawa atu ngā hē, me pēhea rā tātou e hē ana e mōhio ki te tika. Taukiri e! Kei te pā tērā āhuatanga, te ngaro haere o tērā whakatipuranga ki te kounga o te reo. Koia hoki tonu rā tā Tīmoti Kāretū (1999: v):

Ko ēnei [kaikōrero whai mana] i mōhio ki te rāwekeweke, ki te huri, ki te whiu, ki te whakatakoto i te kupu, kua kore haere i kitea tērā momo i roto i te ao Māori o ēnei rā...

Atu i ēnei āhuatanga e whā ki a Kāretu, he nui pea ngā āhuatanga e eke ai tētehi kōrero ki te taumata ikeike. Tērā ko te hononga ā-wairua o te kaikōrero ki te whakaminenga, mehemea e mau ana ki te wehi, kāore rānei. Ko te āta wetewete rānei a te kaikōrero i ngā take kōrero kia pai ai te takoto. Ko te whakatakotoranga whakaaro kia mārama kau mai. Ko te tangi rānei, arā, ko te whakapuakinga o te kupu kia rangona ai. Ko te whai pānga rānei o ngā kupu ki te horopaki kia hāngai tōtika ki te

³ correct usage

kaupapa. Ko te reo ā-tinana, arā, ko te nekeneke o te tinana kia wana ai. Ā, ka mutu, ko te whiriwhiri i ngā kupu, i ngā kīanga, i ngā rerenga kōrero kia REREHUA⁴ ai te kōrero. Koia rā te kaupapa o tēnei tuhinga.

Inā rā te pātai matua, he aha ngā ĀHUATANGA REO⁵ kei ngā MOMO-KŌRERO⁶ e puritia ai te mauri ora o te reo Māori a ō tātou tūpuna? Kia mōhio ai te tangata, āe, kua eke tētehi kōrero ki te taumata, he aha rā ngā āhuatanga reo me noho tangata whenua mai i taua tangata rā? Ka hangaia tētehi huarahi rangahau hei whakautu i aua pātai. Ka tau ki te momo rangahau nei, ki te INE I TE KOUNGA⁷ kia kimihia he kōrero e hāngai ana ki te KOUNGA. Ki tā Janesick (i rō Denzin rāua ko Lincoln, 2000: 384-385) e waru ngā whiringa rangahau kia kōkiri whakamua te rangahau: ko ngā pātai rangahau; ko te wāhi me ngā kaiuru; ko te whai wāhi atu ki ngā kaiuru; ko te roa o te rangahau; ko ngā huarahi rangahau e tika ana⁸; ko te ariā mō tēnei rangahau; ko ngā whakaaro ake o te kairangahau; ko ngā matatika. Ka kōrerotia katoatia aua āhuatanga rangahau ki te Wāhanga Tuarima, heoi, anei te tirohanga whānui ki ngā huarahi rangahau i whāia.

Ko ngā huarahi rangahau matua e pēnei ana: he tono atu ki te rōpū āwhina i ngā matatika whare wānanga; he tātari i ngā tuhinga e hāngai ana ki te momo-kōrero, ki te kīpeha; he whakarongo, he titiro, he kōrero ki ētehi tāngata o te hāpori reo Māori⁹; he whakatū i tētehi rōpū arataki; he kōrero tahi me ngā kaiuru, arā, he ‘uiui’; he āta wetewete i ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru; he kawē atu i ngā whakakitenga ki ētehi kaiwhakahoki kōrero; he hoatu i ngā kōrero ki ngā tūākana whare wānanga; he whakatikatika i ngā whakakitenga; he TĀTARI I TE MĀTĀTUHI¹⁰; ā, ka mutu, he tā i ngā whakakitenga hei kawē i ngā pārongo. Koia ngā huarahi rangahau hei kimi i te māramatanga mō tēnei kaupapa. He kaupapa e pā ana ki te whakaora i tētehi wāhanga nui o tō tātou nei reo Māori.

⁴ aesthetics, beauty

⁵ language features

⁶ text type. Ka whakamahia e te Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, Ministry of Education (2003) te kīanga ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’ mō te *literacy*. Taka rawa mai ki te tau 2007, ko ‘te reo matatini’. I whiriwhirihia te kupu tūhono nei, te ‘momo-kōrero’ hei kupu whānui mō te mea tuhi, mō te mea kōrero, mō te mea ataata.

⁷ qualitative

⁸ Ka whakarārangihia e Janesick ngā huarahi rangahau tekau mā waru me te kī he nui kē atu i ērā.

⁹ participant observation

¹⁰ literary criticism

Kei ngā Wāhanga Tuaono, Tuawhitu, Tuawaru hoki ka whārikihia ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru 28. Ko ā rātou kōrero hei tūhonohono i ngā mahere reo e rangahaua atu ana, hei hanga hoki i aua mahere reo. Inā rā ko ētehi mahere, he mahere momo-kōrero, he mahere momo KĪPEHA¹¹, he kohinga mātāpono hoki mō te MĀTĀTUHI¹², mō te MĀTĀKŌRERO¹³. Kei te Wāhanga Tuawhā ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā tāngata tekau atu anō mō te tātai momo-kōrero me te anga kīpeha. He tāngata matatau ki te reo i whirihia e taku rōpū arataki. Nā, ahakoa nō muri kē mai ka kōrerohia atu aua kaiwhakahoki kōrero, kua pēnei te takotoranga o ngā Wāhanga kia whai i te ia o te kōrero mō tēnei tuhinga kairangi.

Nā, mā aua huarahi e tutuki ai ngā whāinga o tēnei rangahau. Arā, kia mārama te kite atu i ngā momo-kōrero a te Māori, ka tahi. Ka rua, kia tirohia tētehi peka o aua momo-kōrero, te KĪPEHA. I tēnei rangahau e whakahaeretia ana, i runga hoki i ngā whakahoki kōrero a ngā kaiuru, ka huri te kairangahau ki te arohaehae i te KĪPEHA. I pērā ai i te mea, ka kitea e tino whai wāhi ana te KĪPEHA kia mau tonu ai i te REREHUATANGA o te reo Māori.

Nā, he REO ITINGA¹⁴ te reo Māori e whakarerekētia ana e tētehi reo nui o te ao. Ahakoa rā te kī a ngā tohunga reo pērā i a Trudgill, ‘...ka rerekē haere ngā reo i ngā wā katoa’ (Bauer rāua ko Trudgill, 1998: 1) kei te tāmia rawatia te reo Māori e te reo Pākehā, ā, he whawhai tōrangapū, he whawhai kia mau tonu ai ngā āhuatanga e Māori tonu ai te reo Māori. Āe, ka rerekē haere te reo, heoi anō, mā te āta whakamahere i ngā āhuatanga motuhake o te reo, tērā e āta haere ai taua rerekētanga. Ā, ko te tūmanako, mā te whakaatu i ētehi āhuatanga reo e tika ana kia pupuritia, tērā e ora tonu ai te wairua taketake o te reo Māori.

Nā, e rua pea ngā moka o tēnei mea te whakaora reo (Ko Bentahila rāua ko Davies i Keegan, 2005: 145), ko te pupuritia o te reo, ko te whakatupuria o te reo. Ko tā tēnei tuhinga kairangi he whakatupu i te mōhiotanga ki te reo Māori, waihoki, ki ngā āhuatanga reo nei: te momo-kōrero me te REO PEHA¹⁵. He tirohanga hou pea, he kupu

¹¹ figure of speech

¹² literature

¹³ oral literature

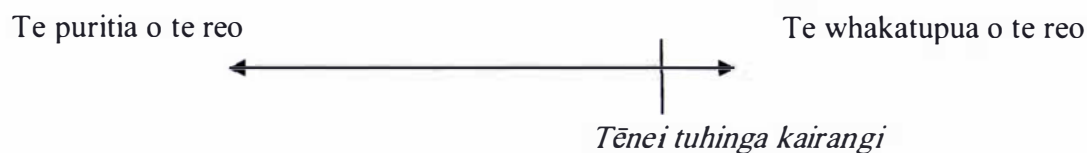
¹⁴ minority language

¹⁵ figurative language

hou, he whakaaro hou hei rautaki ako i te reo Māori. Ko tāku nei, ehara rawa i te mea ko te pupuri i te reo te whāinga nui mā tātou, ko te whakatupu kē i te reo kia pūāwai ai, koia kē. Koia tā Mōrehu Nikora me tana hanga i tētehi huarahi hei whakatupu i te kounga o te reo. He tiki atu i ngā HUAHUATAU¹⁶ mai i ngā waiata mōteatea hei whakauru ki roto i te reo whakawhitiwhiti o ia rā. Ko tāna, “mā reira anō pea e kaupare atu ai te hau karawhiuwhiu o te ia whakaaro Pākehā, ā, kia noho Māori tonu ai te wairua o te kōrero, o te whakaaro a te hunga ngākau pono ki te reo o tuawhakarere mā’ (Nikora, 2006: 2). Koia hoki tā tēnei tuhinga, he para huarahi mā tātou e mate nui nei kia Māori te reo Māori. Me te mea hoki, he whakatupu i te MĀTAURANGA REO¹⁷ e taea ai te wānanga mā te reo, mō te reo.

Te Whakaahua 1.2: Ngā Whāinga mō te Whakaora i tētehi Reo

He mea whai i tā Bentahila rāua ko Davies i rō Keegan, 2005:145



1.2 He Kōrero mō te Kairangahau

Pāpā, tama. Hoa, whakapāpito. Kaiako, ākonga. Kaipānui, kaituhi. Koia ētehi o ngā matawaru o tēnei Māui Hīanga, me kī. Koia hoki ngā āhuatanga i kawea atu i a au e rangahau haere ana i tēnei tuhinga. Koia hoki hei āwhinatanga ki te whakawhanaunga atu ki tēnā tangata, ki tēnā tangata ka whai wāhi mai ki te rangahau. Heoi anō, mōku ake, he tini kē atu āku urupounamu i hī ake i ngā pātai kua whakautua, heoi anō, koia pea te whānui, te rarahi o te moana rangahau, he tai timu, he tai pari.

Ko te whānau Joseph, he pērā tonu i ngā whānau puta noa i te motu. Ka nohoia te whenua i mua i ngā tau 1960, kātahi ka hūnuku tētehi reanga, ko taku pāpā me ōna tuākana, tēina, ki ngā tāone kimi mahi ai. He whai oranga hoki mō te whānau. Nā wai,

¹⁶ metaphor

¹⁷ language knowledge

nā wai, ka nohoia haeretia ko te tāone tē hokihoki ai ki te hau kāinga. Ka mutu, ka hingahinga ō rātou mātua, ka ngaro tērā hunga kōrero Māori, ka ū ki te mahi, ka wareware te reo tupu, te whenua tupu. Taka mai ana ki taku whakatipuranga, ko te reo Ingarihi te reo, ko te tāone kē te wāhi noho.

Ka pakeke ake ahau ki te pāmu iti ki Eltham, ka hūnuku ki te āporo nui, ki Ngāmotu. Ā, ka riro nā maunga Taranaki mātou i whakamaru. Ko te toa hokomaha te ūkaipō, ko te mihini ātea te wharenuī, ko te paihikara waiporoporo te hōiho, ā, ko te reo matua, ko te reo Pākehā. Hokihoki ai te whānau ki ngā tangihanga ki Te Hokinga mai ki te Nehenehenui, ki Te Tokanganui-a-noho ia tau ia tau. I runga i ērā ngarotanga atu ka werohia mai au e taku kaiako i te kura tuatahi i te reo Ingarihi, “I hea kē rā koe?” Ka kīia atu rā, “I te tangi”. “Hāngi?” tāna i whakahoki mai ai. “Tangi!” tāku i te wairua kanga. “Ehara te toru rā i tōna roa!” tāna i whakahau mai ai i tōna kūaretanga. Auē!

.....

Nā tētehi o aku matua kēkē Māori te kī, “Hei aha te reo Māori, kāore ōna take. Ko te reo Ingarihi te reo whai mana puta noa i te ao. Whāia tērā.” Āhaha!

.....

I ōku paku toronga ki te reo Māori i te kura auraki, ka tau mai te mōhiotanga he pai kē atu ōku hoa Pākehā i a au ki te pāhi i ngā whakamātautau. Ā, ka noho noa iho au i roto i te kūaretanga pēnei i ngā kupu whakamutunga o te ‘haka’ kura i taua wā, “Ko wai mātou can you guess, NPBHS, Black Black Black, White White White, School”. Auē taukiri ē!

.....

Ka haere ngātahi taku urunga atu ki te ao Māori me tōku reo Māori. Ko taku reo, he mea takoha mai e te tini tāngata ki te mano wāhi i taku taipakeketanga. Ko Te Kuratini o te Whanganui-a-Tara tērā i te kura raumati o te tau 1990. Ko te Whare Wānanga o Otautahi tērā i ētehi anō tau. Ko te Kuramatatini o Taranaki tērā, ko te kete pāpaku i te makariri, ko te kete hōhonu i te raumati i te tau 1992. Heoi, mō taku arero whīwhiwhi, ka riro mā Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato, otirā mā Te Tohu Paetahi tōku reo e whakapakari. Nā Murumāra, nā Tīmoti, nā Wharehuia, nā Hirini, nā wai ake, nā wai ake tēnei poi i poipoi.

.....

Ka hoki ki te kāinga waewae ki Taranaki hei pouako kura. Kotahi anake te wāhanga ā-tau ki roto i te kura auraki ka tere mōhio ki te whakataukī ehara taku toa i te toa

takitahi, ka hūnuku atu ki Rangiātea ki Te Kura Matatini o Taranaki. Nā Rangiātea au i tangata ai.

O roto i ērā tau whakaako ki Rangiātea, i ērā tau rumaki ki te reo Māori atu i te 9 ki te 5, ka nui kē atu te puta mai o ngā pātai i ngā whakautu, ā, ka noho ko ngā ākonga hei kaiako, ko Hōhepa kē hei ākonga. Nā te pātātanga atu ki ngā tamariki kōrero Māori o Te Pihipihinga mai i Rangiātea me ngā pakeke o Te Tohu Mōhiotanga, o Te Huatahi, o Te Korimako o Taranaki, ka puta, ka rere ngā pātai ki roto tonu i a au mō te āhua o ngā momo-kōrero tuturu ā tātou pēnei i te whakawhitinga kōrero, i te whaikōrero, i te waiata, i te pūrākau, i te paki, i te kōrero pāpāho. Heoi anō, he pērā anō tēnei i ngā pouako e whakaako ana i te kaupapa rumaki, he mahi i te ao, he mahi i te pō, tē taea te aha i tua atu i te wānanga puku¹⁸.

Nā wai, nā wai, ka karangahia ahau e Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi i Te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa kia rangahaua he pukapuka mō roto i ngā kura kaupapa Māori. Nā, koinā rā te kohinga pukapuka e kī ana ko *Te Kōrari* (Joseph, 2004). Tekau mā ono ngā pukapuka, he mea ākonga, he mea kaiako. Ko te mea nui o roto i aua pukapuka he aro ki ngā momo-kōrero whānui o te ao Māori (tirohia Te Whakaahua 1.3). Ehara rawa i te mea ka eke rawa atu te kohinga, heoi anō mōku ake hei kaituhi, nōku kē te whiwhi hei whakapakari ake i te taha tuhituhi mō roto i ngā tau. Waihoki, i te mutunga o te rangahautanga o tēnei kohinga pukapuka ka puta ake ngā pātai: He aha te whānuitanga o ā tātou kōrero, tuhinga mai, kōrero ā-waha mai? Me pēhea te whakamahere i aua momo kōrero katoa kia mārama mai? Atu i te whakataukī, i te kīwaha, he aha rā ngā āhuatanga reo e eke ai tētehi momo kōrero ki taumata kē? Arā, kia matatau, kia mauri tau rā anō te tangata ki te reo Māori, kāore e kore he āhuatanga reo me mau ā-ngākau mai ki roto i a ia. Nā, ki te whakautua ērā pātai tērā pea he āwhina nui māku, mā ngā kaiako me ngā ākonga o roto i ngā kura, ā, he āwhina hoki mā ngā arero rua e hikaka ana ki te ako i te reo Māori. Ka mutu, i tēnei ware e tiro ake ana ki te wahakī, ki te whītiki o te kī, ki te whakaniko i te kupu, ka whakaaroaro, me pēwhea e pērā rawa te pai? Koia tonu hoki te hiahia kia whakapakaritia, kia whakaoratia tēnei momo reo. Koia i whāia tēnei whakataunga kōrero, tēnei huarahi rangahau.

¹⁸ privately

Te Whakaahua 1.3: Te Kōrari me ngā Momo-Kōrero

Joseph, 2004

Ingoa Pukapuka	Kaupapa	Whakamārama
<i>Te Waihanga Mōteatea</i>	Te Waihanga Mōteatea	E 40 ngā mahi hei ārahi i te ākongā ki te waihanga i ā rātou ake mōteatea, i ā rātou ake ruri.
<i>He Mōteatea Taketake</i>	1. Te Pātere 2. Te Haka 3. Te Waiata	He huarahi hei waihanga i ēnei momo mōteatea me te titiro anō ki ngā wāhanga o ia momo.
<i>He Mōteatea Hou</i>	1. Te Haiku 2. Te Huarite 3. Te Tātari Mōteatea	He huarahi hei waihanga, hei tātari i ēnei momo mōteatea e kuhu nei ki te ao Māori.
<i>He Momo Pakiwaitara</i>	1. Te Taniwha 2. Te Patupaiarehe 3. Te Kararehe	He mahi whakahāngai i te titiro ki ēnei pakiwaitara o mua, o nāiane hoki.
<i>Te Reo Pōwhiri</i>	1. Te Karanga 2. Te Whaikōrero	He whakamārama i ngā reo nei e whakatau ai i te manuhiri.
<i>He Mihi, He Poroporoaki</i>	1. Te Poroporoaki 2. Te Mihimihi me te Poroāki	Ko ngā kīanga e mihi ai ki te hunga mate ka tahi, ki te manuhiri, ki te tangata whenua ka rua.
<i>Te Reo o Tuawhakarere</i>	1. Te Reo o Kui mā, o Koro Mā 2. Te Whakanikoniko i te Reo	He kōrero nā ētehi pūkenga i te reo Māori me ētehi mahi hei whakarekareka i te reo o te ākongā.
<i>Te Tuhinga Auaha</i>	E 9 ngā wāhanga.	He rautaki, he tauira hei āwhina ki te waihanga i te pakiwaitara o ēnei rā.

1.3 Ngā Pātai Rangahau

Ko te kaupapa matua i āta wetewetehia i roto i tēnei tuhinga kairangi: e rangatira tonu ai te reo Māori, arā, e eke ai ngā kōrero Māori ki tōna panekiretanga, me mātau te tangata ki ētehi tino ĀHUATANGA REO¹⁹. E toru ngā pātai i hīa ake hei arataki mai mā tēnei rangahau:

1. He aha ngā momo-kōrero kei te reo Māori?
2. Me pēhea e whakamaheretia ai ngā momo-kōrero?
3. Me pēhea e KOUNGA²⁰ ai te momo-kōrero Māori?

Ki te kōrerohia tētehi reo, he wāhanga nui ngā momo-kōrero (Crystal, 2003: 2). Mehemea he whare te reo, ko te momo-kōrero te pou tokomanawa. Nā whai anō tēnei rangahau i whai pānga ki te mātauranga Māori, ki ngā kaiako reo Māori, ka mutu, ki te hapori reo Māori. He mea nui ngā momo-kōrero ki roto i ngā kura, ā, he mea nui ngā momo-kōrero mā ngā ākonga puta noa e ako ana i te reo Māori. Nā reira ko te whāinga o te pātai tuatahi kia whakakaohia ā tātou kōrero whānui, tuhi mai, kōrero mai ki tētehi mahere hei āwhina mā te hunga e rumakingia ana ki te reo Māori.

Mō te kotahi rau tau kua pēhia te reo Māori ki roto i ngā kura, ā, i te pūāwaitanga o te kōhanga reo, o te kura kaupapa Māori, o te wharekura, ā, tae atu ki ngā whare wānanga Māori, kua tupu te reo Māori me ngā momo-kōrero maha. Heoi, ahakoa te kaha tupu o te reo, o ngā rauemi me ngā momo tuhinga whānui i roto i te rua tekau tau, kāore anō kia āta whakatakotoria te whānuitanga o ngā kōrero hei aratakinga mā roto i te marautanga kura. Me kī ake, kāore anō kia tū tētehi pātaka iringa kōrero hei kuhu atu i tēnā momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo-kōrero. Nā, ka whakairia ake tēnā momo-kōrero, tēnā momo-kōrero ki ngā pakitara ā-whare kia pai ai te whakaaturanga.

Heoi anō rā, ko te tūāpapa o tēnei pātai tuatahi, he mea hī ake i te kaupapa i Toi Te Kupu. He mea hanga a Toi Te Kupu e te tari Māori o Massey University i te tau 1995. Ko te whāinga o te kaupapa, ko te āwhina i ngā kaiako me ngā ākonga ki te rapu i ngā rauemi reo Māori mō te ako me te whakaako. I whai pānga te kaupapa ki ngā tāngata e hanga rauemi ana me rātou e utu ana i te hanganga rauemi i runga i te mea ka kitea

¹⁹ language features

²⁰ quality

he aha ngā rauemi e ngaro ana, ā, ki hea whakakīkī ai i ngā whāwhārua. I ngā tau 1995-96 ka riro i a Toi Te Kupu he putea mai i te Foundation for Research Science and Technology (FRST) kia rangahaua taua kaupapa. Ko te whakaaro nui, kia mahia he huarahi e taea ai e ngā kaiako, e ngā ākonga te whakapā atu ki ngā rauemi reo Māori e tere ana te tupu. Ko te whāinga matua i puta i tērā wā ko te anga o Toi Te Kupu (tirohia McKinley, Black, Christensen & Richardson, 1996).

Ko tā te anga o Toi Te Kupu, he whakaatu i te ingoa o te rauemi, i te ingoa o te kaituhi, i te wharetā, i te roa, i te rahinga, i te kohinga rauemi, ā, i te huarahi e taea ai te kimi i taua rauemi. Ka kitea hoki ngā āhuatanga mō te reo Māori mā te mātauranga kaupapa Māori: te kaiwhakamāori, te āhua reo (RERENGA KŌRERO²¹, KĪWAHA²², whakataukī, tohutō, reo-ā-iwi, ĀHEINGA REO²³), te hononga ki te marautanga, waihoki, ko te mea e hāngai pū ana ki tēnei pātai tuatahi, ko te ‘momo reo’.

I a mātou, te rōpū rangahau, e arotake ana i a Toi Te Kupu ka kitea kāore he rārangi tōtika o ngā momo-kōrero hei whakaū i te wāhanga e kīia nei ko te momo reo. Ka kaha te tupu o ngā rauemi, ā, ka āpitingia atu ki te pātengi raraunga, ka tupu hoki te whakaingoa i ngā rauemi. Heoi, he ingoa taka noa mai i te rangi. Nā reira i hua mai ai tēnei kaupapa, te whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero, te whakawhiti kōrero i waenga i te hunga kōrero Māori mō ngā momo-kōrero Māori. He kimi māramatanga te mahi mō tēnei mea te ‘momo-kōrero’ hei āwhina mā ngā kaiako ki te rapu i ngā rauemi reo Māori. Arā ake te pātai, me pēhea e pai ake ai te rapu kōrero mā taua pātengi raraunga rauemi Māori nei?

Kāore he take o te whakarārangi noa i te tini momo-kōrero, ā, mā te pātai tuarua e arataki te whakamaheretanga o ngā momo-kōrero ki ngā tino momo-kōrero e ai ki ngā tāngata i whai wāhi mai ki tēnei rangahau. Inā, kāore e kore he momo-kōrero e kaha ngākaunuitia ana e te hunga kōrero Māori. He aha hoki ērā? Nā, he mea nui rawa atu tēnei mea te ‘momo-kōrero’ e pā ana ki te MŌHIO KI TE KŌRERO²⁴ (Ministry of Education, 2003: 12). Inā, ‘Kia ngana te ākonga ki ngā momo-kōrero, me noho mai ko te momo-kōrero – te whakamahi, te waihanga – i te pou tokomanawa o te ako i te

²¹ sentence structure

²² colloquialism, idiom

²³ language function

²⁴ literacy

‘mōhio ki te kōrero’²⁵ (reira tonu: 111). Engari rawa, marara ana te noho o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te marautanga reo Māori o Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga i puta i te tau 1996, ā, ki te kore e NAHANAHANA,²⁶ tērā ka kore pea e tika te ako, te mau, te whakamahi, te waihanga.

Heoi, kei te pātai tuatoru te hōhonutanga o tēnei rangahau, arā ake, me pēhea e rerehua ai te reo Māori? Me kī, kia toitū te mana o te reo Māori, ko tētehi tohe nui o tēnei tuinga, he tino āhuatanga reo me aro nui atu. Anei te horopaki o tēnei pātai ki ōku nei whakaaro, ki tāku nei mahi. I roto i ngā tau nei kua tonoa ahau kia haere atu ki ngā whakataetae, ki Ngā Manu Kōrero, ki te tātari i te painga o ngā kaikōrero kura. Ko ngā kōrero ākonga mā te reo Māori mā te reo Ingarihi hoki. I reira ka kitea te rerekētanga o te wetewete i ngā reo e rua. Kei te Rāwhiti Ihaka e ono ngā āhuatanga hei wetewete i te manu kōrero: te whakatakoto i te tāhu; te whakarārangi haere o ngā kōrero; te hāngai o nga kōrero me ngā whakaaro ki te kaupapa kua whakapuakina; te tika o te whakatakoto i te kupu, te wana me te ihi o te kōrero; te whakarāpopoto.²⁷ Ki te whakahoki kōrero ngā kaiwhakawā mō te whakatakoto i te kupu, te tikanga, ka areare atu ngā taringa kia rongorongo atu i te kīwaha, i te kīrehu (reira tonu). Engari, mō te whakatakoto i te kupu, he hōhonu kē ake te titiro ki ngā āhuatanga reo o te reo Ingarihi. Ki te whakahoki kōrero ngā kaiwhakawā e tātari ana i te reo Ingarihi tērā ka kitea ko ngā kupu pēnei i te KUPU WHAKARITE²⁸, i te HUAHUATAU²⁹, i te TAIRITENGA³⁰, i te TOHUTORO³¹ (kei te Wāhanga Tuawaru te tikanga o aua kīpeha). Kātahi ka puta mai ngā pātai, he pāpaku tēnei titiro ki te reo Māori o te kaikōrero? Inā rā ka tuhia noatia, ‘Ka rawe tō reo’, ka waiho ērā anō āhuatanga reo, ka ako tonu te ākonga ki hea whakawana ake ai i tōna reo? He pai kē atu pea ki te āta whakamārama i te take i rawe ai taua kōrero, kāore rānei i tino eke. Nā reira i hua mai ai tēnei pātai hei āwhina nui pea mā ngā ākonga e hiahia ana ki te whakanikoniko ake i ā rātou kōrero, ā, kia mōhiotia he aha rā ngā āhuatanga reo e eke taumata ai tētehi kōrero.

²⁵ Engaging learners with texts means placing the use and creation of texts at the heart of literacy learning.

²⁶ systematic

²⁷ He mea tango mai i PPTA Rules Document, <http://www.hillmorton.school.nz/manukorero.htm>, Maehe, 2007.

²⁸ simile

²⁹ metaphor

³⁰ analogy

³¹ allusion

I a au hoki e haere ana ki ngā hui reo o Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, ko tētehi whakahau nui a Tīmoti Kāretu kia eke ai te reo ki te hunga kōrero Māori, ko te whakahau ‘Kia kaua e maroke’.³² Nā, ko ngā ĀHUATANGA REO kei tēnei tuhinga he rongoā i tēnei whakahau. Kia kake ai te reo ki tōna ikeiketanga, kua whiriwhirihia ētehi āhuatanga reo e tika ana kia rangona, kia kitea. Nā ngā kaiuru o tēnei mahi rangahau te whakaaro kia ruku i te ruku o te kawau ki tētehi peka o ngā āhuatanga reo, ko te reo peha. Tē aro ai ētehi kaiako i tēnei peka o te reo, heoi anō, ko te kī a ētehi anō kaiuru mā reira, mā te reo peha e kounga ai tō tātou nei reo Māori. Nā reira, ka kaha te aro ki te reo peha, arā, ki te kupu whakarite, ki te huahuatau, ki te whakataukī, ki tēnei whānau KĪPEHA kia whakaatu atu ai i tētehi paku hīnātore.

1.4 He Tirohanga Whānui ki te Tuhinga

Nā Ngoi Pewhairangi te reo karanga mō te reo Māori i roto i āna kupu waiata kia kuhu mai ki roto i tēnei *He Pātaka Momo-Kōrero, He Kete Momo Kīpeha*. Ki te tirohanga Māori he tohu te pātaka mō te manaakitanga. Ko te rahinga o te pātaka, ko te nui o te manaakitanga e taea ana. Koia te HUAHUATAU³³ mō tēnei tuhinga kairangi. Kei te kaipānui te whakataunga he pēhea rā te iti, te rahi o tēnei pātaka hei manaaki i te reo Māori, ā, māna anō e kawē atu ngā ariā reo ki tāna i pai ai ki roto i tāna kete kōrero. Ko te pūtaketanga o tēnei tuhinga he tautoko i ngā kupu a Ruka Broughton i te tīmatanga o tēnei Wāhanga, he mea ako te reo Māori nā te tangata, ā, kei ō tātou ringaringa he aha ngā taonga kōrero e tika ana kia ākona, kia puritia, kia whakaorangia, kia waihangatia. Kei ia Wāhanga ētehi whakataukītanga kōrero a ngā manu kōrero o te ao Māori. He mea whiriwhiri mai hei tūwhera i te kaupapa o ia Wāhanga o tēnei tuhinga kairangi.

Kei te Whakaahua 1.4 te tirohanga ā-manu ki tēnei tuhinga me ōna peka. Mā te Wāhanga Tuatahi nei e arataki te kaipānui: nō hea mai te kaikōrero, nō hea mai ōna whakaaro, ko te hīnga ake o te kaupapa, ko te wherawhera hoki i te pātai, ā, ki hea rere ai te tuhinga, ki hea tau ai.

³² /Kia kaua e marauk/ He kīwaha whakakata tēnei nā Kāretu. Kua raweketia te whakahua o te kupu maroke kia whai i tā te reo Pākehā whakahua, kia /marauk/ tonu. E ātete ana te huanga i te tikanga tūturu o te kīanga, inā kia ātaahua, kia tika, heoi, e hē ana te whakahua. He kupu hākiki pea (*irony*) tēnei kīanga iti.

³³ metaphor

Te Whakaahua 1.4: Te Hanganga Tuhinga Kairangi



E rua ngā āhuatanga o te Wāhanga Tuatoru. Tuatahi, he whānui te titiro, he nui kē atu ngā kaupapa ka matapakingia mai i te wāhi tūmataiti ki te wāhi tūmatanui hei whakarahi ake i te rārangi momo-kōrero. Ka whakamoanahia ngā momo-kōrero ki tētehi wāhi kotahi. Tuarua, e tika ana pea me NAHANAH te takoto o ngā momo-kōrero mā te hunga e ako ana, e whakaako ana i te reo. Ka wehewehea ki te MOMO-KŌRERO Ā-WAHA³⁴, ki te MOMO-KŌRERO Ā-TUHI³⁵, ki te MOMO-KŌRERO Ā-MATA³⁶. Kātahi ka matapakingia ngā whiriwhiringa hei hanga i tētehi mahere momo-kōrero. Ka mahia he mahere momo-kōrero hei kawenga atu ki ngā kaiuru hei whakahoki whakaaro mai. I runga tonu i te mōhio, koia noa tētehi o ngā mahere momo-kōrero e taea ana, mā tēnā rōpū, mā tēnā rōpū e hanga mahere e hāngai ana ki a rātou anō, heoi, ka oti tētehi whakatakotoranga hei tāhuhu.

Hei te Wāhanga Tuawhā arotakea ai te mahere momo-kōrero, otirā, te tātai momo-kōrero i tā ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ētehi mātanga reo Māori o roto i te hāpori. Ko ngā whakahokinga a aua kaiuru e pā ana ki ngā āhuatanga e rima: ko te whai hua ki a rātou, ko te whakamahi i rō akomanga, ko te nui o te rauemi, ko te māramatanga o te mahere, ko te hononga o te mahere ki te marautanga reo Māori. Ā te otinga, ka whakapaipai haere kia tika ake ai te mahere momo-kōrero hei kaupapa reo mō roto i ngā kura wānanga e rumakingia ana ki te reo Māori.

E tika ana inā ka rangahaua he kōrero Māori me haere mā roto tonu i te tika, i te pono, i te māramatanga me te aroha o tētehi ki tētehi. Kei te Wāhanga Tuarima ngā kōrero mō ngā MATATIKA³⁷, mō te HUARAHI TIKANGA³⁸ i whāia kia tutuki pai ai te rangahau. Arā, he kōrero mō te whakatū i tētehi rōpū arataki, mō te whiriwhirihia o ngā kaiuru, mō te tuhia o te rangahau nei, mō te aha atu anō. I mau-ā-rīpenetia ngā kōrero a te 38 tāngata (kaiuru, kaiwhakahoki kōrero), ā, tokonui kē atu i whakapā atu ā-waea nei, ā-rorohiko nei, ā-ihu nei i waenga i taku hāpori reo. He nui ō rātou whakaaro hihiri mō te āhua o te mahere momo-kōrero me ngā take e kouna ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Kei ngā wāhanga e toru whai muri ake i te Wāhanga Tuarima nei ko ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru mō ngā āhuatanga reo e kouna ai te reo.

³⁴ oral text-type

³⁵ written text-type: He pai kē atu pea te momo-kōrero ā-ringa, heoi he mārama ake te momo-kōrero ā-tuhi.

³⁶ visual text-type

³⁷ ethics

³⁸ methodology

Tokorua ngā kaiuru ka matapaki i ō rāua wheako ki te reo Māori i te Wāhanga Tūaono. I te mea he nui, he hōhonu ngā whakahokinga kōrero a te tokorua nei ka tū motuhake ā rāua kōrero. Tērā ka kitea he rerekē pea te titiro a te hunga mātāpuputu i runga i tā rātou i maumahara ai mō te reo Māori, ka mutu, he tirohanga kē hoki tā te mātanga reo kua roa e aronui ana ki te reo Māori me ōna tikanga. Tērā ētehi whakaaro mō ngā momo-kōrero kei te noho mōrearea; mō te reo whakatairite i roto i aua momo-kōrero; mō te mātāpono hoki ‘kia iti te kupu, kia nui te kōrero’, arā tētehi tohungatanga o te reo kei ngaro ki te kore tātou e mataara; ā, me te roanga atu o ngā take mō te momo-kōrero, mō te kīpeha.

Kei te Wāhanga Tuawhitu, ka kuhuna haeretia ngā kōrero kaiuru ki roto i tētehi anga, he anga e kounga ai te reo Māori. Ka tūhura hoki i ngā āhuatanga e pai ai tētehi momo-kōrero mai i ngā kōrero tonu a ngā kaiuru. He nui tonu ngā whakaaro whānui mai i te ahurea o te iwi, ki te horopaki o te kōrero, ki te reo ā-iwi, ā-kaupapa, tae noa mai ki ngā momo rerenga kōrero. Ā te mutunga o tēnei wāhanga ka whakatakotoria ētehi whakatau whānui, ētehi MĀTĀPONO³⁹ whānui mō tēnei mea te MĀTĀTUHI⁴⁰ me te kounga o te momo-kōrero.

I runga i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero nā ngā kaiuru tonu te kī kāore e tino mārama ana ki a rātou tēnei taha o te reo, te REO PEHA.⁴¹ Nā reira te ihu o te waka i huri pērā atu ai, nā te whakarongo ki ngā kaikōrero o te hāpori. Kei te Wāhanga Tuawaru te matū o ngā kōrero mō ngā āhuatanga reo e pai ai te tātari i te rerehua o tētehi momo-kōrero. Ko ngā NUKA REO⁴² hei āwhina mā te tangata te waihanga i tētehi kōrero rerehua. Waihoki, ko te reo peha te kaupapa matua o tēnei wāhanga, me kī, ko ngā KĪPEHA.⁴³ E toru ngā peka o te kīpeha, ko te KĪPEHA HUATAU⁴⁴, ko te KĪPEHA WHAKAWHERE⁴⁵, ko te KĪPEHA WHAKATANGI.⁴⁶ Ko te peka ka āta whakamāramatia, ko te kīpeha huatau. Tekau ngā kīpeha huatau ka āta kōrerohia me ngā whakakitenga a tēnei rangahau, koia rā: te KUPU WHAKARITE,⁴⁷ te HUAHUATAU,⁴⁸ te TAIRITENGA,⁴⁹ te PEPEHA,⁵⁰ te WHAKATANGATA,⁵¹

³⁹ principles

⁴⁰ Māori written literature

⁴¹ figurative language

⁴² language devices

⁴³ figure of speech

⁴⁴ figure of thought

⁴⁵ rhetorical figure

⁴⁶ figure of sound

⁴⁷ simile

te KĪWAHA,⁵² te KUPU HAUTANGA,⁵³ te TOHUTORO,⁵⁴ te TOHU,⁵⁵ te whakataukī hoki. I pēnei ai te āta whakamārama, te āta whakatauiria i te korenga o ngā kōrero mō aua āhuatanga reo i te wāhi kotahi. Ka whakakaohia ngā kīpeha ki ētehi anga. Mā konā e wetewetehia ai te momo-kōrero kia whakaaturia mai te ranginamutanga.

He mea whakamātautau te Wāhanga Tuaiwa i ngā anga kīpeha mā te tātari i tētehi TITONGA⁵⁶ a tētehi mātārae reo. Ko Tīmoti Kāretu o Ngāi Tūhoe. Ka wetewetehia ngā āhuatanga reo a tētehi o āna waiata, o *Te Aumangea* (Kāretu, 1998). Kia ahatia? Kia tiro arotahitia ngā āhuatanga reo o roto e whakarākei ana i taua momo-kōrero. Mā te wetewete hoki i ngā āhuatanga reo o te momo-kōrero tērā ka kitea te TAERA⁵⁷ o ngā titonga o te kaitito, o te kaituhi. Me kī, mā reira pea e kite ai i TĀ TE KAITITO AKE WHAKATAKOTO⁵⁸ i te kupu. Mā reira anō hoki e ruku i te tikanga o taua titonga me te aronui ki te PŪTAKETANGA⁵⁹ o taua titonga. Koia pea hei whāinga mā te hunga e kaimomotu nei ki te hiki i tō tātou reo Māori ki te taumata e tika ana.

Kei te Wāhanga Tuangahuru ngā whakakitenga me ngā whakataunga mō tēnei rangahau. Ko tētehi tohenga matua: mā te reo peha e kounga ai te kōrero Māori. Heoi, kei te horopaki hoki te tikanga, ā, kei te momo hui, kei te momo-kōrero. Ka matapakina taua whakaaro me te whakahāngai ki ngā momo-kōrero whānui tonu. Kei tēnei Wāhanga ka tiro whānuihia ēnei whakaaro. Inā ake rā, e mea ana ngā tohunga reo Māori kia ora te reo Māori, me rangatira te whakaora. Mehemea ko te hunga reo rua tētehi wāhanga o te whakaora i te reo Māori, ko tētehi whāinga nui pea kia piki te matatau o ngā arero reo rua. Kia piki anō hoki te māramatanga ki te reo peha. E manako ake ana he whai pānga tēnei tuhinga kairangi ki te whakaoranga i te reo, me kī, ki te whakatairanga i te mana o te reo Māori.

⁴⁸ metaphor

⁴⁹ analogy

⁵⁰ tribal aphorism

⁵¹ personification

⁵² idiom, colloquialism

⁵³ synecdoche

⁵⁴ allusion

⁵⁵ symbol

⁵⁶ composition

⁵⁷ style

⁵⁸ poetic license

⁵⁹ purpose

TE WAHANGA TUARUA

Te Whakarārangi i ngā Momo-Kōrero Mātauranga

...ki te Tiriti o Waitangi, ‘...ka whakaae...te tino rangatiratanga o... a rātou taonga’. Koianeia aua taonga, ko tō tātau reo, ko ngā tikanga, ko ngā mōteatea, ko ngā whakapapa, ko ngā karakia, ko ngā pakiwaitara, ko ngā pūrākau, ko ngā pepeha, ko ngā whakataukī, ko ngā kōrero-ā-whānau, ā-hapū, ā-iwi, ngā momo kōrero katoa kua tāia, me kī ngā tuhituhinga o te ao Māori.

Te Onehou Phillis, 2005, Mahuru

Ko te reo te mauri o te mana Māori,
Ko te tangata te kaiwhakapuaki,
Kia tū tangata ai.

Tā Hēmi Henare¹

2.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

2.2 Ngā Kōrero Māori, Ngā Tānga Reo Māori

2.3 Te Momo-Kōrero

2.3.1 Te Momo-Kōrero me te Reo Matatini

2.3.2 He Kete Momo-Kōrero tā Tēnā, tā Tēnā

2.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero kei ngā Pukapuka Whakaako

2.5 Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori

2.5.1 Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa

2.6 Toi te Kupu

2.7 He Puna Kupu Māori

2.8 He Whakarārangi Momo-Kōrero

2.9 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

¹ Ihimaera, W. (ed). (1993: 38)

2.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

I roto i tēnei Wāhanga, ka whakamoanahia ngā momo-kōrero o te horopaki mātauranga. Ka matapakina hoki ētehi o ngā take ariā hei hanga i tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero hei whakamahere i ngā momo-kōrero huhua o te reo Māori mō roto i te horopaki mātauranga. He mea nui te momo-kōrero inā ka tika te whakaako i te mōhiotanga ki te tuhituhi me te kōrero. Ka tirohia, ka whakarārangihia ngā momo-kōrero Māori kua puta mai i ētehi pukapuka whakaako reo Māori hei whakaatu i te whānuitanga o ngā momo. Otirā, ka tirohia pēnei kia whā ngā kaupapa o te horopaki mātauranga, ka tirohia te rerekētanga o te whakarārangi, o te whakamahere, o te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero o ēnei kaupapa. Inā ko *Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa* (1996), he āhua paku noa tāna nei whakamārama, tāna nei whakamahi i te momo. Ko tā te *Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa* (1997), he whānui kē atu ngā momo-kōrero. Ko Toi te Kupu, he pātengi raraunga e whakarārangi ana i ngā rauemi reo Māori, neke atu i te rua mano, he momo-kōrero o mua, he momo-kōrero o nāianei. Ko *Te Puna*, he kaupapa whakaingoa, he punakupu, ka whakarārangihia ētehi momo-kōrero Māori, ā, ka kawea ake te manuka takoto nei, ka whakamāramahia ētehi o aua momo. Mā ēnei mea e toru, me ētehi atu tauira, e kitea ai he ngoikore te whakawhanaketanga o tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori. Ahakoa he nui ngā hua ka puta ki te kaupapa whakaora i te reo Māori, kāore anō kia tatū noa tētehi mahere momo-kōrero. Hei tauira, e whai wāhi ana ngā painga o te pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori ki ngā wāhi maha, arā, ki te hanga kaupapa mātauranga, ki te whakarārangi rauemi whare pukapuka, ki te whakarite tānga reo Māori. Kia hangaia tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero tōtika, he mea whakakōtuitui i ngā momo-kōrero o roto i te horopaki mātauranga, e tukua ai he hua puta noa, tatū atu ki te mahi marautanga, ki te whakahaere pārongo, ki te rautaki tā pukapuka.

2.2 Ngā Kōrero Māori, Ngā Tānga Reo Māori

I mua i te taenga mai o Tauīwi ki Aotearoa, he mea nui ngā momo-kōrero Māori hei whakaako tangata, ina te whakapapa, te waiata, te whakatauākī, te kōrero tawhito, te whaikōrero (Hemara, 2000: 6). E mea ana te whakataukī: Te tangata i ākona ki te kāinga, tū ana i te marae, tau ana. Ko ētehi o ngā kōrero me mau i te tangata kia whakahuatia te whakataukī nei, ko ngā momo-kōrero i te kawa o te marae (Kāretu, 1977: 37), arā, ngā kōrero me ngā tikanga nei: te waerea, te wero, te karanga (te maioha, te tīwaha) – te poroporoaki, te pōwhiri, te tangi, te whaikōrero (te whakaaraara, te tau, te mihi mate, te mihi ora, te take, te waiata), te hongī (Salmond, 1975: 178). Arā noa ake, arā noa ake ngā momo-kōrero o tērā wā, he tini karakia mō ngā mahi o ia rā, he mano waiata mō ngā āhuatanga o ia rā.

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui pea o te iwi kōrero ā-waha, ko te tuku ihotanga o te tikanga, o te whakaaro mai i tētehi whakatipuranga, ki tētehi whakatipuranga. Heoi anō rā, me tūpato tonu i te huanga iti noa nei, he mana tō te kupu, ‘He mea āta whakaputa ngā kupu, kei takahi mana, kei takahi tikanga, ā, ko te kaikōrero te papa. Kei roto i te whakataukī nei te kōrero, he tao rākau e taea te karo; he tao kī e kore e taea’ⁱ (Haami, 2004: 15). He nuka te momo-kōrero hei āwhina mā te tangata ki te pupuri i te mana, i te mauri o te iwi. Inā, ‘nā te whakawhiti kōrero, nā te taki whakapapa, nā te kōrero pūrākau, nā te tioriori mōteatea i mau ai i te maharatanga o te iwi’ (reira tonu). Me kī, i tērā wā o te tōnuitanga, he nui te pūkōrero, he nui te taringa areare.

Tae mai ana a Tauīwi ki Aotearoa ka herea mai tēnei pūkenga, te tuhituhi, ā, i te tau 1816 ka tīmata te Māori ki te ako tuhituhi (Hōhepa, 2004: 6). E rua whakatipuranga o muri mai, kua mōhio te 80 orau o te Māori ki te tuhi i roto i tō rātou ake reo (reira tonu). Kei te Whakaahua 2.2 e whai mai ana tētehi whakarāpopotanga o ngā tino tuhinga ki a McRae (1998) mai i tērā wā ki nāianei. E kitea mai ana tērā pea he āhuatanga motuhake mō ngā momo tuhinga tō tēnā wā, tō tēnā wā. Inā te Whakaahua 2.1 e whakamārama ana i ngā piki, i ngā heke o ngā tānga Māori. I ētehi tau he tau pai te tau, i ētehi atu, he iti noa ngā hua. Tērā ka kitea he hononga o te tokomaha o te iwi ki te maha o ngā tānga.

Te Whakaahua 2.1: Te Whanaketanga o ngā Tānga Māori

He mea tiki atu ngā tatauanga pāpori i tā Statistics New Zealand: 2001 Census: Māori – reference report

Te Āhua o te Wā	Te Wā me te Pāpori	Te Ture	Kaupapa Mātauranga, Kaupapa Here	Te Wairua o te Tuhinga
Taukītanga kōrero <i>orality</i>	I mua i 1800 200 000 (ki a Buck)			-
Taupatupatu <i>colonisation</i>	1800-1850 <i>te heke o te pāpori</i>	Te Tiriti o Waitangi	Mō te reo Māori	Nā te Pākehā mā te Pākehā
Tautohetohe <i>tension</i>	1850-1900 42 113 (1896)	Native Schools Act	Mā te reo Ingarihi	Nā te Pākehā mā te Māori/Pākehā; Nā te Māori mā te Māori/Pākehā.
Taukumekume <i>resistance</i>	1900-1950 115 676 (1951)	Tohunga Suppression Act	Mā te reo Ingarihi	Nā ētahi Māori mā te Māori me te Pākehā.
Tau tuputupu <i>restoration</i>	1950-2000 604 110 (2001)	Māori Language Act	Mā te reo Māori	Nā te Māori mā te Māori.
Tautōhito <i>growth</i>	2000-2050 760 000 ² (2021)		Mā te reo, mō te reo	Nā te Māori mā te Pākehā?

Mai i te korenga o te tuhinga i te tau 1800, tērā ka āta tupu ngā momo tānga i te heretanga mai o te perehi. He papakupu wetereo, he papakupu mō te reo Māori mā ngā mihingare, ā, kātahi ko ngā whārangi o te paipera (McRae, 2004: 136) hei ruirui i ngā kākano o te rongopai. Ki a Garlick (1998: 15) ko te tānga tuatahi i roto i te reo Māori ko te pukapuka a Yate, arā, *Ko Te Katekihama*. Heoi, he tuhinga ēnei hei āwhina ki te ako i te pānui me te tuhituhi. He wā ako kupu hou, he wā ako whakaaro hou. Tērā ka tuhia ngā nōti, ngā reta, ngā karere (Williams i tā Garlick, 1998: 17). Heoi, ko te tuhinga e mōhiotia whānuitia ana puta noa ake i a Aotearoa i tēnei wā mō tērā wā, ko Te Tiriti o Waitangi. Nā reira te whakaaetanga kia noho mai a Tauwiwi ki tēnei whenua me te whakatū kāwanatanga inā ka tiakina ko ngā iwi o te motu me ō rātou taonga. Ko te rautau whai mai, kāore i tinana te oaitanga mai.

² He mea tiki atu i <http://www.stats.govt.nz/store/2006/07/national-ethnic-population-projections-01%28base%29-21-update-hotp.htm> i te marama o Hui-tanguru i te tau 2007.

Ka tere te tupu o ngā tanga kupu i tēnei haurua o te rautau, tae atu ana ki te tau 1900. Ko te nuinga o ngā tuhinga nā te kāwanatanga, nā te hāhi (McRae, 2004: 5). Ko ngā momo tuhinga ki a McRae i tāia i tērā wā, ‘e taka mai ana i roto i ēnei rōpū whānui nei: ko ngā puka wetereo, ngā papakupu, ngā puka ako reo; ko ngā kōrero papori, tōrangapū, hāhi, apiti atu ki ngā niupepa me ngā whakamāoritanga a te kupu Ingarihi; ko ngā kape o ngā kōrero ā-waha; ka mutu, ko ngā mātātuhī³ (reira tonu: 133) ⁱⁱ. Ko tētehi āhuatanga tōrangapū o tērā wā mō te whakaputa kōrero ki a Tame Te Rangi i a ia e titiro whakamua ana, ‘Ka akongia ngā Māori ki ngā hitori o Ingarangi, ngā pakiwaitara, ngā waiata, kia warewaretia ai ō tātou kōrero’(1995: 77).

Koia te mate nui o ngā pakimaero i whakamāoritia i ngā tau 1850. Ko tā *Pilgrims Progress*, he whakaata i te whakapono o te karaitiana. Ko tā *Robinson Crusoe*, he whakaata he nui ake te mana o te tangata mā i te mana o te tangata mangumangu me te taiao. Ka mutu, ko tā Lachy Paterson whakapae matua i tana pukapuka *Colonial Discourses: Niupepa Māori 1855-1863*, ko te mahi nui o ngā niupepa reo Māori i tērā wā, ko te whakapākehā i te iwi Māori (2006: 12). Heoi anō tēnei, he niupepa Māori hoki e whakaputa kōrero ana mō te whakamārama i te tikanga Māori te take (tirohia Cumow Hopa & McRae, 2002: 4-6). Ka mutu, ki te tirohia *Books in Māori 1815-1900: Ngā Tānga Reo Māori* (Parkinson rāua ko Griffith, 2004) he pātaka iringa tuhinga tōna nei rite. E rārangihia mai ana ngā momo tuhinga 1565. He nui ngā momo, pēnā i te pānui mō te hui tuatahi mō te Kotahitanga i te tau 1892: (reira tonu: 629), i te nōta pauna a Tawhiao mō te pēke o Aotearoa (reira tonu: 543), i te pitihana whakakore i te kai waipiro i te rohe pōtae (reira tonu: 736).

Whakamīharo ana ngā tuhituhinga Māori nei a ngā mātua tūpuna, heoi anō rā, ko te kaupapa here i roto i ngā kura i te Native Schools Act 1867 i huaki i te kūwaha kia tāmia te kōrerotia o te reo Māori, waihoki, te tuhia o te reo Māori, arā, kia kōrerotia anahe te reo Ingarihi atu i te tau 1871 (Selby, 1999: 14). Ka waiho te reo Māori ki te kēti, ā, ka kōrero Māori i te kāinga, ka kōrero Ingarihi ki te kura, ka tāmia ko ngā tamariki. Ka neke

³literary ‘genres’

atu i te kotahi rautau tēnei tohenga e haere ana. Ā, nā tērā ka hūnuku te tuhia o te reo ki roto i te kāinga ki reira puritia ai. Ā, e hia kē nei ngā TUHINGA TAWHITO⁴ o tēnā kāinga, o tēnā kāinga e pupuritia ana (tirohia tā Haami, 2004).

Tērā e pōhēhētia mai i te tau 1900 ki te tau 1950 ka kaha ake te tupu o ngā tuhinga Māori i te nui o ngā tānga niupepa, manomano whārangi nei, i te hurihanga o tērā rautau. E kāo. Ki a Williams (tirohia Garlick, 1998: 22) he wā tēnei i heke rawa atu ai te tāia o te pukapuka reo Māori. Ko te tohu nui pea o te pēhitanga kino o te tikanga o ngā tāngata kōrero Māori e te karauna i tērā wā, ko te Tohunga Suppression Act 1907 (Durie, 2005: 204). Ko te tohunga te kaipupuri i te mauri o te kōrero, whakapapa mai, karakia mai. I tērā o ngā ture ka kaha te ngau o te memehatanga o ngā momo-kōrero pēnei a te Māori. I tēnei kōangiangitanga, tērā ka puta mai ngā toa Māori hei arataki i te iwi Māori i tēnei pouritanga, ko Tā Apirana Ngata, ko Tā Peter Buck, ko Pei Te Hurinui Jones. Ahakoa reo Māori, reo Ingarihi, ka noho ko ā rātou tuhinga hei taumata reo. Heoi anō, he iti noa nei ngā tuhinga i tāia i roto i te reo Māori e te Māori, e te kāwanatanga rānei i tēnei wā.

He nui ngā whawhaitanga kia ora te Māori i te taetanga mai o tau iwi. Atu i ngā tau 1980 ka nui ake ngā whawhaitanga kia ora ko te reo Māori. Koia ko ngā kaupapa pēnei, i Te Ataarangi, i te Kohanga Reo, i te Whakapāho (Te Tūāoma, 1999: 8-9). Nā, 'ka timata te mahi a ngā rōpū, me ngā tāngata ngātahi e pōuri ana mō te hekenga o te reo Māori, ki te pēhi i te Kāwanatanga kia whakatikaina tēnei āhuatanga' (reira tonu: 1999: 8). Ka riro nā Huirangi Waikerepuru mā te rōpū Ngā Kaiwhakapumau i te Reo i wewero te karauna i te kore whai i tā rātou i oati ai i te Tiriti o Waitangi, inā, he taonga te reo. Ko tētehi hua nui hei tohu i tēnei haurua rautau ko te Māori Language Act 1987, me kī, ka pari te tai o te tāmitanga. Ka kaha ake te pakaritanga o te tuhinga reo Māori.

⁴ manuscript

Te Whakaahua 2.2: He Whakarāpopoto o ngā Tānga Māori i te Takanga o te Wā
He mea hanga i runga i tā McRae, 1998 ed.: 1-27 rāua ko Garlick, 1998

Wā	Ingoa	Kaituhi/kaikohi	Momo-Kōrero reo Māori
1800	TAUPATUPATU	colonisation	
1815	<i>A Korao no New Zealand</i>	T. Kendall	pukapuka wetereo
1820	<i>A Grammar and Vocabulary of the Language of New Zealand</i>	S. Lee, T. Kendall	pukapuka wetereo
1830	<i>Ko Te Katekihama</i>	Rev.W.Yate	pukapuka reo Māori tuatahi
1840	Te Tiriti o Waitangi	H. Williams, E. Williams (kaiwhakamāori)	tiriti whakamāori
1842	Te Karere o Nui Tirini		karere ā-marama
1848	Ko nga Mahi a Pita a te Kingi o Ruhia	W. Martin	pukapuka whakamāori
	Ko nga Pi; me nga tikanga mo te tiaki i a ratou, mo te mahinga i to ratou honi, i ta ratou ware	C. Cotton	pukapuka
1850	TAUTOHETOHE	tension	
1852	<i>Ropitini Kuruho: He Kōrero Tipuna Pākehā nō Mua*</i> Robinson Crusoe	H.T. Kemp	pakimaero whakamāori
1853	<i>Ko Ngā Moteatea me Ngā Hakirara o Ngā Maori</i>	G. Grey	waiata, pakiwaitara
1854	<i>Ko nga Mahinga o nga Tupuna</i>	G. Grey	
1854	<i>He Moemoeā: Ko ngā Kōrero o te Huarahi*</i> <i>Pilgrims Progress</i>	H.T. Kemp	pakimaero whakamāori
1854	<i>Traditions and Superstitions of the New Zealanders</i>	E. Shortland	
1855	<i>Te Ika a Mau**</i>	R. Taylor	
1856-1930	<i>Te Kahiti o Niu Tirenī</i>		niupepa
1857	<i>Ko Ngā Waiata Maori</i>	G. Grey	waiata
1857	<i>Ko Ngā whakapepeha me Ngā Whakaahuareka a Ngā Tipuna</i>	G. Grey	pepeha
1857	<i>Te Waka o te Iwi</i>		niupepa
1858	<i>Te Whetu o te Tau</i>		niupepa
1861	<i>Ko Aotearoa or the Māori Recorder</i>		niupepa
1859-1862	<i>Te Haeata</i>		niupepa
1882-90	<i>Te Korimako</i>		niupepa
1898-1913	<i>Te Pipiwharauora</i>		niupepa
1834-66	<i>Te Waka Karaitiana</i>		niupepa
1871-77	<i>Te Waka Māori o Niu Tirenī</i>		gazzette
1861-63	<i>Te Hokioi o Niu Tirenī e Rere Atu Nei</i>		Te niupepa tuatahi nā te Māori i tā
1865-	meneti o te kōti whenua Māori	Kōti Whanua Māori	Meneti, kōrero tūpuna,

			whakapapa
1879-1890s	<i>Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute</i>	New Zealand Institute (The Royal Society)	
1887-90	<i>The Ancient History of the Māori, His Mythology and Traditions</i>	J. White	pūrākau
1893	<i>Māori Songs</i>	J. McGregor	waiata
1897	<i>The Peopling of the North**</i>	P. Smith	
	<i>Te Puke ki Hikurangi</i>		niupepa
1891	<i>Te Paki o te Matariki</i>		niupepa
1892-1950	<i>Journal of the Polynesian Society**</i>	The Polynesian Society	atikara
1900	TAUKUMEKUME	resistance	
1904	<i>He Moemoeā: Ko ngā Kōrero o te Huarahi</i>	He whakamāoritanga hou	pakimaero whakamāori
1910	<i>Māori Wars of the Nineteenth Century**</i>	P. Smith	
1913	<i>The Lore of the Whare-wānanga**</i>	P. Smith	
1922	<i>Te Tiriti o Waitangi: He Whakamārama</i>	A. Ngata	whakamārama
1925	<i>Tuhoe**</i>	E. Best	
1928	<i>Te Wānanga</i>		
1929	<i>Nga Moteatea: he maramara rere no nga waka maha</i>	A. Ngata	paenga kōrero, mōteatea
1930	<i>Niupepa</i>		Kua mutu te tāia o te nuinga o ngā niupepa Māori
1946	<i>Mahinarangi</i>	P. Jones	kōrero ā-iwi
1946	<i>Te Tangata Whai-rawa o Weneti*</i>	P. Jones	whakaari whakamāori
1949	<i>The Coming of the Māori**</i>	P. Buck	
1949	<i>Tainui**</i>	L. Kelly	
			niupepa ture* tuhinga tawhito
1950	TAU TUPUTUPU	restoration	
1952	<i>Te Ao Hou</i>		moheni: mōteatea, kōrero tūpuna, pānuitanga, me ērā anō.
	<i>Tu Tangata</i>		moheni
1959	<i>Tuwharetoa**</i>		kōrero ā-iwi
1960	<i>King Potatau</i>	P. Jones	kōrero ā-iwi
1960	<i>Te Wharekura</i>		pakiwaitara kura
1967	<i>Selected Readings in Māori</i>	P.Hohepa, S.Mead, B.Biggs	paenga kōrero
1968	Māori Folktales	M.Orbell	
1973	Māori Death Customs	R.S. Oppenheim	
1974	Māori literature: ngā waiata haka a Hēnare Waitoa o Ngāti Porou	K. Dewes	tuhinga paerua
1974	Māori Poetry: The Singing Word	B. Mitcalf	waiata
1975	<i>Hui**</i>	A. Salmond	
1975	<i>Ngā Rupai'aha a Oma Kai'ama*</i>	P. Jones	mōteatea whakamāori

1975	<i>Traditional Songs of the Māori</i>	M. McClean	waiata
1976	<i>The Great New Zealand Myth**</i>	D.R. Simmons	
1977	<i>Themes and Images in Māori Love Poetry**</i>	M.Orbell	waiata
1981	Nga Taonga Tuku Iho a Ngati Awa: Ko Nga Tuhituhinga a Hamiora Pio, te Teko (1885-1887)	H.Mead	tuhinga tawhito
1982	<i>Into the World of Light</i>	W.Ihimaera (Ed.)	waiata, mōteatea, waiata tangi, haka taparahi, waiata poi, paki,
1982	Te Tumu Kōrero	Māori King Movement	tuhinga tawhito, kōrero tangata, whakapapa
1983	Monographs#	Canterbury Uni	tuhinga tawhito
1984	Ko ngā Tuhituhi a Te Kaahui Kararehe o Taranaki ki a Te Mete 1893-1906#	Broughton, R.	reta
1985	<i>Hawaiki**</i>	M.Orbell	
1985	<i>The Natural World**</i>	M.Orbell	
1985	<i>Tuini. Her Life and Her Songs</i>		waiata
1985	<i>The Penguin Book of New Zealand Verse</i>	Curnow	waiata, mōteatea, ...
1985-1990	<i>Te Karanga</i>		reta, waiata, kōrero tuku iho, pakiwaitara
1986	<i>Rangitāne**</i>	J.M. McEwen	
1986	<i>Karanga Hokianga#</i>	Pa H. Tate (Ed)	meneti, waiata, kōrero tupuna
1986	<i>Pounamu Pounamu*</i>	Ihimaera, W. Wikiriwhi, J.(Kaiwhakamāori)	tuhinga poto
1987	<i>The Puriri Trees are Laughing</i>	J. Sissons	
1987	<i>Te Waiatātanga Mai o Te Atua</i>	M. Tiramorehu	
1989	<i>Ngā Kupu Tītohu o Aotearoa/The Penguin Book of Contemporary New Zealand Poetry</i>	M. Evans, H. McQueen, I. Wedde	
19??	He Muka	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori	niureta, poroporoaki, puka whakamārama, tuhinga kāwanatanga
1990, 94, 96	<i>Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau</i>		haurongo
1991, 92, 93	<i>Te Mātāwai</i>	H. Young	paenga kōrero, paki, mōteatea, kōrero niupepa
1991-?	<i>Kia Hiwa Rā</i>		niupepa
1991	<i>Kahungunu</i>		niupepa
1991	<i>He Hokinga Mahara</i>	H. Pōtatau	haukiri
1991	<i>Waiata. Māori Songs in History</i>	M. Orbell	waiata
1991	<i>Tikanga Whakaaro</i>	C. Barlow	whakamārama
1992	<i>Te Māori News</i>		niupepa
1992	<i>Ngā Waiata me ngā haka a te kapa haka o</i>	T. Kāretu	waiata, haka, kupu mihi

	<i>Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato</i>		
1992	<i>Traditional Māori Stories</i>	M. Orbell	pūrākau, pakiwaitara, kōrero-ā-iwi
1993	<i>Ngāa Mahi Whakaari a Tiitokowaru</i>	R. Broughton	haurongo, kōrero-ā-iwi, waiata, whakapapa
1993	<i>Ngā Kōrero a Mohi Ruatapu#</i>	A. Reedy	pūrākau, kōrero ā-iwi
1993	<i>Haka</i>	T. Kāretu	haka
1993	<i>Songs and Stories of Taranaki</i>	A. Smith	
1993	<i>Māori Affairs: Ngā Take Māori</i>	G.V Butterworth, H. Young	hitori reorua
1993	<i>Pipiharauroa</i>		niupepa
1993	<i>Mana</i>		moheni
1994	<i>Renata's Journey</i>	H. Hogan	rātaka
1994	<i>Reweti Kohere</i>	T.O. Kaa, W. Kaa	reta, atikara, anecdotes, local news
1994	<i>Kāti au i konei</i>	C.T. Royal	waiata
1995	<i>Ngā Iwi o Tainui#</i>	P. Jones, B. Biggs (kaiwhakapakehā)	kōrero ā-iwi
1995	<i>Redemption Songs</i>	Binney, J.	waiata
1995	<i>Pū Kaea</i>		niupepa
1995	<i>Te Karaka</i>		moheni
1995	<i>He Pūkenga Kōrero</i>	Massey University	hautaka
1995	<i>Te Kaike Tohorā</i>	W. Ihimaera, T. Kāretu (kaiwhakamāori)	pakiwaitara
1995	<i>Ngā Pakiwaitara a Huia</i>	Huia Publishers	tuhinga poto, paki
1995	<i>He Taonga te Reo</i>	New Zealand Post	puka whakamārama
1996	Mohi Turei	T.O. Kaa, W. Kaa	reta, atikara, anecdotes, local news
1996	Apirana Ngata	T.O. Kaa, W. Kaa	reta, atikara, anecdotes, local news
1996	Tāwhaki-nui-a-Hema	H. Mead	pūrākau
1996	Māori Music	M. McLean	waiata
2000	TAUTŌHITO	growth	
2000	Journal of Māori and Pacific Development	University of Waikato	atikara reorua, mōteatea, etc.
2001	<i>Ngā Pepeha a ngā Tipuna</i>	M.M. Mead, N. Grove	pepeha, whakataukī
2002	Eruera Manuera	O. Phillis	haurongo, kōrero ā-whānau, ā-hapū
2003	'Native Traditions by Hukiki te Ahu Karamu o Otaki Jany 1 st 1856'	C. Royal (Ed)	tuhinga tawhito
2004	The Birth of the Universe: Te Whānautanga o te Ao Tukupū	A. Thornton	tuhinga tawhito

Mai i ngā tau 80, ka tāia ngā momo tuhinga maha mā roto tonu i te reo Māori. Hei tēnei wāhanga ka kōrerohia te waihangatanga mai o Toi Te Kupu hei ara rapu i ngā manomano rauemi nei ka puta i tēnei wā. Inā rā hoki, ka puta ētehi tuatahitanga mā te reo Māori: ko te tuhinga paerua (Dewes, 1974); ko te haurongo i *Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau* (1990); ko

te haukiri i *He Hokinga Mahara* (Potatau, 1991); ko te kōrero ā-iwi i *Ngā Iwi o Tainui* (Jones & Biggs, 1995); ko te pukapuka wāhanga⁵, te kohinga takiwhā nei, ko *Te Mere* (Reedy, 1999); ko te tuhinga kairangi (Black, 2000). Heoi, he manomano tonu ngā tānga reo Māori i tēnei haurua rautau.

Nā, he nui ngā kairangahau, Māori mai, Pākehā mai kua wānanga i tēnā momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo-kōrero a te Māori, te taha kōrero, te taha tuhituhi i roto i ngā tuhituhinga. Ko tā ētehi he titiro hōhonu tonu, tā ētehi atu he titiro pāpaku kau; kei roto tonu i te reo Māori ētehi whakamārama, kei roto i te reo Pākehā kē ētehi atu. Hei tauira ake, ko te whaikōrero (Mahuta, 1974, 1984), ko te karanga (Woodard, 1994), ko te waiata (Black, 2000; Dewes, 1974; Grey, 1857a; McClean, 1965; Mitcalfe, 1974; Ngata & Jones, 1959, 1961, 1970; Ngata, 1993; Orbell 1991; Royal 1991, 1994;), ko te haka (Gardiner, 2001; Kāretu 1992, 1993), ko te karakia (Best, 1995: 305; Buck, 1949: 489-507; Shirres, 1997), ko te kōrero (Orbell 1992), ko te whakataukī (Brougham & Reed, 1987; Grey, 1857b; Kohere, 1951; McRae 1987; Riley, 1990), ko te pepeha me te whakataukī (Wikiriwhi, 1955; Ihaka, 1960; Mead & Grove, 2001), ko te kīwaha (Mason, Jacob & Milroy, 1999), ko te aha noa, ko te aha noa. Ko ētehi anō o ēnei kairangahau, a Ngata, a Jones, a wai ake, he nui noa atu ngā momo-kōrero i wetewetehia, he nui noa ake i te momo kotahi.

Arā atu anō ngā momo tuhinga ka tuputupu, ka putaputa i ngā rautau, i ngā ngahuru tau nei, nā te Māori, nā te Pākehā i mahi mai. Ko te mea nui, i roto tonu ēnei momo-kōrero i te reo Māori: ko ngā tuhituhinga tawhito me ngā momo-kōrero taketake o roto, te waiata, te whakapapa, te whakataukī, te kōrero (Curnow, 1995; Kaa & Kaa, 1994; Reedy, 1993, 1997; Smith, 1993); ko ngā kōrero-ā-iwi me ngā momo-kōrero pērā i te tuhituhinga tawhito (Broughton, 1979, 1993; Jones & Biggs, 1995); ko ngā niupepa o te rautau tekau mā iwa me ōna momo katoa (McRae, 2001), ina te kōrero whakamārama, te pūrongo, te pānui, te aha noa, te aha noa; ko ngā reta, reta tūmatanui, reta tūmataiti, reta aroha, reta aha rānei (Broughton, 1984; Crombie & Houia-Roberts, 2001; Orbell, 2002); ko ngā tohutaka mō te kai, mō te kēmu, mō te hākinakina mō te aha noa rānei (Moorfield, 1992);

⁵ chapter book. E pēnei ana te raupapatanga o ngā pukapuka mā ngā tamariki ki te kaiuru 16, mai i te kōhanga reo, ki te kura, ki te whare kura: he pukapuka māro (*board book*), he pukapuka pikitia (*picture book*) [*including graded readers*], he pukapuka wāhanga (*chapter book*), he pakimaero (*novel*).

ko ngā kōrero tangata, ina ko te hokinga mahara (Potatau, 1991), te kōrero tupuna (Orange, 1996), te haurongo (Phillis, 2002), te haukiri hoki (Simpson & Rogers, 1993). Taka mai ana ki ngā ngahuru tau tata nei, e ai ki tā Hepora Young, ko te nuinga o ngā pukapuka reo Māori, he mea whakaputa e Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga mā te tamariki (Garlick, 1998: 26). Ko tāna, koinā i nui ai ngā kōrero paki. Kei te tautoko tēnei rangahau i tāna, tirohia ngā tatauranga rauemi i te Whakaahua 2.13 mō Toi Te Kupu.

Nā, ko tētehi tino kohinga i puta i te tau 1992, ko *Te Ao Mārama* (Ihimaera mā, ed.). Ko ngā ripanga e whai nei he whakarāpopoto i ngā kaituhi me ngā kaitito Māori i tāia i roto i aua pukapuka e rima. Tērā ka kitea ētehi o ngā poukōrero, o ngā poutuhituhi o te ao Māori i whai pānga ki te whakatuputupu i ngā momo-kōrero Māori i tēnei haurua rautau. Hei tauira, ko ngā kaitito waiata pērā i a Ngoi Pewhairangi, i a Kōhine Pōnika, i a Tommy Taurima mā. Ko ngā kaitito mōteatea pērā i a Georgina Kirby, i a Hōri Tait, i a Māori Marsden mā. Ko ngā kaitito haka pērā i a Ngāpō Wehi, i a Kīngi Ihaka, i a Tīmoti Kāretu mā. Ko ngā kaituhi paki pērā i a Katerina Mataira, i a Hepora Young, i a Peti Nohotima mā. Ko ngā kaituhi TAKI⁶ pērā i a Hēmi Potatau, i a Okeroa Waitai, i a Ruka Broughton mā. Ko ngā kaitito RURI⁷ pērā i a Kuini Moehau Reedy, i a Shane Jones, i a Pita Sharples mā. Ko tā tēnei PAENGA KŌRERO⁸ he whakanui i ngā tāngata rongonui mō te mātātuhi i tērā wā.

⁶ recount

⁷ poem: he hōnohu ake pea te mōteatea i te ruri.

⁸ anthology

Te Whakaahua 2.3 Ngā Kaituhi, Ngā Kaitito Reo Māori i roto i te kohinga *Te Ao Mārama*

Te Ao Mārama I			
Te Ingoa	Te Kaituhi	Ko Ōna Iwi	Te Momo-Kōrero
Te Puāwaitanga o te Kōrero	Ilaare Williams	Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki, Rongowhakaata	kupu whakataki
Whakarongo mai Te Atua	Erana Coulter	Ngāti Porou	waiata
Ka huri	Arapeta Awatere	Ngāti Porou, Whānau-ā-Hinetāpora, Uepōhatu	mōteatea
Te Kōhanga Reo	Hēmi Henare	Ngā Puhi, Aupōuri, Rārawa, Ngāti Kahu, Ngāti Whātua, Waikato, Te Atiawa, Tūwharetoa, Ngāti Kahungunau, Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki, Rongowhakaata	mōteatea
Heitiki Taupuhi	Dovey Katene	Ngāti Toa, Ngāti Tama, Te Atiawa, Te Rarawa	waiata tira waiata poroporoaki
Karanga, karanga	Kōhine Pōnika	Ngāi Tūhoe, Ngāti Porou	waiata
Karanga Rā	Monita Eru Delamare	Te Whānau-a-Apanui, Kāi Tahu, Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki, Ngāti Porou	waiata waiata
E Ipo Kāti Rā Ka Noho Au Poi E Hei Kōnei Rā Whakarongo	Ngoi Pēwhairangi	Te Whānau-ā-Ruataupare, Ngāti Porou	waiata waiata waiata waiata aroha waiata waiata tangi
Bone Song	Arapera Blank	Ngāti Porou, Ngāti Kahungunu, Rongowhakaata, Te Aitanga-ā-māhaki	mōteatea
Ngā Roimata	Taniwha Waru	Ngāti Rāhiri, Waiōtama	waiata
He Whakawhetai ki te Matua Nui Ko te Hau Ora Ahau	Wiremu Kingi Kerekere	Ngaitai, Māhaki	waiata waiata
Tokomauritanga	Te Okanga Huata	Ngāti Kahungunu	mōteatea
Haka: He Huruhuru Toroa Tūroro Karoro He Poroporoaki Whakarongo e te Iwi	Muru Walters	Te Aupōuri, Te Rarawa	haka mōteatea poroporoaki mōteatea
Te Rina Rongomaiwahine Ruawharo Paikea	Tommy Taurima	Rongomaiwahine, Ngāti Kahungunu	waiata waiata waiata waiata
He Waiata mō Te Herenga Waka He Pātere mō te Hunga Wāhine	Ruka Broughton	Ngā Rauru Kītahi	waiata pātere
Waiho Nā Wai te Kī	Piki Kereama	Ngāti Raukawa	waiata waiata
He Hokinga Mahara	Hēmi Potatau	Ngāti Porou, Ngāti Kahungunu, Tūhoe, Ngāti Rangī	hokinga mahara

Te Ao Mārama 2			
Te Tiriti	Whina Cooper	Te Rarawa	waiata
Te Whakaako i te Reo Māori he Whakaaro noa	John Rangihau	Tūhoe	tuhinga kauhau
He Hui Kaumātua	Ruka Broughton	Ngā Rauru Kīhahi	taki
Ko Taku Taha Rangatiratanga ko Taku Reo Māori	Ian Heketia Nepia	Hinepare, Ngāti Rangi	manu kōrero
Te Ao Mārama 3			
Māku Rā Pea	Heneriata Maxwell	Whānau-ā-Ruataupare, Whānau-ā-Te-Ao-Tawarirangi	waiata
Te Ao Mārama 4			
Tihore	Hirini Melbourne	Tūhoe	waiata
He Manu Rangatira	Dick Grace	Ngāti Porou, Te Whānau-ā-Apanui	paki
Ngā Tohu a Tāwhiri	Porua Green	Ngāti Porou	paki
Ko Roimata me te Wao-nui-a-Tane	Miriam Smith	Ngāti Hau, Ngā Puhi	paki
Te Rango me te Ngāngara	Katerina Mataira	Ngāti Porou	whakaari
Two Songs of the Sea	Angeline Hamiora	Te Whānau-ā-Apanui, Ngāiterangi	
Taku Tino Hoa a Mōkai	Mange Tautari	Ngāti Hine	paki
Tuna Parapara	Kuini Moeau Reedy	Ngāti Porou, Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki	ruri
Te Kēhua a Tōku Tupuna	Anne Ruamamao Brett		taki
Kua Hikina te Rāhui	Oho Kaa	Ngāti Porou	ruri
Te Rangimarie	Aroha Sharples	Ngāti Porou, Ngāti Kahungunu	paki
Te Manuhiri o Te Ao Mārama	Hepora Young	Te Arawa	paki
Mahi Tuna	Kelly Haitana	Ngāti Uenuku, A te Hau Paparangi	paki
He Taonga mā Tīmoti	Hone Taumaunu	Ngāti Konohi	paki ruri
Kato Pūhā	Katerina Mataira rāua ko Ngoi Pewhairangi	Ngāti Porou	whakaari
Te Mokopuna	Katerina Mataira rāua ko Ngoi Pewhairangi	Ngāti Porou	whakaari
Kia Tūpato	Jean Green		paki
Pūngāwerewere	Hirini Melbourne	Tūhoe	waiata
Te Awa i Tahuti	Katerina Mataira rāua ko Uira Manihira	Ngāti Porou	paki
Te Tuna Wātakirihi me ngā	Patricia Grace [He mea	Ngāti Raukawa, Ngāti Toa,	paki

Tamariki o te Tiriti o Toa	whakamāori e Hirini Melbourn]	Te Atiawa	
E te Tau	Kuini Moe Hau Reedy	Ngāti Porou, Te Awemāpara	waiata
Ramari Hītakotako	Hera Taute	Tūhoe	paki
Ngā Manuhiri o te Rāhoroi	Evelyn Tuuta [He mea whakamāori e Nepia Mahuika]	Ngāti Mutunga, Te Atiawa ki Wharekauri	paki
Ngā Puruhi	Okeroa Waitai	Maniapoto, Waikato	paki
Ko Taku Ingoa Karanga ki a Māmā ko Hare	Annais Allen [He mea whakamāori e Te Āri Kuti whaanga]	Ngā-ta-Wake-ki-te-Tā-a-Whenua, Ngāti Rehia, Ngāti Rehia, Ngāti Kawa, Te Uri-o-Hua	paki
Te Whānau Niho	Ringiringi Manawaiti	Maniapoto, Waikato	paki
Ngā Pītiti a Hone rāua ko Tamahou	Stone Wanoa	Ngāti Porou	whakaari
Pārera Pārera	Peti Nohotima	Tūhoe	paki
E Hiahia ana Au	Hone Kouka [He mea whakamāori e Tarati Roil]	Ngāti Porou, Ngāti Raukawa, Ngāti Kahungunu	paki
Te Mihini Ātea	Pita Sharples	Ngāi-te-kikiri-o-te-rangi, Ngāti Whātuiapiti, Ngāti Kahungunu	ruri
Taniwha	Robyn Kahukiwa [He mea whakamāori e Keri Kaa]	Ngāti Porou	paki
Te Kuia me te Pungawerewere	Patricia Grace [He mea whakamāori e Hirini Melbourn rāua ko Keri Kaa]	Ngāti Raukawa, Ngāti Toa, Te Atiawa	paki
Te Taimana o Te Kooti	Mere Whaanga	Ngāti Rongomaiwahine, Ngāti Kahungunu	kōrero tupuna
Whakaahua Tīpuna	Kuini Moe Hau Reedy	Ngāti Porou, Te Awemāpara	ruri
Ngā Taonga Tākaro	Okeroa Waitai	Maniapoto, Waikato	taki
Pirihira, Kaiāwhina	Teremoana Pehimana [He mea whakamāori ki te reo Kāi Tahu e Te Aomuhuraki Te Maaka Jones]		
Reitū rāua ko Reipae	Rahera Shortland	Ngā Puhi	kōrero tupuna
Taku Koroua	Ringiringi Manawaiti	Maniapoto, Waikato	taki
Te Whanaketanga i Mangahāne	Hēni Te Kira Hei [He mea whakamāori e Roka Paora]	Ngāti Porou	taki
Te Koha	Tamati Wharekura		whakamārama

Te Ao Mārama 5			
Te Ingoa Mōteatea	Nā Wai?	Nō Hea?	Te Momo-Kōrero
Kua Whiua	John Poutū Te Rangi Stirling	Te Whānau-a-Apanui, Kāi Tahu	karakia
He Pātere mō te Hū o Tarawera	Te-Kuru-o-te-Marama Waaka	Te Arawa	pātere
He Pepeha mō Ēnei Rā	Māori Marsden	Te Aupōuri	mōteatea
Te Atairangikaahu	Kīngi Ihaka	Te Aupōuri, Te Rarawa, Ngā Puhi, Waikato	haka
Hine-ahu-one	Pita Sharples	Ngāi Te Kikiri-o-te-Rangi, Ngāti Whatuiāpiti, Ngāti Kahungunu	waiata
He Haka	Merimeri Penfold	Ngāki Kurī ki te Aupōuri	haka
Puhi Wāhine	Rangitūnoa Black	Tūhōe, Tūwharetoa	mōteatea
Waiata Tangi mō Paora Delamere	Te Aomuhurangi Temamaka Jones	Te Whānau-ā-Apanui, Kāi Tahu, Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki, Ngāti Porou	waiata tangi
Aorangi			mōteatea
Whiria	Pat Hōhepa rūa ko Rāwiri Paratene	Te Mahurchure, Ngā Puhi/Te Rarawa	whakaari
Pōteretere Ana Au Rongomai E Rere e te Manu	Hirini Melbourne	Tūhōe	waiata poi waiata poi waiata
Tū mai rā	Ngahiwi Apanui	Ngāti Porou, Te Whānau-ā-Apanui, Whakatōhea	waiata
Te Pirimia Haka	Ngāpō Wehi	Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki, Rongowhakaata	haka
Te Tiriti o Waitangi			haka
He Aha Rā Kei te Tau o Taku Ate E Noho Ana Rā i Tōku Taumata Te Ao Pākehā Te Kuika Māori	Tīmoti Kāretu	Tūhōe	haka haka haka haka
He Koha Kī	Hori Tait	Tūhōe, Te Arawa	mōteatea
Te Tohu o te Tangata Te Whakaruruhau	Georgina Kirby	Ngāti Kahungunu	mōteatea mōteatea
Ko te Uira te Rangi; Ko te Aihe ki te Moana	Tīpene Ākuhata	Ngāti Kurukuru, Waimārama, Ngāti Tamatea Kairākau, Ngāti Kahungunu	mōteatea
Te Mana Motuhake He Haka Pōwhiri mō te Herengawaka Marae	Kuīni Mochau Reedy	Ngāti Porou, Te Awemāpara	mōteatea haka pōwhiri
Mahuru Ngahuru Kia Moe Rawa Pō Ahiahi Waiata mō te Whare Tipuna	Katerina Mataira	Ngāti Porou	mōteatea mōteatea mōteatea mōteatea waiata
He Whakaaro Te Aho a te Marama	Shane Jones	Te Aupōuri	ruri paki

Nō reira rā mai i te rautau 1800 ko ngā piki, ngā heke, ka mutu, ko ngā piki o te reo tuhituhi. Tuatahi ake pea, he ara te tuhituhi mā te mihingare ki te whakapākehā, ki te whakakaraitiana i te iwi Māori. Ka hipa te wā, ka kitea ko ngā tautohetohe o ngā iwi e rua i roto i ngā niupepa reo Māori. Nā wai rā, ka heke te reo tuhituhi, ā, ka riro nā te kāinga i pupuri ngā tuhinga tawhito a ngā kaumātua. Koia rā tētehi kohinga nui rawa o ngā momo tuhinga pēnei puta noa i Poronihia, ka waiho mai e ngā tūpuna Māori ngā tuhinga tawhito hei taumata (Thomson i rō Garlick, 1989: 25). Tae rawa ake ki te wā i maha anō ai ngā tuhinga reo Māori i te kaha whawhai kia kore ai e mate ā-moa te reo Māori. Ko te nuinga o ngā pukapuka o tēnei wā, he mea tā mā roto i te kura reo Māori. Ā ngā tau kei te heke mai, ko te whakapae, ka hua mai ngā pūkenga ki te tuhituhi me ngā tuhinga huhua kāore anō kia wawatatia. E kitea ana i te Whakaahua 2.1 he itinga nō te hapori Māori i kore ai e tāia te nui o te pukapuka reo Māori. Inā piki ana te papori Māori ki te 760 000 ā te tau 2021 (Statistics New Zealand, 2007), ko te tumanako, he tau tuputupu ēnei, ka tupu ngātahi te papori me ngā tuhinga reo Māori, kātahi ka kitea te mahi a ngā tuhinga reo Māori. Ka mutu, tērā te moemoeā ā te tau 2028 ‘Kua whakareia te āhei a ngā Māori katoa me Tauwiwi ki te mātauranga reo Māori e whai kounga ana’ (*He Reo e Kōrerotia ana, he Reo ka Ora*, 2003). Tērā ka noho pea ko ngā kaituhi reo Māori hei tuhi kōrero mā ngā tāngata Pākehā. Heoi anō, kia pēnei ake hei whakakapi i tēnei kōrero: he tokoiti te tāngata, he iti noa ngā tāngata Māori; ka piki ake te tokomaha, ka maha ake ngā tāngata Māori.

Ahakoia kua tupu ngā tāngata reo Māori, arā atu anō ngā whāwhārua. Koia te auē a tēnei kaiako o te Kura Kauapa Māori:

I te wharekura ko ngā pukapuka wāhanga, whai wāhanga. Kua kore, kore rawa atu. Ko *Makorea* tērā, ko *Te Kaieke Tohorā*. Ka mutu i reira... Kei te āhua tangi nei te ngākau. Whakawhiti atu aku tauira ki te akomanga reo Pākehā, kei te kaha rātou ki te pānui i ngā pukapuka, kei te whakahokia ki te kāinga. Ka kitea rātou e noho ana ki te pānui, engari whakawhiti mai ki a au kua kore. Hāunga ngā tuhinga poto pēnei, tino hōhonu nei, he rawe tonu ko ngā *Tāngata Taumata Rau* ko te aha kē rānei, engari karekau he paki hei pānui mā rātou. Nō reira ka nui te ngākaunui ki te reo Pākehā i te mea kei reira te mahi a te rauemi. Nō reira me

tuhi kia hāngai hoki ki a rātou, ngā momo paki, paki aroha nei, ngā āhuatanga ō te ao taiohi ēngari i roto i te reo Māori.

Kaiuru 25

Heoi anō ia tau, ia tau tāia ai he momo-kōrero hou ki te ao mātātuhi. Koia tā te kaiuru tuatoru:

He mea hou tēnei, *Tai ki Tai*, he *graphic novel*. Kei te whakaaro mātou ki ngā tama tane nā reira ko tēnei pukapuka mō ngā tokowhā nei i uru ki te tai ki tai ki Te Wai Pounamu.

Heoi anō rā, ko tētehi mea e ngaro ana i roto i ēnei tuhinga e pā ana ki te momo-kōrero, ko tētehi kaupapa e tuitui ana i te katoa. Koinā tā Mahuta mō te whaikōrero, ko tāna, i te wāhi kotahi me uaua ka kite i ngā kupu āta whakamārama mō te momo-kōrero nei, mō te whaikōrero (Mahuta, 1984: acknowledgements). Engari ia kia hōhonu te titiro ki te whaikōrero i te kura tuarua, i te whare wānanga me pērā ka tika (reira tonu). E hāngai ana tērā whakaaro ki te whakaako i ngā momo-kōrero Māori katoa i roto i ngā kura wānanga puta noa. Arā, kia hōhonu te titiro ki te momo-kōrero, ahakoa momo, me takoto ngā momo-kōrero Māori ki tētehi wāhi kotahi. Me huri te titiro ki tēnei mea te momo-kōrero.

2.3 Te Momo-Kōrero

He aha te aronga o te MOMO-KŌRERO⁹? Ki te whakahuatia tēnei mea te kōrero, e hia kē ōna nei aronga. E ai ki te papakupu *Williams*: ko te whāki atu, ko te tuku kaupapa atu, ko te matapaki, ko te whakawhiti whakaaro, ko te hua ake i ngā whakanekeneke o te wā, ko te whakatakoto kaupapa he pakiwaitara tōna rite (1988: 141). Mō konei, ka whakamahia te kupu 'kōrero' hei kupu whānui mō te taha tuhituhi me te taha kōrero. E ātete ana tēnei i tā Te Reo Māori i roto i Te Marautanga o Aotearoa me tāna whakamahi i te 'momo

⁹ text type, form, discourse, 'genre', literary event. E whakamahia ana te kupu 'momo-kōrero' mō te *text type*. Me matapaki tonu ngā kupu ahureo e tika ana mō ēnei aroro: 'momo-kōrero' (*text type*), 'momo tuhinga' (*genre*) and 'mōhio ki te kōrero'/'reo matatini' (*literacy*).

tuhinga', heoi, he whāiti rawa tēnei kīanga whakamārama mō tēnei tuhinga. Ki te tāpirihia te momo ki te kōrero, nā, ko te ingoa, te 'momo kōrero' nei, e noho tāhuhu ai mō ngā tūmomo kōrero katoa, atu i te waiata, i te whakapapa, i te whakatauākī tae noa hoki ki te pānui, ki te reta, ki te haurongo. Me pēnei pea te whakamārama ake mō te momo-kōrero e kōrerohia ana i te upoko nei, ko tā te momo-kōrero, 'He kaupapa tōna, he takatoranga motuhake ōna, otirā, he momo te momo mēnā he tauira te momo-kōrero e kitea ana, e rangona ana i te takanga o te wā'ⁱⁱⁱ (Duff, 2000: 210).

He KĪNGA¹⁰ te momo-kōrero. He poto ētehi, he roa ētehi atu. He TAKE¹¹ tōna, he HANGANGA¹² tōna, he KAUPAPA¹³ ōna. He nui ngā kawenga, mā te kōrero, mā te tuhituhi, mā te whakaatu, mā te ROTAROTA¹⁴ rānei. He nui hoki ngā huarahi wetewete i te kōrero¹⁵ (Crystal, 2003: 286). Nā reira i kīa ai he mea kōrero, he mea tuhituhi, he mea ataata. Ki a Crystal (2003) e tika ana te whakamahere i te reo kia pai ai te wetewete. E rua ngā wehewehenga, ko ngā wāhanga o te reo, ko te whakamahia o te reo. E kitea mai ana i te Whakaahua 2.4 nei, he wāhanga nui te momo-kōrero ki roto i tētehi reo.

¹⁰ utterance, speech act

¹¹ purpose

¹² structure

¹³ subject, also used for theme.

¹⁴ sign

¹⁵ E meatia ana e Crystal (2003:286), "The various branches of linguistics that investigate the topic (discourse), such as sociolinguistics, stylistics, discourse analysis, pragmatics, and textlinguistics, present a remarkable range of methodologies and emphases."

Te Whakaahua 2.4: He Mahere Reo: Te Hanganga, Te Whakamahinga

He mea hanga i tā Crystal, 2003:2-3

Ngā Taha e Rua o te Reo

Te Hanganga o te Reo

NGĀ MAHI

Te Momo-Kōrero

TE TUKUA O TE REO

Te Reo Rotarota

Te Āhua o te Reo Tuhi

Te Ororeo

TE KIKO O TE REO

Te Wetereo

Te Kupu

Te Whakamahia o te Reo

TE REREKĒTANGA Ā-WĀ

Wā roa, Wā poto

TE REREKĒTANGA Ā-ROHE

TE REREKĒTANGA Ā-IWI

TE REREKĒTANGA Ā-TANGATA¹⁶

E kitea ana ka rerekē te reo, ka rerekē ngā momo-kōrero i te takanga o te wā. Ko ētehi momo-kōrero ka ngaro, pēnei i te KARERE WAEA¹⁷; ko ētehi momo-kōrero ka rerekē hoki i te takanga o te wā, pēnei i te kīwaha (Williams, 2004); ko ētehi anō ka hou mai, ka tangata whenua mai te noho, inā te waiata-ā-ringa. Ko ētehi rerekētanga nā te putanga mai o te hangarau hou pērā i te KARERE Ā-WAEA¹⁸; ko ētehi anō ngarohanga atu nā te urunga mai o te whakaaro me te tikanga hou pērā i te ngaronga o ētehi momo karakia i te houtanga mai o ngā karakia Karaitiana; ko ētehi anō rerekētanga nā te urunga mai o ētehi horopaki hou e kōrerohia ana te reo, pērā i te Whakaata Māori me ngā KĪANGA TERE-MAU¹⁹ o reira.

¹⁶ Nō reira, he reo ā-iwi, he reo ā-hapū, he reo ā-whānau, ka mutu, he reo ā-tangata.

¹⁷ telegram

¹⁸ text message

¹⁹ catch phrase, pērā i ngā 'kīanga tere mau' i ngā whakaaturanga pouaka whakaata nei: Pūkana, "1 2 3 4, Pūkana"; te Māngai Pāho, 'Nā te māngai pāho te pūtea tautoko, toitū te reo'; te Whakaata Māori, "Mā rātou, mā mātou, mā koutou, mā tātou."

Kei tēnā iwi, kei tēnā pāpori ōna ake MOMO-KŌRERO RANGATIRA²⁰ e whai hua ana ki a ia, e noho mana ana ki a ia. Me kī, he momo-kōrero e kaingākaatia ana e te iwi, pēnei i tā Api Mahuika kōrero mō te waiata, te haka me te whakataukī (1975: 91). Ko te pōkeka ki a Te Arawa, ko te manawa wera ki a Tūhoe, ko te haka pōwhiri ki a Ngāti Porou me Te Whānau a Apanui (Kāretu, 1992: 42-44). Ka mutu, he momo-kōrero tā tēnā tangata, tā tēnā tangata e mau ana.

Ko ētehi whakaaro matua mō te momo-kōrero kei roto i ngā pātai nei: Nā wai/mā wai te momo-kōrero? Hei aha te momo-kōrero? He aha te kaupapa? He aha ngā whakaaro o roto? He aha te momo reo? He aha te kaitito i whiriwhiri ai i taua momo reo? Nā, kei te mahere reo e whai mai nei ētehi anō whakaaro matua mō te reo me te momo-kōrero. Ko ētehi take i rerekē ai te reo a tēnā me tēnā ko ngā āhuatanga ahurea. He tūhonotanga te mahere reo nei o ngā whakaaro o Halliday me Britton (tirohia Carter, 2005: 252). Āpiti atu ki tērā, anei ētehi momo-kōrero hei whakatauirā atu. He kaupapa rangahau kē atu anō te whakakaohia o ngā momo-kōrero o te ataata me te reo rotarota. Heoi anō rā, he mea wehewehe i ngā tāhu e toru, ko te kōrero, ko te tuhinga, ko te ataata hei whakaatu atu i ētehi momo-kōrero.

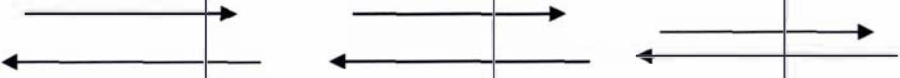
Te Whakaahua 2.5: He Tū Momo-Kōrero

Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha <i>spoken text types</i>	Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi <i>written text types</i>	Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata <i>visual text types</i>
waiata	ī-mēra	kāri
kōrerorero	pae whakaata	pae whakaata ²¹
whakataukī	paipera	paki waituhi
pakiwaitara	pakiwaitara	pānui whakaahua
karanga	poroporoaki tā	pānui whakamārama
whaikōrero	reta	reta ōkawa [waitohu]

²⁰ royal 'genre'. Ki roto i te mātauranga mātātuhi (literature) ko te 'genre' te 'text-type'. Engari, ki te mātauranga wetereo (linguistics) ko te 'genre' tētehi whakatakotoranga reo e whai ana i te take pāpori (social purpose). He huri kōaro te tikanga o te 'genre' me te 'text type' i aua mātauranga.

²¹ E kī ana a Crystal (2003:2) 'Text types can be written, spoken, visual, computer-mediated or signed'. Nā reira ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero pērā i te pae whakaata mēnā he *interactive* ka kapi katoa ngā momo-kōrero.

Te Whakaahua 2.6: He Kaupapa Reo: Ahurea, Horopaki, Whiringa reo, Momo-Kōrero
He mea hanga i runga i tā Carter, 2005: 253 me Murphy & Keegan, 2003

Mō te ahurea <i>About the culture</i>	Mō te horopaki <i>About the situation</i>	Mō te pūnaha reo <i>About the language system</i>	Mō te Momo-Kōrero <i>About the text type</i>
			
			<i>All previous elements effect text</i>
AHUREA He aha te whakapono? (hāhi, tōrangapū, ohaoha) He pēhea ngā tikanga ²² ? He pēhea ngā uara? He pānga mana kapapori ²³ ?	HOROPAKI Ko wai te whakaminenga? He aha te kaupapa? Ko hea te wāhi? He aha te take? Mā hea te kōrero ²⁴ ?	WHIRINGA REO He pēhea te wetereo? He pēhea te OROREO ²⁵ ? He pēhea ngā kupu?	MOMO-KŌRERO He pēhea te kiko ²⁶ ? He pēhea te raupapanga i ngā whakaaro? He whakaaro Māori? He aha te PŪTAKETANGA ²⁷ , inā, hei aha te momo-kōrero? He aha te hanganga? He pēhea te 'taera'? He pēhea te reo?

²² custom

²³ class system

²⁴ mode

²⁵ phonology

²⁶ content, topic

²⁷ purpose, genre. Arā, hei tautohe, hei paki, hei whakawhere, hei aha rānei.

Ko tētehi whakaaro e tautoko ana i te hanganga i tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero mō te horopaki mātauranga, ko tēnei, e kore e taea te momo-kōrero te āta ako i tōna kotahi, engari mā te ako ngātahi me ērā anō momo-kōrero ka tika rā te ako (Duff, 2000: 29). Ko te mea nui, ki te kore e mōhiotia e hono pēhea ana ngā momo-kōrero, he aha rānei ngā momo-kōrero, he aha rānei i kīia ai he tūmomo momo t/aua momo, e kore pea e tika te ako, te mau, te whakaora rānei. Koinā te pai o te pūnaha momo kōrero, arā:

ko te pūnaha momo-kōrero, he huinga o ngā momo-kōrero, e mārama ana te kite i tētehi tū pūnaha; he tauira ariā rānei e kitea ai te tino whakarārangi o ngā momo-kōrero me te whakamārama i te whanaungatanga i waenganui o aua momo-kōrero^{iv} (reira tonu: xiii).

Mō te taha kōrero me te taha tuhituhi i te horopaki mātauranga, kāore anō kia tōtika te whakarārangihia o ngā momo-kōrero Māori ki te wāhi kotahi. Nā, ko te whakaaro matua o tēnei Wāhanga kia tirohia ētehi kaupapa i raro i te maru o te mātauranga, ā, ko te momo-kōrero tētehi wāhanga. Koinā e huri ai te aro ki te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, ki Te Whakamahi i Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, ki Toi Te Kupu, ki *Te Puna* hoki. Ka wānangahia ngā kaupapa e whā me ngā pātai: he aha ngā momo-kōrero i ia kaupapa, he aha rānei ngā momo-kōrero kāore i reira, he pēhea hoki te whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero? Heoi anō, kia whakairia ake tērā i tēnei wā ka hoki mai ai. Me āta whakamārama i te tuatahi kei tēhea kaupapa te momo-kōrero e noho ana.

2.3.1 Te Momo-Kōrero me te Reo Matatini

Ko tētehi o ngā whāinga o tēnei rangahautanga he kimi i te whakautu ki te pātai, he aha tēnei mea te kōrero? Nā reira i whakakaoa ai ngā ingoa o ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana te whakahou ki roto i te akomanga reo Māori. He maha ngā momo-kōrero: tāhu tuhinga, tāhu kōrero, tāhu ataata e putaputa nei ia tau, ia tau i tēnā kaupapa i tēnā kaupapa o te haporī reo Māori whānui. Ko te take matua o tēnei tuhinga, ko te whakatakoto tāhuhu hei whakamaumaharatanga mā ngā kaiako, arā ake anō ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana inā e

ako reo ana, e ako ana i te REO MATATINI²⁸. Nā, he mea nui tēnei mea, te momo-kōrero, mā te ākonga, inā rā tā Gabriel i roto i a Kinchekoe & Weil (2004: 272):

Me hikohiko te ngākau o te ākonga ki ngā kōrero, ki ngā mōteatea, ki ngā whakaari, ki ngā pakimaero, ki ngā whakaata hoki e oreore ai te puna auaha, te hinengaro, me te kare-ā-roto. Me whakamanawa, me hiki, me ako ngā ākonga ki te pātai i te pātai tōtika, i te pātai mārama, i te pātai arotake... mā te pātai ka hōhonu kē ake te māramatanga ki te momo-kōrero, me te māramatanga ki a tātou anō^v.

Nā, ki te hiahia tētehi ki te whakawhānui i te whakamahia o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te akomanga, he pēhea rā te whānuitanga? Anei rā. Kei tēnei rangahau te nuinga o ngā momo-kōrero o te ao kōrero Māori. Heoi, ka kitea kei tēnā tangata, kei tēnā rōpū, kei tēnā kura, kei tēnā whānau, kei tēnā hapū, otirā kei tēnā iwi ngā whakaaro ko ēhea ngā momo-kōrero hei whakamahi mā rātou. Arā ake anō hoki ngā momo-kōrero kāore i konei, heoi ko tā te rangahau nei he whakatakoto i te tāhuhu o te kaupapa.

Ko ngā momo-kōrero tētehi o ngā kaupapa matua hei whakaako pai i tō te tangata 'mōhio ki te kōrero'²⁹. Koia tā te pukapuka *Effective Literacy Practice in Years 1 to 4* (Learning Media, 2003:12). E ono ngā pou e tū rangatira ai tēnei kaupapa, te tika o te ako i te mōhio ki te kōrero. Kua MIRAMIRA³⁰ te take e hāngai ana ki tēnei rangahau:

- *Knowledge of literacy learning*
- *Expectations*
- *Instructional strategies*
- *Engaging learners with texts*
- *Partnerships*
- *Knowledge of the learner*

Anei anō ētehi atu whakaaro e tautoko ana i tēnei kaupapa. He take nui te whakamahia o ngā momo-kōrero whānui o te hapori puta noa:

²⁸ literacy

²⁹ literacy

³⁰ bold

Ko te whāinga o tētehi kaupapa ako ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’, ko te whakaako i ngā ākonga ki te hanga i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero; me te āta titiro ki ngā momo-kōrero nā tāngata kē i mahi. He mea nō waho kē o te horopaki e noho nei rātou, he iwi kē, he tikanga kē. Kia tutuki rā anō ngā ākonga i tēnei me mōhio rātou:

- Kei te ao nei ngā momo-kōrero rerekē
- Mahia ai te momo-kōrero i ngā nohotahitanga o te iwi
- He HANGANGA³¹ te nuinga o te wā tā te momo-kōrero
- Ka whiriwhiria ngā āhuatanga kia hangaia te momo-kōrero mai i te pūnaha reo kia tutuki ai tētehi hui ā-iwi
- Mā te take, mā te whakaminenga e tohu me pēhea tātou e whakaatu ai i te momo-kōrero
- Mā te mōhio ki te take me te huarahi i hangaia ai he momo-kōrero, tērā ka mārama tātou ki ngā momo-kōrero a tāngata kē
- Inā kei te kimi māramatanga mō ngā momo-kōrero a tāngata kē, ka aro ki ā tātou mātauranga mō te kōrero ā-waha, mō te kōrero ā-tuhi, mō te kōrero ataata hoki^{vi}.

Winch, Johnston, March, Ljungdahl, & Holliday 2004: xxxii

Nō reira, tā tēnei Wāhanga he whakamoana i ngā momo-kōrero hei rautaki e huri ai te aro o ngā kaiako, o ngā kaituhi, o ngā kaitā rauemi, o wai ake ki te whānuitanga o te momo-kōrero me te mahara ake, āe kei te ao Māori taua momo. I runga tonu i te mea kei te hono ngātahi te tāhu kōrero, te tāhu tuhinga me te tāhu ataata tērā ka peke atu, peka mai tētehi o aua momo-kōrero mai i tētehi taha, ki tētehi taha. Waihoki, tērā ka noho te taha kōrero, te taha tuhituhi me te taha ataata i roto i tētehi momo-kōrero kotahi, inā te *multi-media interactive website*. Otirā, mā te mōhio ki te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero katoa ka hangaia e te tangata tāna ake mahere e whakaraupaki ana i ngā momo-kōrero hei whakaako i te ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’.

³¹ structure

Kei ia tangata tōna mōhioanga ki ētehi momo-kōrero. Me uaua ka tohu i te tangata kotahi e mōhio ana ki te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero ka whakaaturia ā taihoa ake nei. Ehara i te mea me mōhio ki te katoa, heoi anō ko te wero mā ngā kaiako he kimi mōhioanga e pakari ai rātou ki ngā momo-kōrero āhua whānui tonu. Ko te wero mā ngā kaihanga rauemi, ko te whakatā i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero hei whakatauiria mā ngā pouako. Ko te wero mā te haporī whānui ko te kaha whakaputa i ngā momo-kōrero hei rauemi atu anō mā ngā karu, mā ngā taringa, me te ngākau Māori. Ko te wero nui mā ngā tāngata e whakatūhono ana i ngā kaiako me ngā rauemi, ko te whakamārama tika i ngā ingoa o ngā momo-kōrero e tūhonohono ai ngā kaiako ki ngā rauemi, kāti, ko ngā ākonga ki ngā momo-kōrero. Me kī, kia muia, kia tuia, otirā kia ruia te taiao o te ākonga, ahakoa pakeke, ki te mahi o ngā momo-kōrero. Ina rā tā Whitehead (2002: 39) mō te whakauru i ngā momo-kōrero ki rō marautanga:

Me mōhio tātou ki ēnei āhuatanga, me tautoko hoki i tā te tamariki nohinohi ngākaunui ki te reo, ki te tangi, ki te whakanene, ki te raweke i te kupu. Nā whai anō tētehi marautanga e kī ana i te momo maha, i te pūoro, i te waiata, i te mōteatea, i te ngeri, i te panga, i te takawiri arero, i te whakakata, i te kōrero kore kiko noa iho pērā i te whakakata ‘pao pao’, i te huarite, i te spoonerism, i te kōrero tawhito, i te kōrero pōrangi noa iho o tēnei wā, tae noa ake ki Dr. Seuss^{vii}.

Ko tētehi kaupapa e noho tūāpapa ana ki tēnei rangahau, ko te ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’. Ki tā Kucer me tāna pukapuka *Dimensions of Literacy* (2005) me tana matapaki i tēnei mea te ‘mōhio ki te kōrero.’ Ki te kōrerohia te mōhio ki te kōrero pukapuka, me titiro tātou ki ēnei āhuatanga matua:

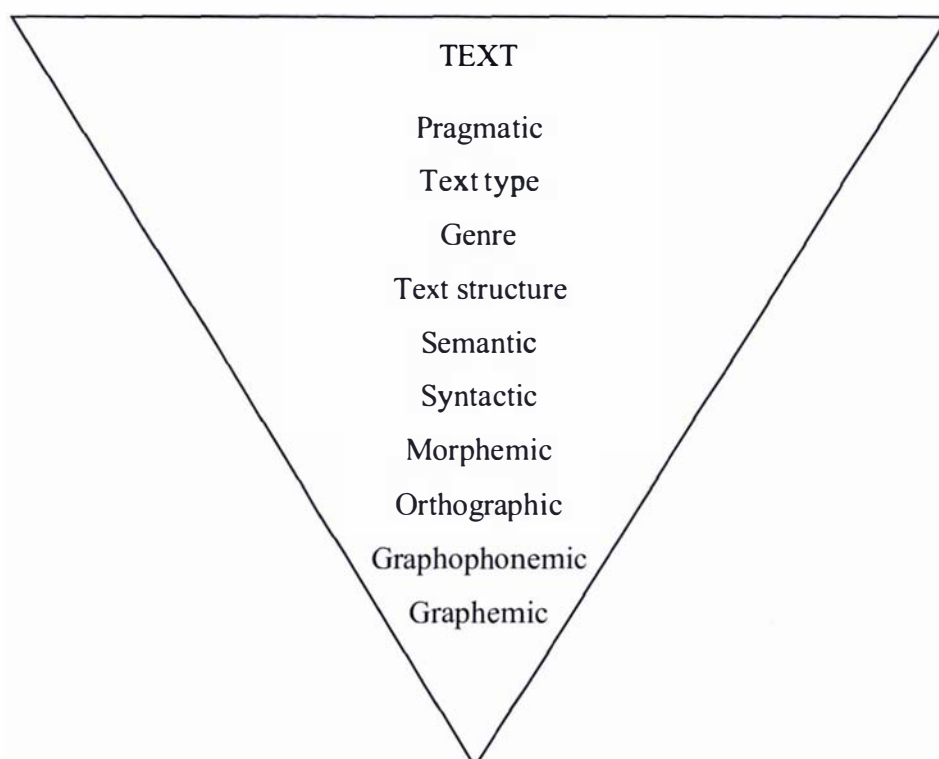
- *Developmental*
- *Sociocultural*
- *Linguistic*
- *Cognitive*

Ā, ko ngā *literary events* kei te whakapā atu ki ēnei wāhanga e whā. Ki tā Kucer mō te ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’ me te *text*, ko ngā āhuatanga reo mai i te kōrero nui tae noa ki ngā wāhanga pakupaku o tētehi tuhinga me mau kia rukuhia te hōhonutanga o tēnei kaupapa.

Kei te hāngai āna kōrero ki ngā momo-kōrero i te Wāhanga Tuarua me te Tuatoru o tēnei tuhinga. Ko te kaupapa reo o te Whakaahua 2.6 he tirohanga whānui tonu, he tirohanga ki ngā āhuatanga ahurea. Kia whāiti haere te titiro ki tētehi tuhinga tērā ka kitea ngā āhuatanga o te Whakaahua 2.7. Koia ngā āhuatanga me mau i te ākonga kia mōhiotia ki te tuhituhi. Ko tētehi taha, ko te mōhiotanga ki te momo-kōrero e kōrerotia atu nei i tēnei tuhinga. Mō te kīpeha i te Wāhanga Tuawaru, tērā ka taka iho i raro i te kaupapa *semantic*, arā, ko te tikanga o ngā kupu o te momo-kōrero.

Te Whakaahua 2.7: Ko te Whanaungatanga o Roto i te Kōrero me ngā Pūnaha o te Reo
Internal Relationships Among Text and the Systems of Language.

Kucer, 2005: 43. Nāku i miramira mō te wāhi e pā ana ki te momo-kōrero ka tahi, ki te kīpeha ka rua.



2.3.2 He Kete Momo-Kōrero tā Tēnā, tā Tēnā

Mō ngā momo-kōrero, he rerekē tā tēnā tangata, tā tēnā tangata whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero i roto i ngā āhuatanga tangata. Koia rā te take ehara i te mea māmā te kimi i tētehi rārangi momo-kōrero e kapi ai te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana, e kitea ana i te ao Māori i tēnei wā. Ka whakarārangihia e Kucer ngā āhuatanga tangata tekau mā tahi e pā ana ki te whakamahinga i te reo (Kucer, 2005: 200). Inā rā:

Te Whakaahua 2.8: Te Kete Momo-Kōrero: Tekau mā Tahi ngā Āhuatanga
Repertoire of text types: 11 variables

1. Culture	7. Psychological Groups
2. Socioeconomic Status/class	8. Nationality
3. Gender	9. Family
4. Organizations	10. Age
5. Occupation	11. Sexual Orientation
6. Religion	

Koia nei te whānuitanga o tēnei rangahau. I runga i te mea kei roto te tangata i ētehi o ngā rōpū o runga nei tērā ka rerekē tāna titiro ki te ao me tāna whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero. Atu i ēnei āhuatanga tangata, he rerekē anō hoki ngā tūmomo kaupapa/wāhi e whakamahi ana te tangata i ngā momo-kōrero (tirohia te Whakaahua 2.9 e whai mai nei). Nō reira, ka kitea arā kē te rahinga o ngā momo-kōrero. I runga tonu i te mōhio o Crombie rāua ko Roberts (2001: 58), he uaua rawa te whakamahere momo-kōrero:

Nō reira, ehara i te mea ngāwari te hanga i tētehi mahere momo-kōrero. Tā te mea, ka mōhio te nuinga o ngā tāngata o tētehi iwi ki ngā momo-kōrero, he oti anō rā, ko ētehi o taua iwi, he kore mōhio, ka tahi. Ka rua, ka rerekē te iwi me te ahurea, tērā ka rerekē haere ngā momo-kōrero^{viii}.

Heoi anō mēnā he tekau mā tahi ngā tū āhuatanga o te tangata, tērā ka kitea he rerekē tā ia tangata whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero. Ko ētehi o ngā kaiako ka kī mai e tika ana me kuhu ko te katoa i roto i te akomanga. Heoi anō, ko ētehi atu anō kaiako i tohutohu mai,

me whiriwhiri kē ko ngā momo-kōrero e noho rangatira ana. Heoi anō rā, ko tā Kucer, he rerekē anō te titiro a ia tangata ki ngā momo-kōrero rangatira. Ā, he rerekē anō pea te whakamahia o ngā momo-kōrero ia rā. Me kī, ki te hui te tangata, ka whakapuakina he kupu. Ki te whakapuakina he kupu, ka rangona, ka kitea he momo-kōrero kē. Heoi, he rerekē ngā momo hui, ngā momo mahi a te tangata, ā, koia rā te take he rerekē tōna mōhiotanga ki ngā momo-kōrero. He rerekē hoki te whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero. Inā rā te Whakaahua 2.9 e whakaatu mai ana i ngā wāhi kōrero me ngā kaupapa kōrero. Mō te momo-kōrero me te āhei o te tangata ki te whakaputa, he rerekē te mōhiotanga o tēnā tangata o tēnā tangata.

Ka mutu, hei whakakupu i tēnei āhuatanga – arā, he kete momo-kōrero tā tēnā, tā tēnā - anei tētehi whakahokinga kōrero mō ngā momo-kōrero e mau ana i tēnei o ngā kaiuru. Tērā pea me uaua ka rokohanga ki tēnei momo tangata e mau ana i a ia i te whānuitanga pēnei o ngā momo-kōrero e whai nei. Ki te whai i tā Kucer i pēnei ai i runga i ēnei āhuatanga mōna: he tangata tupu ake i waenga i te whānau kōrero Māori, he tangata whai rawa, he tāne, he pūkenga whare wānanga, he whakapono nōna ki ngā atua Māori me lhowa, he tangata ka pōwhiritia kia kauwhau ki ngā rōpū maha, he whānau kōrero Māori tōna, ka eke atu ki te rima ngahuru tau, he wahine tāna:

He maha ngā momo kei te tiaki au. Ngā kōrero o te ngāherehere tētahi wāhanga nui o mātou. Ngā kōrero hūmarie, whakakatakata, ngā kōrero whakatakoto kōrero pērā i te *Tribunal* nei me ērā kōrero, ngā kōrero o te kawa o te marae, ngā kōrero o te taiao, ngā kōrero whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro mō te kai... Ngā kōrero whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro mō te whakatū i te tangata, ngā kōrero whakapapa, ngā kōrero mō te tuhi kōrero, pēhea te tuhi... ngā kōrero e pā ana ki te whenua, ngā kōrero e pā ana ki ngā kōrero o mua i te mea hoki i pakeke mai mātou i roto i ērā akoranga, ngā kōrero tipu, ko wai kē ngā tīpuna, ngā kōrero mō tēnā marae, te āhua o te hapū, te iwi rānei. Ngā karakia, mihinare, karakia Māori rānei. Ngā karakia whakawātea, ngā karakia whakaara, ngā waiata... Ko tētahi mea nui pea, tētahi kaupapa nui ki a mātou ko te manaaki i te tangata, manaaki i te tangata ki te kai, ki te kōrero, ki te whakaaro me te titiro whakamua.

Kaiuru Tuawaru

Te Whakaahua 2.9: Te Mōhio ki te Kōrero: He tūmomo kaupapa, ngā mahi me ngā tauira
He mea hanga i runga i ngā kōrero a Kucer 2005: 199

Tūmomo Kaupapa/Wāhi	Whakamāori	Momo-Kōrero: Tāhu tuhituhi, tāhu kōrero
Tā ngā Mahi o Ia Rā Kāinga, tāone...	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te noho a te whānau: Kai, whare, hauora, moni, pire, tiaki tamariki.	Kōrerorero, tukupū, nōti, ī-mēra, rātaka, maramataka, paki, rārangi kai, waiata...
Tā te Whakangahau Wāhi maha	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō ngā āhuatanga pārekareka ki te tangata.	Kōrerorero...
Tā te Wairua Wāhi katoa, marae, whare karakia...	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te tuku mihi ki te wāhi ngaro.	Karakia, ruruku, inoi, himene, whakamoemiti, paipera...
Tā te Mahi Wāhi mahi, tari...	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te wāhi mahi.	Ī-mēra, pae tukutuku, waea whakaahua, rārangi take, meneti hui, memo tari, tāhuhu tangata...
Tā te Whakahoahoa Kāinga, tāone, whīra hākinakina...	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te whakawhiti kōrero ki nga hoa, ki ngā whanaunga rānei; he whakaū i te whakawhanaungatanga.	Kōrerorero, kāri mihi, reta hoa, haparangi hākinakina, tohutohu, tukupū, nōti...
Tā te Mātauranga Marae Kōhanga Reo Kura Kaupapa Māori Wharekura Wānanga Whare Wānanga Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te whakatupu ake i te mātauranga.	Karanga, whaikōrero, karakia, whakapapa, pūrākau, paki, kiwaha, kupu whakarite, whakataukī, pepeha, rotarota, waiata, ngeri, haka, waiata kori, paki, tuhinga auaha, pukapuka pikitia, ture, mōteatea, whakapapa, kauhau, tuhinga roa...
Tā ngā Kōrero o te Wā Reo Irirangi Māori Mana News Service Whakaata Māori Te Kaea	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te rapu mōhiotanga mō te rohe, mō Aotearoa, mō te Ao whānui.	Kawenga kōrero, pānuitanga, matapae huarere, hākinakina, uiui, kōrerorero...
Tā te Pupuri Kōrero Whānau Archives Hapū/Iwi Archives Alexander Turnbull Library New Zealand Television Archive The Film Archive Sound Archive Archives New Zealand	Ngā kaupapa kōrero mō te pupuri i ngā rauemi, ā, tuhinga mai, kōrero mai, ataata mai.	Whakapapa, hautaka, kōrero ā-iwi, reta tawhito, niupepa, reta ki te etita, whakaaturanga, pānuitanga, waiata, whaikōrero, karanga, mōteatea, pūrongo, meneti hui, Hansard (tuhinga Kāwanatanga)...

2.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero kei ngā Pukapuka Whakaako

I ngā tau rima tekau nei, mēnā he mea akoako ngā taitamariki ki te reo Māori i ngā pae toru ki te pae rima i roto i ngā kura auraki, kāore e kore kua whakaakona rātou ki ngā pukapuka a Hoani Waititi, arā ake, *Te Rangatahi*. Ka whai aua kohinga pukapuka i tēnei takotoranga: he momo-kōrero hei whakaatu i te horopaki; he whakamārama i ngā rerenga kōrero o roto i taua kōrero; he taumahi hei mahinga mā te ākonga; he whakarārangi o ngā kupu hou o ia upoko. Ko te nuinga o ngā momo-kōrero o roto i ngā pukapuka nei, *Te Rangatahi* Tahī ki te Toru, ka takea mai i te reo kōrero o ngā mātua tūpuna, arā, ko te mihi, ko te whakapapa, ko te whakawhiti kōrero, te pūrākau, te pakiwaitara, te aha ake, te aha ake (tirohia te Whakaahua 2.10). Kei reira anō ētehi tauira o te tuhituhi kōrero, ina ko te reta me te pānui. Ahakoa i puta tuatahi mai tēnei pukapuka i te tau 1962, ā, i te takanga o te wā kua āhua rerekē ngā horopaki i roto i ngā pukapuka whakaako ākonga o nāianei, nā runga i tōna hua, ka whai haere tonu ētehi anō pukapuka whakaako reo Māori i tēnei takotoranga.

Nā, he ngahuru mā rua tau whai muri, ka puta ko *Te Reo Rangatira*, 1974. He kaupapa ako tēnei nā Tīmoti Kāretu mā ngā ākonga matatau o te pae ono me te pae whitu, he mea tuhi anō ki tō Tīmoti reo, ki te reo o Tūhoe. Ko tōna pai, kei tēnei pukapuka ētehi tino tauira, ētehi tino whakamārama mō ngā tikanga o ēnei momo-kōrero, o te waiata, o te whaikōrero, o te whakataukī, o te pepeha, o te pakiwaitara, o te poroporoaki. Waihoki, ko te reo rangatira te reo whakaū i te kaupapa.

E whā tau i muri mai, i te tau 1978 ka tāia te pukapuka *Modern Māori*. He mea whakaputa nā P. M. Ryan mā ngā ākonga i Hato Petera ka tahi, ka rua, mā te haporī whānui. Kei te whai haere te takoto o te pukapuka i ngā kupu me ngā rerenga kōrero e kaha kitea ana i ngā pukapuka wetereo (pērā i Biggs, 1973; i Bauer, 1997; i Foster, 1997; i Harlow, 2001, i Head, 1989; Kārena-Holmes, 1993), heoi anō, ahakoa kei te reo Pākehā te whakamārama, ko te mea pai kē, ko te whānui o ngā momo-kōrero e noho tauira ana hei akoako mā ngā ākonga. Waihoki, kāore ētehi o ēnei momo-kōrero e tino kitea ana i roto i ētehi atu pukapuka whakaako reo Māori, arā ake, ko te ruri, ko te mōteatea-ā-

kōrero, ko te panga. Āpiti atu ki tērā, kei reira ētehi anō momo e auau ana te kitea, koia te whakawhiti kōrero, te pakiwaitara, me te waiata. Ko te wāhanga ngoikore, kāore ēnei momo i tino whakamāramahia mā te ākonga, arā te tikanga, te āhua, te takoto rānei, he mea whakapākehā noa.

Ko tētehi kohinga pukapuka e tau ana mō te whakamārama i ngā momo-kōrero i roto anō hoki i te reo Māori, ka puta i te tau 1988, koia ko *Te Whanake*. Nā John Moorfield i mahi mai mā ngā ākonga, tuākana nei, o te kura, otirā, ngā mea o Te Whare Wānanga. E whā ngā pukapuka o tēnei kohinga. Atu i *Te Kākano*, ka reorua, ka āta whakamahia ngā rerenga kōrero hei pūtake mā ngā ākonga, ki *Te Pihinga*, ka reotahi, pērā i *Te Māhuri*, ka rumakingia ki te reo Māori hei ako i ngā kaupapa mahi me ngā momo-kōrero nei: te whakawhiti kōrero, te reta, te kīwaha, te whakataukī. Waihoki, ka ākona ko te kōrero tohutohu, ko te kōrero whakamārama, ko te kōrero pakiwaitara hoki. Nā, ka piki te reo o te ākonga, ka piki te maha o ngā momo-kōrero a tēnei kohinga. Ko *Te Kōhure* te pūāwaitanga. I roto i ngā upoko matua ka huaina ēnei momo-kōrero nei: ngā waiata me ngā haka; te kōrero paki; te pōhiri, te pānui, te poroporoaki; te whakapapa; te whaikōrero. Kei te upoko He Reo, ka rukuhia te hōhonutanga o ēnei momo-kōrero, te whakataukī, te whakatauāki, te pepeha, te kupu whakaari, te tongi, te kupu whakarite, me te kīwaha. He ekenga taumata kē atu anō tēnei mō te whakamārama i ētehi o ā tātou momo-kōrero. Kāti, kua tīpakohia ngā momo-kōrero o ēnei pukapuka reo Māori katoa, ā, kei te Whakaahua 2.10 ērā e takoto ana.

Te Whakaahua 2.10: He Momo-Kōrero, He Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori

Te Pukapuka, Te Kaituhi	Te Kaupapa i ngā Ūpoko	Te Momo-Kōrero
<i>Te Rangatahi Elementary 1</i> Waititi, 1998	Ko Tamahae Mā, Kei te aha a Tamahae?, Te Kāinga, Te Kura, Te Pāmu a Hata, Te Hī Ika, Te Pikitia, Te Tāone	Mihi, whakapapa, whakawhiti kōrero, pakiwaitara.
<i>Te Rangatahi Elementary 2</i> Waititi, 1991	Te Āwhina i a Pani rāua ko Hata, Te Whakangau Poaka, Te Kanikani, Te Pikiniki, Te Māra Rīwai, Te Tīma o Te Kao, Te Tīma Toa, Te Rama Tuna	Pakiwaitara, whakawhiti kōrero, whakataukī, pepeha, waiata.
<i>Te Rangatahi Elementary 3</i> Waititi, 1985	Te Kuti Hipi, Te Tangihanga, Te Ngahere o Kaingaroa, Te Mahi Hei, Te Mārena, Te Mahi Moni, Te Haerenga ki Rotorua, Te Mahi Tītī, Te Mahi Tohorā, Te Hui Nui, Te Kura Tuarua.	Pakiwaitara, haka, whakapapa, reta, waiata, kōrero-a-iwi, pānui, pūrākau.
<i>Te Reo Rangatira</i> Kāretu, 1974	Te Haere ki te Marae, Te Tangihanga, He Kōrero Pūrākau, Ngā Whakataukī, Ngā Waiata-ā-ringa, He Māori Rongonui, Ngā Waiata, Te Hekenga Tuarua, Te Noho i ngā Tāone, Tōku Māoritanga.	Whakawhiti kōrero, karanga, haka pōhiri, whakataukī, kōrero whakamārama, pakiwaitara, poroporoaki, kōrero pūrākau, waiata-ā-ringa, waiata, haurongo, hokinga mahara.
<i>Modern Māori 1</i> Ryan, 1978	He wetereo te nuinga o ngā ngohe.	Mōtatea-ā-kōrero, ruri, waiata-ā-ringa, waiata, whaikōrero, haka, whakawhiti kōrero, whakataukī, kōrero-a-iwi.
<i>Modern Māori 2</i> Ryan, 1980	He wetereo te nuinga o ngā ngohe.	Kōrero paipera, kiwaha, kōrero ahiahi, panga, kōrero paki, waiata, mōtatea-ā-kōrero, pakiwaitara, waiata-ā-ringa, whaikōrero, tauparapara.
<i>Te Kōhure</i> Moorfield, 1996	Te Kīngitanga, He reo, Ngā waiata me ngā haka, He manukura, Ko Tūmatauenga, Te kōrero paki, Te taenga mai o te Pākehā, He pakanga nō tērā rau tau. Te tātai arorangi, Te Pakanga Tuarua o Te Ao, He pōhiri, he pānui, he poroporoaki, He hekenga mai ki Aotearoa, He whakapono, whakapapa, whaikōrero	Mihi, kōrero-a-iwi, kiwaha, whakataukī, whakataukī, kupu whakaari, kupu whakarite, pepeha, tongi, kōrero whakamārama, haurongo, hokinga mahara, waiata, haka, kōrero paki, pōhiri, pānui, poroporoaki, whakapapa, whaikōrero.

Ki te whakarōpūhia ngā momo-kōrero katoa o roto o ēnei pukapuka ako i te reo Māori, e pēnei ana te whakarārangi, he oti anō rā, kāore anō kia whakarōpūhia, kei te whai noa i tā te ARAPŪ³² takoto. Inā:

Haka, haka pōhiri, haurongo, hokinga mahara, karanga, kīwaha, kōrero ahiahi, kōrero-ā-iwi, kōrero paipera, kōrero paki, kupu whakaari, mihi, mōteatea-ā-kōrero, pakiwaitara, panga, pānui, pepeha, poroporoaki, pūrākau, reta, ruri, tauparapara, waiata, waiata-ā-ringa, whaikōrero, whakapapa, whakataukī, whakataukī, whakawhiti kōrero.

Ehara hoki ēnei i te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero a te Māori. He tīmatanga noa ake tēnei whakarārangi o ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero e kitea ana i ngā pukapuka ako reo Māori. Ā, tōna tikanga, he mea akoako ēnei i roto i te horopaki mātauranga, ina ki te kura tuarua, ki te whare wānanga, otirā, ki ngā wānanga whānui tonu. Kia huri atu ki ētehi o ngā kaupapa kia whakatauritea te whakarārangi o ngā momo-kōrero i runga nei ki ngā whakarārangi o ngā momo-kōrero o roto i Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, Toi Te Kupu, me *Te Puna*.

2.5 Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori

Nō te tau 1996 ka puta *Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa*. He aratohu, he tauākī mā ngā kaiako, ā, ko tōna takune, 'hei tūāpapa kawē i ngā kaupapa reo Māori ki ngā ākonga o roto i ngā kura tuatahi, tuarua rānei' (Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 1996: 8). Ka whakaaturia ngā kōeke e waru hei pikitanga me ngā whenu e ono, arā te tuhituhi, te kōrero, te whakarongo, te whakaatu, te mātakitaki hei mau. Arā hoki ngā pūkenga hei whakatutuki, ngā kawenga hei ako, ngā aromatawai kia kitea inā kua tau ki ngā ākonga. Tāpiri atu ki ēnei kaupapa ako, kei reira anō ētehi āpitihanga hei āwhina i te kaiako, koia rā: Ngā Āheinga Reo; Ngā Ariā o te Reo; Te Wetewete i te Reo; Ngā Rārangi Kupu; me te Tikanga. Heoi anō rā, o roto i ēnei wāhanga katoa me uaua ka kite i te momo-kōrero i te wāhanga kotahi, hāunga te rārangi kupu i te mutunga iho o Te Marautanga. Kei te taha

³² alphabetical

mauī o te Whakaahua 2.11 e kitea ana ngā kōrero, ngā tuhinga ka kitea ki muri o te pukapuka. Kei te taha katau ngā kōrero, ngā tuhinga ka kitea i roto tonu i nga whārangi inā ka āta tirohia. Tērā pea kei reira ētehi anō momo-kōrero, heoi, me uaua ka kite i te tiroiro noa.

I te rārangi kupu, ka kitea ētehi momo-kōrero me te whakapākehātanga, atu i tērā, kore kau he kupu e whakamārama ana i te āhua, i te tikanga, i te takoto rānei o ia momo. I te Whakaahua 2.11 kua whakatakotoria ngātahitia ērā anō momo-kōrero o ngā pukapuka whakaako i te reo Māori me te kupu whakapākehā kia whakataurite ai ki tā te *Marautanga Reo Māori* whakarārangi. Nā te kaituhi ngā kupu whakapākehā, i runga i te mōhio he whakapākehā kē atu anō tā ētehi momo-kōrero, hei tauira, e rua, e toru, neke atu rānei ngā tikanga o te kupu pakiwaitara, ina tā te reo Pākehā, he *fairy story*, he *scandal*, he *fiction*, he *mythology* rānei (Ryan, 1995: 168). Ka raruraru te whakapākehātanga, mēnā kotahi noa iho tana kupu whakapākehā, i te mea, ka whakawhāiti i te tikanga o te momo-kōrero Māori. Ka raruraru hoki te kupu Māori inā ka riro mā te reo Pākehā e whakamārama. Heoi anō rā, he huarahi noa iho kia kitea ngā rerekētanga me ngā ōritenga o ngā momo-kōrero o ia kaupapa. I te nuinga o te wā, nā ngā tāngata i mahi te kaupapa aua kupu whakapākehā.

Ki te huri te titiro ki te Whakaahua 2.11, kāore te rārangi Marautanga Reo Māori i te whakaatu i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero e kitea ana i ngā pukapuka whakaako reo Māori. Ko te nuinga o ngā kōrero kei te ngaro i te rārangi kupu o Te Marautanga Reo Māori, ina, te whakataukī, te purākau, te karanga, te whaikōrero, te aha atu, me kī, he momo-kōrero nō mai anō. Heoi anō, ko ngā mea ngaro i te rārangi o ngā Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori, ko ngā momo-kōrero o roto i te Marautanga Reo Māori, arā, te whakatautau, te pukapuka tohutohu, te pānuitanga, me kī, he momo-kōrero nō tata nei. E tika ana pea kia rangona, kia kitea ēnei momo-kōrero katoa ki roto i te horopaki mātauranga, nā whai anō i tika ai te whakakotahi i ngā momo-kōrero Māori ki tētehi wāhi kotahi hei arataki mā ngā kaiako, mā ngā ākonga, mā wai ake, mā wai ake.

Te Whakaahua 2.11: Ngā Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi o te Marautanga Reo Māori

Oral and written text types of the reo Māori curriculum document

He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero nō te Rārangi Kupu i Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori <i>Text types in the glossary</i> Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 1996: 191-193	He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero i Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori <i>Text types throughout the document</i> Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 1996: 11-91																																																																																																																				
<table> <tr><td>Āpiti hanga</td><td><i>appendices</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kīwaha</td><td><i>idiom</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero pono</td><td><i>non-fiction</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero tangata</td><td><i>biography</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Moheni</td><td><i>magazine</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Momo tuhinga</td><td><i>genre</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pāpāho</td><td><i>broadcasting media</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Paki</td><td><i>narrative</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pānuitanga</td><td><i>advertisement</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pānui whakamārama</td><td><i>brochure</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pukapuka tohutohu</td><td><i>instruction manual</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrongo</td><td><i>report/document</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Ruri</td><td><i>poetic (text)</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tātai oranga</td><td><i>curriculum vitae</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tauākī</td><td><i>statement</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Waituhi whakakata</td><td><i>comic strip</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whakatautau</td><td><i>drama</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whakaatu-ā-waha</td><td><i>oral presentation</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whiti</td><td><i>verse</i></td></tr> </table>	Āpiti hanga	<i>appendices</i>	Kīwaha	<i>idiom</i>	Kōrero pono	<i>non-fiction</i>	Kōrero tangata	<i>biography</i>	Moheni	<i>magazine</i>	Momo tuhinga	<i>genre</i>	Pāpāho	<i>broadcasting media</i>	Paki	<i>narrative</i>	Pānuitanga	<i>advertisement</i>	Pānui whakamārama	<i>brochure</i>	Pukapuka tohutohu	<i>instruction manual</i>	Pūrongo	<i>report/document</i>	Ruri	<i>poetic (text)</i>	Tātai oranga	<i>curriculum vitae</i>	Tauākī	<i>statement</i>	Waituhi whakakata	<i>comic strip</i>	Whakatautau	<i>drama</i>	Whakaatu-ā-waha	<i>oral presentation</i>	Whiti	<i>verse</i>	<table> <tr><td>Haka</td><td><i>haka</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kauhau</td><td><i>lecture</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero</td><td><i>text, discussion, conversation</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero He Muka</td><td><i>He Muka article</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrerorero</td><td><i>conversation, discussion</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero-ā-rōpū</td><td><i>group discussion</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero huna</td><td><i>code</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero paki</td><td><i>entertaining story</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero pohewa</td><td><i>creative story</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero waea</td><td><i>phone conversation</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Kōrero whakaatu āhua</td><td><i>description</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Mihi ōpaki, ōkawa</td><td><i>informal, formal greeting</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Niupepa</td><td><i>newspaper</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pakiwaitara</td><td><i>story</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pānui</td><td><i>notice</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pānui tūranga wātea</td><td><i>job advertisement</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pānuitanga</td><td><i>broadcasting advertisement</i></td></tr> <tr><td>pouaka whakaata, reo irirangi</td><td></td></tr> <tr><td>Papakupu</td><td><i>dictionary</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pitopito kōrero</td><td><i>current events</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrākau</td><td><i>narrative</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrākau Māori</td><td><i>fable</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrongo hauata</td><td><i>accident report</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrongo moheni</td><td><i>magazine report</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Pūrongo poto</td><td><i>report</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Rātaka</td><td><i>diary</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Rotarota</td><td><i>poem</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Reta</td><td><i>letter</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Reta ki te etita</td><td><i>letter to the editor</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Taupatupatu</td><td><i>debate</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tuhinga poto</td><td><i>short text</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tuhi tono</td><td><i>request</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tohutohu</td><td><i>instructions</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Tūtohunga Kura</td><td><i>school charter</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Uiui</td><td><i>interview</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Waiata</td><td><i>waiata</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whakamārama</td><td><i>explanation</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whakatautau</td><td><i>role-play</i></td></tr> <tr><td>Whakawhiti kōrero</td><td><i>discussion, conversation</i></td></tr> </table>	Haka	<i>haka</i>	Kauhau	<i>lecture</i>	Kōrero	<i>text, discussion, conversation</i>	Kōrero He Muka	<i>He Muka article</i>	Kōrerorero	<i>conversation, discussion</i>	Kōrero-ā-rōpū	<i>group discussion</i>	Kōrero huna	<i>code</i>	Kōrero paki	<i>entertaining story</i>	Kōrero pohewa	<i>creative story</i>	Kōrero waea	<i>phone conversation</i>	Kōrero whakaatu āhua	<i>description</i>	Mihi ōpaki, ōkawa	<i>informal, formal greeting</i>	Niupepa	<i>newspaper</i>	Pakiwaitara	<i>story</i>	Pānui	<i>notice</i>	Pānui tūranga wātea	<i>job advertisement</i>	Pānuitanga	<i>broadcasting advertisement</i>	pouaka whakaata, reo irirangi		Papakupu	<i>dictionary</i>	Pitopito kōrero	<i>current events</i>	Pūrākau	<i>narrative</i>	Pūrākau Māori	<i>fable</i>	Pūrongo hauata	<i>accident report</i>	Pūrongo moheni	<i>magazine report</i>	Pūrongo poto	<i>report</i>	Rātaka	<i>diary</i>	Rotarota	<i>poem</i>	Reta	<i>letter</i>	Reta ki te etita	<i>letter to the editor</i>	Taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>	Tuhinga poto	<i>short text</i>	Tuhi tono	<i>request</i>	Tohutohu	<i>instructions</i>	Tūtohunga Kura	<i>school charter</i>	Uiui	<i>interview</i>	Waiata	<i>waiata</i>	Whakamārama	<i>explanation</i>	Whakatautau	<i>role-play</i>	Whakawhiti kōrero	<i>discussion, conversation</i>
Āpiti hanga	<i>appendices</i>																																																																																																																				
Kīwaha	<i>idiom</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero pono	<i>non-fiction</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero tangata	<i>biography</i>																																																																																																																				
Moheni	<i>magazine</i>																																																																																																																				
Momo tuhinga	<i>genre</i>																																																																																																																				
Pāpāho	<i>broadcasting media</i>																																																																																																																				
Paki	<i>narrative</i>																																																																																																																				
Pānuitanga	<i>advertisement</i>																																																																																																																				
Pānui whakamārama	<i>brochure</i>																																																																																																																				
Pukapuka tohutohu	<i>instruction manual</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrongo	<i>report/document</i>																																																																																																																				
Ruri	<i>poetic (text)</i>																																																																																																																				
Tātai oranga	<i>curriculum vitae</i>																																																																																																																				
Tauākī	<i>statement</i>																																																																																																																				
Waituhi whakakata	<i>comic strip</i>																																																																																																																				
Whakatautau	<i>drama</i>																																																																																																																				
Whakaatu-ā-waha	<i>oral presentation</i>																																																																																																																				
Whiti	<i>verse</i>																																																																																																																				
Haka	<i>haka</i>																																																																																																																				
Kauhau	<i>lecture</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero	<i>text, discussion, conversation</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero He Muka	<i>He Muka article</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrerorero	<i>conversation, discussion</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero-ā-rōpū	<i>group discussion</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero huna	<i>code</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero paki	<i>entertaining story</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero pohewa	<i>creative story</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero waea	<i>phone conversation</i>																																																																																																																				
Kōrero whakaatu āhua	<i>description</i>																																																																																																																				
Mihi ōpaki, ōkawa	<i>informal, formal greeting</i>																																																																																																																				
Niupepa	<i>newspaper</i>																																																																																																																				
Pakiwaitara	<i>story</i>																																																																																																																				
Pānui	<i>notice</i>																																																																																																																				
Pānui tūranga wātea	<i>job advertisement</i>																																																																																																																				
Pānuitanga	<i>broadcasting advertisement</i>																																																																																																																				
pouaka whakaata, reo irirangi																																																																																																																					
Papakupu	<i>dictionary</i>																																																																																																																				
Pitopito kōrero	<i>current events</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrākau	<i>narrative</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrākau Māori	<i>fable</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrongo hauata	<i>accident report</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrongo moheni	<i>magazine report</i>																																																																																																																				
Pūrongo poto	<i>report</i>																																																																																																																				
Rātaka	<i>diary</i>																																																																																																																				
Rotarota	<i>poem</i>																																																																																																																				
Reta	<i>letter</i>																																																																																																																				
Reta ki te etita	<i>letter to the editor</i>																																																																																																																				
Taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>																																																																																																																				
Tuhinga poto	<i>short text</i>																																																																																																																				
Tuhi tono	<i>request</i>																																																																																																																				
Tohutohu	<i>instructions</i>																																																																																																																				
Tūtohunga Kura	<i>school charter</i>																																																																																																																				
Uiui	<i>interview</i>																																																																																																																				
Waiata	<i>waiata</i>																																																																																																																				
Whakamārama	<i>explanation</i>																																																																																																																				
Whakatautau	<i>role-play</i>																																																																																																																				
Whakawhiti kōrero	<i>discussion, conversation</i>																																																																																																																				

Ko tētehi atu āhuatanga, ehara hoki ngā momo-kōrero i te rārangi kupu o Te Marautanga Reo Māori i te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i ngā whārangi o taua marautanga. Ka paku titiro ki ētehi o ngā wāhanga o te reo whakaputa, ina te taha kōrero, te taha tuhituhi, ka āpitingia ko ēnei anō momo-kōrero e whai nei. Kei te wāhanga kōrero, ko ēnei: te kōrero pohewa, te whakaaritanga poto, te whakawhiti kōrero, te kōrero paki, te kōrero whakaahua, te kōrero āhua roa tonu. Kei te wāhanga tuhituhi ko ēnei: te tuhinga whakaahua, te pūrongo poto, te whakamārama poto, te kōrero māmā. Atu i te iti o ngā momo-kōrero i *Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori* me te noho marara hoki, ko te mea nui kē, kāore e whakaaturia ana te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero e kaha rangona ana i te reo Māori mō roto i te horopaki mātauranga o ēnei rā, tirohia te Whakaahua 2.12. He tohu pea tēnei tū āhua o ngā momo-kōrero i te marautanga, kāore anō kia āta wānanga i ngā tino āhuatanga o ngā momo-kōrero, arā, te whānui, te whanaungatanga, te whakamārama rānei ki tētehi wāhi kotahi. Ina ngā hua ka puta mō te mahi i te pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori, ehara kau i te mea mō te marautanga noa, engari ia mō ngā kaupapa mātauranga puta noa.

2.5.1 Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa

Nō te tau o muri mai i te whakarewanga o Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, ka whakaputaina he pukapuka anō hei whakahīkoi i te marautanga reo Māori, Ko *Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa*. Tērā tētehi ngohe ka whakarārangi i ngā momo tānga kōrero ki te whārangi kotahi hei āwhina mā te pouako ki te whakauru haere i ngā momo-kōrero nei ki roto i te akomanga. Ko te whakahau, ‘Whakarōpūhia ngā kōrero i runga i ētahi āhuatanga e rite ana ki tēnā momo-kōrero, me tēnā momo-kōrero’ (1997:107). Kua āpitingia atu ngā momo tānga kōrero kei taua whārangi me tētehi anō ngohe me ngā momo-kōrero kei te rārangi kupu:

Te Whakaahua 2.12: He Momo-Kōrero o *Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa*

Text types in Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa

Ngā 'Momo Tānga Kōrero' me ngā Momo-Kōrero i *Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa*³³
Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 1997: 107, 128-130

Ārahi whakamahi māhini	<i>instruction manuals*</i>	Puka tango rongoā	<i>prescription*</i>
Haki	<i>flag</i>	Pūrongo	<i>report</i>
Haurongo	<i>biography</i>	Puka karere ā-waea	<i>fax sheet</i>
Karere	<i>message</i>	Pukapuka motunga kōrero	<i>caption book</i>
Karere ā-waea	<i>fax</i>	Puka whakamana	<i>receipt, docket*</i>
Kāri karere ki/mai i tētahi hoā	<i>notes to/from friends</i>	Rārangi āwhina	<i>checklist</i>
Kauhau	<i>lecture</i>	Rārangi tiroiro	<i>marking schedule</i>
Kauhau hāhi	<i>sermon</i>	Rārangi kai kupu	<i>menu</i>
Kiānga tere-mau	<i>catch phrase</i>	Reta	<i>letter</i>
Kirimana	<i>contract</i>	Reta hoa	<i>letter from/to a friend</i>
Kīrehu	<i>idiom</i>	Reta pakihi	<i>business letter</i>
Kīwaha	<i>colloquialism</i>	Rīrirī	<i>arguments, family arguments</i>
Komekome	<i>back biting gossip</i>	Ruri	<i>poem</i>
Kōrero paki	<i>entertaining story</i>	Tānga kōrero tohutohu	<i>instructional level texts</i>
Kupu whakamārama	<i>glossary, explanation*</i>	Tātaringa pānui	<i>running records</i>
Maioha mate nūpepa	<i>obituaries</i>	Tapanga	<i>label</i>
Mātāre	<i>brochure</i>	Tapanga taonga hokohoko	<i>purchase label</i>
Moheni	<i>magazine</i>	Taurangi	<i>promise</i>
Mōteatea	<i>mōteatea</i>	Tautohe	<i>debate</i>
Muna	<i>gossip</i>	Tīkiti	<i>ticket</i>
Nūpepa	<i>newspaper</i>	Tuhinga ataata	<i>visual text</i>
Paki	<i>story</i>	Tuhinga tohe	<i>expository text</i>
Pānui	<i>notice</i>	Tuhinga tohunga	<i>specialist text</i>
Pānui ārahi	<i>notice?</i>	Tohutohu tao kai	<i>recipe</i>
Pānui ā-ruri	<i>notice?</i>	Tohutohu tōrangapū	<i>political instructions*</i>
Pānui poto	<i>short notice</i>	Tuhinga roa	<i>essay</i>
Pānui tūmatanui	<i>public announcement</i>	Waiata	<i>song</i>
Pānui whakaahua	<i>poster</i>	Whakamihi tangata	<i>acknowledgements*</i>
Pānuitanga	<i>advertisement</i>	Whakawhitinga kōrero	<i>discussion</i>
Pitopito kōrero o te wā	<i>current events</i>	Whārangi tohutohu	<i>instruction page</i>
		Wira	<i>will</i>

Ko tētehi anō kaupapa mātauranga i puta i te tau whai mai o Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, nā Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga anō i whakaputa, ina, *He Rauemi Āwhina*. Ka tāia tētehi whakarārangi o ngā rauemi a Te Pou Taki Kōrero Whāiti mō Te Tāhuhu, ko tāna he whakarārangi akoranga o ngā rauemi reo Māori mai i te tau 1991 ki te tau 96 (Ministry

³³ Kua whakamāoritia ēnei kōrero e te kairangahau kia kitea te whanuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i tēnei rauemi. Kei te tohua pēneitia* i runga i te kore mōhio mēnā e tika ana. Heoi, he nui kē atu ngā momo-kōrero i tēnei rauemi i tā te marautanga reo Māori i puta i te tau i mua mai.

of Education, 1997: 5). Atu i ēnei wāhanga: te ingoa kaituhi, te ingoa rauemi, te kaupapa, te tau whakaputa, ka kōrerohia hoki ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero, heoi, ka whakamahia te kupu ‘āhua’ mō te *type* (reira tonu: 83). E whai mai ana aua momo-kōrero tekau me te whakapākehātanga, ina: Huinga Whānui – *general*; Kaiako – *teacher*, Kōrero Pono – *articles and interviews*, Pakiwaitara – *stories*, Pakiwaituhi – *cartoon*; Rīpene Reo – *audio*; Waiata – *song*, Whakaari – *play*, Whiti – *poetry*; Uiuitunga – *interview*.

Ko ētehi o ngā kupu nei, kāore i te hāngai ki te whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero, ko te Huinga Whānui, te Kaiako me te Rīpene Reo. Ko ētehi atu kupu kāore pea e tika rawa ana te whakaingoa. Hei tauira, he whānui rawa te kupu nei, te kōrero pono, mō te atikara me ngā uiuitunga me te mea hoki ka tāruatia te kupu Pākehā *articles* i roto i tēnei rārangi. Ko tētehi anō raruraru, he torutoru ngā momo-kōrero Māori i tēnei rārangi, pērā i te whakataukī, te karanga, me te whaikōrero. Wai ka hua, he whāiti noa pea ngā momo-kōrero a te Māori i whakaputaina e Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga i ngā tau ki muri. Kāti, kia whakawhiti atu ki tētehi anō kaupapa mātauranga, he mea whakarārangi hoki, engari ia, he nui kē atu ngā momo-kōrero, ngā mea a te Māori, ko Toi Te Kupu.

2.6 Toi Te Kupu

Ko Toi Te Kupu, www.toitekupu.org.nz tētehi kaupapa rangahau hei whakangāwari i te rapunga i ngā rauemi reo Māori kua oti te tā i ngā tau nei (McKinley, 1996). Ina, he pātengi raraunga tēnei e whakarārangihia ana ngā rauemi, ā, āiane kua eke atu te kohinga nei ki te rua mano (Toi Te Kupu, Paenga-whāwhā, 2002). He mea āta whakamārama ia rauemi, nā, ki te toro atu ki tētehi rauemi kotahi i te ipurangi, e rua tekau mā tahi ngā wāhanga whakamārama ki reira, atu i te ingoa, te momo rauemi, te kaituhi tatū atu ki te momo tuhinga (reira tonu). Mō tēnei pepa, ko te wāhanga e kīa nei, te momo tuhinga kei te hāngai pū ki tēnei kaupapa o te momo-kōrero. Ko te tikanga o taua wāhanga he whakamōhio atu, he tohutohu atu, he aha te momo tuhinga. Ko ētehi tauira o reira, ko ēnei: “He kōrero paki tēnei (*Fiction*); He kōrero pono tēnei (*Non-fiction*); He papakupu tēnei (*Dictionary*); He haurongo tēnei. (*Biography*)” (reira tonu).

E rua ngā huarahi rapunga o tēnei pātengi raraunga, he mea whāiti, he mea whānui (Toi Te Kupu, 1999). Ki te pāwhiritia te wāhanga momo tuhinga i te rapunga whānui, e 40 ngā momo-kōrero Māori e takoto mai rā i te tau 2002, kei te Whakaahua 2.13 ēnei. Ko te mahi a te wāhanga nei, he tuku atu ki ngā tū rauemi e mau ana i tēnā momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo-kōrero. Ko tētehi āhuatanga o te whakatakoto o ngā momo-kōrero Māori i Toi Te Kupu, kei te noho tahi ngā kōrero o mua, te waiata, te whaikōrero, te pakiwaitara ki te taha o te kōrero o kō tata nei, te whakaari, te haukiri, te haurongo. Waihoki, ko ētehi he momo-kōrero, ko ētehi anō, āe rā, he momo tuhinga, arā, te pukapuka aratohu kaiako, te pukapuka mahi, te pukapuka matua, te pukapuka tamariki, te tauira niupepa o mua. Ko ētehi atu o ngā kōrero kei te noho tauhou pea ki te kaupānui, pēnei i te kuputohu whakaahua, i te patapatai, i te whakatangatanga pāpāringa, i te mahi aroā whakarongo, i te aha rānei. Tirohia te kupu whakapākehā i te Whakaahua 2.13 kia mārama ake ai, nā te kaupapa Toi Te Kupu hoki aua kupu whakapākehā (J. Forbes, whakawhitinga whaiaro, 21 o Whiringa-a-nuku, 2002). Koia hoki pea tētehi āhuatanga ōrite o ngā kaupapa e rua, o Toi Te Kupu me Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, e noho ngoikore ana te āhua o ngā momo-kōrero nei, arā, atu i te whakapākehātanga, kāore he kupu whakamārama o ngā momo-kōrero mā te kaupānui.

Ko tētehi tino painga o Toi Te Kupu, e mārama ana te kite atu i te nui o tēnā momo, o tēnā momo kua whakaputaina i ngā tau nei. Mehemea ka haere tonu te takoto o ngā rauemi ki runga i te ipurangi ka noho hei taonga, atu i te huarahi rapu rauemi, ka tohua hoki he aha ngā momo-kōrero o roto i ngā rauemi katoa e noho ngoikore ana. Hei tauira, ki te tirohia anōtia te 2.13, he torutoru noa ngā momo-kōrero nei i tāia: te kōrero tohutohu, te haukiri, te panga, te pepeha, te rotarota. Heoi anō, te momo-kōrero e noho nunui ana koia rā ko te kōrero paki, ina e 534 te nui. Koia rā hei huarahi tika mā ngā rōpū pēnei i ngā whare tā, mā te Tāhuhu i te Mātauranga, mā ngā kaituhi reo Māori ki te tohutohu ka pēhea tā rātou whakamomona ake i tēnā momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo-kōrero e noho itiiti ana.

Kua moe tēnei kaupapa i tēnei wā i te mea kāore e whakahou ana te rārangi rauemi o Toi Te Kupu, ā, ka noho kore take ā taihoa tata nei. Koinā te whakahoki kōrero mai a ētehi

kaiuru, e mōhio ana he rauemi pai atu anō nō muri mai i te wā whakamutunga i hoatu ai ngā ingoa rauemi ki runga i Toi Te Kupu. Tērā pea ka maumau noa tēnei kaupapa.

Te Whakaahua 2.13: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i *Toi Te Kupu*

Ngā Momo Tuhinga me te Nui i Toi Te Kupu,

He mea tiki atu i www.toitekupu.org.nz i te marama o Haratua, 2002.

1. Haukiri (2)	autobiography
2. Haurongo (104)	biography
3. Hokinga mahara (72)	recollection
4. Kōrero-ā-iwi (91)	a story from an iwi
5. Kōrero paki (534)	fiction
6. Kōrero pono (356)	non-fiction
7. Kōrero tohutohu (4)	instruction
8. Kōrero-whakatangatanga-pāpāringa (22)	jokes
9. Kuputohu-whakaahua (65)	photographic article
10. Mahi aroā-whakarongo (2)	listening
	Comprehension activity
11. Mōteatea-ā-kōrero (10)	indepth poem
12. Pakiwaitara (28)	story
13. Pakiwaituhi (49)	cartoon
14. Panga (7)	mind teaser
15. Pānui (13)	advertisement
16. Papa kupu (2)	dictionary/glossary
17. Patapatai (28)	interview
18. Pepeha (1)	tribal saying
19. Pitopito kōrero (265)	newspaper article
20. Pukapuka aratohu-Kaiako (32)	teachers' manual
21. Pukapuka mahi (4)	workbook
22. Pukapuka matua (42)	textbook
23. Pukapuka tamariki (15)	children's books
24. Pukapuka waiata (7)	song book
25. Pukapuka whakamārama (7)	explanation book
26. Pūrākau (154)	universal legend
27. Rārangi (3)	directory
28. Rārangi kiwaha (2)	list of kiwaha
29. Rotarota (2)	finger play poem
30. Takawiri arero (1)	tongue twister
31. Tauira niupepa o mua (4)	old Māori newspapers from 1800-1920
32. Tohutaka (12)	recipe
33. Tuhinga tamariki/rangatahi (16)	students' writing
34. Waiata (41)	song
35. Whaikōrero (17)	speeches
36. Whakaari (46)	plays/dramas
37. Whakaaro kōrero (31)	editorial
38. Whakaaturanga (4)	production
39. Whakaputanga whakaaro (46)	opinion
40. Whiti (67)	light verse or poem

2.7 He Puna Kupu Māori

I ngā tau 1980 ko tētehi take e auau ana te whakaputa i ngā whare pukapuka ko te huarahi tika ki te pārongo (Stekely, 1997: 56). Atu i te tau 1989 ki te tau 1994 ka mahia e Te Puna Mātauranga o Aotearoa (National Library of NZ) he kaupapa mō te whakaingoa i ngā kaupapa Māori, *He Puna Kupu Māori* te ingoa (Calvert, 1994: 19). Koia tēnei pātengi raraunga *Te Puna* i puta ai hei huarahi ki te pārongo Māori. He mea whakarārangi kupu Māori tēnei e taea ai te totoro i runga i te ipurangi. Atu i te rua tekau mano ngā kupu e whakarārangihia ana, he papakupu ngāwari te āhua, he honohono kupu te mahi.

Ina ka rapuhia te tikanga o tētehi kupu, he paku whakamārama i reira i roto i ngā reo e rua. He rārangi hoki o ngā peka, arā: *Used For*, ina te kaupapa matua; *Broader Terms*, ina te horopaki o taua kaupapa; *Narrower Terms*, ngā kupu e whai pānga ana ki taua kaupapa; *Related Terms*, he kaupapa atu anō e whai pānga ana ki taua kaupapa matua (tirohia te Whakaahua 2.14).

Nā, ki te kimihia te tikanga o *te reo Māori* mā tēnei pātengi raraunga, mā *Te Puna*, ka whakarārangihia ngā momo-kōrero e auau ana te rangona i te reo Māori, koia ko te Whakaahua 2.14. Ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero kua kitea kētia i ērā anō kaupapa mātauranga, arā, te whaikōrero, te whakataukī, te whakatauākī. Ko ētehi, kua kore e tino hāngai ana ki ngā momo-kōrero Māori, heoi, kei te hāngai kē ki te reo Māori, anā, te *ingoa Māori*, te *ingoa whetū*, te *wiki o te reo Māori*. Ko ētehi atu, kua kitea kētia i ērā atu kaupapa mātauranga, engari, he paku rerekētanga. Mō tēnei kaupapa ka tāpirihia tētehi anō kupu hei tohu i te rerekētanga o te tikanga o te momo-kōrero, mai i te tauira o mua ki te tauira o nāianei, ina te *whaikōrero* ki te *whakataetae whaikōrero*. Ko ētehi anō, kāore e kitea ana i ērā atu kaupapa, ko te *ngerī*, ko te *kōrero Māori*, ko te *pepe takimanawa*, ko te aha atu. Tērā e pōhēhētia he momo-kōrero anō ēnei, heoi anō rā, me tūpato tonu. Ahakoa, ki *Te Puna*, ko te *pepe takimanawa*, ahakoa, ki Toi Te Kupu, ko te *takawiri arero*, ki te tirohia te whakapākehātanga, he rite te aronga o ngā mea e rua, ko te *tongue twister*. Heoi, kāore e mōhiotia ana mēnā he paku rerekētanga o tētehi ki tētehi, he ōrite rānei. Kāti, kia hoki atu ki te whakaaro matua o mua, arā, ki te whakatōpūtia ngā momo-

kōrero o roto i ngā kaupapa nei me whiriwhiri pea te ingoa o ngā momo e mōhiotia whānuitia ana.

Ko tētehi tino painga o *Te Puna*, he mārama te takoto o ngā momo-kōrero i *Narrower Terms*, ā, ki te pāwhiritia ngā momo o reira ka hono atu ai ki ētehi anō momo-kōrero e noho whanaunga ana, te momo-kōrero whānui ki te momo-kōrero whāiti. Hei tauira, ki te whakapā atu ki te kupu tuatahi i te rārangi, ki te *haka*, ko ngā peka i reira:

- Ko te *Used For*, arā, *Maimai, Matohi, Posture dances of the Māori*;
- Ko te *Broader Term*, arā, [*Karakia*], *Reo Māori*;
- Ko te *Narrower Term*, arā, *Haka tauā, Pōkeka: Haka*,
- Ko te *Related Term*, pēnei i te *Ngeri*.

O ēnei peka, ko te wāhi e āhua ngoikore ana, ko te kupu whakamārama. Ka whakawhāititia te tikanga o tēnei momo-kōrero te *haka* ki te kupu itiiti nei, he kanikani Māori (tirohia *Te Puna*). Āpitingia atu ki te tikanga o te momo-kōrero, ki te toro atu ki te momo-kōrero o raro mai i te rārangi momo-kōrero, ki te kupu *karakia*, ka kitea he whāiti rawa taua whakamārama, inā:

I mua, he tono, he whakawhetai, nā te tohunga ki ngā atua mō tana kaupapa. He whakatapu, he whaiwhaiā anō tētahi āhuatanga. Waiho i tērā, ahakoa ināianei he tono, he whakawhetai nā te katoa ki te Atua, ki a Ihu Karaiti.

Te Whakaahua 2.14: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i te Pātengi Raraunga nei, i *Te Puna*

He me tiki atu i http://aotea.natlib.govt.nz/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi?vl=2&ti=1,2&Search_Arg=reo+maori&SL=None&Search_Code=FT*&PID=8709&CNT=25&SEQ=20021021144612&SID=1 i te marama o Paenga-whāwhā, 2002

NATIONAL LIBRARY OF NEW ZEALAND  TE PUNA MĀTAURANGA O AOTEAROA

You are here: Te Puna> Subscriber Services > Search

New Database	New Search	Help	Titles List	Search History	Login	Request
Help	Exit					

Top of Form

You are connected to He Puna Kupu Māori

Search Request: Keyword Relevance Search = reo maori

Search Results: Displaying 2 of 624 entries

Previous  Next

Quick View

Detailed View

MARC View

REO MĀORI

Relevance: ●●●●●●

Descriptor: REO MĀORI

Item Type: Thesaurus Term (Descriptor)

Thesaurus: He Puna Kupu Māori

Scope Note: General

The general modern Māori language, as distinct from tribal dialects (reo ā iwi) or classical literary Māori (reo o neherā). For the types of literary composition in classical Māori see the NTs.

Ko te *reo* Māori o te ao hou, me ōna rerenga kētanga i ngā *reo* ā iwi me te *reo* o neherā.

Used For: MĀORI LANGUAGE

Broader Term: [POLYNESIAN LANGUAGES]

TAONGA MĀORI

Narrower Term: HAKA

INGOA MĀORI

INGOA WHETŪ

KARAKIA

KŌRERO MĀORI

KUPU WHAKAARI

MIHIMIHI

NGERI

PEPE TAKIMANAWA

PEPEHA

PŪRĀKAU

REO Ā IWI

REO O NEHERĀ

REO ROTAROTA

RERENGA KŌRERO

TUHITUHINGA Ā RŌPŪ

TUHITUHINGA MĀORI

TUHITUHINGA RŌPŪ

WAIATA MĀORI

WHAIKŌRERO

WHAKATAETAE WHAIKŌRERO

WHAKATAUAKĪ

WHAKATAUKĪ

WIKI O TE REO MĀORI

Related Term: KOHANGA REO

MĀORI LANGUAGE RADIO

MĀORI LANGUAGE TELEVISION

MĀORI STUDIES

TRANSLATIONS FROM MĀORI

TRANSLATIONS INTO MĀORI

Me uaua ka tau ki tētehi whakamārama momo-kōrero e tautokona katoatia ai e te iwi huri noa, heoi anō, me tūpato kei whārikihia te tikanga o te momo-kōrero ki tētehi kaupapa pēnei i *Te Puna*, i Toi Te Kupu, ānō nei tē taea tētehi anō kupu whakamārama, ā, ka toka atu. Koinā pea te painga o tā Crombie mā, o tā August mahi mō te whakawhanake i tētehi whakamārama o ngā momo-kōrero Māori - te reta me te oriori - ki ngā huarahi nei, ki te *rhetorical discourse*, ki te *stylistics* (August, 2001; Crombie & Houia-Roberts, 2001). Ki te whakamahia he kupu whakamārama, me whai kē pea tētehi huarahi e tōtika ai taua kupu whakamārama.

Mō te whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero i te mutunga o tēnei Wāhanga, ka waiho ēnei kōrero e whai nei ki tāhaki i te mea e hara pea i te momo-kōrero: ingoa Māori, ingoa whetū, reo-ā-iwi, reo o neherā, wiki o te reo Māori. Ka pūmau hoki ki te takoto o ngā kōrero kia whai i tā te whārangi i te ipurangi takoto, ahakoa ko ētehi o ngā kōrero, he pai kē atu mēnā ka takoto ki raro i ētehi atu kupu whānui. Ko te pūrākau tērā mō raro i te kōrero Māori, ko te ngeri tērā mō raro i te haka (Kāretu, 1994: 41), i te waiata rānei, ko te mihimihi tērā mō raro i te whaikōrero. Ko te mea hoki i te Whakaahua 2.15, ko ngā mea e noho MIRAMIRA³⁴ ana, koia rā ngā tino momo-kōrero Māori ki tā *Te Puna*, me kī, koia rā ngā momo-kōrero matua, ā, ko ērā anō i raro iho, koia rā ngā peka. Ka tāpirihia ēnei tino momo-kōrero ki te whakarārangi i te Whakaahua 2.15, i runga i te mōhio e hia kē nei ngā momo waiata i raro iho i te waiata Māori. Kia mōhiohia hoki, ko ngā kupu whakapākehā i te Whakaahua 2.15 o ngā momo-kōrero o *Te Puna*, he mea tiki atu, he mea whakarāpopoto o taua ipurangi tonu, o *Te Puna*.

Ko tētehi o ngā kupu matua nei, koia ko te poroporoaki tūpāpaku. Koia tā *Te Puna* mō ngā poroporoaki kua tuhia, kua oti te tā, kua oti te whakaputa i te niupepa, i te moheni, i hea rānei. E whai ana *Te Puna* i tā Te Taura Whiri hanga i te kupu hou, arā te āpiti atu i tētehi anō kupu ki te hono atu i te tikanga hou (Cleave, 2000:11). Ko te raru nui mō te poroporoaki tūpāpaku, he aha i āpiti ai te kupu tūpāpaku ki tēnei momo-kōrero? Kāore pea e whai ana i te whakamārama o tēnei momo-kōrero, he pai kē ki te tāpiri atu i te kupu tā kia mōhiohia ai te rerekētanga, atu i te kupu tūturu, poroporoaki, ki te tupuranga o tēnei

³⁴ bold

momo-kōrero hou, te poroporoaki tā, ā, mai i te kōrero ki te tuhituhi. He pērā anō te kupu ‘tuhituhinga Māori’, he aha te hē o te ‘reta tawhito’. He āhua rite hoki te ‘pūmahara’, ko te hokinga mahara pea te mea e tino mōhiohia ana, heoi, ki te whai i te whakamārama mō te pūmahara, ina he hokinga mahara ake tērā o ngā kaumātua Māori. Tērā pea ko te hokinga mahara te kupu whānui, kātahi ko te pūmahara. Pērā hoki i te waiata Māori, he aha te take ko tērā hei kupu matua, heoi, koinā hoki ki a Tā Apirana (Ngata & Jones, 1959: xi). Mō te whakaingoa i te momo-kōrero Māori, kia haere tonu pea te matapaki, te wānanga i ēnei take.

Ko tētehi anō take mō te whakaingoa, he rerekē te whakamahia o te tikanga o te ingoa ‘rotarota’ i *Te Puna*, i Toi Te Kupu. Kei te tautoko ake *Te Puna* i tā Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori whakamahi i te kupu rotarota, he whakawhitinga ā-ringa, kore kau he whakawhitinga ā-kupu (Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, 1997: 230). Heoi, tā Toi Te Kupu, he whai i tā te horopaki mātauranga whakamahi, arā, he mōteatea tōna rite, ka whai kupu me te korikori ngātahi o te tinana (Nohotima, 2001: 4) Koia ko te kupu ōrite, engari he rerekē te tikanga. Heoi anō, ko te tikanga ōrite, engari he rerekē te kupu, koia ko te pepe takimanawa me te takawiri arero. Ko rāua anō rāua, ki tā te whakapākehātanga engari he ingoa kē i Toi Te Kupu, i *Te Puna*. He take wānanga ēnei mō te whiriwhiri i te ingoa e tika ana hei whakaari i te tikanga o te momo-kōrero. Wai ka hua, wai ka tohu e rua kē ngā aronga mō te ingoa kotahi, e rua kē rānei ngā ingoa mō te momo-kōrero kotahi, neke atu rānei. Heoi, ko tā te pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori he whakaari i ēnei āhuatanga.

Te Whakaahua 2.15: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i *Te Puna*, i Toi Te Kupu, i Te Tauākī
Maraunga Reo Māori me Ētehi Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori

<i>Te Puna</i> http://aotea.natlib.govt.nz/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi Paengawhāwhā, 2002.		
1.	Haka:	posture dance
2.	Haka tauā	war dance
3.	Pōkeka	chant with actions
4.	Karakia:	intoned incantation
5.	Karakia tene	extemporised karakia
6.	Karakia-tuku iho	traditional pre-christian karakia
7.	Ātahu	type of karakia to cause love
8.	Ritenga Māori	customary spiritual practices
9.	Ritenga Hiki-Tapu	ritual for lifting tapu
10.	Māhukihuki	ritual for lifting tapu
11.	Ritenga-Whakatapu	ritual for placing tapu
12.	Kōrero Māori:	Māori narrative
13.	Pakiwaitara	fictional story
14.	Kōrero Parau	fictional story
15.	Pakimaero	fictional story
16.	Kupu Whakaari:	prophetic saying
17.	Mihimihī:	formal exchange of speeches
18.	Ngeri:	rhythmic chant
19.	Pepe Taki-Manawa:	tongue twister
20.	Pepeha:	tribal saying
21.	Poroporoaki-Tūpāpaku	published obituaries
22.	Pūmahara	memories and recollections of Māori elders
23.	Pūrākau:	traditional story, historical and legend
24.	Reo o Nehe Rā:	classical Māori
25.	Reo Rotarota:	sign language
26.	Rerenga Kōrero:	social commentary or criticism
27.	Tuhituhinga-ā-rōpū:	archives of Māori organisations
28.	Tuhituhinga Rōpū	archives of Māori organisations
29.	Tuhituhinga Māori:	historic letters of 19 th Century
30.	Waiata Māori:	general term for sung or chanted songs
31.	Karanga	semi-sung chant of welcome
32.	Oriori	songs for children
33.	Pao	impromptu song
34.	Pātere	chant or song
35.	Waiata-matakite	prophetic songs
36.	Waiata Oha	song to make others join an avenging party
37.	Waiata Poi	song to accompany poi dancing
38.	Waiata Tawhito	traditional melodic chants
39.	Harihari	work song of unison
40.	Waiata Aroha	song of affection
41.	Waiata-ā-ringa	movement song as a public performance
42.	Waiata Tangi	Māori funeral rite song
43.	Waiata Whaiāipo	romantic song
44.	Whaikōrero:	
45.	Poroporoaki	formal farewell speech
46.	Tauparapara:	incantation
47.	Whakamutunga Kōrero	valedictory material
48.	Whakataetae Kōrero:	Māori oratory contest
49.	Whakatauākī	Māori proverb
50.	Whakataukī	Māori proverb

2.8 He Whakarārangi Momo-Kōrero

Tēnei e whai nei ngā momo-kōrero o te horopaki mātauranga kua oti te tā. Ko tētehi take ohorere nei, ka tae atu ki tēnei kaupapa, ki *Te Puna*, kātahi ka kitea tēnei taonga kī ki tā te Māori titiro, ko te karakia, e takoto mai ana. Koia pea te raruraru o te whakamahi i te rauemi hei hanga i tētehi rārangi momo-kōrero. Auare ake. He mea hou te whakakao pēnei ki te whakakao ki te wāhi kotahi hei painga mō te ako reo. Ā, ko tā tēnei rārangi he kōkiri whakamua i te kaupapa nei, i te hanga tātai momo-kōrero.

Kua tangohia ētehi o ngā kupu i runga i te mea, ka taka kē i raro i te karangatanga whānui o tētehi atu kupu. Pēnei i ngā momo pānui, i ngā momo pukapuka, i ngā momo pūrongo. Ko tētehi atu raruraru, ko te tāruatia. He ōrite te whakatautau me te whakaari, ki tā te whakapākehātanga he *drama*. Mehemea e rua ngā kupu mō te whakaaro kotahi, kua tīkina atu te kupu tuatahi kei te papakupu a Ryan (2002). Nō reira, ko te patapatai me te uiui, ko te uiuinga; ko te kōrero-whakatangatanga-pāpāringa, ko te whakakata. Tērā pea he kōrero paki kē tēnei mea te whakakata ki tā te Māori, heoi, me waiho pea te ‘whakakata’ mō ērā momo whakakata e taka mai ana i te reo Pākehā, ā, kua whakamāoritia. Waihoki, ki te tangohia mai tētehi o ngā momo-kōrero, kei te Āpitihanga 1 te katoa e takoto mai ana.

Nā, kia hoki noa ake ki ngā whakaaro o Crystal (2003) rāua ko Kucer (2005). Arā, he rerekē te reo o tēnā o tēnā, ka mutu, he rerekē te mōhiotanga ki ngā momo-kōrero o tēnā, o tēnā. Ki te kōrerohia te momo-kōrero, ka mōhiotia he mea whakatuputupu te rārangi momo-kōrero e whai nei, ā, ka hurihia tōna āhua i runga i te mōhio me te hiahia o tēnā tangata, o tēnā rōpū, o tēnā kaupapa, o tēnā wā. Heoi, i tēnei wā, i tēnei wāhi, anei te roanga atu o ngā momo-kōrero e kitea ana i te horopaki mātauranga.

Heoi, he nui tonu ngā pātai e tārewa tonu ana: kāore e mōhiotia ana e hia ngā mea i tāia; he aha rānei tētehi tauira pai o ia momo-kōrero; he aha rānei te hanganga o ia momo-kōrero; he kupu ōrite rānei tā ia momo-kōrero; ki hea rānei kimihia ai tētehi o aua tauira pai. Kāti rā, me waiho pea ērā pātai mā rangahau kē e whakaea kei kotiti tēnei o ngā kaupapa rangahau.

Te Whakaahua 2.16: He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero o Ētehi Kaupapa Mātauranga

He Pukapuka Whakaako Reo Māori, Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori, Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa, Toi Te Kupu, Te Puna

1. Āpitihangā	appendices	47. Pānui	notice
2. Haka	vigorous dance	48. Pānui whakaahua	poster
3. Haukiri	autobiography	49. Pānuitanga	advertisement
4. Haurongo/kōrero tangata	biography	50. Pānui whakamārama	brochure
5. Hokinga mahara	memoirs, recollection	51. Papakupu	dictionary
6. Karakia	intoned incantation	52. Pepeha	tribal maxim
7. Karanga	formal call	53. Takawiri arero	tongue twister
8. Karere	message	54. Pitopito kōrero (o te wā)	current events, newspaper
9. Karere ā-waea	fax		
10. Kāri karere ki/mai i tētahi hoa	notes to/from friends	55. Poroporoaki	article
11. Kauhau	lecture	56. Poroporoaki tā	farewell
12. Kīanga tere-mau	catch phrase		published
13. Kirimana	contract	57. Pūrākau	farewell
14. Kīrehu	idiom	58. Pūrongo	origin narrative
15. Kīwaha	idiom, colloquialism		report,
16. Komekome	back biting gossip	59. Rārangi	document
17. Kōrero	text, discussion, conversation	60. Rārangi kīwaha	directory
18. Kōrero ahiahi	idle story	61. Rātaka	list of kīwaha
19. Kōrero He Muka	He Muka article	62. Rerenga kōrero	diary
20. Kōrerorero	conversation, discussion	63. Reta	social criticism
21. Kōrero-ā-iwi	tribal literature	64. Ruri	letter
22. Kōrero-ā-rōpū	group discussion		poetic, ditty,
23. Kōrero huna	code	65. Rotarota	nursery rhyme,
24. Kōrero Māori	Māori narrative		poem, finger
25. Kōrero paipera	biblical writing		poem
26. Kōrero paki	entertaining story	66. Tauparapara	opening chant
27. Kōrero pohewa	creative story	67. Taupatupatu	debate
28. Kōrero pono	non-fiction	68. Tuhi tono	request
29. Kōrero waea	phone conversation	69. Tohutaka	recipe
30. Kōrero whakaatu āhua	description	70. Tohutohu	instructions
31. Kuputōhu-whakaahua	photographic article	71. Uiuinga	interview
32. Kupu whakaari	prophetic saying	72. Waiata	song
33. Kupu whakamārama	glossary, explanation*	73. Waituhi whakaata	comic strip
34. Mahi aroā-whakarongo	listening comprehension	74. Whaikōrero	speech, debate
35. Maioha mate nūpepa	obituaries	75. Whakaari	plays/dramas
36. Mātārere	brochure	76. Whakaaro kōrero	editorial
37. Mihi	introduction, greeting	77. Whakaatu-ā-waha	oral
38. Moheni	magazine		presentaion
39. Mōteatea	lament	78. Whakaaturanga	production
40. Mōteatea-ā-kōrero	poetry	79. Whakakata	joke
41. Muna	gossip	80. Whakamārama	explanation
42. Nūpepa	newspaper	81. Whakapapa	genealogy
43. Paki	narrative	82. Whakaputanga whakaaro	opinion
44. Pakiwaitara	legend	83. Whakatauākī	specific
45. Pakiwaituhi	cartoon		proverb
46. Panga	riddle	84. Whakataukī	general proverb
		85. Whakawhiti kōrero	discussion,
			conversation
		86. Waituhi whakakata	comic strip
		87. Whiti	verse, poem

2.9 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Taka mai ana ki ēnei rā, atu i ngā kōrero o te marae, e rangona ana, otirā e kitea ana ngā momo-kōrero huhua i roto tonu i te reo Māori whakaakona ai i ngā puna wānanga: i te kōhanga reo, i te kura kaupapa Māori, i te whare wānanga, i te whare pukapuka, i te ipurangi, i hea atu anō. E hia kē nei ngā momo-kōrero Māori me mau i te ākongia kia puta ai te ihu i ngā wānanga nei. Ko te wawata kau, kia ‘whakatakoto tikanga e āhei ai te iwi ki te whakapakari i āna kōrero, karakia, whakataukī, waiata tawhito, karanga, mōteatea-ā-kōrero, haka, poroporoaki, whakairo; ako hoki i te tamaiti kia mōhio ko wai ia’ (Black, 1999: 407). Nei rā tētehi rārangi kia mārakerake ai te kite atu i te whakautu ki te pātai, he aha tēnei mea te momo-kōrero?

E kitea mai ana i te Whakaahua 2.16 te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero Māori kua tupu nei i roto i ngā tau mō roto i te horopaki mātauranga hei aratakinga mā te pouako, mā te whare tā, mā te kaituhi. Ka mutu, ko te rārangi nei ngā momo-kōrero e tāia ana. Arā atu anō pea ngā momo-kōrero kei rō akomanga, kei rō kaupapa kē kāore i reira. Kāti. Kua oti pea ngā momo-kōrero mai i ngā rauemi reo Māori te whakakao. Kua tipakohia mai ngā momo-kōrero i ngā kaupapa mātauranga nui nei, i *Te Tauākī Marautanga Reo Māori*, i *Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa*, i Toi Te Kupu, i *Te Puna*. Ahakoa ehara taua rārangi i te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero Māori o roto i te ao kōrero Māori i tēnei wā, he tīmatanga ake. Koia hoki hei tūāpapa mō te waihanga ake i tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori e whakaaria ai te huhua o ngā momo kōrero a te Māori o te rautau rua mano me te whanaungatanga o tētehi ki tētehi ā taihoa ake. Kia ahatia? Kia nahanahatia te momo-kōrero kia māmā ai mā te hunga ako te toro atu.

Nā, i roto i te rangahautanga o te *literacy* o te hunga mātātupu, ka tirohia e te rōpū Kia Ata Mai ngā take e pā ana ki taua whakatipuranga³⁵. Tērā ka puta *He Mātai Matatupu* hei aromatawai i te taha pānui me te taha tuhituhi o ngā tamariki Māori. I taua rangahautanga

³⁵ Tirohia <http://www.kiaatamai.org.nz/research.htm>

e whakahaeretia ana ka puta pēnei mai te whakahau a te nuinga o ngā kaiako mō ngā momo-kōrero:

O ngā pouako 21, ka kīa e te tekau mā whitu me nui ake te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero pēnei i te mōteatea, i te taotaka, i te kōrero pono, i te waiata, i te whakaari, i te ruri, i te aha atu anō^{ix} (Kia Atamai, 2004).

Mā tēnei rangahau e āwhina te kaupapa nei, inā, ki te pātaia te pātai he aha rā te whānuitanga, ā, kei konei.

Nā, e tika ana pea kia whātoro atu ki ētehi anō kaupapa whakaora i te reo Māori kia tōtika ai te rārangi momo-kōrero i mua i te whakanahanahatanga. Arā, ko te hapori, ko te pāpāho whānui, ko te kaupapa here, ko te whakawhanake kaimahi (Durie, 1998:63). Kātahi pea ka tika te whakamahia o tētehi pūnaha momo-kōrero inā ka tirohia ēnei kaupapa whakaora reo me ngā huarahi hei whakarōpū i te huhua o ngā momo-kōrero nei.

Ngā Whakataukātanga i te Reo Ingarihi

ⁱ Words were uttered with great caution, lest they be regarded as an insult or breach of etiquette and provoke punishment. This concept is expressed in the proverb, 'He tao rākau e taea te karo; he tao kī, e kore e taea'.

ⁱⁱ [Publishing] group broadly as: grammars, dictionaries and language tutors; social, political and religious literature, including newspapers and translations from English; reproduction of the oral tradition; and literary genres.

ⁱⁱⁱ [(‘genre’) a literary category], defined by thematic as well as formal criteria, and indicating a historical existant type...

^{iv} Genre System. A set of genres that is understood to form a coherent system of some kind; or a theoretical model that offers a comprehensive list of genres and an explanation of the relations between them.

^v We must engage students with stories, poems, plays, essays, novels, and films that stir their imaginations, thoughts, and feelings. We must encourage, promote and teach students how to ask sound interpretive and evaluative questions...asking questions leads to a deeper understanding of texts and of ourselves.

^{vi} The aim of any literacy program, therefore, should be to teach students to construct a wide range of texts; and to interpret a wide range of texts constructed by others within and beyond the social and cultural contexts in which they live. To do this students need to understand that:

- Different types of texts exist
- Texts serve different social purposes
- Texts are typically structured in particular ways
- We make choices from the resources of the language system to construct texts to achieve particular social purposes
- We choose how to present our texts depending on our purpose and audience
- We interpret texts constructed by others by understanding how and why particular texts have been constructed
- We use our knowledge of oral, written, and audiovisual text structures when we interpret texts constructed by others.

^{vii} We need to be aware of these findings and supportive of young children's interest in language, sounds, nonsense and play with words. This suggests a curriculum rich in many kinds of music, songs, poetry, chants, riddles, tongue-twisters and jokes, as well as all kinds of verbal nonsense, from 'knock, knock' jokes and 'raps' to Spoonerisms, traditional and contemporary nonsense verse and Dr. Seuss.

^{viii} It is, therefore, not a simple matter to establish a typology of text types. Thus, (a) although some text types are likely to be recognised by most members of a society, others may not be, and (b) as society and culture changes, so do text types.

^{ix} Seventeen teachers out of 21 indicated that a greater variety of genres was required (poetry, recipes, non-fiction, songs, plays, poems, and so on).

TE WĀHANGA TUATORU

Te Whakamahere i ngā Momo-Kōrero Māori

Me whakapono koutou ka tāea e ngā whānau te poipoi i ā rātou
tamariki, mā te reo Māori...

Iritana Tawhiwhirangi¹

Whakapūmautia te whakatairanga i te reo, ā, kōrerotia te ahi kā o ngā
taonga tuku iho o tuawhakarere kei roto i ngā pepeha, kōrero tipua,
karanga, whaikōrero, waiata, apakura, oriori, karakia, kei roto rā i ngā
mahi whakaari a tāua a te iwi Maori.

Haare Williams (1995:2)

Te Tau o te Reo Māori

3.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

3.2 He Kupenga Hao i ngā Momo-Kōrero

3.2.1 Tā te Hapori

3.2.2 Tā te Kaupapa Here me te Whakatairanga

3.2.3 Tā te Pāpāho Whānui

3.2.4 He Momo-Kōrero Tā ia Kaupapa

3.3 He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero

3.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero: te Katoa, ngā Mea Whai Mana Rānei?

3.5 Te Whakamahere i ngā Momo-Kōrero

3.6 He Tātai Momo-Kōrero

3.7 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

¹ Te Puni Kōkiri. (2003:11).

3.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

E rua ngā taha o tēnei Wāhanga. Tuatahi ake, he titiro ki ētehi anō horopaki reo Māori kia haere tonu te whakakao i ngā momo-kōrero. Ko te hāpori te wāhi matua inā ka ora te reo Māori o reira kātahi ka ora rawa atu te reo. Ā, kua kaha te tupu o te pāpāho, reo irirangi mai, teihana pouaka whakaata mai i ngā tau tata nei me ngā momo-kōrero e putaputa mai ana. Heoi, he whai wāhi mai hoki tā te tari kāwanatanga ki te whakaora i te reo Māori me ngā momo-kōrero. Koia rā ka āpitingia ia momo-kōrero ki te rārangi momo-kōrero o te upoko tuarua hei tūāpapa mō te hanga pūnaha momo-kōrero. Tuarua, ko te take nui o tēnei Wāhanga, ko te hanga tātai momo-kōrero. Ka matapakina ētehi take mō te whakarōpū i ngā momo-kōrero torutoru nei. Ka mutu, ka whakaaturia ētehi mahere momo-kōrero hei aratakinga mā te pouako, ā, mā te hāpori reo Māori whānui anō hoki. I te maha o ngā momo-kōrero whānui tonu, ki te kore tātou e whakanahanaha i te reo, ko te hōhonutanga o te reo te utu.

3.2 He Kupenga Hao i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Ki tā Durie (1998: 63) mō te whakaora i te reo Māori, e waru ngā tino aronga (tirohia Te Whakaahua 3.1). He āhua pērā anō tā Christensen, heoi ka whakarāpopotohia kia whā kē ngā aronga, inā rā: ko te kāinga me te whānau; ko ngā wāhi mana Māori pēnei i te marae, i te wānanga, i te kōhanga reo; ko ngā whakahaere o te hāpori pēnei i te karapu hākinakina; ka mutu, ko ngā wāhi tūmatanui pērā i te kura, i ngā tari kāwanatanga (tirohia Christensen, 2001: 228). Kua kōrerotia kētia i te Wāhanga Tuarua ngā momo tuhinga me ētehi momo-kōrero e taka mai ana i te kaupapa mātauranga. Ka paku timotimo atu ki ētehi anō kaupapa hei whakamomona i ngā momo-kōrero atu i te horopaki mātauranga. Mā reira e kitea atu ai kei tēnā kaupapa, kei tēnā kaupapa he tino momo-kōrero, ā, ko ētehi momo-kōrero kāore e rangona ana i ētehi atu horopaki. Kua pakari haere ētehi kaupapa i roto i ngā tau tata nei, ā, tērā e kitea te pakari haere o ētehi anō momo-kōrero o roto o ia kaupapa.

Te Whakaahua 3.1: He Huarahi hei Whakaora i Te Reo Māori

He mea hanga i tā Durie, 1998: 63

Te Aronga

He Kaupapa

Hapori	Whānau, marae, wānanga
Pāpāho whānui	Reo irirangi, pouaka whakaata, tānga kōrero
Kaupapa Here me te Whakatairanga	Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga Te Puni Kōkiri
Kura mā te hunga ririki	Kōhanga Reo
Kura Tuatahi	Kura Kaupapa Māori Akomanga reo rua me ngā wāhanga kura
Kura Tuarua me ngā Wānanga	Kura tuarua, kura matatini, whare wānanga, wānanga Māori
Rauemi Reo Māori	Toi te Kupu, Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga
Whakawhanake Kaimahi	Kaiako reo Māori

3.2.1 Tā te Hapori

Ko te kāinga te pātūwatawata o te reo. Ki te kore e ora te reo i te kāinga me te hapori tata, ā, ki te kore e tika te tuku ihotanga o te reo, tērā e kore rawa te reo e ora (tirohia tā Christensen 2001: 36-42 mō te heke o te reo i roto i te kāinga) Ki tā Christensen (2001) i roto i tana tuhinga kairangi ‘kua heke haere te tokomaha o ngā tamariki e pakeke mai ana i te taiao reo Māori i ō rātou kāinga, e hopu ana i te reo Māori mā ō rātou taringa’ (reira tonu: 165). Heoi anō tēnei, kei te whawhai tonu ētehi mātua kia reo Māori ō rātou kāinga, ahakoa he reotahi, he reorua ngā mātua. I te rangahautanga a Tangaere (1997) ka tuhia āna rongotanga i tana pēpi, i a Rangi, i a ia e hopu ana, e ako ana i te reo Māori. Tekau mā waru marama te pakeke, ka taunga ki ētehi kupu; ka rua tekau marama, ka taunga ki ētehi waiata e rua. Ka rua ngā tau me te whā marama, ka mōhio ki ngā waiata e iwa me te

whakawhiti kōrero i runga waea. Ka tīmata a Rangi ki te Kōhanga Reo, ka whakawhitia ngā tūmomo kōrero mai o reira ki te kāinga, pēnei i te mihimihi, i ngā tūmomo kēmu reo hoki. Waihoki,

Ka āhei ngā tamariki ki te mōhio mā roto i te tāruatanga ia rā, ia rā ā rātau karakia, ā rātau hīmene, me ā rātau waiata, he waiata anō mō tēnā, mō tēnā takunetanga (Tangaere, 1997: 31).

Kei te tautoko a Simon (1991) i te whakamahinga i ēnei momo-kōrero ki roto i te kāinga, i te marae, i te hapori whānui. I tana pukapuka *He Whakaaro Kōrero* ka tuhia he kōrero paki i whakamārama ai i ētehi whakaahua āna o te whānau mai i te tirohanga ā-karu o te tamaiti tonu. Anei ngā momo-kōrero āna e whakakāhahu ana i tana kōrero: he mihimihi, he waiata, he whakamārama, he whakawhiti kōrero, he haka, he kīrehu, he ruri, he karakia, he whaikōrero, he hokinga mahara, he pepeha. He whānui tonu ngā momo-kōrero e purutia ana e ētehi o ngā whānau kōrero Māori.

Tērā anō te wā ka tiakina tētehi momo-kōrero motuhake e tētehi whānau kotahi. Ā, ka tukuna iho i tēnā whakatupuranga, ki tēnā whakatipuranga. E meatia ana ‘Ko te iwi Māori tētahi iwi kaha ki te haka, ki te waiata, ki te whakangahau, ki te rotarota’ (Nohotima, 2003a: 5). Ki te whānau Nohotima (Nohotima & Nohotima, 2003c) koia tētehi o ngā tino momo-kōrero, ko te rotarota. He tino waiata tērā e waiatatia ana e te kuia, e te māmā, e te tamaiti i roto i tōna kāinga. Kei te Whakaahua 3.2 ngā momo-kōrero me ētehi āheinga reo i tōna ake kāinga atu i te tau 1920 ki te tau 1988 e ai ki tā Peti Nohotima tonu.

Te Whakaahua 3.2: He Āheinga Reo, he Momo-Kōrero i te Kāinga

Language functions and text types in the home

Nohotima, kauwhau, 2003c Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi

Reo whakatau	Whakatakariri	Pukuriri
Inoi	Whakaipoipo	Tohetohe
Rotarota	Whakakata	Reo āki
Whakahaere	Kīwaha	
Whakanui	Tohutohu	

Koia pea hei whakatauiratanga i ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana i te kāinga. Ā, kāore e kore he rerenga kētanga atu anō i ēnei i runga nei. Arā ētehi anō momo-kōrero kē atu e pupuritia ana ki tēnā kāinga, ki tēnā kāinga, ki tēnā iwi, ki tēnā iwi. Kei te momo whānau, ko te momo-kōrero. Hei tauira, koia tā tētehi o ngā kaiuru mō ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana ki tōna kāinga, ā, ngā momo-kōrero e mau ana i āna tamariki. Tērā ka kitea he momo-kōrero pea tā tēnā whānau, tā tēnā whānau:

...i tipu ake rāua i roto i aua kōrero, i pakeke ake. Kei te rongo rāua i ngā kōrero, haere mai rāua i te taha i a au i roto i ngā hui raupatu i roto i ngā wāhi katoa, ana koirā te kaupapa i pērā ai. Ngā mahi whakapapa, ngā mahi kōrero, he nui ngā wā ka haere mai ngā tāngata ki taku kāinga i roto i ā mātou hui raupatu, kua hui mātou i roto i te kīhini, kōrero noa iho. Ana, i reira kua kōrero au, kei reira rāua e haututu ana, e tākaro ana, kua rongo i ngā kōrero, kua puta ngā whakaaro... Aua āhuatanga katoa. Whakatakoto kōrero, whakahoki kōrero, whakatinana kōrero i roto i te kōrerorero. I roto i taku whānau ake, kua whakarerihia he kōrero i runga i ngā rīpene mā ngā tamariki. Ana i te wā ka hoki atu mātou ki te kāinga, ka maka noa atu te rīpene i roto mīhini, ana kua whakarongo rātou, e rima haora mātou e hoki ki te kāinga, e rima haora e wānanga ana.

Kaiuru Tuawaru

Nā, ko tētehi take matua pea i te hāpori whānui, me uaua ka rongō i te reo ki waho atu i te kāinga. Koia anō tā Christensen ‘I aue katoa mai te hunga mātua o roto i ngā kaiuru, ki te itiiti o ngā wāhi reo Māori o te hāpori’(2001: 167). Koia rā te take e putaputa ai ētehi o ngā karapu hākinakina hei wāhi kōrero Māori atu anō.

Ko tētehi rōpū hākinakina e tautoko ana i te whakaoranga i te reo Māori ko Jaradites Kuaka, he tīma whutupōro i Kirikiriroa. Kei tā rātou paetukutuku i Te Kete Ipurangi tēnei kupu whakamārama,

Kua whakatūria te tīma nei i runga i te aroha ki ngā tamariki o te kōhanga reo e hiahia ana ki te purei whutupōro me te kōrerorero tonu i te reo rangatira. Nō reira, ko te reo Māori anake ka rongona i ngā parakitahi me ngā whakahaere katoa o te tīma nei (Jaradites Kuaka, Te Kete Ipurangi, 2004).

Kei te ipurangi hoki ngā hokinga mahara o ngā kēmu kua oti te tākarokaro. He mea nui te whakairitanga o ēnei tini momo-kōrero ki waho o te kāinga me te kura kia rangona, kia kitea e ngā tamariki he taiao reo Māori. He mea ako, ahakoa kāore i te āta ākona. Me kī, he ako i te momo-kōrero mā roto i te horopaki ōpaki, kāore e riro ana mā te āta whakaako a te kura.

Ko tētehi anō hākinakina e whakaora ana i te reo Māori me te hākinakina, ko te rōpū maka kōpae nei, e kīa nei ko Kia Mataara i Papaioea. Ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana i runga i te whira, ko te whakawhiti kōrero, ko te tohutohu ki waenga i a rātou, ko ngā hāparangi a te hunga mātakitaki, ko te waiata, ko te haka rānei i te mutunga iho (J. Tapiata, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Pipiri, 2004). Ka mutu, ko te mihimihi anō hoki ina wānanga ana rātou. Kua whakaarohia hoki e rātou te hanga rauemi hei whakamārama i ngā tohutohu o te kēmu ki roto i te reo Māori, ā, kua tonoa atu te pūtea Mā te Reo (W. Edwards, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Hereturi-kōkā, 2004). Ki te tupu te maha o ngā karapu hākinakina e hāpai ana i te reo Māori, ka tupu ngātahi ngā momo-kōrero kāore e rangona ana ki waho atu o taua horopaki hākinakina. Pēnei tonu i te hāparangi hākinakina.

He nui tonu ngā tūmomo hui a te Māori ki te marae. He nui hoki ngā momo-kōrero o ia tūmomo hui. Ina huihui ana te Māori mō te tangihanga tērā ka puta ko ngā momo-kōrero pēnei i te poroporoaki, i te whakapapa, i te hokinga mahara, i te kōrero-ā-iwi. Tērā te huinga whānau, ko te tātai whakapapa, ko te kōrero ā-whānau. Tērā hoki te huinga huritau, kātahi ka noho rangatira mai ko te kōrero paki, ko te waiata ngahau. Me kī pēnei ake, mā te wā, mā te wāhi e tohutohu ko ēhea ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana mā tēnā momo hui, mā tēnā momo hui.

Ko ētehi anō o ngā hui ka karangahia, ko te hui wānanga. Ko tētehi o ēnei hui i tū ki Taiporohenui marae, tata tonu ki Te Hāwera, mai i te tau 1999 ki 2000. Ko tōna ingoa ko te Wānanga Tā Moko. Ko te kaupapa, ko te kawa o te marae. Ko te pouako, ko Huirangi Waikerepuru. Ā, ko te whāinga, ko te ako, ko te whakataunga i ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana me taunga ki te ngākau i mua i te tānga o te moko ki te kiri. Ko ngā kōrero nei te marautanga: ko te karakia, ko te whakapapa, ko te whaikōrero, ko te karanga, ko te mihimihi, ko te kapahaka, ko te waiata, ko te whakataukī kōrero (Waikerepuru, 1999: 5). Kia puta ai te ihu i tēnei wānanga o ngā hapū o Hāmua, o Hāpōtiki, e whā ngā whakaritenga mahi. Ko te mōhio ki: ngā karakia e whitu; ngā waiata e ono; ngā ngeri e whā; me ngā tikanga e rima. Ko ngā tikanga nei, koia te tikanga o te marae, o te wānanga, o te whare, o te whare kai, mō te tangata hoki. Ahakoa rā, kei ia whānau, kei ia hapū, kei ia iwi ngā momo-kōrero whai mana, atu i ngā tūmomo waiata me mau, kāore pea i tino rerekē te whiriwhirihia o ngā momo-kōrero pēnei i tā Huirangi whiringa.

Te Whakaahua 3.3: He Momo-Kōrero nō te Marae

Some text types of the marae

Karakia	Mihimihi
Whakapapa	Kapa haka
Whaikōrero	Waiata
Karanga	Whakataukī kōrero

Ahakoia ko te marae te wāhi tika hei wānanga i ngā momo o te kawa o te marae, me kī koia hei pou tokomanawa mō te tuakiri Māori, he hātoru nō te iwi Māori kāore e paku toro ana ki tētehi marae (tirohia Te Hoe Nuku Roa Research Team, 1999: 57), ā, kāore aua momo-kōrero i te pā ki a rātou. He take nui tēnei mō te pupuritanga o ngā momo-kōrero e tā ana i te kawa.

I mua i te whare wānanga e mōhio nei tātou o ēnei rā, arā ētehi anō wānanga o mua. Ko tētehi, ko te mea i Hautawa i te Wairarapa (Carter, 1990-1991: 5). Nā Te Whatahoro i whakatū tēnei rōpū hei pupuri i te whakapapa, i te whakataukī, i te waiata me te mōteatea, i te kōrero ā-iwi hoki (reira tonu). Nā, taka mai ana ki ēnei rā e kaingākau tonu ana ngā whare wānanga Māori ki te pupuri i ētehi o aua momo-kōrero.

Kei ia wānanga Māori, kei Te Wānanga o Raukawa, kei Te Wānanga o Awanui-a-rangi, kei Te Wānanga o Aotearoa ngā tino momo-kōrero e whakaakona ana, e kaingākauria ana. Hei tauira, ki te tirohia ko tā Raukawa whakatakoto i ngā kaupapa mahi, ka kitea ngā momo-kōrero rangatira ki a rātou. Ko Te Wānanga o Raukawa hoki kei te whakawhanake i tētehi huinga tuhinga paerua i te tau tuawhā, tuarima.

Te Whakaahua 3.4: Ko ngā Aromatawai Matua o Tētehi Wānanga Reo

Some of the main assessments of a language course at a wānanga Reo

He mea tango mai i te paetukutuku o Raukawa, 2004

<http://www.twor.ac.nz/programmes/tereo/tereointro.htm> he mea tiki atu i te marama o Paengawhāwhā, 2004.

Tau Tuatahi	Tau Tuarua	Tau Tuatoru
Karakia	Karakia	Karakia
Tuhinga roa	Tuhinga roa	Tuhinga roa
Kauhau (ā-waha)	Kauhau	Kauhau
Waiata tawhito	Taukumekume	Taukumekume
Karanga	Waiata tawhito	Waiata tawhito
Whaikōrero	Karanga	Karanga
	Whaikōrero	Whaikōrero

Heoi, arā anō ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana, e kitea ana i te wānanga rūmaki reo Māori atu i ngā aromatawai ōkawa: ko te kōrerorero, ko te mihi, ko ngā momo waiata pēnei i te waiata-a-ringa, i te haka, i te poi, i te aha atu, i te aha atu anō. Kei te Whakaahua 3.5 tētehi marautanga momo-kōrero mō tētehi wānanga e rumakingia ana ki te reo Māori. E kitea ana kei te kaha aro ki tēnei ariā, ki te momo-kōrero me te whakahāngai ki te wānanga kia huhua noa ngā momo-kōrero e whakaakona ana.

Te Whakaahua 3.5: He Marautanga o Tētehi Wānanga Reo: Kura Awatea

He mea hanga i runga i te kōrero i <http://www.tereomaioha.co.nz/Day%20Classes.html> he mea tiki atu i te 27 o Maehe i te tau 2005.

REO

Kupu

Wetereo

Kōrerorero o ia rā

Whakataukī

Kīwaha

Reo Mihimihi

WHAIKŌRERO

Tauparapara

Mihi

Kaupapa kōrero

HAUORA

Reo Hākinakina

Oruorua *Tai Chi*

Hākinakina

Poi

Kēmu

NGĀ MŌTEATEA

Waiata tawhito

Pātere

Pokeka

Ngeri

Haka

MAHI KI TE MARAE

Ahu whenua

Manaaki te marae

WHAkamāTAUTAU

Paku whakamātautau

Kēmu patapatai

Aromatawai

KAPA HAKA

Waiata ā-ringa

Haka

Waiata hou

Poi

NGĀ MAHI TOI

Kōwhaiwhai

Raranga

Whakairo wheua

KARANGA

Ngā momo karanga

Kaupapa karanga

NGĀ KŌRERO O MUA

Hitori mō te rohe

Hitori mō ēnei iwi, hapū, whānau

Whakapapa

Ngā pakanga

Kōrero Tūpuna

KAUPAPA KŌRERO / MAHI

Kauwhau

Whai kaupapa

Pakiwaitara

Pūrākau

Taukumekume

WHARE PUKAPUKA / TUHITUHI

Pānui

Whare pukapuka

Rangahau

Tuhi tau mahi

Ki te whakaarohia ngā momo-kōrero e auau ana te rangona ki roto i ngā whare wānanga whānui tērā ka puta ko te kauhau me te tuhinga roa. Arā ētehi anō o ngā momo-kōrero o te whare wānanga whānui i tā Joseph (2003b), inā ko te pepa, ko te tuhinga whakapae, me te tuhinga kairangi. Hei tauira, ko te tuputupu o ngā tuhinga whare wānanga i roto tonu i te reo, arā: ko te tuhinga whakapae, (Dewes, 1974; Broughton, 1979; Yates, 1980; Kerr, 1983; Parata, 1983; Flavell, 1986; Melbourne, 1987; Papesch, 1990; Johnston, 1991; Royal, 1991; Kirby, 1992; Rewi, 1994; Woodard, 1994; Dixon, 1995; Hawea, 1995; Gabel, 1998; Manaia, 1995; Meha, 1995; Campbell, 1996; Te Aika, 1996; Nuku, 1997; McGrath, 1997; Manuirirangi, 1998; Maxwell, 1998; Snook, 1998; Williams, 1998; Morrison, 1999; Raerino, 2000); ko te tuhinga kairangi (Black, 2000; Christensen, 2001; Rewi, 2005); ko te tuhinga atikara rānei (Campbell, 1997: 31; Harlow, 2000; Keegan, 1997); ko te tuhinga pepa rānei (Keegan, 1998: 333; Reedy, 2000).

Ko te nuinga o ēnei tuhinga whare wānanga, hāunga ngā tākutatanga, he mea puta mai i Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato, engari, kāore e kore, he mea atu anō i tēnā wānanga, i tēnā wānanga. Ki te tōtika te pūnaha momo-kōrero, me whakaatu i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero Māori i roto i tēnā kaupapa, i tēnā kaupapa. Heoi, he whāinga e kore nei e ea i te rangahau kotahi, ā, tēnei te wero hei kawetanga ake.

Ko tētehi anō tuhinga o te mahi ki te whare wānanga kāore e kitea atu ana ki waho o tēnei horopaki ko ngā hautaka e whakaputa ana i ngā kōrero i roto i te reo Māori i Aotearoa, ko ngā mea e rua nei: *He Puna Kōrero*, inā te *Journal of Māori and Pacific Development*, nā te Whare Wānanga o Waikato; *He Pūkenga Kōrero* nā te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa, Te Whare Wānanga o Manawatu. Mai i te tīmatanga o *He Puna Kōrero* i te tau 2000 ki te tau 2003, kua whakaputaina ngā hautaka e whitu. Ko ngā momo-kōrero o roto, kei te whai mai. Mō te hautaka tuarua, *He Pūkenga Kōrero*, ka whakaterea i te tau 1995 ko ngā momo tuhinga kei te Whakaahua 3.6. E kitea ana ko te *citation*, ko te atikara, ko te arotakenga pukapuka ētehi momo tuhinga taketake kei tēnei horopaki.

Te Whakaahua 3.6: He Momo-Kōrero i ngā Hautaka Whare Wānanga
Different text types within Māori academic journals (Tae noa ki te tau 2005)

He Puna Kōrero <i>Journal of Māori and Pacific Development</i>	He Pūkenga Kōrero <i>A Journal of Māori Studies</i>
Atikara (reo rua)	Atikara
Kupu whakapuaki	Arotakenga Pukapuka
Waiata	<i>Citation</i>
Waiata apakura	Kupu whakataki
Mōteatea	Ōhākī
	Poroporoaki
	Whakaaro
	WHAKARĀPOPOTO KŌRERO ²

² abstract

3.2.2 Tā te Kaupapa Here me te Whakatairanga

I whānau mai Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori i te whakamanatanga o te Ture Reo Māori 1987. Ko tētehi o ā rātou whāinga koia nei:

He hikihihi taumata mō te tuhituhi me te kōrero i te reo, arā mā te ara rūmaki, mā te whakamātautau reo, mā te niureta ia toru marama e kīia nei He Muka, ā, me ngā kōrero tautoko mai anō hoki a te hunga mahi kāwanatanga (Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, 2006).

Kua āhua 20 tau Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori e whakangungu ana i te reo Māori o ngā kaiako, ki ngā kura reo. He hui tēnei mā ngā “kaiako o te kura tuatahi, o te kura tuarua, o te kura wānanga, o te Kōhanga Reo, o te Private Training Establishment, me ngā tāngata takitahi”(reira tonu). I roto i aua rā e rima, ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero ka tirohia ko te kīwaha, ko te whakataukī, ko te tuinga paki. Mō roto i ngā pukapuka wānanga e kitea ana hoki te īnoi, te hīmene, te waiata, te reta, te haurongo, te pūrongo, te pitopito whakaaro, te whakamārama (Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, 2002). Tērā hoki ka tae ā-tinana atu kātahi ka rangona te whakawhiti kōrero, te whakakata, te kauhau³, te paki, te taupatupatu, te aha noa, te aha noa. Waihoki, ka tohua tētehi ākongā i te mutunga o te hui hei tuku i te poroporoaki ki te hau kāinga. Mō ngā momo-kōrero, he hui rangatira taua hui. Āpitingia atu, ko tētehi whakaaro nui hei whakaatu atu i konei, mō ia kaupapa arā ngā momo-kōrero e kīia ana koia ngā momo-kōrero ka ākona, ka whakamahia. Heoi, i te nuinga o te wā, arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana, e kitea ana.

He pērā anō te hui mō ngā kaiwhakamāori. Nā, i raro tonu i te ture i ara ake ai Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, ki te wāhanga 15, mā Te Taura Whiri e whakatau, e whakatohu te eketanga o te pūkenga reo Māori mō te tiwhikete kaiwhakamāori. Koia ko te Toi Reo Māori (Smith, 2004). Ko tētehi tino wāhanga o te whakamātautau ko ngā tino momo-kōrero e kitea ana i ngā tari kāwanatanga, i ngā wāhi mahi. He momo-kōrero tā te whakamātautau, he momo-kōrero tā te hui whakangungu.

³ sermon, lecture. Whai muri i te karakia, i te inoi rānei a tētehi rōpū ka riro mā tētehi ākongā e ‘kauhau’.

Te Whakaahua 3.7: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori: Ngā Momo-Kōrero i te Akomanga me te Whakamātautau Te Toi Reo Māori

Text types in the Interpreters and Translators License and Course

I te Whakamātautau Text types ('genre') in the exam		He Momo-Kōrero Anō i te pukapuka Whakangungu Periphery text types in the Candidates Handbook 2004.
<i>Kōrero</i>		Karakia <i>prayer</i>
40%	spoken types	Mihi whakatau <i>welcome</i>
		Mihimihi -huri rauna <i>introductions</i>
<i>Tuhituhi</i>		Whakamārama <i>explanation</i>
Pātai 3	Genre specific	Whakawhiti kōrero <i>conversation</i>
20 %	1 paragraph of flowing text	Pānui whakamārama <i>pamphlets</i>
Pātai 4	Job advertisement (pānuitanga mahi)	Pānui hui <i>notice of meetings</i>
15%		Haurongo <i>biography</i>
		Kōrero-ā-iwi <i>tribal narrative</i>
		Pānuitanga mahi <i>advertisement</i>
Pātai 5	Brochure (pānui whakamārama)	Kupu whakataki <i>foreword</i>
15%		Puka rēhita <i>registration form</i>
Pātai 6	whiringa A	
10%	Genre specific English to Maori	
	whiringa E	
	Genre specific Māori to English	

Ko tētehi anō whakamātautau e whakahaeretia ana e Te Taura Whiri ko te *Whakamatauria Tō Reo Māori*. He pūnaha tērā e kitea ai te taumata o te reo Māori o te tangata. E rima ngā taumata, mai i te tangata e ako reo ana ki te tangata matatau. E toru ngā whakamātautau kei te whakairihia ki runga i taua pūnaha. Ko te Level Finder Examination (LFE), ko te Public Sector Māori Language Proficiency Examination (PSM) me te Teaching Sector Māori (TSM). Kei te noho taura tonu te TSM. Mō te LFE he

kaupapa whānui tēnei, he mea ōpaki⁴ (H. Murphy, whakawhitinga whaiaro, 2003). Kei te PSM te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero “Kia kite mai rātou i ngā momo reo a te kāwanatanga” (reira tonu). Kei te Whakaahua 3.8 ngā momo-kōrero e whakamātauria ana i roto i te PSM.

Nā, ki te tatū atu ki tā rātou pae tukutuku arā anō ngā momo-kōrero e takoto mai rā, kāore anō kia kōrerohia: Ko te pānui pāho, ko te pūrongo, ko te maramataka, ko te niureta. Nā, he nui kē atu ngā momo-kōrero o roto i te niureta *He Muka*. Hei tauira, ki te toro noa atu ki te putanga tuatahi o te tau 2003, ka kitea te pitopito whakaaro, te arotakenga pikitia, te mihi, te hokinga mahara, te mōteatea, te rārangi, te maramataka, me te pukatono. Nā, he rerekē anō ia niureta me ngā momo-kōrero Māori ka puta. Inā ki te tirohia ngā niureta kua puta i roto i ngā tekau tau tērā ka kitea he mea nui te poroporoaki, heoi anō kua itiiti haere ērā i ngā tau tata nei.

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui o ngā tari kāwanatanga ko te whakamāori i te tuhinga. Kua kaha te tupu o ēnei momo i te whakamanatanga o te reo Māori hei reo whai mana ki Aotearoa. Ko tā tēnei kaiuru:

I ngā mahi kua mahia e au, arā noa atu ngā momo *genre* kua kite nei au, *they go from cd roms, interactive cd roms to a lot of online stuff to hard cover stuff, online newsletters...* Arā noa atu ngā momo, pērā i ngā niureta ka tukuna mai e te Hunga Tika Tāngata, te humans rights commission, ngā mahi mō UNESCO, ngā pae tukutuku, kua hia kē ngā pae tukutuku i tua atu o Te Kete Ipurangi... ka whakamāorihia...

Kaiuru Tuarima

He nui te painga ka puta mēnā ka āta whakatakotohia ngā momo-kōrero hei mahere, ā, ka rapua ia putanga i runga i te momo-kōrero kei te hiahiatia. Hei whakamāmā ake pea te toronga atu mā ngā pouako me nga ākonga. E kitea mai ana i te ripanga e whai mai ana, ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero kāore i āpitingia atu ki te rārangi momo-kōrero o te mātauranga. Inā rā, he horopaki kē, he momo-kōrero kē.

⁴ Ki a Murphy hoki, “Ehara i te mea ka tuhia ngā kaupapa here ki te reo Māori.” Tērā pea he whakamāori noa, ā, ka huri tērā āhuatanga ā tōna wā.

Te Whakaahua 3.8: Public Sector Māori Language Proficiency Exam (PSM)

He mea tiki atu i PSML Handbook, Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.

Reo	Pūkenga	Momo-Kōrero
Reo Torohū (40%)	Whakarongo	
	Mahi 1	Short monologue or conversation e.g., kōrero-ā-waea <i>phone conversation</i> pānuitanga reo irirangi <i>radio announcement</i>
	Mahi 2	Extended monologue or conversation e.g., uiuitanga <i>interview</i> kōrero pāpāho <i>broadcasting texts</i> kauhau <i>presentation</i> kōrerorero <i>discussion</i>
	Pānui	
	Mahi 1	Short text or extract e.g., pānui whakamārama <i>brochure</i> imēra <i>email</i> karere ā-tari <i>memo</i> reta <i>letter</i>
	Mahi 2	Single text or extract (approximately 450-500 words in length) e.g., pūrongo <i>report</i> kupu whakataki <i>foreword</i> tuhinga kāwanatanga <i>government texts</i> <i>review</i>
	Mahi 3	Single text or extract (approximately 250 words in length)
Reo Whakaputa (60%)	Tuhituhi	
	Mahi 1	Business correspondence e.g., i-mera <i>email</i> reta <i>letter</i> waea whakaahua <i>fax</i> whakaahua/tūtohi <i>graphic/charts</i>
	Mahi 2	Formal business writing/Business communications (approximately 150 words) e.g., reta <i>letter</i> i-mera <i>email</i> whakaahua/tūtohi <i>graphs/charts</i> pūrongo poto <i>short report</i> kupu whakataki <i>foreword</i> pānuitanga <i>advertisement</i>
	Kōrero	
	Mahi 1	karere ā-waea <i>phone message</i>
	Mahi 2	whakamārama <i>explanation</i>
	Mahi 3	whakawhiti kōrero <i>conversation</i>

3.2.3 Tā te Pāpāho Whānui

Ko tētehi kaupapa e whakakao ana i ngā kupu o runga i ngā pāpāhotanga, ko te Māori Broadcast Corpus. He mea tiki atu i ngā kupu a te pouaka whakaata, a te reo irirangi mai i te tau 1995 ki te tau 1996. Ka tīkina atu ngā kupu mai i ngā huinga momo-kōrero e ono e rangona nuitia ana i ngā pāpāhotanga reo Māori (Boyce, 1996):

Te Whakaahua 3.9: He Whakapāhotanga, he Huinga Momo-Kōrero *Broadcasting and text types*

He mea tiki atu i tā Boyce, 1996:85

1. kawenga kōrero	<i>news</i>
2. motuhenga	<i>documentary</i>
3. pitopito kōrero	<i>commentary</i>
4. pānui	<i>goods and services announcements/advertisements</i>
5. kōrero whakakīkī	<i>continuity announcing</i>
6. ērā atu momo kōrero	<i>miscellaneous</i>

I waiho ki tāhaki ngā waiata, engari ko te tauparapara, ko te karakia i kuhuna (Boyce, 1996). Ki tā Boyce kei te wāhanga tuaono ngā kōrero e rangona itihia ana, koia ko te kōrero paki, ko te whakakōrero i te tuhinga Māori, ko te *political satire*, ko te *long monologue* nā te kaupāho reo irirangi, ko te *talkback* hoki (reira tonu). Ki te whakawhāitihia te titiro ki tētehi o ngā tohutoro o ngā momo-kōrero, ki a Wakahuia, ka whakarārangihia e Boyce ngā tino kaupapa mai i ngā whakaaturanga e ono tekau (Boyce, 1998: 78). Ko ngā kaupapa nei: ‘te kōrero ā-iwi me ngā take iwi; te haurongo, he kōrero nō nāianeī, he kōrero nō mua rā; ngā toi; ngā take reo Māori; ngā tikanga Māori; te mātauranga, te hui Māori, te hui ā iwi hoki, te ture, te taonga, me te kīrehe kōwao’¹ (reira tonu). Tērā ka hono ko ngā momo kaupapa ki ngā momo-kōrero.

Nā, i te mea kei te haere tonu te whakaora o te reo Māori, ko ētehi o ngā kaupapa kei te tupu tonu hoki, pērā i te reo o te reo irirangi. Ko tētehi ratonga reo irirangi i Tāmaki Makaurau, ko Ruia mai, ā, rangona ai te momo-kōrero nei, te pitopito kōrero ia haora, ia haora, e rima meneti te roa o *Ngā Rangona Kōrero*⁵. He rite tonu taua momo-kōrero ki tērā i te pouaka whakaata, ko *Te Kāre*, arā, ko ngā pitopito kōrero mō ngā whakanekeneke o te wā. Ka mutu, ka tika pea, me whakamahere ngā momo-kōrero atu anō pēnei ki te pūnaha momo-kōrero Māori. Mō te reo irirangi, inā ētehi anō momo-kōrero, ko te uiuitanga, ko te tautohe irirangi, ko te kōrero hākinakina, ko te aha atu.

Arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero kei te teihana nei, kei te Whakaata Māori. I mua i te whakaterenga o taua kaupapa kāore i kitea whānuitia e te mata Māori ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero pērā i te matapakinga. Nā, ko te PAKI WAITUHI⁶, ko te kawenga kōrero (roa nei), ko ngā matapae huarere (me ngā hoahoa), ko te PAKIPŪMEKE⁷, ko te TAUPATUPATU⁸, ko te WHAKATAUTAU⁹, ko te aha atu anō kei te whakapāhōtia.

Nō reira, ka kitea ake he rerekē ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana, e kitea ana i tēnā horopaki, i tēnā horopaki. Waihoki, he rerekē te mōhiotanga o ia tangata, o ia rōpū ki ngā momo-kōrero. He tini ngā momo-kōrero, ā, ko tā ia kaupapa he tiki atu i ngā momo-kōrero e hāngai ana ki a rātou. Hei tauira, ki ngā tāngata kōrero Pākehā o Aotearoa, kei te Whakaahua 3.10 ngā momo-kōrero kei te mōhiotia āhua whānuitia e ērā tāngata o waho o te haporī kōrero Māori. Ko ngā kupu kōrero kei te whakamahia whānuitia ki roto i ngā niupepa, i ngā moheni. Ko te mea pea hei whakaarotanga, mehemea koia nei ngā momo-kōrero Māori e taetae ana ki ngā taringa o Aotearoa whānui, koirā ngā mea e noho rangatira ana ki te ao kōrero Māori? He whakaarotanga noa iho tēnei i runga tonu i te mea kei ia iwi ōna ake momo-kōrero e noho mana ana, heoi katoa ēnei kei te kaha rangona puta noa i te motu. Ka mutu, kei roto hoki i tā Hirini Melbourne whakamahere i ngā tino momo-kōrero ka kōrerotia ā taihoa ake nei.

⁵ <http://www.ruiamai.co.nz/Program.html>, Paenga-whāwhā, 2002

⁶ animations

⁷ documentary

⁸ televised debate

⁹ television drama

Te Whakaahua 3.10: Ngā Tino Momo-Kōrero Māori ki Aotearoa Whānui

He kupu i tīkina atu i Macalister, J. Ed. 2005. *A Dictionary of Maori Words in New Zealand English*

Haka	<i>posture dance accompanied by a chant</i>
Karakia	<i>prayer or prayers, sometimes sung or chanted</i>
Karanga	<i>ceremonial call of welcome</i>
Kōrero	<i>a talk, a discussion</i>
Kōrerorero	<i>a chat, a conversation</i>
Mihi	<i>a formal greeting</i>
Mōteatea	<i>a lament, a tribal song</i>
Ngeri	<i>a rhythmic chant with actions</i>
Poroaki	<i>a farewell (to the living)</i>
Poroporoaki	<i>a farewell (to the deceased)</i>
Waiata	<i>a song</i>
Whaikōrero	<i>formal speech making</i>
Whakapapa	<i>a genealogy</i>
Whakatauakī	<i>a proverb</i>

Ka mutu, i tēnei wā, pakupaku noa iho ngā kupu Māori i ngā mōheni pērā i *Mana*, i *Tū Mai*, i ngā niupepa rānei i *Pū Kaea*. Mō tēnei mea te niupepa, e kore e taea te hoki whakamuri ki te wā he nui noa atu ngā niupepa reo Māori, heoi anō, e mea ana ētehi kaiuru ka tino whai hua mēnā he niupepa reo Māori ka puta. He huarahi tērā hei whakawhānui, hei whakahōhonu i te puna kupu a te tini tāngata:

I tēnei wā kei te tatari tonu au kia puta tētahi niupepa i te reo Māori, ahakoa mā te rorohiko te aha atu rānei kia puta he niupepa ia rā kia pānui, kia whānui ake ngā ringaringa whāwhā o te reo Māori ki ngā whare katoa, kia whai wāhi ia ki ngā whare katoa.

Kaiuru 12

3.2.4 He Momo-Kōrero Tā ia Kaupapa

Nā, kua tūhuratia ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero e taka mai ana i tēnā horopaki, i tēnā horopaki. E kitea ake ana he rerekē te kaupapa, tērā ka rerekē te momo-kōrero. Hei tauira noa, kia tīkina atu ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero hei whakaatu i te hononga o te momo-kōrero ki ētehi o ngā horopaki. Heoi, ko ētehi momo-kōrero ka tuia ki ngā kaupapa katoa, pēnei i te whakawhiti kōrero, ko ētehi atu anō, taketake, kāore i te kitea ki waho atu o te horopaki mahi, pēnei i te karere-ā-tari.

Waihoki, he timotimo kau tēnei. Arā ake anō ngā kaupapa kāore i torona atu, pēnei i te REO TURE¹⁰. I te whakamanatanga o te reo i te tau 1987 tērā ka mana te reo ki roto i ngā kōti. Nā whai anō pea i tupu ai tēnei peka o te reo. He momo-kōrero kei te reo ture kāore e kitea atu ki wāhi kē. Inā he *pleading*, he *affidavit*, he wira¹¹, he aha atu anō kei rō kōti, kei ngā mahi rōia, kei ngā mahi ture. Heoi, he rangahau kē atu mō ia kaupapa kia rukuhia te hōhonutanga o tēnā kaupapa, o tēnā kaupapa me ngā momo-kōrero o reira.

¹⁰ legalese

¹¹ Ka whakatauiratia e Katerina Mataira (2004) te wira whakamutunga nā Mercana o Waipiro Bay hei tauira o tērā momo-kōrero. Heoi, he reo māmā kē tōna, he reo ātaahua tonu ki a ia: 'Kāore aua kupu whatiwhati i te kauae.' Nā reira i kīia ai, 'He tino Māori tēnei, nērā.'

Te Whakaahua 3.11: He Whakamahere Momo-Kōrero: He Momo-Kōrero kē tā ia Kaupapa

Mapping text types: Every domain has different text types

Te Kaupapa	He Momo Kōrero
Hapori	Kōrerorero, paki, karakia, rotarota, waiata, tukupū ¹² , nōti, ī-mēra, rātaka, maramataka, me te aha atu anō...
Pāpāho whānui	Kawenga kōrero, pānuitanga, matapae huarere, hākinakina, kōrero whakakīkī, tuhinga hauraro, me te aha atu anō...
Kāwanatanga	Kōrerorero, pūrongo (ā-tau), tukunga pāpāho, kauhau, imēra, reta, karere ā-tari, pānuitanga, puka whakamārama, tauāki, me te aha atu anō...
Kōhanga Reo	Rotarota, waiata, waiata kori, paki, kōrerorero, pukapuka pikitia, pukapuka rahi, pukapuka mārō, me te aha atu anō...
Kura Kaupapa Māori, Wharekura	Ko te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero, ko ngā momo-kōrero rerehua rānei? ¹³ Ko te nuinga pea.
Whare wānanga	Kōrerorero, kauhau, pepa, atikara, tuhinga roa/paerua/paetoru me te aha atu anō...
Whare tā	Pukapuka mārō, pukapuka pikitia, pukapuka wāhanga, me te tini o ngā momo-kōrero (including: multi-media text/genre in on-line interactives)
Mahi	Kōrerorero, ī-mēra, pae tukutuku, waea whakaahua, meneti hui, tāhuhu tangata, uiuinga, mihimihi, me te aha atu anō...

¹² text message

¹³ aesthetic texts

3.3 He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero

Nō reira, kua whakakaohia he rārangi momo-kōrero, he mea tiki atu i ngā kaupapa kua kōrerotia ake nei, ā, kei te Āpitianga 1 ērā e takoto mai ana. I takea mai tēnei rārangi i te mātai pukapuka, i te kōrero tangata. Ko te painga o tēnei rārangi, he rautaki hei whakarōpū i ngā rauemi e putaputa ana. Koia hoki tētehi whāinga, kia mārama te whakarārangi o ngā rauemi katoa (Te Puni Kōkiri, 2001: 24) e tūhono ai te rauemi ki te kaiako.

Ehara i te mea ko te tiroiro pukapuka noa te mahi. I roto i te hīkoitanga rangahau kua whai wāhi mai te tini tāngata: nā te rōpū arataki i te kaupapa nei; nā ngā kaiuru me ā rātou kupu kōrero; nā ngā hoa mahi o taku hāpori reo Māori i āpiti mai hoki ētehi anō momo-kōrero; nā aku kaitiroiro i te tuhinga; nā aku hoa mahi i te tari Māori, (taihoa tērā ka āta kōrerohia i te Wāhanga Tuawhā).

I ngā hui me ngā kaiarataki i tēnei kaupapa ka whiriwhirihia kia āta wehewehe ngā momo-kōrero ki ngā wehewehenga e toru; te kōrero, te tuhinga me te ataata pērā i te Marautanga Reo Māori. Nā, i mea mai ētehi kaiuru i runga i te kōrero a ngā *Tauaromahi Reo Māori*, ko ngā ingoa o ngā wehewehenga e pēnei ana: he tāhu kōrero, he tāhu tuhinga, he tāhu ataata. Nā reira ngā tapanga o ia wāhanga. Ko te aronga kē o tēnei rangahau he kōrero, he tuhituhi, arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero ā-mata. Heoi, ka waiho ko ngā mea e toru hei tauratanga atu. Nei rā hoki tētehi whakatūpatoranga a te rōpū arataki:

Mō ngā momo-kōrero e taka mai ana i te reo kōrero me maumahara tātou i tuhia kētia aua momo-kōrero kia kore ai e ngaro. Ko te āwangawanga nui ka riro mā te tuhituhi e ako i te reo ā-waha. Ko te hopu kē te tikanga i tuhia ai ngā kōrero ā-waha.

Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Te Whakaahua 3.12: He Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, he Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi, he Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata

Kei te rārangihia ngā peka e toru o ngā momo-kōrero. Kei te tohua ngā MOMO TUHINGA¹⁴ ki ngā whetū.*

Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha spoken text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi written text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata visual text types
Haka <i>recited dance song</i> Haka pōhiri <i>welcome haka</i> Haka taparahi <i>ceremonial haka</i> Kaiaora <i>venting haka, derision song</i> Peruperu <i>leaping haka with weapons</i> Pōkeka <i>haka</i> Puha <i>haka</i> Manawawera <i>haka</i> Ngeri <i>recited song of exhortation</i> Tutu ngārahu <i>haka with weapons</i> Wero <i>challenge</i> Whakatū waewae <i>haka with weapons</i> Kapa haka Waiata tira <i>choral song</i> Whakaeke <i>entrance</i> Whakawātea <i>exit</i> Karakia <i>incantation</i> Pure Ruruku Tohi <i>baptism rite</i> Uruuruao Uruuru whenua Waerea Karanga <i>call</i> Tangi whakahuahua Karere <i>news</i> Karere ā-waea <i>phone</i>	Arotakenga <i>review</i> Atikara <i>article</i> Haukiri <i>autobiography</i> Haurongo <i>biography</i> Hautaka <i>journal</i> Hokinga mahara <i>memoir</i> Inoi <i>prayer</i> I-mēra <i>email</i> Karere <i>text message</i> Karere-ā-tari <i>memo</i> Kēmu patapatai <i>quiz</i> Kōrero huna <i>code</i> Kōrero nehe <i>ancient history</i> Kōrero o mua <i>history</i> Kōrero pono <i>factual text</i> Kōrero tohutohu <i>instructions</i> Kōrerorero <i>conversation</i> Kupu waiata <i>lyrics</i> Kupu whakataki <i>foreword</i> Maheni <i>magazine</i> Maioha mate <i>published obituaries</i> Maramataka <i>calendar</i> Mātārere <i>leaflet</i> Meneti <i>minutes</i> Mōteatea <i>in-depth poem</i> Niupepa <i>newspaper</i> Niureta <i>newsletter</i> Nōti <i>note</i> Paenga kōrero <i>anthology</i> Paipera <i>bible</i> Paki <i>narrative*</i> Pakimaero <i>novel</i>	<i>Graffiti</i> Haki <i>flag</i> Hanganga <i>sculpture</i> Hautaka whakaata <i>visual diary</i> Hoahoa <i>diagram, design</i> Hōtaka <i>programme</i> Kanikani <i>dance</i> Kauwhata <i>graph</i> Kāri <i>card</i> Karere <i>news</i> Karetao <i>puppetry</i> Kiriata <i>film</i> Kohatu whakamaharatanga <i>headstone</i> Kōpaki <i>folio</i> Kōwaiwai matarahi <i>mural</i> Kōwhaiwhai Mahere <i>map</i> Mahere huarere <i>weather map</i> Mahere tukurua <i>flow chart</i> Mahere whenua <i>map</i> Mātārere <i>leaflet</i> Moko Mokoreta <i>letterhead</i> Motuhenga <i>documentary</i> Pakiwaituhi <i>comic</i> Pānui pātū <i>wall chart</i> Pānui whakaahua <i>poster</i> Pae tukutuku <i>website</i> Pae whakaata <i>webpage</i> Paki waituhi <i>cartoon</i>

¹⁴ genre

Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha spoken text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi written text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata visual text types
<i>message</i> Kawenga kōrero <i>news story</i> Kauhau <i>speech</i> Kīanga tere mau <i>catchphrase</i> Kīrehu <i>idiom</i> Kīwaha <i>colloquialism, idiom</i> Kupu whakaari <i>prophetic saying</i> Komekome <i>gossip</i> Kōrero <i>talk, chat, conversation, news, story, iwi narrative</i> Kōrerorero <i>conversation, discussion</i> Kōrero ā-iwi <i>iwi narrative</i> Kōrero hākinakina <i>sports commentary</i> Kōrero paki <i>fiction, entertaining story</i> Kōrero parau <i>fable</i> Kōrero takurua <i>winters tale, romance</i> Kōrero tuku iho <i>Māori narrative</i> Kōrero whakakīkī <i>continuity announcing</i> Manu kōrero <i>prepared speech for Manu kōrero</i> Matapae huarere <i>Weather forecast</i> Matapakinga <i>discussion</i> Mihi <i>introduction, acknowledgement</i> Mihimihi <i>greetings</i> Muna <i>gossip</i> Mōteatea <i>traditional song</i> Ōhākī <i>parting gift of words</i> Patapatai <i>interview</i> Peha <i>quip</i> Pepeha <i>tribal maxim,</i>	Pakiwaitara <i>narrative</i> Pakiwaituhi <i>comic</i> Panga <i>riddle</i> Panga kupu <i>crossword</i> Pānui <i>notice</i> Pānui tari <i>office memorandum</i> Pānui pātū <i>poster</i> Pānuitanga <i>advertisement</i> Papakupu <i>dictionary</i> Pepa <i>academic paper</i> Pepa uiui <i>questionnaire</i> Pereti raihana <i>license plate</i> Pitopito kōrero <i>article, editorial</i> Pōwhiri <i>invite</i> Puka <i>forms</i> Puka kohi kōrero <i>scrapbook</i> Puka whakamōhio <i>brochure</i> Pukapuka mārō <i>board book</i> Pukapuka rahi <i>blown-up books</i> Pukapuka wāhanga <i>chapter book</i> Pukapuka whakaahua <i>picture book</i> Pūrongo <i>report</i> Pūrongo Hansard <i>Hansard reports</i> Rārangi <i>list</i> Rārangi kai <i>menu</i> Rārangi take <i>agenda</i> Rārangi wā <i>timeline</i> Rātaka <i>diary</i> Rerenga kōrero <i>social criticism</i> Reta <i>letter</i> Ruri <i>poem</i> Tāhuhu tangata <i>curriculum vitae</i> Taki <i>recount*</i> Tāpaetanga <i>submission</i> Taukī <i>statement</i>	Pane kūini <i>stamp</i> Peita <i>painting</i> Poukārī <i>postcard</i> Puka whakaahua <i>photo album</i> Puka whakamōhio <i>brochure</i> PXT Rārangi ingoa <i>catalogue</i> Raranga weaving Ripanga <i>spreadsheet</i> Tā Tāniko Tīhate <i>tee shirt</i> Tiwhikete <i>certificate</i> Tohu <i>sign</i> Tohu huarahi <i>road sign</i> Tohu pātū <i>plaque</i> Tohu whakamana <i>trademark</i> Tohu pānui <i>certificate</i> Tuhinga whakaahua <i>photographic essay</i> Tukutuku Tūtohi <i>chart</i> Uhi Uhi pukapuka <i>book cover</i> Uhi kōpae pūoro <i>cd cover</i> Waituhi Waitohu <i>logo, motif</i> Waituhi whakakata <i>comic strip</i> Whakaahua <i>photo, illustration, image</i> Whakaahua toihau <i>collage</i> Whakaari <i>play</i> Whakaaturanga <i>performance, programme</i> Whakaaturanga toi ataata <i>art exhibition</i> Whakairo rākau Whakairoiro <i>graphics</i> Whakamaharatanga <i>monument</i>

Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha spoken text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi written text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata visual text types
<i>introduction, proverb</i> <i>Poroporoaki farewell,</i> <i>euology</i> <i>Pūmahara Elder</i> <i>recollection</i> <i>Pūrākau narrative</i> <i>Rotarota poem</i> <i>Ruri ditty</i> <i>Takinga kōrero</i> <i>commentary</i> <i>Takawiri arero tongue</i> <i>twister</i> <i>Taunaha bespeak the land</i> <i>Tauparapara karakia</i> <i>recited before a speech</i> <i>Taupatupatu debate</i> <i>Taurangi promise</i> <i>Tohutohu directions</i> <i>Tongi kōrero poropiti</i> <i>Uiuinga interview</i> <i>Waiata song</i> <i>Apakura dirge</i> <i>Aroha love song</i> <i>Harikai food-bearing</i> <i>song</i> <i>Haurangi intoxicated</i> <i>song</i> <i>Huarite rap</i> <i>Kopikopi action song</i> <i>Kori action song</i> <i>Mata prophetic song</i> <i>Mataara alarm song</i> <i>Matakite prophetic song</i> <i>Mihi acknowledgement</i> <i>Song</i> <i>Oriori in-depth lullaby</i> <i>Pao short spontaneous</i> <i>epigrammatic song</i> <i>Pao whaiāipo love pao</i> <i>Pātere song of retort,</i> <i>abusive</i> <i>Patupaiarehe song of the</i> <i>patupaiarehe</i>	<i>Tautohe persuade*</i> <i>Tiriti Tiriti</i> <i>Tohutaka recipe</i> <i>Tohutohu instruct</i> <i>Tohe argument</i> <i>Tuhinga paerua masterate</i> <i>thesis</i> <i>Tuhinga paetoru doctoral</i> <i>thesis</i> <i>Tuhinga poto short story</i> <i>Tuhinga rangahau</i> <i>research writing</i> <i>Tuhinga roa essay</i> <i>Tuhituhinga ā-rōpū archives</i> <i>of Māori organisations</i> <i>Tukupū text message</i> <i>Tukunga pāpāho press</i> <i>release</i> <i>Ture law, rules</i> <i>Waea whakaahua fax</i> <i>Whakaatu describe*</i> <i>Whakakata joke</i> <i>Kupu whakaari play script</i> <i>Whakamārama</i> <i>explanation*</i> <i>Whakapiripiri sticker</i> <i>Whakaputanga whakaaro</i> <i>editorial</i> <i>Whakarāpopoto kōrero</i> <i>abstract</i> <i>Wira will</i>	<i>Whakatautau drama</i> <i>Whatu</i> <i>Whiri</i> <i>Whiti āhua film</i>

Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha spoken text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Tuhi written text types	Momo-Kōrero ā-Mata visual text types
Poi <i>waiata poi</i> Poi karakia <i>karakia in poi form</i> Pōpō <i>song for a young person</i> Ruri <i>short spontaneous song</i> Tangi <i>lament</i> Tohutohu <i>song of instruction</i> Waiata ā-ringa <i>action song</i> Whakaaraara <i>watch song</i> Whakahauhau <i>waiata to inspire workers</i> Whakataetae manawa <i>breath-holding game song</i> Whaikōrero <i>oratory</i> Whakaari <i>kupu poropiti nā Te Kooti</i> Whakapapa <i>genealogy</i> Whakataukī <i>general proverb</i> Whakatauākī <i>specific proverb</i>		

Kua āpitingia atu ki te Āpitianga 1 ētehi kupu taurite mō ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero nā te tangata i homai, i tīpako rānei i te pukapuka. Kua hoatu he ingoa hei whakatauiria i ngā momo nei kei te āhua mōhiotia whānuitia. Me te mea inā he rauemi kei te ipurangi ka tāpirihia te hononga pae whakaata hei toro atu mā te kaiako, mā wai rānei. I runga tonu i te mōhio arā ake, arā ake anō ngā tauira o tēnā o tēnā hei whakatauiria i taua momo. He whāinga atu anō tērā.

Nā, kei te noho te kōrero tawhito ki te kōrero hou, ā, ki ētehi tāngata tērā ka noho ko ngā kōrero rangatira ki te taha o ētehi kōrero tūtūā, me kī. Inā, ko te whaikōrero me te pereti raihana, ko te poroporoaki me te pānuitanga, ko te pepa uiui me te karanga, ko te mātārere me te whakapapa. Tērā pea he rārangi rerekē tēnei ki tā te Māori titiro. Ka pēhea rā te tapu, te noa, te ihi, te wehi, te wana me ngā momo-kōrero? He rangahau atu anō ki te kimi i taua whakautu, heoi kei ngā Whakaahua 20, 21 ētehi whakaaro e hāngai ana ki aua tikanga tino Māori.

Heoi anō rā, ko te tikanga o tēnei rārangi momo-kōrero, he rautaki hei āwhina mā te tini rōpū ki te ako, ki te whakaako, ki te waihanga, ki te whakarārangi, ki te whakatā i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero. He huarahi pea hei wānanga i nga momo-kōrero e tika ana mō tētehi mahi. Nā, kia tirohia ētehi take me ētehi kaupapa e whakamahere ana i te momo-kōrero kia rapu whakaaro mō te whakamahere i ngā momo-kōrero Māori.

3.4 Ngā Momo-Kōrero: te Katoa, ngā Mea Whai Mana Rānei?

Ki a Widdowson i roto i tana pukapuka *Literature* (1999) ka āta matapakina ngā āhuatanga reo e kounga ai tēnei mea te tuhinga. Ka whakawhāitihia tana titiro ki ngā tino momo-kōrero e toru, ina ko te *poetry*, ko te *prose-fiction*, ko te *drama* (reira tonu: 15). Me kī, koia ngā pou e toru o te whare kōrero Ingarihi. Ki te hou atu ki roto i te kaupapa o te reo Ingarihi, koia hoki ngā momo matua hei tātaritanga. Waihoki, ka whakarārangihia e Widdowson ngā momo-kōrero kāore e whakairihia ana ki ngā pakitara o taua whare, inā

Nō reira, kāore au i te aro ki ngā mātārere, ki ngā kōrero o mua, ki ngā kōrero pāpāho, ki ngā rātaka, ki ngā tohutohu motokā, ki ngā taotaka, ki ngā rārangi kai, ki ngā tuhinga whakawhere i runga pouaka mātao, ki ngā haurongo, ki ngā papa pia rāneiⁱⁱ.

Widdowson, 1999:15

Heoi anō rā, ko te ako i ngā momo-kōrero o te reo Ingarihi tērā ki tā te TĀTARI MĀTĀTUHI¹⁵. Mō tēnei pūrongo he whānui kē atu te titiro ki ngā momo-kōrero kia whakakaotia ai. Ki tā te *Discourse Analysis*, ko te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero ka āta tirohia. (McCarthy, 1994) Mēnā kei te reo Māori aua momo rā, ka tāpiritia ki te rārangi. He rerekē anō te ariā i runga tonu i te mōhio ka tū kē tēnei whare kōrero hei whakaora rānei i te reo Māori, hei whakapakari rānei i te reo Māori. Hei konei ka kīa atu ai e rua pea ngā huinga kōrero. Ko te momo-kōrero o te Mātātuhi (Literature big L) me ngā momo-kōrero o ia rā (general texts, literature, little l) (tirohia McCarthy, 1994: 159). Ko te Mātātuhi, he mea tupu mai i te reo tuatahi o te hapori. Ko te momo-kōrero o ia rā, he kaupapa i tupu ake i te akoako reo hei reo tuarua me ngā mahi o ia rā. Koia hoki tētehi o ngā whakaaro o ngā kaiuru, arā, me titiro kē ki ngā momo-kōrero rangatira.

In terms of gen there are standard definitions of literary gen and other gen 'cause one shouldn't exclude other art forms and they're there in te Ao Māori and they are of value I believe for our children to study, to approach. The official language which deals with administration of the law is not a literary gen, it's a style dear to the bureaucrats heart. I find it is not stimulating for kids studying to for example analyse a memo, a questionnaire, an interview or a phone message. They hate it. Its about as interesting as a drone of a fly trapped in a classroom on a winter afternoon; you can cut it.

Kaiuru 22

¹⁵ literary criticism

Nā, mō te whakaako i te reo Ingarihi hei reo atu anō kei te uruuru mai te whakaaro ki te whakaako i ngā momo-kōrero whānui tonu. Hei tauira, ki Ahitereiria, ki Wikitoria kua whakatūria he kaupapa e kīa nei ko LOTE. He kaupapa “E tautoko ana ki te whakaako, ki te ako i ngā reo ehara i te reo Ingarihi, me te ako reo rua i te reo Ingarihi mā te akoranga hangarauⁱⁱⁱ”. Neke atu i ngā tūmomo reo rua tekau mā tahi i reira. Ko tētehi o ngā reo ko te reo Slovenian (Ceferin, 2000). Ka whakarārangihia ngā momo-kōrero 61 ki taua pae whakaata, tirohia Te Whakaahua 3.13. Ka whakamāramahia ki reira,

Ki te ako i te reo me taunga, me waihanga tonu ngā momo-kōrero maha, mai i te kōrero pīpī heihei tae noa atu ki te kai mārō i te wā e whanake ana rātou me te whakanaketanga o tō rātou mōhio ki te reo. Me ngoikore noa te ruku, me kaha rānei te ruku i ngā momo-kōrero maha e whakamahia nuitia ana, e kitea nuitia ana i ēnei rā. Waihoki, me hāngai ngā momo-kōrero ki tā te ākonga e pai ana, e manako ana. He nui pea ngā momo-kōrero, he nui pea ngā tūmomo taumahi (reira tonu).

Waihoki, mō te whakarārangi o ngā momo-kōrero i te Whakaahua 3.13 e kīa ana he pai te whakakao i ngā momo mō te whakaako reo rua, arā, hei hanga i te wānanga, hei mahi i te ngohe, hei rautaki whakaako rānei (reira tonu). Inā ka hangaia he mea pēnei mō ngā momo-kōrero Māori, kāore e kore ka utaina ēnei painga ki runga i ngā pouako e whakaako ana i te reo Māori hei reo tuatahi, hei reo tuarua rānei.

Te Whakaahua 3.13: He Momo-Kōrero¹⁶ hei Whakaako i te Reo Slovenian

Ceferin, 2000. *Slovinianlinx: Slovinian Language Resources. Thezaurus*

account	critique or review	poem
advertisement (radio, newspaper, television)	debate	prayer
anecdote	dedication	proclamation
argument	graffiti	profile
article (magazine, newspaper)	graph	program
autobiography	greeting or congratulation	proverb
ballad	guide (television, tourist, race)	questionnaire
brochure	history or chronicle	receipt
bulletin	horoscope	reference (job)
cartoon (with words)	index	report (analytical, conjectural, factual)
case-study	inscription	request
catalogue	instruction or recipe	resume or curriculum vitae
chart	interview	riddle
cheer	joke	script (film, television)
comic	label	sermon
commentary	lecture or talk	short story
contract	legend or myth	sign (with words)
conversation	letter (business, literary, personal or to the editor)	sketch
	libretto or lyric	slogan
	list or inventory	soliloquy
	map and legend	song, hymn, or anthem
	meeting (including agenda, motion, minutes, terms of reference, or procedure)	

Ko te take nui ka kitea i konei, e rua ngā momo tirohanga pea i te horopaki mātauranga ki te whānuitanga o te momo-kōrero. Ko tētehi taha, ko te reo hei reo tuatahi me ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana hei akoranga, ko ngā kōrero rangatira, whai mana, me kī. Me te pātai nui, he aha ngā momo-kōrero he tino kouniga, he tino ātaahua. Ko tētehi atu taha ko te reo hei reo tuarua, me ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana hei ako ki ngā tāngata reo rua. Arā, ko ngā momo-kōrero o ia rā me ngā mea o te mahi, pēnei i te karere ā-waea, i te reta, i te uiuinga. I te mahinga o ngā tauākī marautanga tērā ka aro kē pea ki te tāngata reo rua, ahakoa rā mō te hunga reo Māori taketake te kaupapa. Ā, he itiiti noa nei ngā tuhinga

¹⁶ text types/discourse forms

rerehua pēnei i te pakimaero, i te whakaari, i te tuhinga poto. Aua atu. Kia whakaaturia i konei te kōrero hei take wānanga.

Te Whakaahua 3.14: Me Ako i Ēhea Momo-Kōrero?

<i>Te Mātātuhi</i>	↔	<i>Te Tuhinga o ia rā</i>
<i>Literary Canon</i>		<i>Literacy</i>
<i>Rerehua</i>		<i>Rere noa</i>
mōteatea		pānuitanga
poroporoaki		reta
pakimaero		waea whakaahua
tuhinga poto		mātārere
whakaari		meneti

3.5 Te Whakamahere i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Tā Fowler i roto i tana pukapuka *Kinds of Literature* mō te momo-kōrero, ko ētehi raruraru mō te hanga pūnaha momo-kōrero, e pēnei ana: ko te whakaatu i te whanaungatanga o tētehi momo ki tētehi momo, ina ko te takoto i runga pae ahorua; ko te whiriwhiri i ngā momo-kōrero, kei whiriwhiri noa i ngā mea rangatira; ko te whakaraupapa i ngā momo-kōrero, heoi, kei kore ētehi kōrero e tino raupapatia ana; ko te tini āhuatanga o ngā momo-kōrero, tē taea te whakaatu i tētehi pūnaha kotahi, ko te aha atu, ko te aha atu (Fowler, 1982: 246-251). Hei tā Fowler, ki te aro tonu ki te mahi i te pūnaha momo-kōrero, tā te mahere nei, he āhua whakaraupapa noa ilho i runga pea i te pae kotahi, e rua rānei (reira tonu). Koia tā tēnei upoko, he whakawhanake i tētehi rārangi o tēnā momo-kōrero Māori, o tēnā momo-kōrero Māori. Heoi, me waiho mō kō kō ake nei te pūnaha e whakamārama nei i te whanaungatanga o ngā momo-kōrero, me ngā kupu whakamārama mō ia momo-kōrero; kei tua rā anō tērā i tēnei kaupapa kōrero whāiti nei.

Ko tētehi anō take mō te pūnaha momo-kōrero, he rerekē te mana o ētehi momo-kōrero, ko te tohu ko te kaha whakamahia o t/aua momo, ko te ngoikore rānei o te whakamahia. Mō tērā, ka taka te wā, ka rerekē te whakamahia o ētehi momo-kōrero, nō reira, ko wai ka hua, ko wai ka tohu ka pēhea te ora o ētehi momo-kōrero a ngā tau e heke mai nei. Me kī, mō te momo-kōrero, ka rerekē tōna āhua, ōna wāhanga, ka whakataetae hoki ki ētehi anō momo-kōrero (Tynyanov i Duff, 2000:32-33). Waihoki, ka puta he momo-kōrero hou i runga i ngā nekeneke o te wā, arā, whā tekau tau ki muri kāore he tuhinga paerua, he momo tuhinga whare wānanga nei, i roto i te reo Māori, waihoki, i mua i te tau 2000, kāore he tuhinga tākutatanga i roto i te reo Māori. Heoi, ināianei, kei te momona haere ērā momo-kōrero. Nō reira, he mea ora te pūnaha momo-kōrero, me te mea nei ki te mahia ake, e mahia kētia ana i runga i te mōhio, nō te whānautanga mai anō ka tere te kaumātua haere.

Mō runga i te momo-kōrero, ka titiro a Lee ki ētehi o ngā tino momo-kōrero e noho ana i te ipurangi, i ngā huinga kupu (*corpora*) huhua i te reo Ingarihi ki te mahi i tētehi whakarārangi o ngā momo-kōrero Ingarihi (Lee, 2001: 56). Ko te take, ko te pātengi raraunga nei, ko te British National Corpus (BNC), he ngoikore ki te whakatakoto i te momo-kōrero (reira tonu: 50). Ko te BNC nei, he kohinga kupu ka noho tauira, atu i te 100 miriona kupu, reo tuhi, reo kōrero (British National Corpus, 2002). Ko tā Lee, “He mea āta whiriwhiri ngā ingoa o ngā momo-kōrero kia whakaata ai i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero huhua, te reo kōrero, te reo tuhituhi i te reo Ingarihi”^{iv}(reira tonu: 56). Na, ko te Whakaahua 3.15 tērā. Ko tā tēnei Wāhanga, he āta whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero, Māori, māori nei¹⁷. Kāore pea e tika ana te whakatauritea o te momo-kōrero Ingarihi ki te momo-kōrero Māori, i te mea, he rerekē te mana o ngā momo-kōrero ki tērā iwi, ki tērā iwi, ina, ki tā te Māori titiro, ki tā te Pākehā titiro. Heoi anō, me aro tonu ki tā Lee whakarārangi i runga i te uruuru mai o te momo-kōrero Pākehā ki roto tonu i te reo Māori.

¹⁷ common

Te Whakaahua 3.15: He Momo-Kōrero i te Reo Ingarihi i te British National Corpus Index

He mea tango mai i te āpitihanga, Lee 2001 : 65

Tuhituhi (46 momo) 1. Academic prose: humanities 2. Academic prose: medicine 3. Academic prose: natural sciences 4. Academic prose: politics, laws, education 5. Academic prose: social & behavioural sciences 6. Academic prose: technology, computing, engineering 7. Administrative and regulatory texts, in house use 8. Print advertisements 9. Biographies/autobiographies 10. Commerce and finance, economics 11. e-mail sports discussion list 12. School essays 13. University essays 14. Drama 15. Poetry 16. Novel 17. Hansard/parliamentary proceedings 18. Official/governmental documents/leaflets, company annual reports 19. Instructional texts/DIY 20. Personal letters 21. Professional/business letters 22. Miscellaneous texts 23. TV auto cue data 24. Broadsheet national newspapers: arts/cultural material 25. Broadsheet national newspapers: commerce and finance 26. Broadsheet national newspapers: personal & institutional editorials, & letters-to-the-editor 27. Broadsheet national newspapers: miscellaneous material 28. Broadsheet national newspapers: home and foreign news reportage 29. Broadsheet national newspapers: science material	Kōrero (24 momo) 1. TV or Radio discussions 2. TV documentaries 3. TV or radio news broadcasts 4. Non-tertiary classroom discourse 5. Medical and legal consultations 6. Face to face spontaneous conversations 7. Legal presentations or debates 8. 'Live' demonstrations 9. Job interviews & other types 10. Oral history interviews/narratives, some broadcast 11. Lectures on economics, commerce and finance 12. Lectures on humanities and arts subjects 13. Lectures on the natural sciences 14. Lectures on politics, law or education 15. Lectures on the social and behavioural sciences 16. Business or committee meetings 17. BNC-transcribed parliamentary speeches 18. Public debates, discussions, meetings 19. Religious sermons 20. Planned speeches 21. Unscripted, unprepared speeches 22. 'Live' sports commentaries and discussions 23. University-level tutorials 24. Miscellaneous spoken genres

30. Broadsheet national newspapersmaterial on lifestyle, leisure, belief and thought 31. Broadsheet national newspapers: sports material 32. Regional and Local Newspapers 33-38. Tabloid newspapers 39. Non-academic/non-fiction: humanities 40. Non-academic/non-fiction: medical/health matters 41. Non-academic/non-fiction: natural sciences 42. Non-academic/non-fiction: politics, law, education 43. Non-academic/non-fiction: social & behavioural sciences 44. Non-academic/non-fiction: technology, computing, engineering 45. Popular magazines 46. Religious texts, excluding philosophy	

Nā, ki tā Lee, koirā tonu ngā momo-kōrero, heoi anō rā, he tino momo-kōrero hoki e āhua whakarāpopoto nei i te katoa. Ahakoa ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero i te Whakaahua 3.15 kāore e whai wāhi ana ki ēnei momo-kōrero matua, e whakarāpopoto kē ana i te nuinga. Arā, i te reo kōrero, e whā ngā tino momo-kōrero, ko te pāpāho, ko te uiuitanga, ko te kauhau, ko te whaikōrero. I te reo tuhituhi, e ono ngā tino momo-kōrero, ko te tuhinga whare wānanga, ko te tuhinga roa kāore e tā ana, ko te paki, ko te reta, ko te niupepa ā-motu, ā-rohe, ko te tuhinga pono ehara i te tuhinga whare wānanga (Lee, 2001: 57). Ki te whakamahia he pūnaha momo-kōrero e kapi ai i te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero Māori, me rangahau tonu mēnā he momo-kōrero Māori e whai pānga ana ki ērā o ēnei tino momo-kōrero. Kua tauratia kētia ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero o te whare wānanga, heoi anō, me hōhonu hoki te titiro ki ērā atu tino momo-kōrero, pērā i te pāpāho. Kāti, kua kore e taea ngā kaupapa katoa te wetewete i te tuhinga kotahi, he rangahau kē atu ērā.

Ki tā Biber (1989) i tana pepa *A Typology of English Texts*, i roto i te reo Ingarihi e waru ngā tino huinga momo-kōrero. Kei te Whakaahua 3.16 e whai mai ana aua momo-kōrero me āna wehewehenga. Mai i te kōrero kanohi ki te kanohi, ki te kōrero hāhi, ki te kōrero paki, kapi katoa i a Biber ngā tino momo-kōrero o te reo Ingarihi. Heoi anō rā, e tika ana ēnei wehewehenga mā te reo Māori? Nā ētehi o ngā kaiuru te akiaki kia whai wāhi atu ki a Oglan me tana pukapuka *Write, Right, Rite!*, i runga i te mea, he mārama tāna whakatakoto i ngā momo tuhinga. Ki te whakatairitetia ngā mahere momo-kōrero e rua, atu i te mea he taha kōrero tā te mea a Biber, kāore i tino rerekē ake tā Oglan wehewehenga. I te mea e whai ana ngā kaiuru i tā Oglan, ka tau me whai atu i āna wehewehenga mō te tuhituhi i roto i te tātai momo-kōrero (tirohia te Whakaahua 3.17), inā rā: te tuhinga whaiaro me te karere; te tuhinga auaha; te tuhinga whakamōhio me te pūrongo; te tuhinga tohutohu me te whakamārama, te tuhinga whakawherenga me te whai whakaaro. Kei roto i te pukapuka *Dancing with the Pen: The Learner as a Writer* (Ministry of Education, 1992: 22) ka whakahonoa te take o te kōrero ki ngā momo-kōrero pērā i tā Oglan. He mea nui kia mōhiotia he aha rā te take i hīa ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Otirā, ko te mea nui pea o ēnei mahere e toru, me noho mai pea te momo-kōrero i raro i te pūtakenga o t/aua momo-kōrero inā e taea ana.

Te Whakaahua 3.16: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero Reo Ingarihi nā Biber

He mea tiki atu i Biber, D. 1989. *Linguistics* 27:20-22

Text type 1. Intimate interpersonal interaction

Face-to-face conversations
Telephone conversations – personal friends
Telephone conversations - dispartes
Telephone conversations – business associates

Text type 2. Informational interaction

Face-to-face conversations
Interviews
Telephone conversations – business associates
Telephone conversations – personal friends
Telephone conversations – dispartes
Spontaneous speeches
Personal letters
Nonsport broadcasts
Professional letters
General fiction

Text type 3. ‘Scientific’ exposition

Academic prose
Official documents
Biographies
Press reviews
Hobbies
Press reportage

Text type 4. Learned exposition

Academic prose
Press reportage
Official documents
Press reviews
Popular lore
Biographies
Hobbies
Religion
Press editorials
Professional letters

Text type 5. Imaginative narrative

Romance fiction
General fiction
Mystery fiction
Adventure fiction
Prepared speeches
Interviews
Science fiction

Popular lore
Biography
Personal letters
Religion

Text type 6. General narrative exposition

Press reportage
Press editorials
General fiction
Biographies
Humour
Press reviews
Academic prose
Religion
Hobbies
Nonsport broadcasts
Science fiction
Adventure fiction
Mystery fiction
Popular lore
Prepared speeches
Official documents
Professional letters
Romance fiction
Sports broadcasts

Text type 7. Situated reportage

Sports broadcasts
Nonsports broadcasts
Science fiction
Mystery fiction
Hobbies

Text type 8. Involved persuasion

Interviews
Spontaneous speeches
Popular lore
Professional letters
Religion
Prepared speeches
Telephone conversations – dispartes
Humour
Editorial letters
Academic prose
Hobbies
Personal letters
Nonsports broadcasts
General fiction

Te Whakaahua 3.17: He Ripanga Momo-Kōrero Ingarihi nā Oglan

He mea tiki atu i Oglan, G. 2003:82. Genre Chart i rō *Write, Right, Rite!*

Genre	Personal writing and messages	Narrative	Poetry	Report and Inform	Traditional Literature	Word Play	Instruct and Explain	Opinion and Persuasion
Formats	Autobiographies Diaries Postcards Friendly letters Formal letters Personal Anecdotes Invitations Thank-you notes Itineraries/agenda Biographical accounts Learning logs	Adventure Mystery Scripts Realistic fiction Science fiction Historical fiction Non-fiction	Rhymes: Couplets, Quatrains, Limericks, Lyrics Patterned poems: Cinquains, Acrostics, Haiku, Triads Free verse: Narrative poems	Time lines Interviews Scrapbooks Surveys Newspaper articles/headlines Photo essays/cap-tions Magazine articles	Hero tales Fables Tall tales Fairy tales Folk-tales Myths	Rebuses Jokes Riddles Tongue twisters Comic strips Cross-word puzzles	Recipes Menus Game rules Diagrams Guides Directions/ instructions	Posters/slogans Reviews Advertisements Brochures Editorials Advice/ask-the-expert columns speeches
Purpose	To inform to explain to reflect to interpret	To entertain To tell a story	To share language as an art form To entertain	To report To inform	To explain To entertain	To entertain	To instruct To explain To guide	To persuade To put forth point of view
The audience reads to:	Reflect Seek Information	Enjoy	Explore language Enjoy	Seek information	Enjoy Seek information	Enjoy	Seek information	Understand another point of view

Te Whakaahua 3.18: Ko te Pūtaketanga, ko te Momo-Kōrero

He mea tiki atu i Ministry of Education, *Dancing with the Pen: The Learner as a Writer*, 1992:21

Purpose	Form
To record events	lists, diaries, commentaries, autobiographies, letters, research notes, minutes of meetings, letters or notes to family or friends, transcriptions, reports, family history (whakapapa/genealogies)
To explain	charts, recipes, brochures, captions, instructions, character sketches, definitions, excuses, game rules, handbooks, textbooks
To hypothesise	theories, arguments, proofs
To persuade	job applications, instructions, graffiti, advertisements, arguments, invitations, signs, placards, warnings, record covers, submissions
To invite a response	questions, complaints, invitations, lost and found notices, notes, requests, wanted notices
To predict	horoscope, forecasts, timetables, graphs
To command, direct, or request	directions, invitations, letters, instructions, protests, rules, requisitions, warnings
To amuse, entertain	quizzes, bumper stickers, graffiti, rumours
To narrate	fables, film strips, bedtime stories, myths, sub-titles, superstitions
To invent	plays, anecdotes, jokes, riddles, exaggerations, commercials, puzzles, poems, nursery rhymes, lyrics, slogans
To inform	grooming tips, announcements, book jackets, certificates, labels, news broadcasts, instructions, menus, posters, reports, lists, pamphlets, surveys, timetables, brochures, catalogues, reviews, weather, forecasts, graphs, pamphlets
To find out	interviews, questionnaires, surveys, observations
To invite reflection	questions, quizzes, quotations
To summarise	synopses, postcards, reports, verdicts, signs
To comment, or give an opinion	editorials, viewpoints, placards

Heoi anō, mō te taha kōrero ka huri kē te titiro ki ētehi o ngā manu kura reo Māori hei aratakinga. He momo-kōrero kē atu anō tā te Māori, he tūmomo whakarārangi atu anō hoki pea tā te Māori.

Ehara i te mea hou te whakawehewehe i ngā momo-kōrero. Ki tā Te Kapunga Dewes e toru ngā tū wāhanga o te *prose* Māori: te kōrero ā-waha taketake, te kōrero ā-waha o nāianeī, te tuhinga rānei o nāianeī (Dewes 1977: 74). Ki a ia anō, ko ētehi o ngā tino wehenga o te momo-kōrero ko te kauae runga, ko te kauae raro, ko te whakapapa, ko te kōrero, ko te pūrākau, ko te whakataukī, ko te kawa o te whaikōrero (reira tonu). Atu i tēnei, ko tētehi atu take, ki te mahia he pūnaha momo-kōrero mō ngā kōrero Māori ka whakawhārikihia te reo-ā-iwi ki ngā tikanga reo o iwi kē, o tangata kē. Ko tētehi whakahoki, ka waiho mā te hapū, mā te iwi ō rātou whare kōrero e hanga kia puritia ai i ngā āhuatanga motuhake o te reo, o te momo-kōrero. Hei tauira ake, ko tēnei mea te waiata. Ko tā Āpirana Ngata o Ngāti Porou mō ngā momo waiata a te Māori, “kei raro i te kupu whānui nei i te waiata Māori he maha ngā momo, ngā wehewehenga, kci te āhua tonu o te pūtake i titoa ai tēnā waiata, tēnā waiata” (Ngata & Jones, 1959: xi). He whakaaro kē atu anō ō Pouroto Ngaropo o Ngāti Awa, o Tūwharetoa mō runga i te takenga mai o tēnei mea te waiata mōteatea. Ki a Pouroto, ko te waiata mōteatea te kīanga mō ngā momo waiata katoa, te waiata tawhito, te waiata koroua, te waiata pēhea rānei (Ngaropo, 1995). Ā, āpiti atu ki tērā, kia kūiti te titiro ki tētehi momo waiata, he whakaaro kē atu anō ō Te Kapunga Dewes o Ngāti Porou mō te whakaingoa i te mea nei, te waiata haka:

Ko te ingoa pai ki au mō te modern action song ko te waiata haka, engari ko ōna ingoa taurite ki ētahi atu iwi, rohe rānei, he haka-ā-ringa, he waiata-ā-ringa, he waiata kori, he haka waiata, he pao, he haka nā ngā wāhine, he waiata Pākehā, he waiata (Dewes, 1974: 7).

Kei te kitea atu mēnā ka mahia he pūnaha momo-kōrero ā-iwi, he mōhiotanga kē nō tēnā iwi, nō tēnā iwi mō te kupu e tika ana, mō te whakatakotoranga e tika ana kia pūmau tonu ngā āhuatanga motuhake o te iwi. Engari ia, me takoto hoki he pūnaha momo-kōrero ā-

motu hei arataki mā ngā rōpū ehara i te hapū, i te iwi, pēnei i te rōpū e kaha nei ki te whakaputa momo-kōrero, hei whakatauirā ake ko Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga.

I roto i ngā tau kua putaputa ētehi whakaaro mō te whakarōpū i ngā kōrero (Quest Rapuara, 1991). Hei tauira, ko te wehewehenga o te tāhu kōrero me te tāhu tuhinga.

Te Whakaahua 3.19: He Wehewehenga Momo-Kōrero: Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi
A division of text types: spoken and written

He mea tiki atu i *He Waka Eke Noa: Māori information resources*. 1991.
Wellington: Quest Rapuara

Oral Arts

Karanga, whaikōrero, waiata, haka, whakataukī, pakiwaitara, kōrero ā-iwi

Written Arts

Mōteatea, paki maero, tuhinga poto, pakiwaitara tamariki

Engari ki tā Kaa Williams (2004, tirohia Te Whakaahua 3.20) e whā kē ngā tino huinga o ngā momo-kōrero Māori. I Waipapa marae ka whakamāramatia e Williams tāna i kite ai mō ngā momo-kōrero Māori. Ko te pūtakeanga o tēnei tauira ko te rākau tawa. Ina titiro whakaroto te tangata ki te ito o te rākau koia ko te karakia. Puta whakawaho ana, ko te kawa, ko te paki, me ērā anō o te ao. Arā noa atu te painga mēnā ka rangahaua katoatia ngā momo-kōrero ā tātou nei. Ka mutu, ko tētehi āwangawanga ōna kei te whakawhiti te reo¹⁸ o paki ki roto i te reo o kawa. Pēnei i te whakawhiti o ngā kīwaha o ia rā ki roto i ngā whaikōrero. He whakapaki i te kōrero ōkawa. Ko te take pea, ko te taumata reo o te kaikōrero e whakaputa ana i te reo e mōhio ana ia me te kore hāngai i tōna reo, i āna KĪPEHA ki te wā, ki te wāhi, ki te whakaminenga rānei. Heoi, he kaupapa rangahau kē atu tērā.

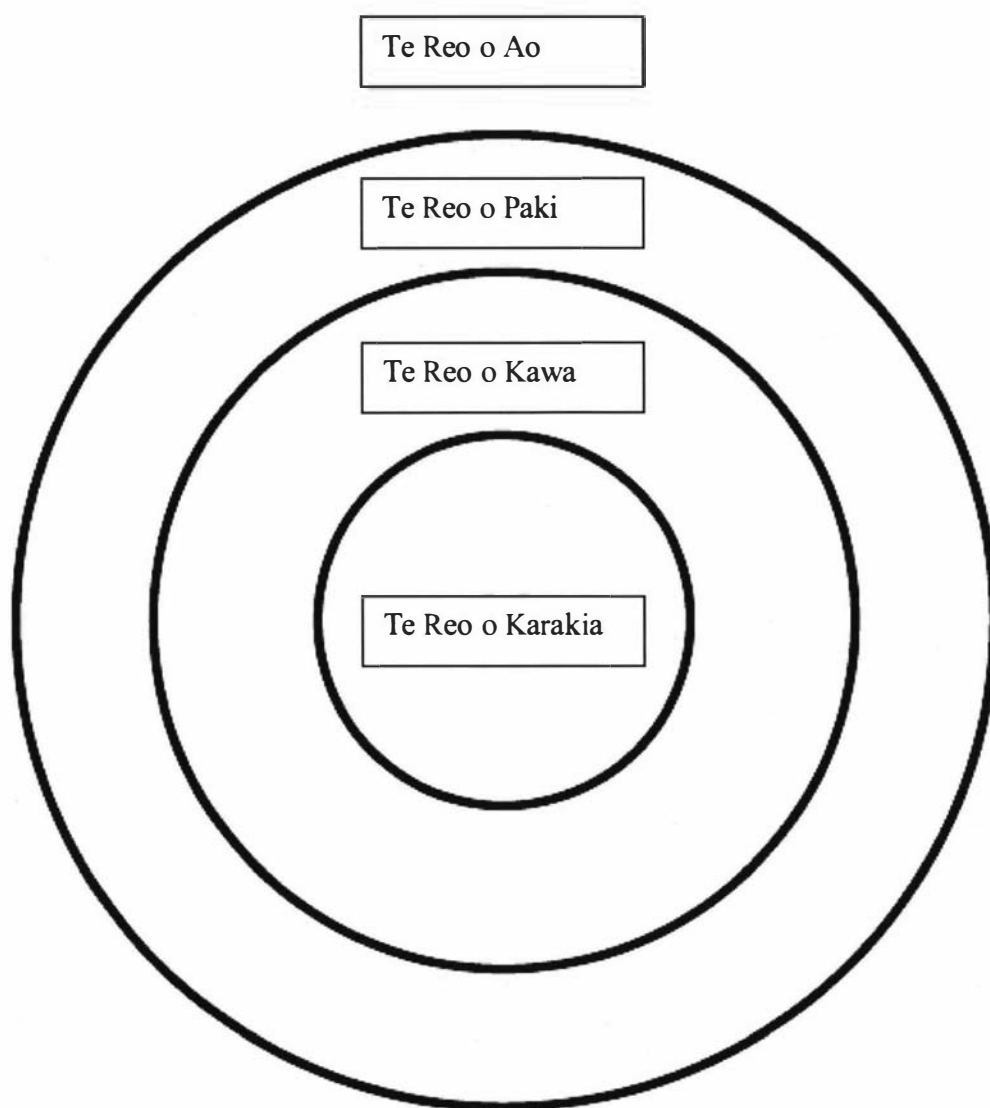
¹⁸ Nā, mō tā Williams whakamahi i te kupu reo, he kupu whakarite, ā, ko te rēhita kē tērā.

Te Whakaahua 3.20: He Wāhi Momo-Kōrero

Domains of text types

He mea hanga i runga i ngā kōrero a Kaa Williams, Kauhau, Waipapa Marae,

12 November 2004



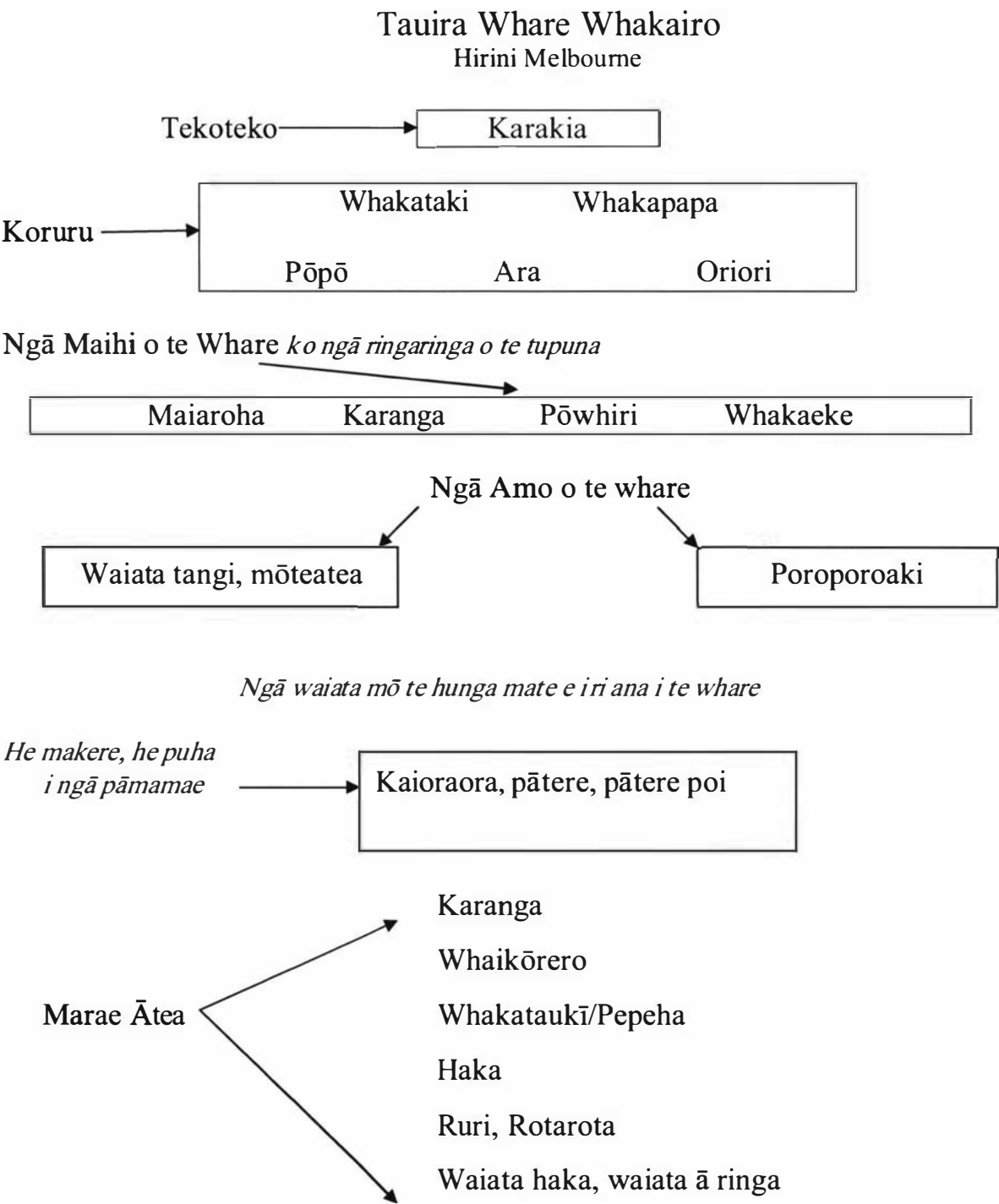
I ngā whakawhitinga kōrero ki ētehi pūkenga reo Māori ka puta he whakaaro atu anō hei whakarōpū i ngā Mātātuhi Māori nei. Ko ngā whakaaro o Hirini Melbourne mō ngā momo-kōrero rangatira o te ao Māori. Ko tāna whakahoki ki te ui makihoi mō te tapu, mō te noa, ko *Ngā Pūoro Reo ā te Māori* te huihuinga o ngā momo-kōrero. Kua tīkina atu e ia tēnei mea te whare tupuna, ko tōna āhua, ōna wāhanga tinana hei tairitenga. Nā, ko tā te tangata nāna tēnei i tuku mai:

Ko te painga atu hoki o tēnei ka kitea he wāhi motuhake hei nohonoho mō tēnā momo mō tēnā momo, ka mutu, ka kitea hoki i te noho tapu o ētahi me te noho noa o ētahi.

(T. Karena, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Hereturi-kōkā, 2005)

Hei te Wāhanga e whai tata mai nei ka kitea ko ētehi o ngā kaiako ka kī mai me whakamahi ko te katoa, ko ētehi atu kei te kī mai me whakamahi kē ko ngā momo-kōrero he ātaahua te takoto. Nō konei māku e kī atu kei tēnā iwi, kei tēnā rōpū, kei tēnā tangata ōna ake whakaaro mō ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana hei akoako. Waiho mā tēnā, mā tēnā tō rātou ake whare e hanga, e whakairo. Kei te tangata te tikanga kō ēhea ngā kete kōrero hei whakairinga ake ki ngā pātū. Ki te whai take te momo-kōrero ki roto i ā rātou kaupapa, tērā ka whakamahia atu. I runga hoki i te mea he maha kē atu ngā momo-kōrero i ērā o Ngā Pūoro Reo ā te Māori, ā, e tika ana me whānui te whakamahia o ngā momo-kōrero huhua i rō akomanga, me haere tonu te whakawhānui, te whakarōpū i runga i te mōhio ko ngā tātai momo-kōrero e whai nei he tūmomo whakatakotoranga hei āwhina mā te pouako ehara i te mea hei here i a ia.

Te Whakaahua 3.21: Ngā Pūoro Reo a te Māori



3.6 He Tātai Momo-Kōrero

Ko tētehi whāinga o te mahere momo-kōrero kia ora ai te reo me ōna teiteitanga katoa. Me pēhea tātou e whakapapa i ā tātou korero?

Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Tēnei e whai nei tētehi mahere kua rima tau e rangahaua ana, e rāwekeweke ana kia whakautua te pātai a te rōpū arataki i runga nei. Nō runga tonu i te mōhio, e kore nei e oti i tēnei rangahau te katoa te whakakao. Tērā hoki ka tangohia e tētehi atu tangata ka whakarerekē ai i te takotoranga ki tāna e hiahia rā. Ā, koinā te wawata. Ko te mea kē, kua oti te tāhuhu te whakaaroaro, ā, nei rā te hua. Hei te Wāhanga e whai mai nei ka matapakina ngā whakahokinga kōrero a tēnā, a tēnā mō tē āhua o tēnei mahere me te whai pānga ki roto i te kura, i te mahi. Heoi, kia paku whai wāhi i konei ki te kōrero i ētehi anō āhuatanga i puta mō te tātai momo-kōrero e whai nei.

I te rahinga o ngā momo-kōrero tērā pea ka kore e āta kite ngā kaiako me ngā ākonga i ngā momo-kōrero. Nā whai anō te tātai momo-kōrero nei. He mahere hei whakarāpopoto i ā tātou momo-kōrero, momo waiata. Ko te huinga tāhu kōrero kei te whai i tā Williams (2004) mō te ōpaki, ōkawa. Ka whāia ko tā tētehi kaiuru mō te whakarōpū i ngā kīpeha. Ko te wehewehenga tuhituhi kei te whai i tā Oglan (2003). Arā ake anō ngā momo tuhinga me ngā momo-kōrero hei whakairi ake ki te tātai nei, heoi me waiho ērā mā te rārangi momo-kōrero. Mā te tātai momo-kōrero e whakarāpopoto. He tauiratanga noa iho inā hiahia ana te kaiako ki te whakaatu atu i tētehi huinga momo-kōrero ki ngā ākonga. Ko tētehi raruraru ki tā te Māori titiro he mea hekeheke taua whakatakotoranga. Anō, ko te taotahi, ka heke mai tētehi i tētehi. Aua atu. He whakaaturanga noa e māmā ai te kitea.

E kitea mai ana kua whai i tā Kaa i kī ai mō te wehewehe i ngā kōrero kia ōkawa, kia ōpaki. Ahakoa e pēnei ana te whakatakotoranga ki runga pepa, e mōhioitia ana he wā tōna ka uru ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero i raro i te karangatanga paki ki roto i te kawa. Pēnei i te whakapapa ki rō whaikōrero, i te houtanga rānei o te pūrākau, inā ko Māui rāua ko

Hinenui-te-pō, ki roto i te poroporoaki. Koia ko te HONONGA Ā-KŌRERO¹⁹. He ariā nui tēnei kia kitea te hononga me te pānga o tētehi momo-kōrero ki tētehi. Heoi anō rā, tērā pea ki tā te Māori whakaaro mō te whānau ōkawa nei, he tapu kē atu ēnei o ngā momo-kōrero. Kia kaua e tānoatia te whakapapa, ā-tuhi nei ki te kai, he tapu. Kia kaua noa te ware e tū ki runga i te marae ki te whaikōrero, he tapu. Kia kaua noa te kōtiro e karanga ki te ope whai mana, he tapu. Nā, he wā, he wāhi pea, he tapu kē atu, ā, he tapu rawa atu ngā momo-kōrero nei; ka mutu, he wā, he wāhi atu anō hoki, kāore he tapu o ngā momo-kōrero nei. Ko te tikanga pea, te whāinga rānei, kia hou ki roto i te urutapu kia mana ai, kia tairangatia ai taua huinga momo-kōrero.

Mō te huinga kīpeha, e kore taua huinga e kōrerotia i tōna kotahi. Mā tētehi anō momo-kōrero o roto i ērā anō rōpū e kawe te kīpeha. Inā, te nui te o te kīpeha ki ngā mōteatea, te maha o ngā kīpeha i te whaikōrero, te mahi o te kīpeha i te poroporoaki. I te Wāhanga Tuawaru ka ruku ki te hōhonutanga o tēnei huinga kupu ki te kimi māramatanga mō ia kīpeha. Ka hoki mai ki tēnei huinga kupu hei whakanikoniko i te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero.

E tipu tonu ana te mātātuhī, tēnei ariā ki te ao Māori, arā ko te tuhinga kounga. Kāore i tua atu o *Ngā Mōteatea* hei kupu waiata. Heoi anō, ko ētehi o ngā tuhinga he mea whakamāori pēnei i tā Jones whakamāori i te whakaari a Wiremu Rūrūtao, te *Tangata Whai Rawa o Weneti* me ngā whakamāoritanga a ngā haurongo o *Tāngata Taumata Rau*. Ko ētehi anō tuhinga he mea hī ake tonu i roto i te reo Māori, inā ko *Makorea* a Katerina Mataira te pakimaero tuatahi. Ko ngā tuhinga poto e whakaputaina ana e Huia Publishers ia rua tau. Heoi anō rā, ia tau, ia tau puta mai ai he momo tuhinga hei āpiti atu ki te huinga mātātuhī. Me waiho pea mā te wā ka tohu mēnā he tino momo-kōrero ki tā te ngākau o te hāpori reo Māori.

¹⁹ inter-textuality

Te Whakaahua 3.22: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero

He mea hanga i runga i ā Williams 2004 rāua ko Oglan 2003.

Reo Kōrero

Kōrero Ōkawa

	Formal Texts
karakia	<i>incantation</i>
karanga	<i>welcome call</i>
mihi	<i>acknowledgement</i>
mihimihi	<i>greetings</i>
poroporoaki	<i>eulogy</i>
whaikōrero	<i>oratory</i>
whakapapa	<i>recite lineage</i>

Kōrero Ōpaki

	Informal Texts
kauhau	<i>seminar</i>
kawenga kōrero	<i>news story</i>
kōrero ā-iwi, ā-hapū,	<i>tribal, clan,</i>
ā-whānau	<i>family oral history</i>
kōrero tuku iho	<i>oral legacy</i>
kōrero paki	<i>entertainment</i>
kōrero whakakata	<i>joke</i>
kōrerorero	<i>conversation</i>
manu kōrero	<i>prepared speech</i>
pepe takimanawa	<i>breath game</i>
pūrākau	<i>ancient narrative</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>legend</i>
paki	<i>narrative</i>
rotarota	<i>action poem</i>
ruri	<i>ditty</i>
takawiri arero	<i>tongue twister</i>
taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>

Kīpeha

	Figurative Expressions
kīrehu	<i>local idiom</i>
kīwaha	<i>idiom, colloquialism</i>
kupu whakaari/tongi	<i>prophetic saying</i>
kupu whakarite	<i>metaphoric saying</i>
pepeha	<i>tribal maxim</i>
whakataukī	<i>proverb</i>
whakatauākī	<i>specific proverb</i>

Mōteatea

	Sung, Semi-sung Texts
haka	<i>haka</i>
mōteatea	<i>lament</i>
waiata	<i>song</i>
waiata-ā-ringa	<i>action song</i>

Reo Tuhituhi

Tuhinga Whaiaro, Karere

	Personal, & Message
haukiri	<i>autobiography</i>
haurongo	<i>biography</i>
hautaka	<i>journal</i>

i-mēra	<i>e-mail</i>
karere	<i>text message</i>
kāri	<i>card</i>
nōti	<i>note</i>
poukāri	<i>postcard</i>
pōwhiri	<i>invite</i>
rārangi take	<i>agenda</i>
rātaka	<i>diary</i>
reta	<i>letter</i>

Tuhinga Auaha

	Creative Writing
kupu waiata	<i>lyrics</i>
mōteatea	<i>poetry</i>
pakimaero	<i>novel</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>narrative</i>
pakiwaituhi	<i>comic</i>
pukapuka pikitia	<i>picture book</i>
ruri	<i>light poem</i>
tuhinga poto	<i>short story</i>
whakaari	<i>play</i>

Tuhinga Whakamōhio, Pūrongo

	Information, & Reportage
atikara	<i>article</i>
kōrero pono	<i>non-fiction</i>
	<i>writing</i>
niupepa	<i>newspaper</i>
pūrongo	<i>report</i>
rārangi wā	<i>timeline</i>
tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi	<i>essay, thesis</i>

Tuhinga Tohutohu, Whakamārama

	Instruction, & Explanation
hoahoa	<i>design</i>
pae whakaata	<i>web page</i>
rārangi kai	<i>menu</i>
tohutao	<i>recipe</i>
tohutohu	<i>instruction</i>
ture	<i>rules</i>

Tuhinga Whakawherenga,

Whai Whakaaro

	Persuasion, & Opinion
arotakenga	<i>review</i>
pānuitanga	<i>advertisement</i>
pānui	<i>message</i>
pānui whakaahua	<i>poster</i>
puka whakamōhio	<i>brochure</i>
tukunga pāpāho	<i>press release</i>

Ko tētehi whakaaro o te rōpū tātaki, he pai te tāhu whakaaro, heoi anō rā, he nui noa atu ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana:

Ko ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero arā noa atu ngā tūmomo e taka mai ana i te mea kotahi. Ina he maha ngā momo mōteatea, he maha ngā momo karakia. Tērā pea ka whakaaturia ēnei ki tētehi anō wāhi.

Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

He take nui tēnei mō tēnei tātai momo-kōrero, inā, arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero i raro iho i te kārangatanga kotahi. Hei tauira ake, kua kōrerotia kētia e ai ki a Kaa ko te karakia, me kī, ko te tīmatanga me te mutunga o te ao Māori. Ki a Hirini ko te karakia te tekoteko, inā te ikeiketanga o te whare. Nā, ki te whai atu i tēnei whakaaro o rāua mō te karakia, arā he tino momo-kōrero i roto i te ao Māori, he aha ngā tūmomo karakia e taka mai ana i raro i taua kupu kotahi. Me pēhea rānei e rangahaua ai aua momo karakia? I tētehi tangata o te hāpori reo te whakautu (M. Boyce, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Pipiri, 2005). Ko te whakaaro kia wherawhera i ngā whārangi o te papakupu, *Wiremu*, kia kitea te maha o ngā momo-kōrero i reira.

Nā, ka ekea te Wakareo ā-ipurangi, he kaupapa papakupu ā-hiko, kia tirohia ai ngā papakupu e rima mō te kupu karakia hei tauratanga. Kotahi rau e iwa tekau mā whā ngā kupu e hāngai ana ki te kupu 'karakia', 'incantation' nei. Anei e rārangi nei ngā momo karakia, ngā kupu rānei e hāngai ana ki te karakia. Ko te mea nui, e kitea mai ana, he nui noa atu ngā momo-kōrero e taka mai ana i te kupu kotahi. Ka rua, kua rerekē rawa atu ngā momo karakia o ēnei rā. E kore pea e rangona ngā 'kā mahunu' ki ngā tiriti o ēnei rā.

Te Whakaahua 3.23: Ngā Momo Karakia i Te Wakareo ā-Ipurangi

1. Ahitaitai	a large class of karakia taking the prefix ahi
2. Ahitāhoka	a karakia
3. Ahi taumata	a karakia
4. Ahuroa	a karakia used for kūmara planting
5. Amotai	a karakia
6. Aukume, Aukukume	a type of karakia
7. Āuriuri	a karakia for rendering persons free from tapu
8. Awa, awa moana	a karakia to still a storm
9. Hamanu	karakia to restore health
10. Hika	a karakia associated with fire
11. Huri-i-te-takapau	a karakia for removing the tapu after battle or other important undertaking
12. Huru	a karakia recited over weapons before battle
13. Hurupiki	a karakia over weapons before battle
14. Ihi	a karakia
15. Ihowaka	ceremony for treating a sickness
16. Ikanuiatahua	a karakia
17. Kahau	a karakia
18. Karo	a karakia
19. Kaikaro	a protection karakia
20. Kaiure	a karakia to ward off mākutū, remove tapu
21. Karakia	ancient rites proper to every important matter in the life of the Māori
22. Karakia mahaki	a karakia
23. Karakia ohaoha	part of the ritual marriage
24. Karakia puni	a karakia (wero taniwha?)
25. Karakia pūrākau	a ceremony connected with making and launching a waka
26. Karakia ranga	perform rites over the child of a chief
27. Karakia tohi	a karakia before or after battle making the subject successful
28. Karakia whakamaharatanga	
29. Karakia whakaongaonga	see karakia tūī
30. Karakia whakaruhi	a karakia
31. Kete	a type of karakia where a kete was used
32. Kī, kī tao	a karakia over a spear before battle
33. Kikiwhara	a karakia
34. Kōpani	a karakia to blind the eyes of a pursuer
35. Mahunu	a karakia for putting enemies to flight
36. Kā mahunu	a ceremony performed over the cooked hearts of a foe
37. Maikiroa	a karakia
38. Mākutu	a karakia
39. Kanakana	
40. Kanakanaia	
41. Mauī	
42. Whaiwhaiā	
43. Māmā	rites to nullify a hostile spell or remove tapu
44. Mānawa	a karakia for making benefits received permanent
45. Maninikura	a karakia
46. Mangamangaiatua	a charm
47. Maro	a karakia
48. Mata	a karakia recited over weapons before fighting
49. Matahi	a form of karakia
50. Matakahi	a karakia to hasten the kai-whai-whakakaha
51. Mauri	a class of karakia
52. Miri	a karakia for soothing pain, grief, etc

53. Moanauri	a karakia
54. Mono	a karakia to disable an enemy
55. Naenaemoko	a karakia in connection with cultivating kūmara
56. Nguru	a karakia in connection with marriage
57. Mangungu	a karakia connected to the cultivation of kūmara
58. Paki, papaki	a karakia to kill or injure a woman who rejects a suitor
59. Pongipongi	a karakia to cause death
60. Poutama	a karakia used to in the case of certain maladies
61. Puhi	a karakia used in time of war
62. Ripa	a karakia used for defense
63. Rongomaiwhiti	a karakia
64. Rotu	a karakia
65. Taka	a form of karakia
66. Take	a karakia
67. Takutaku atua	a karakia connected with the niu ceremony
68. Tāngaengae	a karakia to confer vigour
69. Tangi Ātahu	a karakia for love
70. Tangi Tawhiti	a karakia
71. Tapatapa	a karakia, tapatapa kūmara
72. Taputapu	a karakia
73. Taumaha	a karakia recited when food is offered to the atua, or for rendering food, etc., free from tapu and for other purposes
74. Tauparapara	a karakia for moving a waka on a portage and other purposes
75. Teka	a karakia
76. Tiepa	a karakia for snaring birds
77. Tiri	a karakia to drive out an atua
78. Titikura	a karakia to restore to health sick or wounded people
79. Tūā	a karakia used at the ceremony for removing tapu from an infant
80. Tūāimu, tūāumu	spells and rites for divination, and other purposes such as depriving power from an enemy
81. Tūāwawahia	a karakia to ward off mākutū
82. Tui	a karakia for taking game
83. Tuku	a karakia to give ease in childbirth
84. Tūmāngai	a karakia
85. Tūtaumaha	a karakia
86. Tute	a karakia to ward off malign influences
87. Umanga	a karakia for the destruction of an enemy
88. Umu pongipongi	a karakia to cause death
89. Urupuke	perform certain rites at the conclusion of work connected with kūmara or taro
90. Uruuru whenua	a karakia to preserve or acquire lands
91. Wero taniwha	a karakia
92. Whiti	a karakia
93. Whaiā,	
94. Whaiwhaiā	to injure by karakia
95. Whakakahurua	a karakia to effect the vision of an enemy so to escape
96. Whakamaiangi	a karakia for raising anything up
97. Whakamama	a karakia to remove tapu
98. Whakamoemoe	a karakia
99. Whakapuru	a karakia
100. Whakararau	a karakia to keep things firm and together in spite of counter spells
101. Whakarewā	a karakia to drive something away
102. Whakaumu	a karakia to debilitate the enemy
103. Whakatopatopa	a karakia usual when planting
104. Whangawhangai	a karakia

Nō reira he maha ngā momo-kōrero e taka mai ana ki raro i tēnā momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo-kōrero. He momo karakia, he momo karanga, he momo whaikōrero, he momo waiata. Me te mea hoki, tērā pea ka noho tētehi tauira hei whakaari i te taumata o ia momo-kōrero. E mea ana a Kāretu (1987:71),

Kei te mōhio koutou o ia momo waiata, he waiata kei te mōhiotia whānuitia e ngā iwi o te motu, arā, ko te waiata tangi tino rongonui ko “E Pa Tō Hau”, nā ngā iwi o te riu o Waikato; ko te waiata aroha tino rongonui ko “Ka Eke ki Wairaka”, nā Rihi Puhīwāhine o Ngāti Tūwharetoa; ko te pātere tino rongonui ko “Poia atu Taku Poi”, nā Erenora Taratoa o Ngāti Raukawa; ā, ko te oriori tino rongonui ko “Popo”, nā Ēnoka te Pakaru o Te Aitanga-ā-Māhaki.

Kia whai i tēnei ia whakaaro o Kāretu, mēnā ka hangaia e tētehi rōpū tā rātou ake tātai momo-kōrero, tērā pea e tika ana hoki kia whakaingoatia tētehi o ia momo-kōrero rongonui hei whakatauiratanga atu. Kua pēnei i te Āpitihanga 1 o tēnei tuhinga. Heoi, ko ia hapori, ko ia rōpū, ko ia tangata kei te mōhio ki ngā tauira mana nui o ia momo-kōrero. Kei te puna maumahara pea e pupuritia ana.

3.7 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Ko te kaupapa nui o tēnei Wāhanga, ko te hanga i ētehi rautaki tūhono kia kotahi ai te whakaatu i ngā momo-kōrero Māori. Koia rā ngā ripanga e toru nei: He Rārangi Momo-Kōrero (kei te Āpitihanga 1); He Momo-Kōrero ā-waha, he Momo-Kōrero ā-tuhi, he Momo-Kōrero ā-mata (kei te Whakaahua 4.3); Te Tātai Momo-Kōrero kua taha atu nei. Mā aua mahere e aro nui ai te hunga ki te whānuitanga o ā tātou kōrero Māori. E tūmanako ake ana, mā konei, mā te whakanahanaha i te huhua o ngā momo-kōrero e pakari ai te ako i te ‘mōhio ki te kōrero’²⁰. Hei te Wāhanga e whai mai nei ka arotakea te pai, te kino, te whai pānga o ngā mahere momo-kōrero nei ki te horopaki mātauranga. Kāore e kore, inā noa atu ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana kia uru ki roto i ia huinga kupu. Kāti rā, tē taea e tētehi waewae kotahi te rapu te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero i te potonga o te wā, i te itinga o te huruhuru. Ko ēnei take ka matapakingia ā taihoa poto nei.

²⁰ literacy

Waihoki, ki konei pea whakamutua ai tētehi whakatūpatotanga a Wilson mō te whakatupuranga o tēnei mea te tatau momo tuhinga, ā, momo-kōrero. E tika ana kia ahu whakamua tētehi kaupapa whakaora reo, heoi, me tūpato tonu pea te takahanga o te waewae rangahau. Kei tae atu ki tētehi āhuatanga kāore e wawatatia ana e te rahi. Inā, ki a Wilson, he āwangawanga nōna mō te whakakūiti i tētehi kaupapa ātaahua kāore pea e tika ana me whakakūiti. Nei rā tāna kia whakairia ake tēnei wāhanga o te tuhinga nei (1999: 36):

He pērā anō te kaute momo tuhinga, he manawapā nōku e pā ana ki te whakapouaka i te hua o te momo-kōrero paki ki roto i tētehi huinga momo reo e taea ai te kaute... Ka rerekē te momo-kōrero, pērā i te momo kākahu, i te momo waka, i te waiaro rānei ki te kai mīti, i te aha noa ake. Nā reira, kia tirohia ko te momo-kōrero pēnei i te tohutoo, i te pūrongo, tērā ka huri, ka tupu, ka huri, ka tupu^v.

Ngā Whakataukītanga i te Reo Ingarihi

ⁱ Tribal history and affairs; biography, both contemporary and traditional; the arts; Māori language issues; Māori customary practices; and, education, tribal and cultural gatherings, law, artefacts, and native wildlife.

ⁱⁱ I am not concerned, therefore, with pamphlets, histories, journalsim, diaries, car manuals, menus, promotional literature on fridge-freezers, biographies or beer mats.

ⁱⁱⁱ To support the teaching and learning of languages other than English and English as a second language through the use of learning technologies.

^{iv} These genre labels have been carefully selected to capture as wide a range as possible of the numerous types of spoken and written texts in English.

^v As with genre counting, I feel some uneasiness about attempting to squeeze the richness of story forms into a specific number of registers...Texts change, as do styles of dress, modes of transport, attitudes to eating meat, and so much else. So even a text type such as a recipe or a report must be seen as fluid and evolving.

TE WĀHANGA TUAWHĀ

Te Arotakenga i te Tātai Momo-Kōrero

Ko te iwi Māori tētahi iwi kaha ki te haka, ki te waiata, ki te whakangahau, ki te rotarota.

Pēti Nohotima (2003:5)

Ko te kōrero te kākahu whakaahua mai i tō hinengaro.

Hōri Mataiawhea Tait¹

4.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

4.2 Te Whakamātauria o te Tātai Momo-Kōrero

4.2.1 Te Whaihua

4.2.2 Te Whakamahi

4.2.3 Te Rauemi

4.2.4 Te Māramatanga

4.2.5 Te Hononga ki te Marautanga Reo Māori

4.3 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero

4.3.1 Te Tātai Momo-Kōrero: Te Whakahoutanga

4.3.2 E Toru ngā Tū Momo-Kōrero: He Tini ngā Momo

4.3.3 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: He Pūtakctanga

4.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

¹ Williams, H. (1995:2)

4.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Ko tā tēnei Wāhanga he whakarāpopoto i ngā kōrero a ngā kaiarotake i ngā mahere momo-kōrero nā te kairangahau i hanga (kei te Wāhanga Tuatoru: Te Tātai Momo-kōrero, Te Whakaahua 3.22; He Momo-Kōrero ā-waha, he Momo-Kōrero ā-tuhi, he Momo-Kōrero ā-mata, te Whakaahua 4.3) me ngā kaupapa reo e whai pānga ana ki tēnei rangahau. Ka pātaia ngā tāngata tekau ki ngā pātai e rima mō te painga o ētehi mahere i hīa ake e te kairangahau. Ka mutu, katoa aua tāngata i mea mai ka whai hua ki a rātou ēnei whakakitenga rangahau. Kei tēnei Wāhanga ā rātou kōrero mō te Tātai Momo-Kōrero, kei ngā Wāhanga o tua atu ētehi anō o ō rātou whakaaro mō ngā nuka reo, mō ngā kīpeha, arā, mō ngā āhuatanga reo e whakarākei ana i te momo-kōrero. Heoi, ko te mea nui ka whai whakaaro mai hoki rātou mō te whakapai ake i taua mahere. Ko te kaupapa te whiwhi i ā rātou whakahokinga kōrero.

Kei te Wāhanga Tuarima ngā kōrero whakamārama mō te ara i whāia kia torotoro atu ki tēnā tangata, ki tēnā tangata. Ehara rawa i te mea i torona anake ko ngā kaiako o te Kōhanga Reo, o te Kura Kauapapa Māori, o te Wharekura. Ka peka hoki ki ētehi kaimahi wharetā, ki ētehi tāngata mā rātou e whakangungu ngā kaiako. I pēnei ai kia whānui tonu te tirohanga. Ahakoa i arotakea e ngā tāngata nei, ka whakaaturia hoki ki ia kaiuru, ā, ka riro nā rātou, nā te rōpū tautoko i te rangahau, nā ngā kaitautoko hoki i huri te āhua o ngā mahere momo-kōrero. Ka mutu, mō te tuhinga kairangi, ko ngā tātai momo-kōrero o tēnei Wāhanga tētehi o ngā whakautu ki tēnei pātai rangahau, ‘Me pēhea e whakamaheretia ai ngā momo-kōrero Māori?’ Anei ētehi huarahi hei aratakinga mā rātou e mahi ana i roto i te reo Māori.

4.2. Te Whakamātauria o te Tātai Momo-Kōrero

Nō te marama o Whiringa-a-rangi, ka hui tahi māua ko Mason Durie, tētehi ahorangi o te Whare Wānanga o Massey nei ki te whakarite i tētehi anga hei whakamātautau i te rārangi momo-kōrero (Āpitianga 1), i ngā tātai momo-kōrero me ngā kīpeha ki te taha o ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero. Ko ngā tātai momo-kōrero e rua nei i whakamātauria: Te Tātai Momo-Kōrero: Momo-Kōrero ā-waha, Momo-Kōrero ā-tuhi, Momo-Kōrero ā-mata me te Tātai Momo-Kōrero: he whakarāpopoto. Ka

whirihia i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero me Mason kia rima ngā wāhanga hei tirohanga: te whai hua, te whakamahi, te whai rauemi, te māramatanga, te hononga hoki ki te marautanga. I kawea pērātia atu ngā pātai ki ia kaiwhakahoki kōrero. I tuaruatia hoki ngā pātai mō te taha kīpeha. Heoi, ko aua whakahokinga kōrero mō te kīpeha kei te Wāhanga Tuawaru e takoto atu ana.

Te Whakaahua 4.1: He Tirohanga, he Urupounamu hei Arotake i te Mahere

Foci and questions

Hei Tirohanga <i>Domain of Interest</i>	Urupounamu <i>Question</i>
4.2.1 Whai Hua <i>Value</i>	Ka whai hua tēnei mahere ki te whakarite i ngā momo-kōrero? (Whakaaturia te tātai momo-kōrero me te rārangi momo-kōrero) <i>Is this map of benefit when planning texts? (Show the taxonomy and list)</i>
4.2.2 Whakamahi <i>Utility</i>	Me pēhea e whakamahi ai i tēnei mahere i tō mahi? He pēhea te whakarite i ngā momo-kōrero i tēnei wā? <i>How might you use this taxonomy (in your work/classroom)? How is it planned for at present?</i>
4.2.3 Rauemi <i>Resource</i>	He nui ngā rauemi, ngā tauira mō ia wāhanga nei? <i>Are there sufficient resources that fulfil each section? (show text taxonomy and sections-ōkawa, ōpaki, etc)</i>
4.2.4 Māramatanga <i>Functionality</i>	Me pēhea e pai ake ai tēnei mahere? He huarahi atu anō hei whakamahere? <i>How can we improve this model? Are there other ways of presenting the texts?</i>
4.2.5 Hononga <i>Alignment</i>	He pēhea rā te hononga o te mahere nei ki te marautanga reo Māori? <i>How is the taxonomy connected to the Māori language curriculum?</i>

4.2.1 Te Whai Hua

Katoa ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero i kī mai e tino whai hua ana ngā kōrero o tēnei rangahautanga. Me tō rātou mīharo anō ki te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero ā te Māori. Ko tētehi o ngā take matua mō ngā pouako, i tēnei wā kore kau he mahere hei āwhina mā rātou ki te whakauru i ngā momo-kōrero maha ki roto i te akomanga, inā tā te kaiwhakahoki kōrero tuawhā, ‘There isn’t a clear map that sets out genre or texts in Māori for teachers of Māori in the classroom. It’s a very useful and helpful thing...’ He pērā hoki te kaiwhakahoki kōrero tuarima, ‘Tino ātaahua, tino pai ngā mahi. Tino pai te kite i ā tātou tūmomo mahi.’ Āpitingia atu, ka kōrero mai tētehi kaiako kura kaupapa he ‘anga hei ārahi’ me tāna kei te kawea haeretia ngā ARORO² nei mō te ōpaki, mō te ōkawa ki roto i ngā kura:

He rawe tēnei, te kite atu i ngā momo i ngā rōpū i runga i te pepa kotahi!

Ka tino whai hua. Koinā te wero kei mua i te aroaro kaiako i tēnei wā. Ko te anga hei ārahi. Tētehi o ngā kaiako i puta i te whare wānanga o Tāmaki Makaurau, i mahi hoki i Hoani Waititi, ka kōrero mō te whakaritenga o te ōkawa me te ōpaki. I taea te whakatinana i roto i te akomanga.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Ko ētehi kaiako kei te aro nui ki ngā momo-kōrero e rangona ana ki te marae, ā, mahue mai ana ko ērā anō o te ao mātauranga, o te ao mahi, o hea atu rānei. Inā:

Ko ētahi kaiako kei te tino pai. Kei te tino mōhio ki ētahi tūmomo tuhinga, ā, ka whakaako pērā atu. Ētahi ka pōhēhē ko te reo karanga, ko te reo mōteatea me te reo whaikōrero ngā mea anake, ngā *genres* o te reo Māori. Nō reira ka whai noa i aua mea e toru. Ana, kua mahue katoa ērā atu.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 5

Nā reira he āhua whāiti pea te tirohanga a ētehi kaiako ki ngā tino momo-kōrero. Kei te mōhiotanga tonu, kei te mātauranga tonu o te kaiako ko ēhea ngā momo-kōrero ka whakamahia i te akomanga. Koinā tētehi anō hua o te mahere nei me te rārangi momo-kōrero i te Āpitianga 1, he whakamaumahara ake ki ngā kaiako, arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana te kuhu ki roto i te akomanga.

² concepts

He mutunga kore tō tēnei mahi, inā rā te whakakao i ngā ingoa momo-kōrero i te rerekē haeretanga o te ao Māori. Arā atu anō ngā momo-kōrero ā-iwi, ā-wai rānei hei tāpiri atu. Koia hoki tā tēnei kaiwhakahoki kōrero me tāna ko ngā kōrero i te taha ā-waha ka taea te tuhi, te whakaatu rānei:

Nō te mea i titiro au ki te katoa, kei te whakaae i ngā rārangi, engari he nui atu nga tāhuhu tuhinga ka taea. Mō te katoa. Nō te mea ko tēnei mea ko te haka ahakoa te momo haka e taea te pānui ā-tuhi. Kāore he rerekē, ko tēnei mea te tuhituhi he tuku i ngā kupu kia ora tonu nga kupu kia kitea ngā kanohi a ētahi atu kia taea te kukume mai rātou kia puta mai ō rātou waha. Koina anō te kaha o te mahi tuhi. Kāore he tua atu o tērā.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 6

Ko tētehi anō painga i whakahuatia e tētehi kaitā rauemi, he huarahi tēnei hei whakaputa whakaaro mō te taha ki te tā i ngā momo-kōrero:

I would definitely find the mahere useful at the planning stage when we come up with ideas to put forward proposals to the Ministry for Te Marautanga Reo Māori and fit it in with the levels... I like how the traditional Māori things are there and things that you would think are more modern: ancient karakia beside film. I like to be able to work with the old and the new so to be able to have those there and to sift through them at the beginning, yeah right! Like old film from the film archives of haka that are very old...it makes me think about ideas just reading through them now.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 8

4.2.2 Te Whakamahi

Ko te whakahau a tētehi, mēnā e whakaakona ana ngā momo-kōrero nei he pai kē ki te aro atu ki te horopaki ka tahi, ka rua ko tēhea momo-kōrero e puta mai ana i reira. Ka tautokona tēnei TUKANGA³ ako e ētehi anō kaiuru.

³ process

He mea kāore i te pai kia aro noa ki te momo-kōrero. He ara whāiti te kaha aro ki te momo. Ina, ko te reta. Ka hāngai atu ki te hanganga o te reta, ehara i te mea ka whakawhānui i te whakaaro... Ki a au nei ko te horopaki, ahakoa te horopaki he tūāpapa tērā hei whakahaere i te akomanga. Mehemea ko tētehi kaupapa o te pūtaiao, o te hangarau rānei tērā pea ka whai atu i te ao o te hangarau. He horopaki tērā. Nō reira e taea ana te reo pānui, te reo tuhituhi, te reo aha rānei te noho i roto i tērā horopaki kia whai hua ngā marautanga katoa i te horopaki kotahi. Nā reira, ki a au nei me tīmata pea ngā kaiako ki te whakahuri i ō rātou whakaaro kia kaua e whakapouakahia ngā marautanga kia kaua e pōhēhē mai i te 10 ki te 11 ko te wā pāngarau nō reira koia anake tērā. I te mea mā te horopaki kē e tohutohu atu ki te kaiako me pēhea e whakahaere i te akomanga. Mōhio tonu au he tino uua tērā mahi ki ētahi o te hunga kaiako i te mea ka whakapau kaha rātou ki te takatū i tētahi mahere ako e hāngai pū ana ki ngā marautanga katoa engari kotahi anake te horopaki. He mea uua tērā, engari e taea ana. Nō reira he mea nui te horopaki ki tēnei. He nui tonu ngā horopaki e taea ana i roto i te akomanga kia whai hua a Tuhituhi.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

E whai mai ana te tukanga i whakaarohia e te kaiwhakahoki kōrero tuatahi; e toru ōna wāhanga:

- Te Horopaki Whakaritea he horopaki
- Te Momo-Kōrero Wānangahia ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana mō tērā horopaki
- Te Kimi Kupu Tukuna ngā ākonga kia kimi kupu mō te kaupapa.

Ki taua kaiwhakahoki kōrero, mutu ana ērā te whai, kātahi ka tuhia te momo-kōrero e tika ana. Ko te mea nui o konei, ko te whakaatu i te horopaki e rangona ai, e kitea ai te momo-kōrero i te tuatahi. Koia hoki tā te kaupapa reo i te Wāhanga Tuarua (tirohia Te Whakaahua 2.6). Ki te mahue te horopaki tērā pea ka kore e whai hua te ako i te momo-kōrero, inā:

Ko tāku he whakarite i te horopaki i te tuatahi kātahi ka wānanga mātou ko ngā kaiako ka wānangahia ētahi o ngā horopaki e taea ana te tuhi i roto i taua

horopaki, ko tētahi he tohutaka kai, te whakamāramatanga mā te tohutohu, me pēhea tētahi kēmu purei ai, tērā momo. I tirohia hoki, i whakamahia te rotarota, te reta, te tuhinga auaha, engari auaha pēhea nei? Auaha, ehara i te pakiwaitara, he tuhinga whai whiti. Ko te mihi hoki tētahi. Mihi ki te reo, mihi ki te hunga ako. Engari i whai horopaki te mihi rā.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

E tautokona ana tēnei tukanga e tētehi kaiako kura kaupapa Māori. He whānui hoki ngā momo-kōrero kei te whakaakona i roto i tana akomanga, arā:

I a au e titiro ana ki wēnei, ka mahi i te nuinga o wēnei. Hei tauira, ia rā ka tuhi ngā tamariki mō te tekau meneti, toru rā o te wiki, mā rātou anō e whiri ko tēhea momo, he aha te kaupapa, engari ā muri i tērā ko te tino kaupapa pērā ki te pūrongo. Kei roto i te tekau meneti, ko ētahi ka hanga kāri pōwhiri, ētahi ka mahi he pakiwaituhi, rātaka, he pai mō nga tau 7, 8 i te mea kua whāngai kē koe he aha ngā momo tuhinga mā rātou anō e whiri. Mō te tekau meneti noa iho ā muri i tēnā ka tino anga ki te mahi pūrongo [te tuhinga o te tau]. Engari ko ngā mea nei pērā ki ngā takawiri arero, ka mahi [nga tamariki] inā ka hiahia. Ka whakarite pea tētahi mō te wiki. Ētahi o ngā kaiako ka whakaritea he momo ia wiki. I tēnei tau he kaha te kura ki te whakarite te kura he kīwaha ia rua wiki. Mā te kura katoa e ngana ki te ako i tērā kīwaha. I homai e tētahi o te *School Services* he tukanga tuhi. Pērā i te whāngai kupu, te mahi horopaki i mua i te tuhi. He mahi whakapakari i te reo i te tuatahi, i ngā kupu. Kua panaia e mātou wērā rā o mua “ko te tuhi noa iho te kaupapa i runga i te papa tuhituhi me te kī atu, tuhi. Tuhia mō te kotahi haora”.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Tērā pea ka noho hoki te mahere nei hei tuitui i te akoranga o ngā momo-kōrero o tēnā kaiako, o tēnā kaiako.

Ko te mea e ngaro ana he anga kia mahi ngātahi kia ōrite te mahi o ia kaiako kei roto i ia akomanga kia neke haere ngā ākonga ki akomanga kē arā kei reira hoki wērā momo mahi. Tēnei mea te kupu whakanikoniko [kīpeha) he kaha nā te kura i tēnei tau ‘cause tētahi o ngā whainga kia piki te kounga o te reo ka aro ngā

kaiako ki ngā kupu whakanikoniko hei whakanikoniko i ngā tuhinga. Ia tau ka tīpako te kura i tētahi momo tuhinga kia pakari ake. I tēnei tau ko te pūrongo, i tērā tau ko te pakiwaitara. Ka tuku te pepa ki te Tāhuhu, ko tā te Tāhuhu me piki nga pūkenga o ngā tamariki tuhi pūrongo, tuhi pakiwaitara rānei. He kaha mātou ki te titiro ki ngā tauira i runga i te ipurangi. Me ngā tauaromahi. Surface features, deep features. Ka karanga hoki au ki te RTLB kia peka mai kia tautoko mai ia ki a au i roto i taku akomanga. Ko tana mahi he momo tuhinga tautoko he tuakana teina. Ka tuhi takihoa ngā tauira. Ko tana mahi he kaha ki te whāngai i ngā kīwaha me ngā kīanga rerekē. Ko te whāinga hei whakanikoniko i te kōrero. Ko te raru, mehemea kotahi te kaiako e pērā ana kei te aha ērā atu akomanga?

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Na, he nui ngā whakaaro o tēnei kaiako, o te kaiwhakahoki kōrero tuarua mō te whakamahi i te mahere nei. Ko tāna, kaua mā te takitahi, engari mā te takitini kē e pīkau te whakamahia o ngā momo-kōrero. Ko tētehi whakaaro nui ōna, ko te whakarite mahere, ehara rawa i te mea ka whai noa i te tātai momo-kōrero:

Ka kore e waiho mā te kaiako kotahi. Pai mēnā ka titiro te kura katoa mai i te tumuaki tae noa atu ki ngā kaiako katoa me noho ngātahi, whānau hoki pea. Ka kī he aha ngā whāinga matua mō te whānau, mō te kura me ngā tamariki. Ka rongo mātou i ngā reo a ngā tamariki e puta mai ana i ēnei wā me whakapakari i te aha. Mā tēra ka whakarite whāinga ā muri i tērā ka whakarite mahere te kura. Me mahi ngā kaiako i te aha i roto i ia akomanga, ā muri i tērā ka whakawete koe i tō rātaka, ia wiki me aha, ia rā me aha. Arā, he aha ngā aromatawai, ngā kōwae ako. He mahi nui engari mēnā kei konei [ētehi] tauira pēnei he māmā noa iho. Engari kāore ka anga māro, he anga tonu. He huarahi anō hei ārahi.

I runga i ērā whakaaro ehara rawa i te mea me whai ngā kaiako i tēnei mahere momo-kōrero, heoi hei āwhina noa mā rātou i a rātou e whakarite mahere ana mō rātou anō.

4.2.3 Te Rauemi

E māharahara ana te nuinga o ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero ko tētehi rōpū e noho kore rauemi ana ko te KĪPEHA, arā, ko ngā kīwaha, ko ngā kīrehu, ko ngā whakataukī, ko ngā pepeha (tirohia te Wāhanga Tuawaru). Ahakoa kitea ai ēnei momo-kōrero i roto i tēnā rauemi, i tēnā rauemi, kāore e tino nui ana ngā rauemi ko ngā kīpeha tonu te kaupapa.

Kei te kite whānuitia te paki, kei ngā kura te pakiwaitara, engari ki ōku whakaaro, ko te whakataukī, ko te kīwaha, ko te kīrehu rānei kāore i te tino kitea [hei rauemi]. Kāore pea e whakaakohia ana. Nā reira kei te whakapono katoa ahau kei te mate tērā momo te kupu whakanikoniko. Engari aroha tonu au ki ngā kaiako i te mea he reo akomanga ō rātou, kāore anō pea kia whai wāhi ki te haramai ki ngā momo wānanga pērā i te kura reo kia kitea me pēhea te kīwaha e tuhi ai hei whakarākei i tētahi tuhinga, hei whakaako ake ki ngā tamariki. Nā reira mē pēhea tērā e whakatika?

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

Nō reira, he take nui i whakatakotoria, ki te kore te kaiwhāngai i te reo e tae atu ki te hākari i ngā kīanga whakanikoniko, ka kore pea e rangona, e kitea aua āhuetanga reo i ngā momo-kōrero a ā rātou ākonga. Koia ko te whakangungu kaiako. Heoi, he kaupapa kē atu tērā. Nā, arā anō ētehi atu rauemi kāore i te tōtika:

Ko te papakupu tētehi o ngā rauemi kei te noho ngoikore. Tua atu o tērā ko ngā pukapuka kīwaha, āhua uaua mā te tamariki ki te rapu kīwaha i te mea he Pākehā tonu ētahi kaupapa. Pai ana mēnā he rauemi anō mō ngā tamariki.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Ehara i te mea kāore he reo kīpeha e mau ana i ngā rauemi, heoi, ko tētehi take nui o tētehi kaiwhakahoki kōrero, ki te kore e matatau te kaiako ki aua kīpeha ka kore e whakamahia:

He paku noa iho ngā rauemi atu i āhau [Te Kōrari] e kaha āwhina ana ki te hunga kaiako. Me kī kei ngā kura ngā pukapuka kei roto i ngā pukapuka ngā kīwaha engari ki te kore te kaiako e mōhio pai ana ki te tikanga ka kore pea rātou e whakamahi i taua pukapuka hei rauemi i rō akomanga. Nā reira ka noho ki te papa whai puehu ai.

Hei āpiti atu ko ngā whakaaro o tēnei kaiako wharekura mō ngā taumahi hei whakamahi i ngā kīpeha. Me uaua ka kite i ētehi rauemi pai e mau ana i ngā mahi hei akoako i ngā whakataukī, i ngā kīwaha, i ngā pepeha :

...te taha ki te kōrero kīpeha, ko tā te Taura Whiri puka kīwaha tērā. Ki te taha o ngā whakataukī he pukapuka, engari ki te taha o ngā ngohe? Mā te kaiwhakaako tonu e mahi. He painga o tērā, engari he tāmitanga hoki.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 10

Ko tētehi āhuatanga e hanga aroha ana, kia pakeke ana ngā ākonga, ka iti haere ngā pukapuka hei pānuitanga mā rātou. Koia te whakahau nui a ētehi, me nui kē atu ngā PAKIMAERO⁴, ngā PUKAPUKA WĀHANGA⁵ mā ngā tūākana:

I te wharekura ko ngā pukapuka wāhanga, whai wāhanga. Kua kore, kore rawa atu. Ko *Makorea* tērā, ko te *Kaieke Tohorā*. Ka mutu i reira. Kei te tuhia e Kiwa ētahi, ēngari mō te hunga āhua tamāriki iho. Kei te āhua tangi nei te ngākau. Whakawhiti atu aku tauira ki te akomanga reo Pākehā, kei te kaha rātou ki te pānui i ngā pukapuka, kei te whakahokia ki te kāinga. Ka kitea rātou e noho ana ki te pānui, engari whakawhiti mai ki a au kua kore. Hāunga ngā tuhinga poto pēnei, tino hōhonu nei, he rawe tonu ko ngā *Tāngata Taumata Rau* ko te aha kē rānei, ēngari karekau he paki hei pānui mā rātou. Nō reira ka nui te ngākaunui ki te reo Pākehā i te mea kei reira te mahi a te rauemi. Nō reira me tuhi kia hāngai hoki ki a rātou, ngā momo paki.... paki aroha nei, paki... ngā āhuatanga o te ao taiohi ēngari i roto i te reo Māori.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 10

Nā, kei reira anō te whakaaro me hoatu he tauira, he rauemi ki te taha o ia momo-kōrero e kitea ai e te kaiako me whakapā ki hea kia whakatauiria i ia momo-kōrero. He mahi nui tērā, ā, koia kē te mahi a Toi Te Kupu i tōna wā. Ahakoa i āhua pērātia i te Āpitihanga 1, he mahi rangahau atu anō kia whakatauiratia, kia wetewetehia aua whakatauiratanga, kia hangā hoki he ngohe mō roto i te akomanga (kua

⁴ novel

⁵ chapter book

whakatauiratia noa i te Āpitihanga 3). Kei kore e whakautua tāku e rangahau atu nei. Heoi anō, e hāngai ana anō hoki pea tēnei whakaaro ōna ki te whakamahi me te māramatanga o te mahere momo-kōrero nei:

Ko tētehi whakaaro ko te whakahononga o te mahere ki ngā rauemi.... Mōhio ana koe ko te raru o te kaiako ko te whai wā, ā, he aha ngā rauemi. Kei konei te mea, tuhinga poto. He aha pea wētahi rauemi hei tautoko i tērā momo mahi. I runga i te ipurangi, engari kāore anō tētahi kua tino whakarite. Te nuinga o te wā ka tae mai ngā rauemi i ētahi wā ka wareware te kaiako kei te rūma rauemi tērā rauemi hei tautoko i tēnei mea te *postcard*, i te poukārī. Kei konei tētahi rauemi tino pai hei tautoko i tērā kaupapa me ngā mea pōwhiri i puta mai i te Tāhuhu i āhua toru tau ki mua. Māmā ake pea mā te pouako mēnā ka tuhia he tauira o ia rauemi pēnei i *Ngā Tuhinga Onamata*.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Ko tētehi take nui hei wānanga tonu ko ngā momo-kōrero o te wāhanga ōkawa. Mā wai rānei ngā kōrero nei e whāngai ki ngā ākonga? E ai ki te kaiako nei:

Ko ngā mea ōkawa, kua waiho mō ngā iwi. Ko te tikanga me mahi tahi te kura me te iwi, engari kāore i te pērā. Nō iwi kē ngā kaiwhakaako, nō iwi kē ngā tamariki. Mehemea kāore he kaiako nō te iwi tonu ka ngoikore te whakapono o te kura ki ngā reo ā-iwi. Arā ko ngā karakia, ngā karanga. He mea matua wērā.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

He nui ngā whakapōreareatanga mō te whakamahi i ngā kōrero ōkawa hei raumei ki rō akomanga, me te tā i aua momo-kōrero:

You can look at the first section [kōrero ōkawa] and see there is not much of that around. Who wants to put whakapapa into print? I think there's one whakapapa website. Whakapapa club. They're guarded. People are jealous of these things so why would they put them down in print. Some of them are common like tauparapara. Some are well know and not specific to areas. Karakia you see them in manuals ...but usually they are standard karakia that you've seen all over the place. People aren't going to put the ones that they have from home or that their tupuna handed down. They're not going to put that in a book.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 4

Ko tētehi kaupapa nui, ko te kimihia o ngā rauemi ka whakaputaina. He kaupapa atu anō tēnei mā te kura, mā Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, heoi anō rā, he aha tētehi huarahi māmā e kitea ai ngā rauemi e nga kaiako ā te wā ka tae atu ngā rauemi ki te kura?

I ētahi wā ka haere koe ki te rūma rauemi, arā ka kite koe i tētahi rauemi. O yeah, ehara i te mea ka tino whakarite koe, ētahi wā ka kite noa iho i tētahi rauemi. I te kimi koe i tētahi rauemi pērā. Tētahi mea pai ko te *Tuhinga Onamata* i haere au ki Toi te Kupu, i haere ki tēra wāhi i runga i te ipurangi, ka kīa kei ngā kura wēnei, nā, i haere au ki ngā rūma katoa o te kura, engari kāore au i kite. Kotahi marama i muri, ka haere ki tētahi atu kura ka kite au. I te kohi puehu noa iho! Me ngā rīpene ataata kua puta mai, engari kāore e noho tahi ana. Mō Toi te Kupu, ka hōhā mēnā ka patopato koe i tētahi kupu kei te kī noa te wāhi rā kare kau he rauemi, engari kua kite nei koe, āe rā he rauemi. Engari kua wareware kei hea. Koia te raruraru o aua pukapuka *Wharekura*, aua pukapuka me maumahara koe i te tuatahi kei hea kua kite koe i roto i tētahi o aua pukapuka he kōrero e hāngai ana. Ka āhua maumahara koe ki te pikitia. Kei hea?

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

4.2.4 Te Māramatanga

Ko tā tēnei wāhanga ka tirohia mēnā e mārama ana te titiro atu ki te Tātai Momo-Kōrero, e kitea ana rānei he wāhanga me whakapai ake te whakamāramatanga. Ko te nuinga i kī, āe he pai ki te hunga kei te matatau me te hunga kei te ako tonu i ngā momo-kōrero.

Ki a au nei he pai he mārama ki te hunga, kei te whakaarohia ngā mea kore mōhio nē? Ka tere te kitea ki raro i tēhea kārangatanga. He pai. He āwhina tēnei ki te hunga kore mōhio. Koia te ao o te whakamāmā, he māmā ngā mea katoa. He rawe. Ka pai.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 7

He āwangawanga tō tētehi o ngā kaiuru kei toremi ngā kaiako i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero i ngā rārangi e toru, te momo-kōrero ā-waha, te momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, te momo-kōrero ā-mata hoki.

Heoi anō ki a au nei he tino kīkī ngā whārangi nei. He maha ngā momo tuhinga kua kitea e koe, kua tuhia e koe. Mēnā ka whakatakotohia pēnei kāore koe e aro atu, kāore te kaiako e mōhio me aha. Ka pērā, ō, me whakaako i te katoa.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 5

Heoi anō tērā, ka taupatupatua taua whakaaro e tētehi anō tangata:

Ki a au nei he pai tonu kia whārikihia te katoa kia taea ai e rātou te kī kei te pai tēnei mō tēnei horopaki, kei te pai hoki tēnei mō tēnei horopaki. Ana, pērā i te rotarota, e taea ana te rotarota te noho ki roto i ngā horopaki katoa nē, engari kāore ngā kaiako e paku whakatata atu ana ki a Rotarota nā te matakū ki a ia, nā te kore mōhio me pēhea e tuhi ai. Nō reira kei te waimeha haere tērā wairua. Kaua rawa [e whakaiti i te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero].

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

Arā anō ngā whakaaro kia whakataumatahia ia momo-kōrero mā ngā tamariki. Heoi anō ko te whakaaro matua pea o konei, kei te mōhio tanga o te kaiako ki ngā momo-kōrero ki hea, āhea whakamahi ai i tēnā momo, i tēnā momo. He pērā tonu te marautanga e noho tauira tonu ana mā te kura auraki, inā *Te Reo Māori in the New Zealand Curriculum* (Ministry of Education, 2007). I reira kua oti ētehi momo-kōrero te whakataumata ki ngā kōeke e waru hei whakatauirā noa iho. Me te mea nei koia te marautanga tuatahi kua tino aro ki tēnei mea te momo-kōrero hei tūāpapa mō te ako reo. Heoi, kāore i te tohutohu atu me whai i tā rātou tauratanga, kei ngā pouako tonu te mana. E mea ana taua marautanga,

‘I ia kōwae o te marautanga, he momo-kōrero rerekē kei te whakatauiratia... tā te marautanga he tīpako kau i ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana, i te mea kei te kaiako te tikanga he aha ngā momo-kōrero e hāngai pū ana ki ngā ākongā¹’ (reira tonu: 25).

Kei te hāngai taua kōrero ki tā ēnei kaiwhakahoki kōrero:

He mea taumata te whakaaro tuatahi ka puta. Ki a au kei te titiro atu ka rapu atu au ko ēhea ngā mea pai mō ngā tamariki nohinohi. Tērā pea ko te nuinga ka taea, mehemea kei te mōhio te kaiako! Pai tēnei mō te kaiako [te Tātai Momo-Kōrero]. Mehemea ka takoto pēnei he nui rawa [rārangi e toru].

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 5

Ka hāngai ngā momo katoa ki te tamariki ahakoa te taumata, pai mēnā e haere ana wēnei i roto i ia akomanga ahakoa he tau kore ka taea tonu. He tino pai wēnei, ngā mea katoa mō te tau 7, 8.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 2

Arā atu anō ngā wehewehenga e taea ana mō te Tātai Momo-Kōrero. Ko tā te tangata nei he iti te MOMOTUHI⁶, me whārangi kotahi te mea ā-waha me te mea ā-tuhi, ā, me tāpiri atu he whakamārama ki te taha o ia momo-kōrero. Katoa ēnei whakaaro kei te hāngai ki te hanga rauemi ā muri atu i te rangahautanga. Arā ake ka hangaia rānei he pānui pātū, me ‘A2’ te rahinga hei whakairinga ake mā roto i te akomanga.

It’s a huge kaupapa, but good though. And can only be a good thing for those people working to further our literacy. [What it needs is] explanations of sections. Kōrero ōkawa, kōrero ōpaki, I don’t know what that is. A small definition in te reo of each one. Sometimes the translation doesn’t describe the word. I got that from the kids. They said to me when I wrote that interactive. We want an English word and a short Māori explanation/definition. Separate Oral from Written and put into a table. Want to make it as easy as possible. Look at text size as well. It’s a little small.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 4

Anei anō ētehi whakaaro kia noho tuaka pae ngā whakarōpū, kia kaua e heke whakararo:

Tino pai ki a au mēnā ka tino mārama mai te kupu i te whārangi. Kia kaua e whīwhiwhi te tirohanga atu. Nō reira ko tētahi wāhanga kōrero ōkawa, ko tētahi wāhanga te kōrero ōpaki. Ki ia whārangi rānei, ki ia wāhanga rānei - across the page - kia kaua e takoto... kia pai kē atu te rere i te mea ko tēnei kua poroa nē, kei konei (te reo kōrero) kei konā te (reo tuhituhi) he pakupaku noa ilho. Pai ki a au kia mārama te kite. Anei ngā kaupapa katoa e here ana ki te kōrero ōkawa, kei konei katoa ehara i te mea ka heke. Ko te kōrero ōpaki tana wāhi. Te Reo tuhituhi, kia kaua e poro. Kia noho kotahi, kia kotahi. I te mea kāore au i te rata ki te huri whārangi i a au e whakarite ana i aku mahere. Kāore au e rata ki te

⁶ font

pekepeke whārangi, ripa rānei. Mēnā ko te reo, anei katoa ngā kōrero ehara i te mea me kotiti ngā whatu ki wāhi kē. Me rere ngā whatu. Hāunga ko tēnei kei te tino mārama.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 10

He whakaaro atu anō tō tētehi ki te whakarōpū i ngā momo-kōrero i raro i ngā horopaki e rangona ana, e kitea ana aua momo, pēnei i te pāpāho.

Ki a au nei kei te pai tēnei. Tērā pea ka whakarōpūngia ki raro i ngā mea nei broadcasting: pēnei i te karere, te māhēni, te niupepa, te atikara. Ko tētahi atu i raro i te kapahaka, te mahi a te Rehia pea. Ko ngā kēmu. Kia hāngai atu ki ngā marautanga...

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

Ka titiro tētehi koroua ki te āhua o te mahere i runga i te pepa. He AHURUA⁷ pea mō te kaupapa ahu maha, ā, he tirohanga tūturu tōna:

Ko te mate o ēnei e kore e taea ki te tuhi hei whakapapa. Kāore te mihi i whānau mai i te karakia. Ko tēnei te mate o te whakarārangi anō kei konei ka heke haere. Mehemea kei roto i a koe ko tō whakapapa. Mehemea e āhua pēnātia engari me waiho ko tēnā ko te kawa... ko te rārangi kei te mōhio au ki te ao o te kawa. [*spatial – he moved his hands, left then right*] kaikaranga, kaikaranga. Kaimihi, kaiwhakautu. Karakia, karakia. E haere kē ana. Ko ēnei he pai hei ako me pēnei. Engari hei whakaahua i ētahi wā tirohia mehemea e taea te whakahuri haere. Engari i tua atu o tēnā hangā ngā kōpae hei tautoko, āhua poto nei mō ia wāhanga. Mā te kōpae nei e neke haere kī ētehi atu karakia, mai i te wā e peke ana a Pou i runga i te marae. Karakia, mihi. Na, kua ora ngā kupu. He pai tēnei kia pēnei, āhua hurihuri haere, whakaaro haeretia [te mahere].

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 6

E whakaora ai i te mahere nei ka haere tonu te whakamōhio mai a te kaikōrero tuaono me tāpiri atu ko ngā mahi rorohiko. He pai hei rauemi mō roto i te kura. Ki a ia koia pea hei whāinga rangahau kē atu ā muriake nei i tēnei mahi rangahau:

⁷ two dimensional

Nā, mehemea ka titiro ki tēnei taha, ko nga wāhanga e puta mai ana mā te whakapā mai hei whakahua i runga i ngā rorohiko, reo irirangi, pouaka whakaata. Ka taea te mahi. He mea hou tēnei i tō tātou nei wā. Kāore i reira i te wā o ō tātou nei kaumātua te nuinga o ngā haka i hangaia e rātou. Heoi anō i tukuna ā-waha. E taea e tātou ināianei ki te titiro ā-pikitia ka tīmata ki te mahi, ki te aru haere i ngā tū waewae o Apirana Ngata mā o tō rātou wā. Koinā te mea āhua pai atu i tēnei wā mō tātou nā te mea e taea te whakaahua. Mehemea kei reira te tohungatanga mō ngā mahi nei, kāore au e mōhio.

I runga i ēnei kaupapa ko ngā waiata. Ka whakarongo ki te āhua o te waiata, ngā kupu, te ia o ngā reo, te rangi e puta mai ana. Rite tonu te waiata a ngā kaiwaiata a Waikato ināianei ki ērā i tangohia i ngā rikoata o mua noa atu. Hoki noa, hoki noa hoki noa ki tēra rautau i muri atu, kāore i rerekē. Engari ko te mate ko ngā reo anake i puta mai. Kāore e mōhio ana pēhea rā tō rātou āhua tū, ko wai kei mua, pehea te whiu o ngā hunga e waiata ana, he aha ō ratou nei mahi ā-ringa, e puta mai ana i roto i ngā waiata. E kore hoki taea e taea te hopu i ngā wā o Apirana Ngata mā. E taea e tātou ināianei. Nā, kei reira ētahi hei tirohanga.

Te mea ka pā ēnā ki te mahi e taea ai te whakawhānui i āu mahi i konei, kia whakawhānuitia mō ngā kura. Kei reira au e tiro ana me pērā kē e ora ai te reo. Mehemea e harikoa ana rātou kei roto i ngā rorohiko kei roto i ngā mahi katoa e mahia ana i ngā kura ināianei kia kore ai tēnei momo mātauranga o te ao Māori e waiho. Heoi anō ko te kaiako kei mua e kōrero ana e waiata ana, ā, e whakaako ana. Waiho mā ngā whakaahua e puta mai ana. He mahi nui.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 6

4.2.5 Te Hononga ki te Marautanga Reo Māori

Ko te nuinga o ngā kaiwhakahoki e mea ana, kāore e mārama ana te kite i ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te marautanga reo Māori i te reo Māori. Nā, ka mārama ake inā ka tohua ki hea noho ai ngā momo-kōrero ki raro i tēhea kārangarangatanga:

Tērā pea ka whakahāngai atu ki te marautanga. Kāore au i te tino hiahia kōrero mō te marautanga reo Pākehā, engari ko tana painga i raro i tētehi kupu pēnei i te *exposition*, te *transactional*, kua whakarārangihia mai ētahi tauira o taua momo kia kitea mai e te kaiako, ā, ka noho pēnei mai, ko te *transactional*/he pūrongo. Nā reira he aha ngā momo pūrongo i raro i te *transactional* rā. Ko te reta ko wēra momo. Ko tētahi atu whakaaro kua rangona e au, e rua anake ngā *styles*, ngā *genre*: ko te auaha ko te pono. Engari kei te mōhio tāua ka noho tahi ngā mea e rua i ētahi wā.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 1

Koia hoki te pūtakenga o tēnei rangahautanga me ngā kōrero ka puta, he kitenga nō te kairangahau he iti hoki ngā momo-kōrero o roto i te marautanga. Heoi anō, ko tētehi take nui o konei, e huri kē ana ētehi kaiako ki te marautanga reo Pākehā hei arataki mā rātou i te taha tuhituhi:

Koia nei tētahi o ngā mea kua mahue i te marautanga. Kei roto katoa i te mea reo Pākehā ngā tūmomo tuhinga a ngā tamariki. Engari ko taua wāhanga katoa i mahue i te pukapuka marau Māori. He mea nui tērā. Nā, ko ētahi kaiako ka huri ki te pukapuka Ingarihi ki te rapu, ki te whai i aua tūmomo tuhinga. He maha ngā kaiako kura kaupapa Māori kāore i te hiahia ki te whai i ngā pukapuka Pākehā. Nō reira kore kau he titiro atu, ā, kāore e kitea. Nō reira, he mea nui tēnei kia tuhia, kia kitea e rātou ngā tūmomo tuhinga hei whakaako atu ki ngā tamariki.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 5

He hononga atu anō, ko tā tēnei kaiako he whakahono atu ki te *National Certificate of Educational Achievement* (NCEA) me ngā mahi e taka mai ana i reira. Ko te āhua nei, ahakoa aromatawai, ahakoa taumata ka taea te mahere te whakahāngai ki tā te kaiako e hiahia ai:

I tēnei wā e whakaako ana au i te Wharekura, nō reira ehara i te mea kua tāmia engari kua riro au i te whai i te takotoranga o NCEA. Nā reira katoa ēnei ka whakahāngaitia e au ki te anga NCEA. He taupatupatu pea tērā i te kōrero kātahi anō au ka whakamārama. Engari, nō reira, ka whakahāngaitia e au ēnei [Tātai Momo-Kōrero] ki ngā taumahi kua whakaritea hei whakatutuki mā ngā tauira kia ea ai tērā. Me te mea hoki i roto i aku whakaritenga i ia rā he pai tēnei hei anga hei whai māku i te mea māmā noa iho. Kei te kitea katoatia.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 10

Ka whakarāpopotohia e tēnei kaiako, e te kaiwhakahoki kōrero tuarua te nuinga o ngā whakaaro o tēnā kaiako, o tēnā kaiako, arā, 'He whānui te marautanga, he whāiti ake te mahere. Nō tēnei ao hoki te mahere pēnei i te 'text'.' Heoi anō, ki konei whakakapia ai nga whakahokinga kōrero ki tētehi o ngā kaiuru nāna i tautoko i te mahinga o te mahere nei, heoi he whakatūpatotanga hoki tāna:

Engari koinā te mea, nāu anō i tohu mai, ehara i te mea ka raru engari ka tohea e ētahi. Koirā te tikanga o tēnei mahi. Kia noho mai hei whai kōrero mai a tētahi atu. Hei whakaara ki te kōrero. Na, pai ki a au.

Kaiwhakahoki kōrero 7

4.3 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero

Te Whakaahua 4.2: He Tātai Momo-Kōrero: A Taxonomy of Māori Text Types

He mea hanga i runga i ā Williams 2004 rāua ko Oglan 2003

Reo Kōrero

Kōrero Ōkawa

karakia
karanga
mihi
mihimihi
poroporoaki
whaikōrero
whakapapa
Kōrero Ōpaki
kauhau
kawenga kōrero
kōrero ā-iwi, ā-hapū,
ā-whānau
kōrero tuku iho
kōrero paki
kōrero whakakata
kōrerorero
manu kōrero
pepe takimanawa
pūrākau
pakiwaitara
paki
rotarota
ruri
takawiri arero
taupatupatu

Kīpeha

kīrehu
kīwaha
kupu whakaari/tongi
kupu whakarite
pepeha
whakataukī
whakataukāki

Mōteatea

haka
mōteatca
waiata
waiata-ā-ringa

Formal Texts

incantation, invocation
welcome call
acknowledgement
greetings
eulogy
oratory
recite lineage

Informal Texts

seminar
news story
tribal, clan
family oral history
oral legacy
entertainment
joke
conversation
prepared speech
breath game
ancient narrative
legend
narrative
action poem
ditty
tongue twister
debate

Figurative Expressions

local idiom
idiom, colloquialism
prophetic saying
metaphoric saying
tribal maxim
proverb
specific proverb

Sung, Semi-sung Texts

haka
lament
song
action song

Reo Tuhituhi

Tuhinga Whaiaro, Karere

haukiri
haurongo
hautaka
i-mēra
karere
kāri
nōti
poukāri
pōwhiri
rārangi take
rātaka
reta

Tuhinga Auaha

kupu waiata
mōteatea
pakiwaitara
pakiwaituhi
pukapuka pikitia
panga
ruri
tuhinga poto
whakaari

Tuhinga Whakamōhio, Pūrongo

atikara
kōrero pono
niupepa
pūrongo
rārangi wā
tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi

Tuhinga Tohutohu, Whakamārama

hoahoa
pae whakaata
rārangi kai
tohutao
tohutohu
ture
Tuhinga Whakawherenga, Whai Whakaaro
arotakenga
pānuitanga
pānui
pānui whakaahua
puka whakamōhio
tukunga pāpāho

Personal, & Message

autobiography
biography
journal
e-mail
text message
card
note
postcard
invite
agenda
diary
letter

Creative Writing

lyrics
poetry
narrative
comic
picture book
puzzle
light poem
short story
play

Information, & Reportage

article
non-fiction writing
newspaper
report
timeline
essay, thesis

Instruction & Explanation

design
web page
menu
recipe
instruction
rules

Persuasion & Opinion

review
advertisement
message
poster
brochure
press release

Te Whakaahua 4.3: He Huinga Momo-Kōrero ā-Waha, ā-Tuhi, ā-Mata

Kei te tohua ngā momo tuhinga (*genre*) ki ngā whetū.*

Momo Kōrero ā-Waha <i>spoken text types</i>	Momo Kōrero ā-Tuhi <i>written text types</i>	Momo Kōrero ā-Mata <i>visual text types</i>
Haka <i>recited dance song</i>	Arotakenga <i>review</i>	<i>Graffiti</i>
Haka pōhiri <i>welcome</i>	Atikara <i>article</i>	Haki <i>flag</i>
<i>haka</i>	Haukiri <i>autobiography</i>	Hanganga <i>sculpture</i>
Haka taparahi	Haurongo <i>biography</i>	Hautaka whakaata <i>visual</i>
<i>ceremonial</i>	Hautaka <i>journal</i>	<i>diary</i>
<i>haka</i>	Hokinga mahara <i>memoir</i>	Hoahoa <i>diagram, design</i>
Kaioraora <i>venting haka,</i>	Inoi <i>prayer</i>	Hōtaka <i>programme</i>
<i>derision song</i>	I-mēra <i>email</i>	Kanikani <i>dance</i>
Peruperu <i>leaping haka</i>	Karere <i>text message</i>	Kauwhata <i>graph</i>
<i>with weapons</i>	Karere-ā-tari <i>memo</i>	Kāri <i>card</i>
Pōkeka <i>haka</i>	Kēmu patapatai <i>quiz</i>	Karere <i>news</i>
Puha <i>haka</i>	Kōrero huna <i>code</i>	Karetao <i>puppetry</i>
Manawawera <i>haka</i>	Kōrero nehe <i>ancient</i>	Kiriata <i>film</i>
Ngeri <i>recited song of</i>	<i>history</i>	Kohatu whakamaharatanga
<i>exhortation</i>	Kōrero o mua <i>history</i>	<i>headstone</i>
Tutu ngārahu <i>haka with</i>	Kōrero pono <i>factual text</i>	Kōpaki <i>folio</i>
<i>weapons</i>	Kōrero tohutohu	Kōwaiwai matarahi <i>mural</i>
Wero <i>challenge</i>	<i>instructions</i>	Kōwhaiwhai
Whakatū waewae <i>haka</i>	Kōrerorero <i>conversation</i>	Mahere <i>map</i>
<i>with weapons</i>	Kupu waiata <i>lyrics</i>	Mahere huarere <i>weather</i>
Kapahaka	Kupu whakataki <i>foreword</i>	<i>map</i>
Waiata tira <i>choral song</i>	Maheni <i>magazine</i>	Mahere tukurua <i>flow chart</i>
Whakaeke <i>entrance</i>	Maioha mate <i>published</i>	Mahere whenua <i>map</i>
Whakawātea <i>exit</i>	<i>obituaries</i>	Mātārere <i>leaflet</i>
Karakia <i>incantation</i>	Maramataka <i>calendar</i>	Moko
Pure	Mātārere <i>leaflet</i>	Mokoreta <i>letterhead</i>

Ruruku	Meneti <i>minutes</i>	Motuhenga <i>documentary</i>
Tohi <i>baptism rite</i>	Mōteatea <i>in-depth poem</i>	Ohia manomano <i>mind map</i>
Uruuruao	Niupepa <i>newspaper</i>	Pakiwaituhi <i>comic</i>
Uruuru whenua	Niureta <i>newsletter</i>	Pānui pātū <i>wall chart</i>
Waerea	Nōti <i>note</i>	Pānui whakaahua
Karanga <i>call</i>	Paenga kōrero <i>anthology</i>	<i>poster</i>
Tangi whakahuahua	Paipera <i>bible</i>	Pae tukutuku <i>website</i>
Karere <i>news</i>	Paki <i>narrative*</i>	Pae whakaata <i>webpage</i>
Karere ā-waea <i>phone message</i>	Pakimaero <i>novel</i>	Paki waituhi <i>cartoon</i>
Kawenga kōrero <i>news story</i>	Pakiwaitara <i>narrative</i>	Pane kūini <i>stamp</i>
Kauhau <i>speech</i>	Pakiwaituhi <i>comic</i>	Peita <i>painting</i>
Kīanga tere mau	Panga <i>riddle</i>	Poukāri <i>postcard</i>
<i>catchphrase</i>	Panga kupu <i>crossword</i>	Puka whakaahua <i>photo album</i>
Kīrehu <i>idiom</i>	Pānui <i>notice</i>	Puka whakamōhio
Kīwaha <i>colloquialism, idiom</i>	Pānui tari <i>office memorandum</i>	<i>brochure</i>
Kupu whakaari <i>prophetic saying</i>	Pānui pātū <i>poster</i>	PXT
Komekome <i>gossip</i>	Pānuitanga <i>advertisement</i>	Rārangi ingoa <i>catalogue</i>
Kōrero <i>talk, chat, conversation, news, story, iwi narrative</i>	Papakupu <i>dictionary</i>	Raranga <i>weaving</i>
Kōrerorero <i>conversation, discussion</i>	Pepa <i>academic paper</i>	Ripanga <i>spreadsheet</i>
Kōrero ā-iwi <i>iwi narrative</i>	Pepa uiui <i>questionnaire</i>	Tā
Kōrero hākinakina <i>sports commentary</i>	Pereti raihana <i>license plate</i>	Tāniko
Kōrero paki <i>fiction, entertaining story</i>	Pitopito kōrero <i>article, editorial</i>	Tīhate <i>tee shirt</i>
Kōrero parau <i>fable</i>	Pōwhiri <i>invite</i>	Tiwhikete <i>certificate</i>
Kōrero takurua <i>winters</i>	Puka <i>forms</i>	Tohu <i>sign</i>
	Puka kōhi kōrero	Tohu huarahi <i>road sign</i>
	<i>scrapbook</i>	Tohu pātū <i>plaque</i>
	Puka whakamōhio	Tohu whakamana
	<i>brochure</i>	<i>trademark</i>
	Pukapuka mārō <i>board book</i>	Tohu pānui <i>certificate</i>
		Tuhinga whakaahua
		<i>photographic essay</i>
	Pukapuka rahi <i>blown-up</i>	Tukutuku

<i>tale, romance</i>	<i>books</i>	Tūtahi <i>chart</i>
Kōrero tuku iho <i>Māori</i>	Pukapuka wāhanga	Uhi
<i>narrative</i>	<i>chapter book</i>	Uhi pukapuka <i>book cover</i>
Kōrero whakakīkī	Pukapuka whakaahua	Uhi kōpae pūoro <i>cd cover</i>
<i>continuity announcing</i>	<i>picture book</i>	Waituhi
Manu kōrero <i>prepared</i>	Pūrongo <i>report</i>	Waitohu <i>logo, motif</i>
<i>speech for Manu kōrero</i>	Pūrongo Hansard	Waituhi whakakata <i>comic</i>
Matapae huarere	<i>Hansard reports</i>	<i>strip</i>
<i>Weather forecast</i>	Rārangi <i>list</i>	Whakaahua <i>photo,</i>
Matapakinga <i>discussion</i>	Rārangi kai <i>menu</i>	<i>illustration, image</i>
Mihi <i>introduction,</i>	Rārangi take <i>agenda</i>	Whakaahua toihau <i>collage</i>
<i>acknowledgement</i>	Rārangi wā <i>timeline</i>	Whakaari <i>play</i>
Mihimihi <i>greetings</i>	Rātaka <i>diary</i>	Whakaaturanga
Muna <i>gossip</i>	Rerenga kōrero <i>social</i>	<i>performance, programme</i>
Mōteatea <i>traditional song</i>	<i>criticism</i>	Whakaaturanga toi ataata
Ōhākī <i>parting gift of</i>	Reta <i>letter</i>	<i>art exhibition</i>
<i>words</i>	Ruri <i>poem</i>	Whakairo rākau
Patapatai <i>interview</i>	Tāhuhu tangata	Whakairoiro <i>graphics</i>
Peha <i>quip</i>	<i>curriculum vitae</i>	Whakamaharatanga
Pepeha <i>tribal maxim,</i>	Taki <i>recount*</i>	<i>monument</i>
<i>introduction, proverb</i>	Tāpaetanga <i>submission</i>	Whakatautau <i>drama</i>
Poroporoaki <i>farewell,</i>	Taukī <i>statement</i>	Whatu
<i>euology</i>	Tautohe <i>persuade*</i>	Whiri
Pūmahara <i>Elder</i>	Tiriti <i>Tiriti</i>	Whiti āhua <i>film</i>
<i>recollection</i>	Tohutaka <i>recipe</i>	
Pūrākau <i>narrative</i>	Tohutohu <i>instruct</i>	
Rotarota <i>poem</i>	Tohe <i>argument</i>	
Ruri <i>ditty</i>	Tuhinga paerua <i>masterate</i>	
Takinga kōrero	<i>thesis</i>	
<i>commentary</i>	Tuhinga paetoru <i>doctoral</i>	
Takawiri arero <i>tongue</i>	<i>thesis</i>	
<i>twister</i>	Tuhinga poto <i>short story</i>	
Taunaha <i>bespeak the land</i>	Tuhinga rangahau	

Tauparapara <i>karakia</i>	<i>research writing</i>
<i>recited before a speech</i>	Tuhinga roa <i>essay</i>
Taupatupatu <i>debate</i>	Tuhituhinga ā-rōpū
Taurangi <i>promise</i>	<i>archives of Māori</i>
Tohutohu <i>directions</i>	<i>organisations</i>
Tongi <i>kōrero poropiti</i>	Tukupū <i>text message</i>
Uiuinga <i>interview</i>	Tukunga pāpāho <i>press</i>
Waiata <i>song</i>	<i>release</i>
Apakura <i>dirge</i>	Ture <i>law, rules</i>
Aroha <i>love song</i>	Waea whakaahua <i>fax</i>
Harikai <i>food-bearing</i>	Whakaatu <i>describe*</i>
<i>song</i>	Whakakata <i>joke</i>
Haurangi <i>intoxicated</i>	Kupu whakaari <i>play script</i>
<i>song</i>	Whakamārama
Huarite <i>rap</i>	<i>explanation*</i>
Kopikopi <i>impromptu</i>	Whakapiripiri <i>sticker</i>
<i>dance and song</i>	Whakaputanga whakaaro
Kori <i>action song</i>	<i>editorial</i>
Mata <i>prophetic song</i>	Whakarāpopoto <i>kōrero</i>
Mataara <i>alarm song</i>	<i>abstract</i>
Matakite <i>prophetic song</i>	Wīra <i>will</i>
Mihi <i>acknowledgement</i>	
<i>Song</i>	
Oriori <i>in-depth lullaby</i>	
Pao <i>short spontaneous</i>	
<i>epigrammatic song</i>	
Pao whaiāipo <i>love pao</i>	
Pātere <i>song of retort,</i>	
<i>abusive</i>	
Patupaiarehe <i>song of the</i>	
<i>patupaiarehe</i>	
Poi <i>waiata poi</i>	
Poi karakia <i>karakia in</i>	

poi form
Pōpō *song for a young*
person
Ruri *short spontaneous*
song
Tangi *lament*
Tohutohu *song of*
instruction
Waiata ā-ringa *action*
song
Whakaaraara *watch*
song
Whakahauhau *waiata to*
inspire workers
Whakataetae manawa
breath-holding game
song
Whaikōrero *oratory*
Whakaari *kupu poropiti*
nā Te Kooti
Whakapapa *genealogy*
Whakataukī *general*
proverb
Whakatauākī *specific*
proverb

4.3.1 He Mahere Momo-Kōrero Atu Anō: He Pūtaketanga

He mea hanga ēnei mahere momo-kōrero e whai nei ki runga anō i ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru. Nā te toronga atu ki tētehi hui reo me te whakamārama haere ki ētehi i tāku i hiahia ai, kātahi ka huaina te ingoa o tēnei tangata matatau ki te ao tuhituhi ko Oglan. Koia te take i hangā ai ngā ripanga e whai nei kia whakautu ai i tā ētehi o ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero. Arā, he whakamārama i te pūtaketanga o tēnā huinga momo-kōrero, o tēnā huinga momo-kōrero. Ko ētehi o ngā whakaaro nōku ake, a, e noho tauira tonu ana. Ko ētehi anō he mea whakarāpopoto rawa i ngā kōrero kaiuru. Tērā e kitea kei te reo tuhi, kei te reo kōrero tēnei mea te kīpeha. Ki konei tohe atu ai he pērā anō te kupu ‘kīpeha’ i te kupu ‘whakataukī’, ahakoa he ‘kīnga’ kitea ai te kīpeha ki te tuhinga, ki te kōrero, āe pea, ki te whakaata⁸ hoki. Haere tonu ana tēnei tohenga i te Wāhanga Tuawaru. Ā, ko te tohenga matua kitea ai te rōpū kīpeha ki te nuinga o ngā momo-kōrero.

Ki ētehi kaiwhakahoki kōrero he mea nui kia mōhiotia te PŪTAKETANGA⁹ o tētehi momo-kōrero. Nā whai anō i āpiti atu ai ētehi o ngā take e whakamahia i tēnā huinga momo-kōrero, i tēnā momo huinga kōrero. Kei te tauira tonu ngā ripanga e whai nei. Heoi mēnā ka whakaakona te momo-kōrero he tīmatanga pai te tuku i ngā pātai pēnei: mō te horopaki, kitea/rangona ai tēnei momo-kōrero ki hea? Mō te whakaingoa, he aha tēnei momo-kōrero? Mō te huinga momo-kōrero, he momo aha te ‘rotarota’? Mō te pūtaketanga, hei aha tēnei momo-kōrero? Mō te whakaminenga, me aha koe mēnā ka pānui, ka rongo i tēnei momo-kōrero? Heoi, kei te Wāhanga Tuarua ētehi pātai mā te kaiako mō te momo-kōrero (te Whakaahua 2.6), ā, kei te Wāhanga Ngahuru ētehi tauratanga kōrero mā te kaiako mō te momo-kōrero (te Whakaahua 10.1).

⁸ visual ‘figures of speech’: visual metaphor, visual analogy, visual pun, visual reference; visual symbol, etc.

⁹ purpose

Te Whakaahua 4.4: He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: Tā te Tuhinga

He mea hanga i runga i tā Oglan kōrero, 2003:82

Momo kōrero	Kīpeha	Kōrero whaiaro me ngā Karere	Pūrākau me ngā Paki	Mōteatea	Pūrongo me te Whakamōhio	Rāwekeweke kupu	Tohutohu me te Whakamārama	Whakaaro me te Whakawherenga
	Huahuatau Kīrehu Kīwaha Kupu whakarite Pepeha Tairitenga Whakatangata Whakataukī Whakatauākī	Haurongo Hautaka Hokinga mahara Ī-mera Kāri nōti nōti whakamārama maimaiaroa mate nūpepa Poukāri Pōwhiri Rārangi take Rātaka Reta ōpaki Reta ōkawa Tukukupu	Kōrero pono Pakiwaitara Paki pūtaiao Paki maero Pūrākau Tuhinga poto Whakaari	Haiku Haka Huarite Mōteatea Rotarota Ruri Waiata Whiti	Atikara moheni Atikara niureta Puka kōhi kōrero Rārangi wā Pepa uiui Tuhinga roa Tuhinga whakaahua Pūrongo	Takawiri arero Pakiwaituhi Panga Panga kupu Waituhi whakakata Whakakata	Hoahoa Pae whakaata Rārangi kai Tohutohu Ture kēmu/tākaro	Arotakenga Pānuitanga Pānui Pānui whakaahua Pitopito whakaaro Rerenga kōrero Tukunga pāpāho Puka whakamōhio Whakataetae kōrero
<i>Hei aha</i>	Hei whakatairite Hei whakaahua Hei whakanikoniko	Hei whakamōhio Hei whakamārama Hei whai whakaaro	Hei whakaū i ngā uara Hei whakangahau	Hei whakaata i te kōunga o te reo Hei whakangahau	Hei kawē i te rongo Hei whāki i te pārongo	Hei whakangahau Hei manahau	Hei tohutohu Hei whakamārama Hei arataki	Hei whakapakepake Hei whakaata i tirohanga kē
<i>Me aha te kaipānui</i>	Me whai whakaaro Me kimi māramatanga Me tāutu i ngā topehatanga ¹⁰ reo	Me whai whakaaro Me rapu pārongo	Me haritau Me tāutu ngā ariā matua	Me tuhura te reo Me rongo te wairua	Me rapu pārongo Me hopu i ngā ariā matua Me arotake	Me haritau Me rapu tikanga Me rapu i ngā kōunga o te tuhi	Me rapu pārongo	Me whai māramatanga ki tētehi anō tirohanga Me tāutu i te pūtake

¹⁰ intricacies

Te Whakaahua 4.5: He Mahere Momo-Kōrero: Tā te Kōrero

Momo kōrero	Kīpeha	Kōrero Ōkawa	Kōrero tuku iho	Mōteatea	Pūrongo me te Whakamōhio/ Tohutohu me te Whakamārama	Rāwekeweke kupu	Whakaaro me te Whakawherenga
	Huahuatau Kīrehu Kīwaha Kupu whakarite Kupu whakaari Pepeha Tairitenga Tongi Whakatangata Whakataukī Whakatauākī	Karakia Karanga Mihimihi Poroporoaki Whaikōrero	Whakapapa Kōrero ā-iwi/ā-hapū/ā-whānau Kōrero tuku iho Ōhākī Pakiwaitara Pūrākau	Haka Kaiaora Manawa wera Mōteatea Orioi Pao Pātere Poi Pōpō Waiata Waiata Tangi Waiata-ā-ringa	Kōrerorero Mihi Patapatai Pūrongo Tohutohu Uiuinga	Kōrero paki Panga Pepe takimanawa Rotarota Ruri Takawiri Arero Whakakata	Kauhau Kawenga kōrero Pitopito kōrero Taupatpatu 'Manu kōrero' Whakahoki kōrero
<i>Hei aha</i>	Hei whakatairite Hei whakaahua Hei whakanikoniko	Hei whakaea i te tikanga o ngā mātua Hei whakaatu i te ahurea o te iwi Hei kawē i te rongo	Hei whakaū i ngā uara Hei pupuri i ngā tikanga Hei whakaata i ngā kōrero o mua	Hei tuku i te māteatea Hei makere, hei puha i ngā pāmamae Hei kawē i te kare-ā-roto	Hei kawē i te rongo Hei whāki i te pārongo Hei tautukutuku karere	Hei whakangahau Hei whakamanahau Hei whakareka	Hei tautohe Hei whakapakepake Hei whakaata i tirohanga kē
<i>Me aha te kai-whakarongo</i>	Me whai whakaaro Me kimi māramatanga Me tāutu i ngā topehatanga reo	Me tāutu i te takune Me aro ki te horopaki	Me maumahara Me tūhonohono Me kimi tikanga	Me rongo ā-ngākau ki te wairua Me aro ki te hā o tangata kē Me tāutu ngā ariā matua	Me rapu pārongo Me mārama te horopaki Me kimi whakaaro	Me haritau Me rapu tikanga	Me tātari kōrero Me arotake ngā whakaaro Me whai māramatanga ki tētehi anō tirohanga

4.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Ko te whakamahere i ngā momo-kōrero te kaupapa o tēnei Wāhanga. E tika ana kia kawea atu ētehi o ngā whakakitenga āku hei arotake mā te hāpori reo māna anō taua kōrero. I ngākaunui mai te katoa i runga tonu i te mōhio he hiahia pea nō tēnā, nō tēnā ki te tango ake i tā rātou i pai ai, ka makere iho i tā rātou i kore ai e pai mai. He tika hoki tērā. Kua oti pea tēnei taha o te rangahau te whakautu i te urupounamu rangahau - me pēwhea rā e whakamahere ai i te whānuitanga o ā tātou kōrero. Nā runga tonu i ngā whakahokinga kōrero i whakahoutia ai ētehi o ngā mahere, i hangaia ai ētehi mahere hou. Mō ngā mahere momo-kōrero, kāore e kore arā ake anō ngā whakaaturanga e taea ana, heoi, mō te rapa whakautu ki tāku e pātai atu nei, kua ea pea i ngā mahinga mahere, i te rārangi momo-kōrero i te āpitihanga. Waihoki, mai i te whānuitanga o ēnei momo-kōrero kua whakatauhia tētehi o ngā āwangawanga o tēnei tohunga reo mō te āhua o te reo o nāianeī:

Kāore i te whānuitia [tō tātou reo Māori]. Koinei taku āwangawanga.

Tīmoti Kāretu (Ngahutoitoi marae, 1999)

Nā, ka kitea hoki i tēnei Wāhanga ētehi anō kōrero mō te rōpū e kīia nei ko te kīpeha, me te korenga o te rauemi hei whakaako i taua huinga kupu. Ahakoa he huinga kahurangi hei whakanikoniko i tētehi momo-kōrero tē kitea ai e ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero ētehi rauemi e whakamārama ana i taua huinga kupu. I te nui o te kōingo o tēnā kaiuru, o tēnā kaiuru kia rapa māramatanga mō taua huinga NUKA REO, i tauri te kei o te waka rangahau ki reira. Heoi, ū ana ki uta ā te Wāhanga Tuawaru rā anō. Kei reira ētehi tino āhuatanga reo e eke ai tētehi momo-kōrero ki te kāmehamehatanga o te reo. Koia te tāhu matua o ngā Wāhanga o tua, ko te whakautu haere i te urupounamu, he aha ngā āhuatanga reo me mau ā-ngākau kia Māori tonu ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Kua tirohia ngā momo-kōrero, me rapa tonu kia kitea ērā anō āhuatanga reo. Heoi anō rā, kia anga atu te titiro ki te ara i whāia hei whakatutuki i ngā whāinga rangahau i roto i ngā tika tangata. Me aro nui te kairangahau ki tā te hāpori wawata, ā, koia tētehi o ngā take o te kaupapa Māori ka matapakina ā te Wāhanga e whai nei.

ⁱ At each curriculum level, different text types are also suggested... the curriculum guidelines only present selected examples of text types, because it is expected that teachers will supplement the suggested ones with others that are relevant for students

TE WĀHANGA TUARIMA

Ngā Tikanga Rangahau

E ako e te tau i te reo Māori

Te Reo Rangatira o ngā Mātua Tūpuna...

Kuini Moehau Reedy¹

Ko te reo te hā ora o te Māoritanga. Ka ngaro te reo ka moumou
noa te whai a te tangata ki te pupuri i tōna Māoritanga.

Hoani Rotana²

5.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

5.2 Tā te Māori Titiro, Tā Māui Rangahau

5.2.1 Te Tūhonotanga o ngā Mātauranga

5.2.2 Te Rangahau Reo Māori

5.2.3 Te Rangahau Māori

5.2.4 He Mātāpono Kaupapa Māori

5.2.5 He Matatika Whare Wānanga

5.2.5.1 Ko te Tautokona o te Kaupapa

5.3 Ngā Āhuatanga o te 'Ine i te Kounga'

5.4. Ngā Mahi Rangahau

5.4.1 Ngā Pātai Rangahau

5.4.2 He Kōtui Tuhinga

5.4.3 Te Whiringa i ngā Kaiuru

5.4.4 Te Kōrero Tahi me ngā Kaiuru

5.4.5 Te Wetewete i te Kōrero Kaiuru

5.4.6 Te Whakamātautau i te Mahere Momo-Kōrero

5.4.7 Tā te Tuakana Arotake

5.4.8 Te Kawenga atu o ngā Whakakitenga

5.5 Te Kimihanga i ngā Kupu Ahureo

5.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

¹ (Ihimaera, 1994:157)

² (Ngata, 1958)

5.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Mehema ka toko ake he pātai hei whaitanga atu, ā, ka rangahaua tētehi kōrero hei whakautu i taua pātai, e tika ana kia whakaaturia he aha rā te huarahi i whāia haeretia e te kairangahau. Arā, kia kitea mai ai e ērā o waho, āe, i āta whāia tētehi huarahi ka tahi. Ka rua, mēnā he rangahau hei ‘ine i te maha’ ka taea e tētehi atu kairangahau te whai mai i taua huarahi. Heoi i te mea he rangahau ‘ine i te kounga’ me uaua ka whai mai i tāku i whai ai. I te mea ka rerekē anō ngā whakahokinga kōrero a tēnā, a tēnā. Heoi, ahakoa tērā, kei tēnei Wāhanga ka meatia ake he tika rā te huarahi rangahau. Nā, kei ia momo kaupapa, kei ia momo pātai, kei ia momo tikanga rangahau ngā huarahi e tutuki ai te rangahau. E taea ai te whakaea i te pātai i pātaia, i ngā whāinga i whāia, nei rā te huarahi rangahau i hikoia e tēnei kairangahau.

Ki tēnei Wāhanga kōrerohia ai aua āhuetanga rangahau. Ko Māui me te rangahau; ko te kaupapa rangahau me ngā kaupapa mātauranga; ko te kairangahau me ngā matatika; ko te huarahi rangahau me ngā hīkoi rangahau. Waihoki, ki tēnei Wāhanga kitea ai te ‘waha’ o te kairangahau, arā ko te whakamahia o ngā tūpou ‘au’, ‘mōku’ me te whakamahi i ētehi anō kōrero mō te kairangahau. Kei te puku o tēnei Wāhanga matapakina ai ngā nekeneke hei whakatinana i tēnei rangahau. Kei te mutunga o tēnei Wāhanga kōrerohia ai te āhuetanga tuhituhi o tēnei tākutatanga.

5.2. Tā te Māori Titiro, Tā Māui Rangahau

I te oroko tīmatanga o te ao, tērā ko Ranginui e tū iho nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto ake nei. He WHAKAPONO³ e noho tūāpapa ana i roto i taua rerenga kōrero. Inā rā, kotahi te tupuna o te tangata, ko Rangi rāua ko Papa. Heoi, he whakapono tā tēnā, tā tēnā. Hei tauira, kua uru haere te whakapono ki a Io, ki a Ihu Karaiti, ki ngā Anahera Pono, ki te whakapono pūtaiao anō hoki, ā, he āhuetanga motuhake tā tēnā iwi, tā tēnā hapū, tā tēnā whānau, āe, tā tēnā tangata. Nā reira, mō te kī atu, tā te Māori titiro me tūpato tonu i runga i te mea, tā tēhea Māori titiro? Heoi anō, mōku ake, kia titiro ki ētehi pūrākau e kimihia atu ai ētehi uara Māori (tirohia Walker, 1990:11-23). Ehara hoki tēnei tirohanga i te mea hou mō te rangahau (tirohia Jahnke rāua ko Taiapa, 2003: 46-47).

³ paradigm

Nā, mō te kōrero mō Rangi rāua ko Papa, ka puta ko te whāinga me ngā pātai tuatahi 'ki tā te Māori titiro', te pātai a ā rāua tama i runga i te mea ka whai pānga ki a rātou katoa te itinga o te ātea: me aha tātou? Me patu rānei, me wehewehe rānei? Me pēwhea rā e wehewehe i a rāua? Ko tētehi kāore i whakaae ki te pātai i te pātai, koia ko Tāwhiri-mātea. Ko tētehi i whakautu me patu, koia ko Tū-mata-uenga. Ko te nuinga i whakaae kia wehewehe, heoi, kotahi anake i āhei ki te whakatutuki i te whāinga, ko Tāne-toko-rangi. Nā, e kitea mai ana i tēnei kōrero, i kitea he raruraru, ka kimihia te rongoā. Heoi, kāore i tutuki i a Tāne i te mahinga tuatahi. Ka whakamātauria, kātahi ka tutuki. He mātāpono rangahau anō ēnei mā te ira tangata.

Nā, i te korenga o te tautoko mai o te katoa, ka riria rātou e Tāwhirimātea. Ā, ko Tū-matauenga anake te mea i tū tōtika. Heoi, i te mea ko te tīmatanga o te ao, nā Tū anō taua huarahi i hanga kia ea ai ngā hara o ōna tēina. Ko tana pātai rangahau, 'me pēwhea e ngaki ai taua mate?' Ā, ko te matapae, inā ka kainga rātou ka tānoatia, ka mahia ō rātou uri hei taputapu ka tānoatia, ā, ka tānoatia e ia ka riro tō rātou mana. E mōhiotia ana, ka whakamātauria, ka mahia, ka tutuki. Waihoki, ko tētehi āhuatanga kāore i te kōrerohia mō taua pūrākau, he tuatahitanga tērā huarahi i kimi utu ai a Tū. He pērā me tā ngā Atua whakatau me wehewehe ngā mātua. He pērā hoki tā Tāne kimi i te taha uha, i ngā kete o te mātauranga hoki. Kāore i mōhio mēnā ka tutuki, kāore rānei. Nō reira, he matapae, he matapaki, he pātai, he mahi hei whakamātautau i ētehi o ngā āhuatanga i ea ai aua mahi. E tohea ana koia ko te huarahi rangahau. Heoi, kia waiho te ira atua mā te ira atua, ko te kairangahau tuatahi pea a te Māori, koia ko Māui.

Kei ngā ingoa mō Māui e mau ana ētehi o āna mahi mīharo me maumahara tonu e te tangata. Māui-tikitiki-a-Taranga. Māui-matawaru. Māui-tinihanga. Māui-pōtiki. Māui-toa. Māui-mōhio. Ki te tirohia ngā kōrero mōna, he kōrero rangahau te nuinga. Inā rā, te kimihanga o ana mātua, te kimihanga o te ahi, te herenga o te rā, te hīnga o te ika, te rapunga o te oranga tonutanga. E mea ana a Walker (1990: 15) koia kei a Māui ngā āhuatanga tangata e hiahiatia ana e tātou te Māori. Inā, 'he tangata kamakama, he kōi te hinengaro, he māia, he rauhanga, he tinihanga, he mātātoa.'¹ E mea ana ahau koia hoki ngā āhuatanga me mau i te kairangahau.

Heoi, ko ētehi o ngā kōrero, pērā i tana rapu ahi, i tana hī ika, ko te tinihanga tētehi āhuatanga nui. Hei tauira mō te ahi, nāna anō i tinei te ahi kia taea ai e ia te kimi te pūtaketanga o te ahi. Ā, ka nukarau ia i tana kuia i a Mahuika kia kitea ka pēwhea rā te ahi inā ka whakawetia katoatia. He kōrero hoki tērā mō te kairangahau kia tūpato rā te pērā kei wera. He pēnei i ētehi kaupapa rangahau i te mana nui o te kaupapa. Nā, ka huna hoki a Māui i rō waka kia taea ai e ia te hī tahi me ōna tūākana. Nā te hinengaro koi ka meinga tōna kauae kuia hei matau, ōna toto hei mounu. Ahakoa, raweke, ahakoa haututu, ahakoa ui mākihoi, ko Māui pea tētehi tauira pai mō te kairangahau. Heoi, he rerekē anō pea ngā matatika o Māui i tōna wā ki tō tēnei wā. (Me uaua pea ka whakaae te rōpū matatika whare wānanga kia tangohia te kauae, ngā matimati rānei o ōu kuia, ahakoa pēwhea te matotoru o te puka tonu.)

Nā, mō Hine-nui-te-pō, he tauira anō hoki tērā mō tātou te tangata. Arā ake, ko ētehi kaupapa rangahau kia kaua rawa e torotoro ki reira, ahakoa he whakaaro pai ō te kairangahau. Heoi, koia rā tētehi take e moumou ana te kairangahau me te kaupapa, me rangahau rānei me kaua rānei e rangahaua. Inā ka kore a Māui i mahi i tāna mahi, ka kore tātou e kite i ōna hua, ahakoa kei te mura o te ahi ia e haere ana i ētehi wā. Pēnei i te kairangahau, i ētehi anō wā kāore pea te whakaminenga, te iwi i te mōhio he aha rawa te mahi i te mea he rerekē, he hou, ā, kāore anō kia kitea he tauira pērā i mua. Heoi, kei te Whakaahua 5.1 ētehi pitopito whakaaro ōku mō te hononga o te aronga pūrākau me ngā ariā rangahau.

Te Whakaahua 5.1: Ngā Mātāpono Pūrākau me Ngā Kōrero Rangahau

He Kōrero	I Ahatia	Whakaaro Rangahau	He Pātai Rangahau	Research concept
Te Wehenga o Rangi rāua ko Papa	Ka matapaki ngā atua Ka riro nā Tāne i toko	me kōrero, me pātai, me kimi huarahi ka kore e tutuki, me whakamātau anō	Me aha tātou kia whārōrō waewae? Me wehe rānei, me patu rānei i a rāua? Me pēhea au e wehewehe ai a Rangi rāua ko Papa? Mā te pēnei, mā te pērā?	<i>purpose, relevance problem, solutions participation trial, error</i>
Te Pakanga Atua	Ka kimi utu a Tāwhirimātea Ka kimi utu a Tūmataunga	e kore te katoa e whakaae ki te kore e tautoko, he raru ka puta	He aha rā koutou i kore ai e waiho ngā mātua? He aha rā koutou i kore ai e tautoko mai? Me aha kia ngata ai?	<i>question, trial question, trial experiment</i>
Tāne me te Wānanga	Ka kimihia te mātauranga	te tauira o te wānanga	Me pēwhea e tīkina atu ai ngā kete o te wānanga?	<i>methodology</i>
Tāne me Hineahuone	Ka kimihia te uwaha	he huarahi rangahau	He aha te mea ngaro? Kitea ai ki hea? Me aha?	<i>observation, trial</i>
Tāne me Hinetitama	Ka moea te tamāhine	he wā tōna kei te hē koe	Ko wai tōku pāpā? Me aha kē au?	<i>problem, solution</i>
Māui me Taranga	Ka whiua atu e Taranga	mā te taiao e poipoi	Me takai ia ki te aha?	<i>paradigm, perception</i>
Māui me Tamanuikiterangi	Nā tōna koroua a Māui i taurima	he kaumātua atawhai	Me pēhea e ora ai taku koko? Me ako ia ki te aha?	<i>observation, purpose</i>
Māui me ōna Mātua	Ka kimihia tōna whāea Ka kimihia tōna pāpā	huarahi rangahau, whakautu pātai huarahi rangahau, me tūpato	Kei whea ōku mātua? Nō whea mai koe? Kei te haere tō tātou whāea ki hea?	<i>relevance, trial, interview, rapport interview, observation</i>
Māui me Murirangawhenua	Ka kimihia te kauae	he kuia atawai, huarahi rangahau	Me aha kia whai atu ai i a ia? Nō whea mai koe? Ko wai koe?	<i>deception, resources relevance, deception</i>
Māui me Tamanuiterā	Ka patua te rā kia āta haere	he kimi huarahi rangahau	Me pēwhea e riro mai ai te kauae whai mana?	<i>originality, resource</i>
Māui me Te Ika-a-Māui	Ka hīa ake te motu	huarahi rangahau	Me pēwhea e whakapōturi ai i te rā? Kāore i whakaae, me pēhea e haere ai? Kāore he mounu, me pēhea te hī?	<i>deception, invention fieldwork, trial</i>
Māui me Irawaru	Ka tohea, ka hurihia hei kurī	me tūpato	Me pēhea e huri ai koe hei kurī?	<i>cost, relationships</i>
Māui me Mahuika	Ka tineia, ka kimi ahi	huarahi rangahau	Ka ahatia mēnā kāore he ahi?	<i>research design</i>
Māui me Hinenuitēpō	Ka kimi i te oranga tonutanga	me mōhio ki ō here	Me pēhea e kimi i te oranga tonutanga?	<i>ethics, consent</i>

Heoi anō, kei ngā kōrero a Māui ētehi aronga, ētehi akoranga hei whakaaro ake mā te kairangahau. Kāore i tika te tohinga o Māui e tōna pāpā, ā, ka aituātia; me tika ngā whakaritenga, ngā whakahaere o te rangahau kei taka ki te hē. Kāore ētehi o ngā tuākana e tautoko, heoi ka haere tonu a Māui ki te hī ika; ahakoa te whakahē mai a ētehi, kia ūpoko pakaru kia tutuki i tāu e hiahia ai. I tahuna a Māui e Mahuika, heoi nā Tāwhirimātea ia i tautoko. I ētehi wā, ka werohia te kairangahau e tētehi mana nui, heoi, mā tētehi atu ia, mā te rōpū rānei, e tautoko. Nā te kauae o te tipuna whāea o Māui i taea ai e ia te mahi i ētehi o āna mahi mīharo; anā, me mau i te kairangahau ngā taputapu e tika ana. Nā Māui i mahi i ētehi taputapu hou hei hopu i te rā: he taura, he kūpenga. I ētehi wā me whakamahi te kairangahau i ētehi taputapu hou hei āwhina i a ia. Kāore pea i tika te wero atu a Māui ki tōna tipuna whāea, ki a Hine-nui-te-pō; me tika te whāinga o te rangahau. Ka mutu, ka hinga a Māui i ngā kūwhā o Hine-nui-te-pō; he utu kei te rangahau. Ko te wā rānei ki te taha o te whānau, ko te hauora rānei o te kairangahau. Kāti rā, kei tēnei tupuna, kei a Māui mō ngā whakaaro rangahau nei, mō te whakatau wawe, mō te urupounamu, mō te whakamātautau, mō te tūhura, mō te rapa, mō te kimi huarahi i whakatutuki ai i tāna i wawata ai.

5.2.1 Te Tūhonotanga o ngā Mātauranga

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui o tēnei rangahau, ko te whakamoe i ngā peka mātauranga o tēnā wāhi, o tēnā wāhi ki ngā whārangi kairangi, ki konei pūāwai ai he whakaaro hou. Nā, i te mea e taka mai ana te tuhinga kairangi nei i raro i te *Māori Studies*, he pēnei te tirohanga, he nanao atu ki tēnā kura wānanga, ki tēnā kura wānanga. Mō Te Pūtahia-Toi mai i ngā tau o te rua mano, he nui ngā tohu tākutatanga kua puta me te huhua o ngā kaupapa rerekē. Mā konei e kitea ai te whānuitanga o ngā kaupapa i raro ilho tonu i tēnei mea te tari Māori. He mea puta rānei ēnei tuhinga i te kaimahi rānei, i te ākonga rānei o raro i te tari Māori: ko te whakaora reo mā te reo irirangi (Mataamua, 2007), ko te whakairo me te toi (Jahnke, 2007), ko te whakamomori (Coupe, 2005), ko te tikanga kei ngā rōpū Māori (Knox, 2005), ko te tōrangapū o ngā rōpū mahi ratonga hei kaipākihi (Tomlins-Jahnke, 2005) ko te mana whakahaere o te whare pupuri taonga (Butts, 2003), ko ngā hua oranga mō te hauora Māori (Kingi, 2002), he tauira Māori mō te nēhi kei te mura o te ahi (Holdaway, 2002), ko te whakamahere i te whakaora i te reo (Christensen, 2001), ko te whakawhanake i te iwi Māori (Durie, 2001), ko te hua o ngā waiata tawhito (Black, 2000), ko Ropata Wahawaha te

tōrangapū me te hitori o taua whawhai (Soutar 2000), ko te whakaū i ngā rōpū Māori (Puketapu, 2000)⁴.

Nā reira, ko te tōrangapū, ko te hauora, ko te hitoria, ko te reo Māori, ko te aha atu anō ngā kaupapa e taka mai ana i raro i te tari Māori. He mana tō te tirohanga maha, he ngoikore hoki. Ko te mea nui pea, he whānui te titiro a ngā ākonga ki ngā nekeneke ka pā ki te ao Māori. Heoi, tērā pea ko te hōhonutanga ki tētehi kaupapa kotahi te taha ngoikore. Me uaua ka matatau rawa te pūkenga ki aua kaupapa katoa, ā, kei te matatau pea o ngā kaitautoko tētehi take nui inā ka kounga te tuhinga kairangi. Mō tēnei rangahau, i torotoroa atu ai ētehi peka e waru o te mātauranga (tirohia te Whakaahua 5.2 e whai nei). Koia ko te whānuitanga o te whāinga kia whakamahi i tētehi tātai momo-kōrero, ā, ka hāngai ki aua peka katoa. Heoi, mō te hōhonutanga o te rangahau, āe, ka tau kē ki te MĀTĀTUHI⁵. Inā rā, ko te āta ruku i te reo peha me te aro haehae i tētehi o ngā titonga a tētehi tohunga reo.

Heoi, ka tau atu hoki te kaupapa nei ki tēnei peka o te mātauranga wetereo e meatia ake ana ko te *Sociolinguistics*. E ai ki te pāpā o tēnei kaupapa mātauranga, e ai ki a Joshua Fishman e toru ngā peka o tēnei mātauranga reo: tuatahi ko te whakatakoto kaupapa mō te reo; tuarua ko te hiki i te mana o te reo; tuatoru ko te hanga tikanga mō ngā kupu o te reoⁱⁱ (Fishman, 1991: 81). Ko te peka tuatoru e hāngai atu nei ki tēnei kaupapa rangahau. E mea ake ana a Fishman, ko te nuinga o ngā reo taketake nō tuawhenua, nō te papa kāinga iti nei nō ngā whakawhitinga kōrero o ia rā. Kātahi ka hūnuku atu te reo ki wāhi kē tau ai, ki te kura, ki te whare wānanga, ki te whare tā, ki te ture, ki te kāwanatanga, kātahi ka whanake te pūtea o te kupu. Me pērā ka tika (reira tonu: 346). Koia hoki tā tēnei kaupapa rangahau. Arā, kia taea ai e te tangata te kōrero i ngā āhuatanga pakupaku o te reo kīhai i taea i mua i tēnei rangahau. Inā ko te whakaatu i ngā tini momo-kōrero ā tātou; ko ngā momo takotoranga maha e tohu ai i te kupu whakarite me te take i rerekē ai te kupu whakarite ki te huahuatau; ko te ingoa o te huinga kupu nei, te whakataukī, te kīwaha, te huahuatau, te aha atu me ētehi o ngā kupu taurite mō taua huinga; ko te whakakupu i ētehi āhuatanga reo kei te reo Māori heoi kāore anō pea kia tino wherawherahia, anā ko te kiripuaki (he tino kupu

⁴ Tirohia

http://library.massey.ac.nz/doi/downloads/brochures/maori_theses.pdf mō te roanga ake o ngā tuhinga paerua, kairangi hoki.

⁵ literature

mātātuhi), ko te ia o te kōrero (he nuka reo), ko te huarite (he kīpeha whakatangi), ko te kupu raweke (he kīpeha whakawhere), ko te kupu hautanga (he kīpeha huatau); ka mutu, ko te kimi māramatanga mō ētehi o ngā kīpeha mai i ngā ‘waha o ngā hoiho’, mai i ngā tāngata matatau e mōhio ana ki taua reo. Kia tae ki te mutunga o tēnei rangahau ka kitea kua whakamāramahia aua ARORO REO⁶.

Kāti rā, ko te wawata, ka kitea i runga i te torotoro ki ngā kaupapa maha me te whakakao i ngā tini momo-kōrero me te ruku ki ngā kīpeha e ranginamu ai te momo-kōrero, he huarahi tērā hei whakatairanga i tō tātou nei reo Māori. Mutu ana te pānui kātahi ka huatau ake, whū, tō tātou nei reo Māori koia hei kaupapa motuhake, hei kaupapa taketake - kaua hei kaupapa āpiti noa iho. Arā kia eke ko te reo Māori hei kaupapa rangahau, hei kaupapa wānanga kaua hei kaupapa kaiparaoa noa iho nei. Koia kē te take ko te reo Māori kei te pokapū o ngā mātauranga i te Whakaahua 5.2. He hiki i te reo me te tūhura i ngā kokonga o te reo ētehi whāinga matua o tēnei rangahau. Ā, e manako ana i karo ko te āhuatanga ngoikore o te titiro whānui rawa i te āta titiro ki tēnei peka o tēnei mātauranga reo, ko te reo peha.

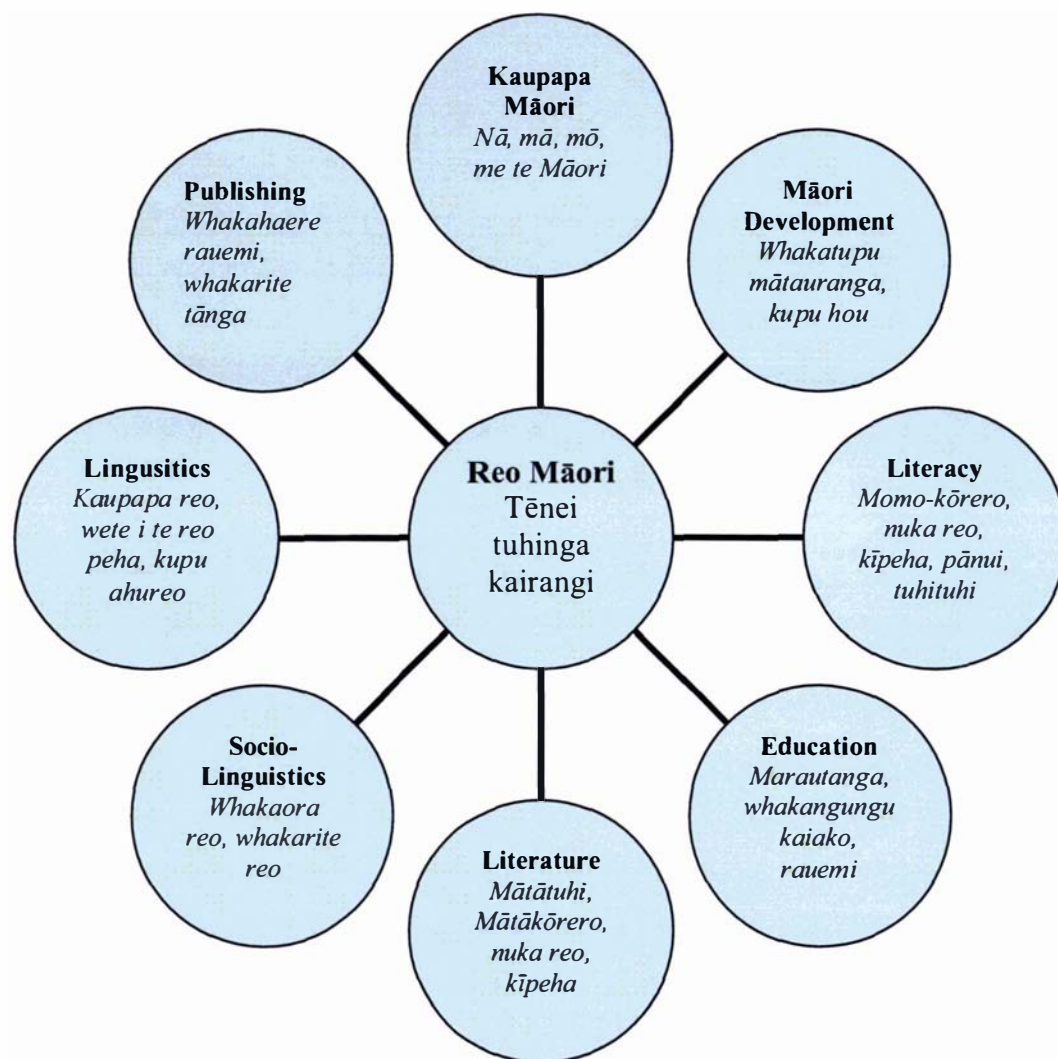
I te whānuitanga tonu o te kaupapa, i whānui ai te titiro a te kairangahau nei me te whakapā atu ki ētehi tāngata o waho o ngā kura reo Māori, ki te wāhi pāhōtanga, ki te wāhi tā rauemi, ki te wāhi pupuri tuhinga, hei whakarārangi i te maha o ngā momo kōrero e whakamahia ana e tēnā, e tenā o tātou (tirohia te Āpitianga 1). E tika ana me tuitui ko ngā momo-kōrero ki te wāhi kotahi hei wherawheratanga mā tātou kia pai ai te whakarautaki i ngā momo-kōrero mō te kura, mō te tā rauemi, mō te whakaora reo, mō te aha atu anō hoki. Heoi, i pēnei ai hoki te torotoro haere ki tēnā kaupapa ki tēnā kaupapa *kia whakautua aku pātai rangahau*. Arā, mēnā ka kitea he pānga nui i tētehi kaupapa, ka torona kia puta mai he paku hīnātore. Pērā i tā Celce-Murcia rāua ko Larsen-Freeman kōrero, me nui ngā huarahi wetewete i te reo kia puta mai ai he māramatanga mō te ako reo(1999: 5). He nui ngā peka mātauranga i tirohia kia puta mai ai he māramatanga mō te momo-kōrero me te reo peha.

Nā, ehara i te mea kei tētehi wāhi kotahi ngā kōrero ariā mō tēnei kaupapa rangahau. Ehara. Kei te pā tēnei kaupapa rangahau ki ngā peka mātauranga maha. Kei wāhi kē

⁶ language concepts

ngā whakaaro mō te momo-kōrero. Kei wāhi kē ngā aroro mō ngā kīpeha. Tērā e kitea kei ngā wāhanga katoa ngā kōrero e hāngai ana, me ngā whakataukītanga kōrero a ētehi o ngā tohunga o ia wāhi, o ia wāhi. Koia pea tētehi āhuatanga e tupu ai te PONO⁷ o tēnei kōrero rangahau, he whakakōtuitui i ia kaupapa ka whakahāngai ai ki te whakapae matua. Inā ētehi āhuatanga reo me mau i te tangata kia eke panuku tōna reo.

Te Whakaaua 5.2: He Peka Mātauranga hei Tūāpapa mō Tēnei Tuhinga Kairangi



5.2.2 Te Rangahau Reo Māori

⁷ validity

Mai i ngā tau 1970 kua whanake haere ngā rangahau mō te reo Māori. Ko Biggs, ko Hōhepa, ko Benton ētehi o ngā kairangahau e para ana i te huarahi mō te reo Māori. Heoi, pau ana te toru tekau tau kua nui kē atu ngā kairangahau reo Māori. Nā, hei whakamoana i aua rangahau i ngā tau tata kua hori nei ka kōkiritia tētehi kaupapa rautaki e Te Puni Kōkiri (TPK) ko *Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero*. He pātengi raraunga hei whakakotahi i ngā rangahau reo Māori. Ahakoa e 503 ngā momo rangahau kei reira, kāore i reira te katoa o ngā rangahau. Kua riro mā te kairangahau, mā ngā tari rangahau e tohutohu ki a rātou he aha rā ngā rangahautanga kei te ngaro. Ā, kāore anō kia whakahoutia mai i te tau 2001, hāunga tērā, he huinga rangahau hei titiro mā tātou. Kei tua nei tētehi whakarāpopotonga.

Ko te tikanga o tēnei pātengi raraunga he āwhina mā ngā kairangahau reo Māori ki te kimi i ngā whāwhārua hei whakakīkī mā rātou, arā ko ngā wāhi e noho ngoikore ana, e noho kaha ana rānei. He nui ngā momo rangahau: he tuhinga whare wānanga – arā, he tuhinga paerua, paetoru rānei, he atikara, he pepa; he tuhinga kāwanatanga, he pūrongo; he tuhinga matawhānui rānei, inā he pukapuka. E kitea mai ana i Te Whakaahua 5.3 ko te nuinga o ngā rangahau reo Māori kei te taha o te whakamahia o te reo. Arā e toru ngā tino āhuatanga reo Māori kua tino rangahaua: Ko te hopunga o te reo, ka tahi; ko ngā waiaro o te iwi ki te reo, ka rua; ko te mōhio ki te kōrero/te whakamahia o te reo Māori ka toru.

Heoi, ki te tirohia taua pātengi raraunga tērā ka kitea kua honohono ētehi o ngā kaupapa. Ahakoa kei tētehi arotanga tētehi rangahau, he hononga anō tōna ki ētehi atu. Hei tauira, e meatia ana i reira e ono kē ngā hononga kaupapa a te kauhau *Te Iho o te Reo* a Tamati Reedy. He pērā anō i tēnei rangahau kairangi. Ahakoa e taea ana te whakauru i tēnei rangahau reo Māori ki raro i te kaupapa *applied linguistics*, ki te arotanga *literacy/use*, he pānga anō tō tēnei rangahau ki te *resource production*, ki te *acquisition*, ki te *sociolinguistics*. Otirā, kua kōrerotia kētia, kāore i te rāhuitia tēnei rangahau ki te kaupapa *linguistics* anake. Ko te hononga nui ki te *Literature*, heoi anō rā, kāore taua kaupapa i te whai pānga ki tā te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero whakatakoto. Ka mutu rā pea, ko te mea nui, he tāpiritanga tēnei o ngā rangahau ki ērā anō mō te reo Māori. He kupu, he kaupapa kei tēnei tuhinga kairangi hei whai atu mā ērā anō o ngā kairangahau reo Māori e whai mai ana.

Te Whakaahua 5.3: Te Wehewehenga, Te Maha o ngā Rangahau mō te Reo Māori

Te Kaupapa	Te Arotanga	Te Maha o te Rangahau	He Kairangahau Hei Tauira Ake
<i>Linguistics</i>	<i>historical linguistics</i>	65	Head, Orbell
	<i>structural linguistics</i>	64	Bauer, Biggs, Hohepa, Harlow, Reedy
	<i>morphology</i>	9	Bauer, Parker, Evans
	<i>phonology</i>	9	Grant, King, Moon
	<i>phonetics</i>	5	Jones, Kearns
	<i>sociolinguistics</i>	40	Benton, Chrisp, Holmes
<i>Applied Linguistics</i>	<i>attitudes, values and beliefs</i>	168	Benton, Spolsky, TPK, Waite
	<i>acquisition</i>	187	Benton, Hōhepa, TPK
	<i>literacy/use</i>	160	Christensen, Keegan, TPK
	<i>resource production</i>	56	Benton, McKinley mā

Otirā he nui te whai pānga o ngā ariā reo o tēnei kaupapa rangahau ki te kaupapa *literacy*. Ko tētehi wāhanga o *Te Reo Māori Literacy Curriculum Map* (Murphy & Keegan, 2002: 20) ko te tuhituhi i tētehi kōrero. He wāhanga ngā nuka reo o te ‘āhuatanga hōhonu’ o tēnei mahere e whai nei. Taka mai ana ki raro i te wāhanga ‘mātauranga reo’. He mātauranga motuhake, he mātauranga e pakari haere ai te reo o te ākongā kia angitū i tā rātou i hiahia ai.

Te Whakaahua 5.4: He Whakarāpopotonga i Te Reo Māori Literacy Curriculum Map
Nā Murphy rāua Keegan, 2002:20

Āhuatanga Hōhonu

Deep Features

Momo tuhinga

Genre

tuhi paki, taki, tohutohu, whakaatu, whakamārama, tautohe

Whaihua

Effectiveness

style, clarity, appropriate audience and purpose

Kiko

Content

ideas, themes, topic

Hanganga

Structure

coherence, sequencing, organisation

Mātauranga Reo

Language Knowledge

notions, functions, vocabulary, grammar

Āhuatanga Pāpaku

Surface Features

Wetewete Reo

Grammar

Tohutuhi

Punctuation

Tuhituhi kupu

Spelling

Tērā ka noho ko ngā nuka reo me ngā kīpeha i tēnei taha hōhonu o te mātauranga reo. Koia hoki te wāhi e noho nei ngā kīpeha i tā te kaupapa *Ngā Tauaromahi Marautanga o Aotearoa*, kei te pito hōhonu o te reo. Ki tēnei kaupapa mō te reo Māori, ko ngā āhuatanga reo e pēnei ana:

Te Whakaahua 5.5: Te Anga Reo i *Ngā Tauaromahi Marautanga o Aotearoa*

Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, Tauaromahi, 2004: Te Reo Māori: Tuhituhi: He Reta

Te Pito Mata o te Reo	Te Pito Hōhonu o te Reo
te wetewete i te reo;	te pānga tangata, te pānga wairua;
te kārawarawatanga;	te whakatipuranga anga;
me te whakatipu kupu.	te āhuatanga reo;
	me te wheako whaiaro.

5.2.3 Te Rangahau Māori

I te pukapuka *Social Science Research in New Zealand* (nā Davidson rāua ko Tolich i ētita, 2003) ka kōrerohia e Jahnke rāua ko Taiapa (2003: 39-50) te tikanga o tēnei mea te rangahau Māori. He mea hī ake te rangahau Māori i te kore whai hua o ngā rangahau o tauīwi me te āhua o ngā kairangahau e ‘tāhae kōrero’ ana. I ērā tāngata e takatakahi haere ana i ngā hapori Māori, ka mataara te iwi Māori ki tēnei mea te kairangahau. Nā whai anō i tupu ai te whakaaro kia Māori ai te wairua o te rangahau. Ka rārangihia e Jhanke rāua ko Taiapa ētehi o ngā pūtaketanga kia kīia ai he rangahau Māori, ā, ka kōrerohia ake nei, arā: tā te Māori titiro; mātauranga Māori, *Māori-centred research*.

Mō tēnei mea te *Māori-centred research*, e mea ana a Jahnke rāua ko Taiapa (2003:43) ka poua ko te iwi Māori ki waenganui tonu i te pūtahitanga o te rangahau. Nā, ka kōrerohia e rāua ngā whakaaro o Durie me te kī e toru ngā mātāpono mō te huarahi rangahau: ko te whakapiki tāngata, arā, ko tētehi whāinga o te rangahau ko te whakatairanga i te tūnga o te iwi Māori; ko te whakatuia, ko te whakahono, ko te tuitui i ngā āhuatanga maha; ko te mana Māori, ko te mana whakahaere i te kaupapa

rangahau me te mana pupuri kōrero. Nā ēnei mātāpono ka tōtika ai te rangahau, ka whai hua ai te rangahau kia kōkiri whakamuatia ngā tūmanako o te iwi Māori.

Ko te ariā pokapū o te tirohanga Māori, ko te whakapapa. Ko te tūhonotanga o ngā mea katoa. Nā, ka mōhio te kairangahau e mahi ana ia i waenga tonu i te whānau, i te hapū, i te iwi. Inā ka pērā, me āta whakaaro ēnei āhuetanga, ko ngā tikanga whakaaro a ngāi tātou mō te mauri, mō te tapu, mō te wairua. Ko ētehi whakatinanatanga o aua whakaaro, ko te koha, ko te tauutuutu, ko te tauawhiawhi. He rerekē pea ēnei āhuetanga i tā te kairangahau Pākehā rangahau.

Mō te mātauranga Māori, kia huri ki tā Royal kōrero i tētehi hui rangahau *Te Oru Rangahau* i te tau 1998. E ono āna urupounamu mō tēnei mea te mātauranga Māori (Royal, 1998: 79):

1. He aha tēnei mea te mātauranga Māori?
2. Me pēhea e hanga ai te mātauranga Māori?
3. Kei a wai?
4. Hei a wai?
5. He aha tōna wairua?
6. Hei aha te mātauranga Māori i ēnei rā, ā ngā rā kei te tū?

Nā, ka aratakina haeretia e Royal kia tau iho ki tōna whakaaro mō Te Ao Mārama, arā ake (reira tonu: 83):

He mea hanga te mātauranga Māori nā te Māori. E hangaia ana tēnei mātauranga i roto i te whare o Te Ao Mārama, i runga anō hoki i ngā whakaaturanga o te whakapapa kia mārama ai te tangata ki tōna ao.

I te noho tauira tonu aua whakaaro, heoi e ono ngā ariā matua o tēnei tirohanga: te rangatiratanga, te āhei ki te rangaranga i te tangata; te manaakitanga, te hikitia o ngā mana i te nohotahitanga tangata; te whanaungatanga, te kōtuia o ngā mea katoa; te tohungatanga, te matatau me te mōhio ki ngā pūkenga ki te whakamārama tohu; te ūkaipō, ngā wāhi haumarū, me kī, ngā āhurutanga; te kotahitanga, te hononga tahitanga o te ao (Royal, 1998: 82-83). Ka mutu, ki te kōrerohia te mātauranga Māori, ka kōrerohia ko Rangi rāua ko Papa, ko ā rāua tamariki, ko ngā kōrero a ngā mātua tūpuna. He hononga hoki ki tā te Māori titiro.

Nā, mō te rangahau Māori, ki tā Bishop (1994) i tana atikara *Initiating Empowering Research?* e whitu ngā wāhanga e tika ana kia pātaia i mua i te rangahau, ā, koia hoki hei arataki kia tutuki pai ai te rangahau:

1. Mā wai te rangahau e kōkiri? He aha ai? He aha ngā whāinga rangahau? Nā wai ērā? Mā te rangahau e whakapai ake te iwi Māori? Mā te pēhea?
2. Mā wai e hanga te rangahau?
3. Mā wai e mahi te mahi? Ko wai ka kōrero?
4. He aha ngā hua? Mā wai ngā hua?
5. Ko wai ka toro ki ngā whakakitenga?
6. Kei whea te tūrangawaewae o te kairangahau?
7. Kei a wai te mana tohatoha o te mātauranga?

Ko tētehi wāhanga nui o ēnei pātai, ko te whai hua ki roto ki te hāpori Māori e rangahaua ana, ā, ki te iwi Māori whānui tonu. Ka matapakina aua āhuatanga i tēnei Wāhanga, me te whakamātau a te kairangahau kia ū tonu ki aua tikanga kua kōrerotia atu nei me ngā mātāpono e whai ake nei. Hei tauira, i tohaina hoki te pepa i puta i *He Pūkenga Kōrero* (Joseph, 2003a) hei take kōrero mā te hāpori i te hanganga haeretanga o te marautanga hou mō te reo Māori ki te reo Māori. Heoi, ko tētehi hua nui, ko te pūrongo e kiia nei ko *He Momo-Kōrero Māori, He Momo Tuhinga, He Nuka Reo: Māori Text Types, Genre and Literary Devices*, (Joseph, 2006b) he mea tuku ki ngā kaimahi o Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. Ka mutu, ka tonoa mai e Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga kia tukuna te pūrongo ki te kaihanga i te marautanga hou mō te reo Māori. Nā, ko te pūtaketanga o te Wāhanga Tuatoru, Tuawhā, Tuawaru o tēnei tuhinga, ko te pūrongo mā Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga.

5.2.4 He Mātāpono Kaupapa Māori

He nui ngā whakaaro Māori tonu me noho tangata whenua ki te ngākau i te wā e rangahaua ana ki roto i te iwi Māori. I tupu ake tēnei kaupapa Māori i ngā tau 1960 (Glover, 1997) i te kaha hōhā ki ngā kairangahau e whakapā atu ana ki te iwi Māori me te aha atu, kāore e kitea ana ngā hua, kāore rānei ngā nekeneke o te rangahau i te tika ki tā te Māori ritenga, ka mutu, kei te kairangahau te whiwhi kāore ko te iwi i

rangahaua (Walker, 1997: 3). Tokomaha kē ngā ihumanea Māori kua kōrero mō te kaupapa Māori (hei tauira, tirohia: Irwin, 1994; Stokes, 1985; Durie, 1999; Tuhiwai-Smith, 1999; Tuhiwai-Smith, 2005). Heoi, ki konei timotimo ai i ētehi āhuatanga i tōtika ai te whakahaere o te kaupapa nei.

Ki te rangahau a Walsh-Tapiata (1999: 249) ka whakamahia ngā matatika a Linda Mead, inā rā e whitu ngā matatika me āta whakaaro i te kairangahau e mahi ana i tāna rangahau (tirohia hoki Cram, 2001: 42-50). Kei te Whakaahua 5.6 e whai nei aua mātāpono. E whitu hoki ngā matatika a Arohia Durie (1999: 261), heoi ka whakahuia ki ngā rōpū e toru: te mana tangata (*dignity, safety, mutuality*), te mana whakahaere(*collaboration, control*), te mana motuhake (*outcomes, evidence of benefit*). Ki tā Jill Bevan Brown whakarāpopoto (1999: 231) i ētehi kōrero rangahau, he tekau kē ngā tū āhuatanga me ētehi whakaaro matua e eke ai tētehi rangahau Māori (te Whakaahua 5.7). E kitea mai ana i ēnei kairangahau e toru, tērā e honohono ngātahi ana ngā mātāpono Māori, tētehi ki tētehi. Inā ngā āhuatanga e tau ai tētehi rangahau i raro i te korowai o te kaupapa Māori.

Te Whakaahua 5.6: He Matatika e ai ki a Mead

Matatika	Whakamārama
Aroha ki te tangata	me ū ki te kaupapa, ki te iwi mō te wā roa
Kanohi kitea	me hui ā-tinana atu ki te tangata
Titiro, whakarongo, kōrero	me tika te kōrerorero
Manaaki ki te tangata	me aro ki te hā o te tangata; koha, kai
Kia tūpato	me āta haere; me karakia
Kaua e takahia te mana o te tangata	me hiki i te mana o te tangata
Kaua e mahaki	me kaua e whakahīhī i tō mōhiotanga

Te Whakaahua 5.7: Tekau ngā Āhuetanga hei Āwhina i te Rangahau mō te Māori

He whakarāpopoto nā Bevan-Brown, 1999: 231

Āhuetanga Rangahau	Whakaaro Māori	Mātāpono
1. Tā te Māori titiro	aroro, mātauranga, pūkenga, mahi, tikanga, reo, mātāpono, whakapono	āwhina, manaakitanga, whakamā, wā, tautoko, aroha
2. Tā te Kairangahau	mōhiotanga, reo, tikanga, kaupapa, rangahau, ū ki te kaupapa Māori, ū ki te iwi, pūkenga o ngā ao e rua, wheako whaiaro, herenga, pikaunga	iwi, tama, wahine, reo pakari, pakeketanga, tohu
3. Tā te Māori wawata	nā te Māori mā te Māori, whakatinana i te hiahia Māori	whai hua, huarahi whakaora, tautoko i te reo me ōna tikanga, he hou te kōrero
4. Tā te Hua Māori	he whakatinana i tētehi painga Māori: kia pai ake ai te ratonga, te mātauranga te hauora, te whakamahia o te rawa	nō te Māori, mā te Māori, mō te Māori, mō te Pākehā rānei
5. Tā te Kaiuru	he whai wāhi mai ki te huarahi rangahau	kotahitanga, whānau, whakaminenga Māori
6. Tā te Mana Kaiuru	He whakanui i te mana o te kaiuru; te huarahi rangahau, te hua rangahau	hoatu pūkenga, mātauranga, wā, wāhi, mahi
7. Tā te Rangahau Māori	He kaupapa rangahau nā te Māori. Nā te Māori te mana whakahaere, te huarahi tika, te aromatawai, te pūtea, te mana pupuri, te kawea o ngā whakakitenga	tika, mana
8. Tā te Iwi	Me whai pānga te kairangahau ki ngā kaiuru, ki te hāpori whānui, ki te iwi.	whiriwhiri pātai, whakahoki kōrero, whakatikatika
9. Tā te Ekenga	Me eke te rangahau ki te taumata e tika ana. Kua aro nuitia ki tā te Māori whakatau.	Hāngaitanga, hua, reo, tikanga, Mātāpono, tā te Māori whai
10. Tā te Kaupapa Māori	Ko te tūāpapa o te rangahau, ko te kaupapa Māori. Ko ngā āhuetanga 1-9.	hui, kōrero kaiuru, whānau, whanaungatanga, whakapapa

Heoi anō rā, i whakamātautau te kairangahau ki te whai i ngā matatika nei. Ahakoa he uaua i ētehi anō wā. Hei tauira, ka mea mai ētehi o ngā kaiuru, āe, ka tika me uru atu ko tēnei momo-kōrero ki roto i te rangahau, ā, ka tae atu ki tētehi anō kaiuru ka mea mai, he aha rā te take ka kuhu koe i wērā momo-kōrero? Kia kua rawa e takahia te mana o tētehi, ka āta whakamāramatia he aha i pērā ai. I runga tonu i te mōhio ka ūpoko mārō ētehi, ka tohe tonu, ā, ka noho tārewa tonu ētehi take. Arā, i te whānuitanga, i te houtanga o te kaupapa kāore e kore ka kore tētehi e rata mai ki ētehi o ngā kōrero. Ko te mea nui pea, ko te āta kōrerorero i ngā take o te rangahau, i ngā nekenekenga, ā, ka waiho mā tāngata kē e whai atu, me kī, māna tāna, nei rā tāku.

Nā, kei te mōhiotia e ngā kaiuru me taku hapori reo Māori ka ū tonu te kairangahau ki te kaupapa ahakoa kua mutu noa atu te rangahau. Me kī, he ao iti te ao Māori mehemea he kaiako reo Māori koe. Mō tērā, he tokoiti hoki ngā pūkenga matatau, ā, ka kaha tonu te pupuri i te matatapu o te kōrero a ngā kaiuru. Hei tauira, ko ētehi o ngā kaiuru nō roto tonu rātou i te rōpū tautoko, ā, ko ētehi atu kaiuru he kaimahi nō te hapori reo Māori, inā rā he hoa kōrero Māori tonu. Mā te mōhio pea ki tērā ka kore e raruraru tērā tū āhuatanga.

Ko tētehi anō take ko te whai wāhi atu ki ngā kaiuru. Nā te tautoko mai a te rōpū rangahau me ngā kaiuru ka tautoko mai ērā atu kaiuru. Ko te nuinga, kei te mōhiotia te mahi a te kairangahau, arā ake, taku taetanga atu ki ngā hui o Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori hei ākongā, aku haerenga ki ngā hui reo Māori, aku rauemi reo Māori me aku tuhinga reo Māori. Hei tauira atu anō, kīhai au i whāki atu i taku ingoa pene ki ngā kaiuru, heoi, i tētehi kura kaupapa Māori i mea atu au i te mutunga o te whakawhitinga kōrero ko ‘Tākuta Hōhepa’ ahau. Kātahi ka whererei mai te kaiuru me te tiki atu i ngā pukapuka hei haina mā tana akomanga. He taunga wairua tērā, heoi kāore i whakahīhi noa. He tauira noa tērā e kā ana te ahi o te kairangahau i roto i te hapori reo Māori.

Nā, mōku, ahakoa rā he matatika matua me whai i raro i te kaupapa rangahau whare wānanga, i te kaupapa Māori, me kī ake he matatika hoki tā tēnā rōpū, tā tēnā tangata. I te tau 2001 ka whakarewahia e te Ministry of Justice he pūrongo *He Hīnātore ki te Ao Māori: A glimpse into the Māori world*. Ko Wharehuia Milroy, nō roto o Tūhoe, tētehi o ngā ringa i whao ai i tēnei pūrongo. Nā taku mōhio he manukura tēnei

tangata, ka tika mā āna pitopito whakaaro e kawe pai atu te kairangahau ki tēnā tangata, ki tēnā iwi, ki tēnā kura, ki tēnā kāinga, ā, ka aro nui atu ki āna kupu.

I raro iho i te ingoa, *Groupings of Terms of a Collection of Behaviours, Philosophies and Emotions* i taua pūrongo, koia rā tētehi atu huarahi matatika e whakamarumarū ai i te hīkoi o te kairangahau i te mata o te whenua. Arā, mā te mōhio ki ia whanonga, ki ia tikanga, ki ia kare-ā-roto e pai ai te rangahau haere i runga i te tika, i te pono, i te māramatanga. Waihoki, me mōhio hoki ki ngā whanonga kāore i te pai ki tā te Māori titiro kia kaua e hara ki tētehi anō tangata. He mea nui tēnei i runga i te iti o te hapori reo Māori, me kī, ‘ko au koe, ko koe au’, ā, ki te hara atu ki tētehi, kei te hara noa iho ki a au anō. Nā reira, ka ngana te kairangahau ki te whai i ēnei o nga āhuatanga pai, me te mōhio anō hoki ki ngā āhuatanga kino i a au e rangahau ana.

Hei whakatauirā i āku whakamahi i ētehi o ēnei matatika anei ētehi o ngā kōrero rangahau. I tētehi hui reo nā tētehi o ngā kaiuru, he manukura, i mea mai me tonu atu au ki a ‘Hera’. Nā, tata mutu ana te hui, ka mea mai te kaumātua rā, āe, kua kōrero tahi ia me ‘Hera’, waeahia atu. Nā, ka waea atu au me te wewero mai o te tangata i tērā anō taha, ko wai hoki tēnei e tonu atu nei ki a ia. I tutū te puehu i tērā taha o te waea. Aī, kāore te koroheke i kōrero ki a ia. Ā, kia manaakitia te ingoa o te koroua rā, ka mea ake ‘Āe, nōku rawa te hē’, ka mihia te Hera rā, ā, ka waiho ki reira. Ahakoa te whakamā, ka manawanui tonu ki te kaupapa. Hei tauira atu anō, ko ētehi o ngā kaiuru ka kōrero mai i ētehi anō kōrero matatapu mō Mea, mō Ngāti Mea rānei. Arā he kōrero kōhete riri noa, he taunu, he whakahāwea, he oti anō rā, ka waiho noa ki te kāinga i kōrerohia ai. Kīhai rawa au i kawe kōrero atu, kei kīia he harihari kōrero. Kāore rānei i tautoko, i whakahē i ā rātou kōrero, ka titiro, ka whakarongo, ā, i taua wā ka kore e kōrero. He matatika hoki pea te wahangū i tōna wā.

Nā, mō te kawa, nā te wā, nā te wāhi, nā te tangata i tohutohu i pēwhea rā te ōkawa o ngā mihi. He mihimihi, he paku mihi rānei ka tukuna. Otirā, ka whakahaeretia ngā kōrerorero ki te wā, ki te wāhi e pai ana ki ngā kaiuru. I ētehi wā i roto māua i te waka, i te whare kai rānei i te tāone, i hea rānei, ā, ka waiho mā te mihi iti i mua tata mai o te kōrerotanga. Heoi, mō ngā kauwhau ki rō akomanga, ki mua i te

whakaminenga, ka tū atu, ka tū mai, ka waiata, ā, he nui kē atu te wairua ōkawa o ngā whakahaeretanga. Inā rā, i ea ai te taha o ngā mātua ki tā te horopaki.

Te Whakaahua 5.8: He Kohinga Kupu mō Tētehi Huinga Whanonga, Kaupapa, Kare-ā-roto: Tā te Pai

Groupings of Terms of a Collection of Behaviours, Philosophies and Emotions: Positive

Nō He Hīnātore ki te Ao Māori: A glimpse into the Māori world. 2001: 145-147. Wellington: Ministry of Justice.

Positive Behaviours	Key Concepts in Māori	
<i>Positive Attributes</i>	Poupou Pou tokomanawa Manawanui Taituarā Ngākau māhaki Ngākau marae	Toka tū moana, toka tū whenua Hūmārie Ngākau ora Ngākau Nanakia Pono
<i>Models of good conduct</i>	Whakatika Mā roto rā e kata Ahakoa he iti nā te aroha Waiho mā te tangata e mihi	Whakaiti Arataki whakahihī He pai tangata e roa te tirohanga
<i>To support, help, encourage, care for</i>	Awhi Mihi Atawhai Aroha Whakanui and whakarangatira	Whāomoomo Whakarewa Hāpai and Tautoko Whakapai Whakawhetai and whakamoemiti
<i>Whānau</i>	Whakapapa Te puia nui	Whanaungatanga Kaikaiwaiū
<i>Parenting/Children</i>	Oriori He kotuku kai whakaata He tamaiti wāwāhi tahā He pōtiki whatiwhati toki	Piripoho and piripāua He pārera apu paru Poipoi He aroha whāea, he pōtiki piripoho
<i>Rekindling kinship ties</i>	Ūkaipō and kōingo Te matua pou whare	Te matemate-a-one Kanohi kitea
<i>Hospitality</i>	Manaaki Ringa raupā Kei takahia a Tahu Ko tāu rourou	Manaakitanga Kei eketia koe e te ope a Hiakai He pai kai e kore e roa te tirohanga
<i>Respect of age and experience</i>	Rei puta He rake toetoe	Taringa huruhuru
<i>Cooperation</i>	Me ohu	
<i>Peace making</i>	Houhou rongo Rongo-ā-marae	Kia tau te rangimarie Rongo-ā-whare
<i>Preparation and planning</i>	He moana kē tā matawhānui, he moana kē tā matawhāiti	
<i>Good news/influence of Christianity</i>	Maunga ā rongo Pai mārire	Rongopai
<i>Land</i>	Te toto o te tangata he kai, te ora o te tangata he whenua	
<i>Kawa of the marae</i>	Kawa	Kia marae
<i>Spiritual</i>	Wairua	
<i>Dual meaning</i>	Tono	Whakaminamina

Te Whakaahua 5.9: He Kohinga Kupu mō Tētehi Huinga Whanonga, Kaupapa, Kare-ā-roto: Tā te Kino

Groupings of Terms of a Collection of Behaviours, Philosophies and Emotions: Negative

Nō He Hinātoke ki te Ao Māori: A glimpse into the Māori world. 2001: 148-149. Wellington: Ministry of Justice.

Negative Behaviours	Key Concepts in Māori	
<i>Demeaning others (Indirect)</i>	Whakahāwea Ngau tuarā Ngutungutu Te whiu kōrero, te maka kōrero	Whakaparahako Kawe kōrero Reo makere me te ngutu makere
<i>Insulting others (Direct)</i>	Tātā Kohukohu Hahani Kutukutu ahi Whakapohane Taunu	Whakawhiu Kohete riri Tāwai Whakatumatuma Whakaiti
<i>Challenging</i>	Manawa wera Pōkeka me te pōhuatau	Kaiaora
<i>Negative emotions</i>	Kiriweti and harawene	Pūhaehae
<i>Curse</i>	Kanga	Mākutu
<i>Poor unacceptable behaviour or manners</i>	Kaipaoe Mauāhara Tau areare Ui mākihoi Whakapae Whakatūpuehu Whakahīhī He kōrero i te ata, he kōrero i te ahiahi	Tiro mākutu Matapiko Pūrahorua Whakamanamana Nihiniho He pārerā apu paru
<i>Physical acts and gestures</i>	Whakapohane Whakatumatuma	Karawhiu Patu, papaki, pātuki me te kōhuru
<i>Emotion of embarrassment</i>	Whakamā	
<i>Referring to types of people</i>	Tauraurau Nanakia	Taurekareka me te hāwini

5.2.5 He Matatika Whare Wānanga

Ki te rangahaua he kaupapa mō te Māori i te whare wānanga i ēnei rā, ka tika me āta whakaaro nui ki ngā matatika ki tā te whare wānanga. Arā, ko ngā āhuatanga e tōtika ai te rangahau, e haumarū ai te kairangahau me te kōrero, otirā, e noho pai ai ngā kaiuru. I te mea he wāhanga nui ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru i tēnei kaupapa rangahau ka whāia te ara matatika Whare Wānanga. Mō ngā here o ngā matatika o te Whare Wānanga o Massey, me tono e te kairangahau te komiti nei, te *Massey University Human Ethics Committee* mēnā ka whai pānga atu ki te tangata. I whakangungua te kairangahau ki tētehi hui matatika i te 20 o ngā rā o Aperira 2004 mō tētehi rā ki Massey, arā *Undertaking Research with Human Participants*, nā reira i māmā ake ai te tono. Nā, ka tika me whakahaere te kaupapa i raro i te *Code of Ethical Conduct for Research, Teaching and Evaluations involving Human Participants*. Ko ētehi āhuatanga o te tono, me rau atu ngā kōrero ka tohaina ki tēnā ki tēnā, inā rā te reta whakamārama (Āpitihanga 4), te puka whakamōhio mā ngā kaiuru (Āpitihanga 5), te puka whakaāe (Āpitihanga 6), me te rārangi kaupapa hei tuku pātai (Āpitihanga 7). Ka mutu, kei te āpitia atu ki te Āpitihanga 9 te puka mā ngā kaipatopato kupu kia matatapu mai ai ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru.

I tua atu o ēnei puka, e hiahia ana te komiti ki te homai kōrero pēnei i: tētehi whakarāpopoto rangahau; tētehi rārangi whāinga; te horopaki o te rangahau mēnā e whai wāriu ana; te huarahi rangahau; te wāhi e rangahau ana te kōrero; te matatau o te kairangahau ki te rangahau; te rahinga, te momo kaiuru, te whiringa i ngā kaiuru; te whai hua ki te kaiuru; te whakapōreareatanga a te kaiuru; te kimi whakaāetanga; te take matatapu; te kimi tautoko; te aha atu, te aha atu. I te mutunga ka whakaae mai rātou i te tono rangahau (nama whakaae PN/04/121) heoi, ka tonoa ahau kia whakapākehātia taku tono reo Māori.

Nā, ahakoa i whāia te huarahi e tutuki ai ngā matatika ki tā te whare wānanga ture, me kōrero atu i konei tētehi raruraru i puta i te whaitanga i taua ara. I te mea he rangahau mō te reo Māori i te reo Māori mā te haporī reo Māori, i tuhia te tono matatika ki te reo Māori. Heoi, ahakoa te tautoko mai a ngā tāngata Māori o taua komiti, i te korenga o ngā tāngata kōrero Māori i te ohu e titiro ana ki te tika o ngā tono ka tautukutuku i taku tono, ā, ka pōturi te whakahokinga kōrero mai. Nā wai rā, ka tonoa

tētehi o ngā tāngata Māori o te rōpū, he kuia, kia haramai ki te kōrero ki a au - i tōku ūpoko mārō kia kaua e tuaruatia taku tono atu, arā he tuku tono mā te reo Pākehā. Nā, tērā te wā ka pā mai te whakamā ki a au i runga i tāku i kite atu ai i taua rā. Ka mōhio au ki te kuia e āta hīkoi ana ki taku tari me taku whakapae i te haramai ia ki te kōrero mai ki a au mō te whakapākehā te take. He mōhio hoki nōku i te tino māuiui te kuia rā. Puku ana taku rae, tere ana ngā wae ki te papa o raro kia kaua te kuia e piki mai i te arawhata ki taku tari. Āe, ka peka mai te kuia ki a au, ā, ka pukuriri au, engari tē whākina atu. Kaua mō te kuia e noho nei i tōku taha me tana whakamā ki tāna i tono ai, engari mō rātou i tono mai ai i te kuia ki te mahi i tā rātou mahi, inā he kimi whakapākehātanga. Kīhai i paku amuamu atu ki te kuia ki tāna i hiahia ai arā kia whakapākehātia i taua ahiahi tonu, i taua haora tonu, ā, ka tere whakapākehātia te tono me ngā puka āpiti, ka kawea ā-ringa atu ki te tangata kē i tono mai ai. Heoi mōku, kāore pea he mana o te ohu titiro matatika inā ko rātou kē kei te takahi i te mana o ngā kaitono. Inā kāore i whakamanahia te reo Māori, ā, ka matakerekere katoa au i te kaha whakamā i te tononga o tēnei o ngā kuia e hanga pōuri ana i tana kore reo. Auē taukiri e. Koia tērā, taku take.

5.2.5.1 Ko te Tautokona Mai o te Kaupapa

Nā, i whāia te huarahi matatika a te whare wānanga, ā, ko tētehi painga atu, ko te aronui ki tētehi āhuatanga e tika ana kia aronuitia, ko te whakatakoto kōrero e tautoko ana i te kaupapa rangahau. Nā rātou anō te tono kia whakaaturia ētehi kōrero tautoko i te kaupapa, ā, mō te taha ōkawa, e toru ngā taunakitanga i āpitia atu ki te tono. He kōrero tautoko nā tētehi kairewherī, he reta tautoko nā tētehi Ahorei, ā, ka whakatūria he rōpū tautoko.

Tuatahi i tāia he atikara i te tau 2003 (Joseph, 2003b) i *He Pukenga Kōrero* hei whakarāpopoto i nga kitenga o roto i ngā pukapuka me te whakaari i te tino ariā o te kaupapa. Koia te kiko o te Wāhanga Tuarua. Kua tautoko mai ngā rewherī i taua atikara me te whai kupu mai:

This article, written in Māori, is timely and a valuable contribution to an aspect of the language that needs consideration. The need for a clear taxonomy in Māori of spoken and written genre for the modern world has obviously been

prompted by such data bases as Toi Te Kupu, but will be useful for teachers and academics.

The article is well researched and presents the information in a logical and clear manner. Although of necessity the language is a little technical it is in correct and appropriate Māori and is clearly written. It identifies the problem and suggests a solution.

Teachers and academics using Māori as their medium will find this article a valuable contribution. It will focus attention on how appropriate particular terms are for classifying texts.

Tuarua, i kauhautia te kaupapa i Te Whanganui-a-Tara ki Te Puni Kōkiri ki mua i te aroaro o ētehi tuākana me ētehi pūkenga o te Reo Māori. Ahakoa i tautokona mai ngā kupu ā-waha, ka tonoa atu ki a Professor Tamati Reedy kia tuhia mai he kōrero. Nāna ēnei kupu i tētehi reta i te 16 o Mei i te tau 2003:

I had the pleasure of hearing Darryn Joseph's research work at a Te Puni Kōkiri hui held last week. I am most impressed with the standard and quality of analysis being applied to his project on Māori Language working towards completion of his PhD.

Tuatoru, ka whakatūria he rōpū tautoko, 'Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo Kōrero'. He pouako e whakaako nei i te reo Maori, he pouako whakangungu i te kaiako, ko taku kaititiro matua, he ringa waihanga rauemi kura, he ringa wharetā, he ringa hoki nō Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. E rua ā mātou huinga i te tau. Nā te rōpū nei i arataki te kaupapa kia tutuki rā anō ōna whāinga. Anei ētehi pitopito whakaaro mai i ngā meneti a te hui tuatahi i te 9 o Hōngongoi i te 2004. Tokowhitu mātou i hui ki Te Pūtahi-a-Toi.

Te Whakaahua 5.10: He Meneti o te Hui mō Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Mō ngā momo kōrero

Ko ētehi momo korero i ahu mai i te reo korero, ko ētehi atu i whānau mai i te reo tuhituhi. Hei tauira, mō te reo kōrero tērā ko ngā kī i roto i ngā momo kōrero nei, pēnei i te whakataukī, i te whakatauākī, i te poroporoākī, i te ōhākī. Nō reira, me wehewehe ngā korero ki ngā kōrero ā-waha, ki ngā kōrero ā-tuhi.

Heoi, me tūpatu tonu. Tērā te tuhinga rongonui a Apirana Ngata ki tētehi kotiro, engari he ōhākī tonu. Kei te kitea ētehi momo kōrero ki roto anō i ētehi atu momo korero. Hei tauira ko te whakapapa i roto i te kōrero ā-iwi, ko te whakapapa i roto i te pūrākau, pēnei i ngā kōrero atua, ko te whakapapa i roto i te whaikōrero. He momo kōrero i roto i te kōrero. Hei tauira, ko te ‘narrative’ i roto i te waiata, “Ka eke ki Wairaka”.

Mō ngā momo tuhinga

Ko te kōrero whakaputa mōhiohio (transactional) te mea uaua ki ngā ākonga. Ruarua noa iho kua tuhia mō ngā tamariki. Kāore he nui ngā tauira i roto i te reo Māori hei whakaatu ki ngā tamariki. Ā, ko tētehi tuhinga transactional ko te arotakenga. Inā, he whakaputa whakaaro, he whakamana whakaaro, me te pātai he aha koe i whakaaro pērā ai?

We need a lot more non-fiction writing. Kia taea ai e ngā ākonga te rangahau. Inā pakeke ana te ākonga koia hei āwhina i a ia ki te rangahau.

Mō te tuhituhi me te kōrero

Mō ngā momo korero e taka mai ana i te reo kōrero me maumahara tātou i tuhia kētia aua momo kōrero kia kore ai e ngaro. Ko te āwangawanga nui ka riro mā te tuhituhi e ako i te reo ā-waha. Ko te hopu kē te tikanga i tuhia ai ngā kōrero ā-waha.

Mō te whakamahere i ā tātou momo kōrero

Kāore pea ētehi o ngā kaiako i te mōhio ki te whakaako i ngā momo kōrero kia eke atu ai ki tōna teiteitanga. Ko tētehi whāinga o te mahere momo kōrero kia ora ai te reo me ōna teiteitanga katoa. Heoi, me pēhea tātou e whakapapa i ā tātou korero? Ko ētehi o ngā momo kōrero kei te noho ki waenganui i tēnei pūnaha, arā, ka whakawhitiwhiti i te reo kōrero me te reo tuhituhi. He rerekē te tuku i te haukiri ā-pepa i te tuku i te haukiri ā-waha. Ka mutu, ko ētehi o ngā momo kōrero arā noa atu ngā tūmomo e taka mai ana i te mea kotahi. Ina he maha ngā momo mōteatea, he maha ngā momo karakia. Tērā pea ka whakaatuaria ēnei ki tētehi anō wāhi.

Ki te titiro ki te marautanga reo Māori ko te reo ataata e noho ngoikore ana. Koia te whenu kei te ngaro i tēnei wā. Hei tauira, ki tā Derek Ladeli ki te kore e mōhio ki ngā kōrero i mua i te whakairo ka tū tahanga noa iho ngā whakairo.

Anei tētehi anō whakaaro mō te whakamahere i ā tātou momo-kōrero i tuhia e tētehi tangata o te rōpū. E kitea mai ana ka whāia atu te whakarōpūtanga mō te tikanga o te marae me te momo waiata. Kei te Āpitihanga 12 te whanaketanga o te Tātai Momo-Kōrero.

Te Whakaahua 5.1 1: He Whakaaro Noa mō te Whakarōpū Momo-Kōrero

tikanga o te marae	whakataukī	whakapapa	momo waiata	momo karakia	ētahi atu momo kōrero
karanga	pepeha	kōrero ā-iwi/ā-hapū/ā-whānau	mōteatea		paki
mihi		kōrero tuku iho	waiata		pūrākau
mihimihi		hokinga mahara	ngā momo nekehanga		kōrero tinihanga
poroporoaki		pūmahara			pakiwaitara
whaikōrero		uruuruao			kīwaha
		ngā momo toi ataata			panga

Nā, kua whakapā hoki te kairangahau ki ngā hoa mahi i Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi, me ngā hoa mahi whānui i Te Kunenga ki Pūrehuroa, me tōku hapori reo Māori i te wā e rangahaua haeretia ana te kōrero. Ka whakaaturia atu te tātai momo-kōrero ki tētehi o aku kaumātua reo Māori, ko tāna mō te kaupapa:

He pai au ki tō kaupapa. Ko tā te tamariki o te Kōhanga Reo he hopu i ngā kōrero. Nā, tae atu ki te Kura Tuarua, he honohono te mahi.

Ka mutu, ka whakaatu atu i te tātai momo-kōrero ki tōku hapori reo Māori mā te īmēra, he kaiako mai i ngā momo kura wānanga katoa. Ko te whakahokinga kōrero mai tēnei a tētehi kaiako o tētehi kura kaupapa Māori o roto o Waikato Maniapoto:

E ta! He tino taonga ēnei kōrero hei arataki, hei āwhina i ngā kaiwhakaako i roto i ngā Kura Kaupapa Māori. Ka mau te wehi. He paipera ki a au ināianei i roto i āku mahi whakariterite ngohe mā ngā tamariki. Ka hoki atu, ka hoki atu ki te pānui, hei arataki i a au. Me whai wāhi anō hoki ngā kaiwhakaako ki te pērā tahi. E tika ana te katoa mō ngā kura kaupapa Maori, koianei hoki ngā tino mō te āhuatanga ki te *Literacy*nē?

(L. Koroheke, whakawhitinga whaiaro, te 7 o Noema, i te tau 2005)

Nā, kāore rawa au i kimi mihi noa iho mō te whakahīhī noa te take, heoi he kimi kōrero tautoko mai i taku hapori reo inā kei te takahia te ara tika. Ahakoa he kaititiro ōku, he rōpū arataki hoki, kāore pea i whai i tētehi kaitautoko matua kia akiaki mai i a au ki te whakatutuki i tēnei rangahau nui. Heoi, i te haerenga o ngā tau ka noho mai ko tēnā, ko tēnā hei kaitautoko i te kaupapa. Ka noho ko tōku hapori reo Māori hei

kaiakiaki i tōna wā. Ka noho ko ōku hoa mahi hei kaiakiaki i tōna nei wā. Ka noho ko tōku whānau tūturu hei kaiakiaki i tōna nei wā hoki.

5.3 Ngā Āhuatanga o te 'Ine i te Kounga'

E rua pea ngā momo huarahi rangahau: ko te huarahi hei INE I TE NUI⁸, ko te huarahi hei INE I TE KOUNGA⁹. Mā te ine i te nui e titiro whānui ki ngā kōrero. Hei tauira, ko ngā rangahau e tātai ana i te maha o ngā tāngata e whakapono ana ki tētehi take; tokohia rānei ngā tāngata e mahi ana i tētehi mahi. Heoi mā te ine i te kounga e titiro hōhonu ki ngā kōrero. Mā reira e whakamāramatia ai he aha e whakapono nei, e whakaaro nei, e mahi nei te iwi i aua mahi (tirohia Davidson rāua ko Tolich, 2003:121-128; Patton, 1990: 13-24).

Kua kitea i tēnei rangahau i ētehi wā ka whakamahia te whakaaro mō te ine i te nui. Inā rā ka whakamahia ngā pātengi raraunga kia tirohia te maha o ngā rangahau reo Māori (kei tēnei wāhanga), te maha o ngā momo tuhinga mātauranga kua tāia (te Wāhanga Tuarua), te maha o ngā huahuatau i te papakupu Wīremu (te Wāhanga Tuawaru). Engari, he tātari tonu ērā i te kounga o aua tuhinga.

Heoi, ko te huarahi rangahau matua hei rapu māramatanga, ko te ine i te kounga. E toru ngā mahi matua i tēnei tūmomo huarahi rangahau (Patton, 1990: 10): ko te kōrero hōhonu me ngā kaiuru; ko te āta titiro, whakarongo; ko te pepa whai tikanga tuhituhi nei. E whai ake nei ko ngā kōrero mō ngā kaiuru: Me pēhea te kairangahau e whiriwhiri ai i aua kaiuru; tokohia; kei whea te kōrerorero; he pēhea te kōrero. Ko te nui o te kōrero a ngā kaiuru i whakataukītia ki ngā wāhanga e tika ana me whakataukī, arā, ko ngā wāhanga mō te kīpeha, mō te arotake i te tātai momo-kōrero, mō ngā whakahokinga kōrero mō te mātātuhi, ka tahi. Ka rua, mō te āta titiro me te āta whakarongo, ahakoa te horopaki ka whakarongo, ka titiro te kairangahau kia kimihia he kōrero e pā ana ki te kaupapa. Ahakoa pouaka whakaata, hui ōpaki, hui ōkawa, whakarongorongo ai te kairangahau ki ngā kōrero me te āta whakakīkī haere i ētehi puka rangahau mō ngā mahi a te tangata. Kitea ai aua kitenga i ngā whakatauiratanga āku. Ka toru, ka tirohia ngā pepa e whai tikanga ana ki te kaupapa rangahau. I te whānui o te kaupapa he nui tonu ngā tuhinga i tirohia hei kimi

⁸ quantitative

⁹ qualitative

whakautu i ngā pātai rangahau. Heoi anō rā, ki a Patton (1990: 11) kia tutuki pai ai aua āhuatanga e toru o te rangahau 'ine i te kounga', ko ētehi āhuatanga kairangahau me eke ko: 'te mana whakahaere, te mātauranga, te whakangungu, te akoako, te auaha, te kaha ki te mahi'ⁱⁱⁱ.

5.4 Ngā Mahi Rangahau

Ki te hiahia te tangata ki te rangahau, e ono ngā pātai me whakautu e ai ki a Davidson rāua ko Tolich (2003: 103). He pātai ēnei mō te tūmomo-kōrero e hiahiatia ana, mō te huarahi rangahau; mō ngā kaiuru; mō te matatika; mō te tātari kōrero; mō te kawē atu i ngā whakakitenga.

1. Me mōhio koe ki te aha?
2. He aha te huarahi pai ki te kohikohi kōrero?
3. Kei a wai taua kōrero?
4. Me pēwhea te whakahaere tika i tō rangahau?
5. He aha te tikanga o aua kōrero?
6. Oti ana te kōhi kōrero, ka ahatia aua kōrero?

Heoi e pēnei kē ana e ai ki a Patton (1990: 12) e ono hoki ngā pātai hei whakautu kia kimihia te huarahi e tika ana. E kitea mai ana i ngā pātai e whai nei, koia ko ētehi here o te kairangahau, inā rā, ko te kaiwhiwhi o te kōrero; ko te āhua o te kōrero; ko te take o te kōrero; ko te roa o te rangahau; ko te whai rawa pērā i te wā, i te moni, i te matatau o te tāngata; ko te huarahi rangahau.

1. Mā wai te kōrero?
2. He aha te tūmomo-kōrero e hiahiatia ana?
3. Ka ahatia te kōrero? Hei aha te kōrero?
4. Mō āhea te kōrero?
5. He aha ngā rauemi a te kairangahau?
6. He aha ngā huarahi rangahau e tika ana?

Kia pēnei te whakautu haere i aua kohinga pātai e rua. Mā ngā kaiako te mahere momo-kōrero ka tahi. Heoi, mōku ake hei ākonga reo Māori, mā ngā tāngata katoa e kōrero Māori ana i te horopaki mātauranga tēnei rangahau. Heoi, ko ngā whakakitenga mō te kīpeha, tērā pea i te wā ka whāiti rawa te kōrero, ka iti iho ngā

tāngata e hiahia ana ki taua kōrero. Nā, i te mea e rua ngā tū kōrero e hiahia ana, tuatahi ko te maha o ngā momo-kōrero, tuarua ko te whakamārama hōhonu mō te kīpeha - tētehi peka o aua momo-kōrero - he rerekē pea ngā whāinga i te huarahi rangahau. E utua ai ngā whāinga e rua, me rerekē ngā huarahi. Koia ka kitea he nui ngā tuhinga ka tirohia hei hanga i te mahere momo-kōrero. Heoi mō te kimi whakamārama mō te kīpeha, kei te tangata kē taua kōrero, kāore e kitea ana te hōhonutanga o ngā kupu whakamārama i ngā pukapuka.

He nui ngā huarahi rangahau e taea ana kia whakatutuki i ngā whāinga rangahau. Ko ētehi o ngā hīkoitanga matua kia tutuki ai tēnei rangahau, inā ko te whakakao me te whakamahere i ngā momo-kōrero Māori me te titiro hōhonu ki ngā kīpeha, ko te pēnei:

- he kōtui i ngā tuhinga maha i wiwi, i wawa;
- he mātakitaki – he titiro, he whakarongo, he haere ki te hui;
- he whakawhitiwhiti kōrero me ngā kaiuru matatau;
- he whakatū i tētehi rōpū arataki;
- he kimi āwhina mai i ngā kaitirotiro;
- he whakamātautau i ētehi o ngā whakakitenga, arā ko te mahere momo-kōrero me te huinga kīpeha;
- he mahi hoki i waenga i te iwi;
- he tā pukapuka kei reira ngā kōrero rangahau e mau ana;
- he mea nui hoki te arotakea o ngā kōrero e ngā tūākana; he tūākana reo, he tūākana mātau.

5.4.1 Ngā Pātai Rangahau

He mea nui te rangahau kia tupu te mātauranga. Ko tētehi mea nui o te rangahau ko te matapae. Mā te matapae ka puta ko ngā pātai. Mā te kimi kōrero hei kimi whakautu ka puta ko tētehi māramatanga ki taua matapae. Ā, ka whanake haere te mātauranga. Ki konei pea tīmata ai tēnei wāhanga mō ngā pātai rangahau ki tētehi kōrero pono. Ko te take o te kōrero nei, ko te hiahia kia whakawhanake haere i tēnei peka o te reo Māori. I ngā tau e rima ki muri ka peka mai tētehi ākonga, he hoa nōku, o wānanga kē me te pātai haere i ētehi pātai mō te mātātuhi. Ko tāna he whakatutuki i te mahi kāinga, ahakoa he pouako, he ākonga hoki. Ko taua mahi āna, he tātari i tētehi kōrero

mātātuhi. Ko te ara wetewete, ko te titiro ki te kupu, ki te kīanga, ki te rerenga kōrero, ā, ki a ia koia tonu ko te tirohanga mātātuhi. Heoi anō rā mōku ake koia kē pea te titiro (whāiti rawa nei) a te *Linguist*, arā, ehara rawa i te titiro mātātuhi *Literary* nei. Heoi, kāore i a au tētehi ara tātari kē atu hei hoatu māna ki te ruku i te hōhonutanga o taua kōrero. Ahakoa te kī atu me titiro kē ki te kīwaha, ki te kupu whakarite. Kāore i a au ngā pātai māmā noa nei: He aha te momo-kōrero? He aha ngā momo kīpeha kei tēnā momo-kōrero? He aha te kaitito i mahi ai i aua kīpeha i taua momo-kōrero? Nā reira i koropupū ake ai ēnei pātai e whai nei kia tupu ai tēnei peka o te mātauranga reo.

Ko te kaupapa matua i āta wetewetehia i roto i tēnei tuhinga kairangi, e Māori tonu ai te reo Māori, arā, kia mōhio te tangata mēnā kua eke ngā kōrero Māori ki tōna panekiretanga me mātau te tangata ki ētehi tino āhuatanga reo. Koia hoki hei pūtakekanga mātātuhi māna. Ko ētehi whāinga matua o tēnei rangahau e pēnei ana:

- Kia matapakina ngā momo-kōrero Māori me te mātātuhi Māori;
- Kia tautuhia te whānuitanga o ngā ingoa o ngā momo-kōrero Māori;
- Kia hangaia he pūnaha e whakaatu ana i ētehi tino momo-kōrero Māori mō te horopaki mātauranga;
- Kia hangaia he anga nuka reo e tātaria ai te kounga o ētehi momo-kōrero;
- Kia wetehia tētehi o ngā momo-kōrero mātātuhi.

Nā, e toru pea ngā urupounamu matua i whakahāia ake hei aratakinga atu māku:

1. He aha ngā momo-kōrero kei te reo Māori?
2. Me pēhea e whakamaherea ai ngā momo-kōrero?
3. Me pēhea e kounga ai te momo-kōrero Māori?

Ahakoa he rārangi pātai, he rārangi tērā hei arataki i te tangata ki te tini momo-kōrero kua hei here atu i a ia. E mea ana a Tolich rāua ko Davidson mō ngā pātai o te rangahau ‘ine i te kounga’, ko te rārangi pātai ki tētehi kaiuru koia hei tūāpapa mō te kaiuru ka whai mai, ka tupu pērā atu te rārangi pātai (Tolich rāua ko Davidson, 1999:108). Arā, ka huri haere te rārangi pātai. Nā, i tēnei rangahau e whakahaeretia ana, ka mōhiotia arā atu anō ngā pātai me ngā ariā e hāngai ana ki tēnei rangahau. Ahakoa e kore nei e ea i tēnei rangahau, he whai pānga ki te kaupapa.

Te Momo-Kōrero

- Kei te tūhono pēhea ā tātou kōrero?
- Kei te rerekē haere te takotoranga o ā tātou momo-kōrero?
- Ka tautohetohe ngā momo-kōrero, tētehi ki tētehi?
- Kei te noho mōrearea ētehi momo-kōrero, kei te haumarua ētehi anō? Ko ēhea?
- Ko wai kei te whakatupu i ngā momo-kōrero?
- Ko wai kei te tiaki i ngā momo-kōrero? Ki hea?
- Ko ēhea ngā momo-kōrero hei taonga? Ko ngā mea ā-waha anake? Ko ngā mea tawhito anake?
- He aha ngā momo-kōrero kei te mātātuhi reo Māori?
- Ko wai ngā kaikōrero/kaituhi rongonui?
- Kei te tāia te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero?
- He aha ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana mā ia whakatipuranga?
- He aha ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana mā ia taumata i te kura?
- He aha ngā momo-kōrero e tika ana mā tēnā mahi, mā tēnā mahi?
- Ki whea akona ai ia momo-kōrero?
- He aha te hanganga o ia momo-kōrero?
- He reo motuhake tō ia momo-kōrero?
- Me pēweha e whakarōpū ai i te maha o ngā momo-kōrero?
- Me pēhea e eke ai tētehi momo-kōrero ki te taumata?
- He āwhina te tātai momo-kōrero mā te *Literacy*?

Āhuatanga Reo

- He aha ngā āhuatanga reo/nuka reo/kīpeha matua?
- Whakamahia ai ngā nuka reo e ngā kaiako?
- Ko wai kei te hanga kupu hou mō tēnei mātauranga reo?
- He aha ngā kīpeha tūturu a ngā mātua tūpuna?
- He aha ngā āhuatanga reo me mau i te tangata, kātahi ka tau rawa mai te māramatanga ki te mātātuhi?
- Ko ēhea āhuatanga reo e tika ana mā ia taumata o te kura?
- He aha ngā whakamārama mō aua āhuatanga reo? Ki hea mahia ai? Ki hea kitea ai? Ko ēhea wā kāore e tika ana kia whakamahia aua kīpeha?
- Kitea ai aua āhuatanga reo ki te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero?

- Ki te hiahia te tangata ki te whakapakari ake i tōna reo Māori, he ara te tātai momo-kōrero me te anga nuka reo kia pērā ia?
- He huarahi ako te anga kīpeha hei āwhina mā te tangata ki te kimi māramatanga i te mātātuhi?
- He aha ngā ARORO MATUA o te reo Māori e pā ana ki tēnei peka o te mātauranga?
- He aha ngā mātāpono mātātuhi?
- Me pēhea e wairua Māori ai tētehi momo-kōrero?
- Mā te kīpeha e kounga ai te momo-kōrero?

E kitea ana i te rangahau e haere ana tērā ka putaputa ake he pātai atu anō. Ehara hoki ēnei pātai i te katoa o ngā pātai i tuhia ki aku puka rangahau. Ka mutu, ko ētehi o ngā pātai hāngai pū he mea ui ake e ngā kaiuru. Hei tauira, i te noho marara o ngā kupu ā-kaupapa nei, ka pātai ake tētehi kaiuru: ‘Kei whea te papakupu reo Māori mō te reo Māori?’ He tino pātai tērā. He paku āwhina pea tēnei rangahau ki te kōkiri whakamua i te whakautu i taua pātai. Nā reira, ko ētehi o ngā pātai nei, ka whai take, ka utua ki roto i ngā whārangi tākutatanga nei. Ko ētehi atu, ka waiho mā kairangahau kē e titiro. Ko ētehi atu, he pākiki, he ui mākihoi noa. Ehara rawa i te mea me whakautu.

5.4.2 He Kōtui Tuhinga

I tirohia whānuitia ngā pukapuka, ngā hautaka Māori, ngā paetukutuku kia whakakaoa mai ngā kōrero hei tūāpapa mō tēnei rangahau. He atikara whare wānanga, he pukapuka tamariki, he papakupu, he maheni, he pūrongo kāwanatanga, he pukapuka mahi. Heoi, ehara rawa i te mea i tirohia tuatahitia tētehi kohinga kōrero ka waiho ki reira. I te whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru me te rōpū arataki i te kaupapa nei me aku kaitirotiro, ka kuhuna aua kōrero ki te rangahau nei. Heoi, i te tīmatanga o tēnei rangahau ka arotakea ngā tuhinga whare wānanga me ngā tuhinga kāwanatanga mō te whakaora i te reo Māori, mō te reo Māori o roto i te mātauranga Māori, mō te ariā momo-kōrero, mō ngā nuka reo. Nā ēnei hīkoitanga tuatahi ka hangā te rārangi pātai i kawea atu ki ngā kaiuru (tirohia te Āpitihanga 7).

I āta rukuhia hoki tēnei mea te ‘momo tuhinga’ heoi anō rā, ahakoa i whakapauhia tētehi tau ki taua peka mātauranga me te wānanga tahi me ētehi tāngata mō taua mātauranga ka tau mai te māramatanga, āe, he rangahau kē atu tērā. Kia hōhonu te

titiro ki ngā momo-kōrero me ngā kīpeha, me waiho ko ngā momo tuhinga. Otirā, ka whakatata mai te rangahau ki tōna tutukitanga, ka pānuihia ngā rauemi reo Māori; pukapuka ākonga mai, pukapuka kaiako mai. Ka mutu ka ekea ētehi pae tukutuku hei kimi kōrero pērā i a Toi Te Kupu, i New Zealand Digital Library mō ngā niupepa tawhito, i te Reo Tupu mō ngā papakupu. Nā reira i kimi kōrero ai mai i aua momo rauemi e hāngai ana ki tēnei rangahau.

Nā, ehara i te mea ko te pukapuka anake ngā mea i tirohia. I te mea he rangahau Māori, ki te rongo mai i tētehi hui reo Māori ka haere atu te kairangahau. Koia tētehi āhuatanga nui mō te kaupapa Māori, ko te kanohi kitea. Kāore i rikoatatia te hui, heoi i mau atu tētehi pukapuka motuhake, puka rangahau hei tuhituhi i tāku i kite ai, i tāku i rongo ai. Ko te painga, ka noho ko ngā pukapuka rangahau hei pupuri i ngā whakaaro, ā, ka tuhia ki te tuhinga kairangi. Ka hui atu hoki ki ētehi tāngata kia tau mai he māramatanga mō ētehi kaupapa. Hei tauira, ka hui māua ko tētehi tāngata taketake o Amerika, ko Chadwick Allen me te kōrero i ngā āhuatanga o te mātātuhi. Nā aua hui ōpaki i whakapai ake ai i ngā kōrero i te rangahau.

5.4.3 Te Whiringa i ngā Kaiuru

E rua ngā haeretanga atu ki te kimi kōrero, kanohi ki te kanohi, hei whakatutuki i tēnei rangahau. Ka tahi, he kimi kōrero hei hanga i te mahere momo-kōrero me te anga mō ngā kīpeha. Ka rua, he whakamātautau i ngā hua o aua kitenga tuatahi. I whiriwhirihia ngā kaiuru ki tā te *snowball sampling technique* (tirohia Bouma, 2000). Ka peka atu ki ngā “mea matatau” me ngā “manukura” (Pearson in Tolich and Davidson, 1999), ā, mutu ana ngā kōrerotanga ka pātaia te kaiuru inā he tāngata e tika ana hei kōrerotanga māku. Heoi, kia pono ai te whiriwhiri, mehemea ka kī mai ngā tāngata TOKOTORU¹⁰ (kaiuru, kaitautoko, kaiarataki) me peka atu ki tētehi tangata, kātahi ka toro atu ki taua tangata.

He mea whiriwhiri tēnei huarahi rangahau i runga i ngā whakahoki kōrero mai a ngā rōpū e toru: ngā kaitirotiro i te whare wānanga, te rōpū rangahau o te hāpori reo Māori, me te Māori Language Education Team o te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. I oti te

¹⁰ triangulation

toronga tangata i roto i te tau kotahi, atu i te rā tuatahi o te marama o Kohitātea i te tau 2005 tae noa ake ki te 10 o Kohitātea i te tau 2006. E 28 ngā kōrerotanga kaiuru i whakahaeretia. Nō ngā wāhanga rerekē o te hapori reo Māori ngā kaiuru: he kaiako, he pūkenga, he kaimahi mō te hapori, he kaitautoko tūmataiti, he kaimahi tari kāwanatanga.

I te wā ka rapua ngā kōrero ka aro nui ki tēnei mea te MAHI RANGAHAU¹¹ (tirohia Stringer, 2004). Arā, ka whanake haere, ka whakatika haere te rārangi pātai i te wā e matapakina haeretia ana ngā kaiuru. Nā whai anō ka rerekē haere te mahere momo-kōrero, me ngā tūmomo kīpeha i runga tonu i ngā whakahoki a ngā kaiuru me te whakamātautau i ngā kōrero. Ka mutu, nō ngā kaiuru tonu te whakaaro kia āta kimihia he kōrero mō te kīpeha i runga i te mea he iti ngā kōrero kua tāia hei āwhina mā rātou.

5.4.4 Te Kōrero Tahi me ngā Kaiuru

Ka whāia i tā Christensen i kī ai ehara rawa te uiui i te kupu e tika ana mō te kimi kōrero a te kairangahau me tētehi kaiuru (2001:122). Inā rā ko te haere atu ki te uiui i ngā kaiuru. He kōrerorero kē. He pai tērā whakaaro hei rautaki i runga i taku haere me te pātai kē mai a ētehi kaiuru i ā rātou pātai, ā, ka wānanga māua, ka whakawhiti kōrero. Ko te painga pea, ko te makere pai mai o ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru.

I mua i te kōrerorero ka tirohia te rārangi taputapu mā te rangahau (Āpitihanga 8) mō taku rangahau. He tino āwhina tēnei i runga i te mea ko ētehi o ngā kaiuru he tuakana reo, he manukura reo Māori mōku, ā, i te kaha o te hīkaka o te teina ki te tuakana kei mauri rere, kei wareware kē i a au te mahi e tika ana hei mahi māku kia tutuki pai ai te rangahau. Nā reira, i tētehi kōpaki te katoa o āku pepa hei āwhina i te kōrero rangahau. He pepa rangahau: he puka whakamōhio, he puka whakaae, he rārangi pātai, he rārangi momo-kōrero, he whakarōpū momo-kōrero, he whakarōpū nuka reo (mō te whakamātautau tēnei).

¹¹ action research

Nā, kei te rārangi whakamahi tētehi rārangi kōrero hei arataki i te tīmatanga kōrero. Kotahi meneti, iti iho rānei tēnei tīmatanga kōrero (tirohia te pukapuka a Tolich rāua ko Davidson, 1999: 120). Arā, he kōrero mō tēnei kaupapa rangahau; te wairua o te kōrerorero (ehara i te uiui); te tokomaha ka kōrero mai kei te whai wāhi mai; ka ahatia ngā kōrero; he take e whai pānga ana te take rangahau ki a au; ka mutu, ka kimi whakaaetanga kia mau-ā-rīpenetia ā rātou kōrero. Katoa ngā kaiuru i whakaae mai. Nō konā i whakamāramatia ai te puka whakamōhio, ahakoa kua tukuna kētia atu ki a rātou.

Nā te rārangi pātai i arataki te kōrero. Ehara i te mea he uiui noa, heoi he whakawhitinga kōrero i ētehi anō wā me te wero mai a ētehi pēhea kē rā ōku nei whakaaro mō te kaupapa. Heoi, neke atu i te haurua haora ki te rua haora ngā whakawhitinga kōrero. I whai au i tā Tolich rāua ko Davidson kōrero mō te whakawhiti kōrero me te kaiuru (1999: 108), inā rā, e toru ngā wehewehenga o te rārangi pātai. Tuatahi ko ngā pātai hei whakatau i te wairua o te kaiuru. He pātai, he kōrero mahi, he kaupapa kei te hāngai pū ki te kaiuru. Ka whakahāngai hoki i te kōrero rangahau ki a rātou i te paunga mai o te rima meneti. Nā, ko tā tēnei wāhanga he whakatau mauri, he whakatūwhera kōrero.

Tuarua, ko ngā kaupapa, ko ngā pātai, ko ngā whakaaro matua o te rangahau (Kei te Āpitianga 7 te roanga atu). Tērā ka whakahāngai hoki i te kaupapa rangahau ki tā te kaiuru mahi. Ehara i te mea ko ngā pātai anake te mea nui, heoi, arā ake anō ētehi whakaaro ka puta i tētehi kaiuru, ka whāia haeretia a tētehi atu kaiuru. Anei ētehi o ngā kupu i tuhia kia āta whakaaro ahau i a au e kōrero ana.

Te Whakaahua 5.12: He Kupu hei Whakamaumahara i te Kōrero Kaiuru

Te Momo-kōrero	reo Māori! momo tuhinga, kōrero, kaupapa, aheinga, āhuatanga reo
Te Whānuitanga	ngā tino, ā-waha, ā-tuhi, mōteatea, kupu ōrite
Te Whakamahere	reo tuhi/reo kōrero, kaupapa, take, tikanga - hei aha?, āhua o te momo kōrero, kaiwhakarongo/kaipānui/ kaikōrero, taera o te kōrero, taumata, whakarōpū
Te Kounga	āhuatanga reo, kupu whakarite, huahuatau, kounga o te reo, eke panuku, tino Māori, wairua Māori, hanganga, tauira pai
He Tōrangapu	noho mōrearea, noho itiiti, mā wai e pupuri/ako/whakaako, whakawhanake, he āwangawanga, kua rerekē

Tuatoru, ko ngā kīanga hei whakakōrero i te kaiuru. Me takoto he rerenga kōrero hei whakamaumahara ake māku. Nā, tērā pea ka whakaarohia he māmā noa iho, kāore he take o ēnei kupu, o ēnei rerenga kōrero. Engari mō tēnā! He mea nui tēnei wāhanga i runga i te mea he reo rua ahau, ā, he nui te āwhina kia haere tonu te whakawhitinga kōrero. Hei tauira:

- Tēnā koa, kōrero mai anō mō te āhua o te...
- Mō tō rangahau/kaupapa, he aha ngā momo-kōrero...
- Mō te x, he aha ētehi āhuatanga e tino pai ai te x?
- Kōrero mai anō mō te...
- He kōrero atu anō mō te ...
- He tauira atu anō...
- He aha tētehi atu tauira mō te...
- Nē! Nērā! Kia ora!
- Atu i ērā...he mea atu anō?
- Ki tō mōhio/titiro/ōu whakaaro...
- I a koe e tupu ana/e kuraina ana/i te whare wānanga/i te kāinga...
- Kei te kī mai koe/e mea ana koe

Nā, i ngā kōrerorero e haere ana ka tata atu ki te mutunga ka kī atu au, āe, e rua tekau meneti kei te toe, tekau meneti kei te toe, āe, anei te pātai whakamutunga. Mō ngā tāngata e pōkea ana e te mahi, he āwhina nui tēnei kia mōhio rātou kāore tēnei kairangahau i te moumou i tō rātou nā wā.

Mutu ana ngā kōrerorero, ka mihia, ka waitohua ētehi anō puka inā kāore anō kia hainatia, ā, ka whakarāpopotohia ngā whakakitenga i tērā wā. Ka pātaia hoki inā he whakaaro atu anō, he kaiuru atu anō rānei hei toro atu māku, he kōrero, he tuhinga atu anō rānei hei kimihanga atu māku. I te nuinga o te wā ka kōrero anō te kaiuru i ētehi anō whakaaro mō te kaupapa. I ētehi wā kātahi te kaiuru ka tino kōrero mai i ōna whakaaro mō te kaupapa, ahakoa kotahi haora e kōrero ana, i te rima meneti hei āpitihanga ka tino whai hua! Nā whai anō i whai ai i tā te kaupapa rangahau kia waiho te ripene kia mau tonu tae noa ake ki te mutunga o taku wehenga atu i te kaiuru. He wā nui tōna ka mahara ngā kaiuru i ētehi kōrero hou, i tētehi kōrero tino whaitake.

Nā, ki te whai wā ka kapu tī ahau me te kaiuru. Nāku te paku kai i heri atu, heoi inā i te kāinga te kōrerorero, nā rātou te kai/hākari i hora, inā ka whakamanuhiritia ahau. I reira ka haere tonu te whakawhanaungatanga, ā, ko ētehi o aku rautaki whakaratarata, ko ēnei. He hononga ā-toto. Tērā pea he whakapapa nōku ki te kaiuru, he whanaunga rānei e mahi ana ki tōna taha. He hononga ā-tangata. He hoa nō mua rā anō pea, he hoa rānei nōna e mōhiotia ana e te kairangahau. He tangata rānei e mōhiotia ana e te kaiuru. He hononga ā-wā. He hui, he hui reo, he tangihanga, he aha atu i haere ai au, ā, i reira tētehi e mōhio ana ki te kaiuru. Heoi anō, tā tēnei wāhanga o te kōrero, he hiki i te kaupapa, me kī, he hoki ki te ao e noho nei te kaiuru.

Mō ngā tāngata e noho tata ana ki Papaioea tērā ka huihui ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi. Heoi anō, mō rātou, mō ngā tāngata ki waho atu, tērā ka tatū te kairangahau ki ō rātou kura, ki ō rātou kāinga, ki ō rātou marae, ki hea rānei kia noho haumarua ai te kaikōrero. Nā reira ka kōrero tahi ki rō waka, ki rō whare kai i te tāone, ki te marae, ki te tari mahi, ki te kāinga, ki te hotēra, ki hea rānei te kaiuru hiahia ai ki te kōrero. Ka huihui ki Taranaki, ki Waimarama, ki Rotorua, ki Te Manawatū, ki Te Whanganui-a-Tara, ki Otautahi rā anō.

Nā, ko te tuhinga o ngā kōrero kaiuru, he mea tuhi e ngā tāngata tokotoru atu anō, e ahau anō hoki. Mō rātou i whakarongo ki aku kōrerotanga, ka homai ō rātou waitohu kia kaua rā e 'harihari kōrero atu' ki tāngata kē (Kei te Āpitianga 9). Waihoki, he mea uaua te kimi i te tangata e matatau ana ki te reo me te patopato kupu.

Ka whakawetongia te mīhini ina ka pōauau te kaiuru, ka tahi. Ka rua, tērā ka whakamā rānei te kaiuru ko te tuhituhi kōrero te take, tērā ka kore e tuhituhi, ka waiho mā muri ake, ina mā te puna mahara kē ā te mutunga mai o te uiuitanga e hopu i tā te kaiuru i kōrero ai (Hohepa i Tolich rāua ko Davidson, 1999).

5.4.5 Te Wetewete i te Kōrero Kaiuru

Ko te tikanga o te wetewete i te kōrero kaiuru, āe, ko te kimi i ngā kōrero e hāngai pū ana hei whakautu i te pātai rangahau. Engari, he whakakao, he whakarōpū hoki i aua kōrero kia whai hoki i te tāhu kōrero o tēnei tuinga whakapae. Nā reira he kaupapa nui tēnei, ko te whakarite huarahi hei āta haehae i ngā whakaaro matua o ngā kupu kaiuru. Waihoki, he tiaki hoki i ā rātou kupu kōrero.

Ko tētehi rautaki wetewete e ai ki a Miles rāua ko Huberman (1984: 61) ko te aro nui ki ētehi āhuatanga. Tekau pea ngā āhuatanga hei āwhina i te ine i te kounga o te kōrero kaiuru i te wā e wetewetehia ana ngā kaupapa. Kia aro nui ki:

1. Te horopaki^{iv}: He kōrero whānui mō te kaupapa
2. Te whakamāramatanga: Ki tā te kaiuru titiro ki te kaupapa
3. Te tirohanga: I ahatia/ka ahatia
4. Te tūmomo aronga: He tirohanga, he whakaaro motuhake
5. Te tukanga: Te raupapatanga o ngā mahi, he wā kē
6. Ngā mahi: He whanonga, ngā mahi o ia rā
7. Ngā huihuinga: he wā ka tino hāngai ki te kaupapa
8. Te rautaki: Ngā tutukinga, ngā huarahi mahi, ngā mahi
9. Ngā pānga: He kōrero mō ngā hononga tāngata
10. Ngā kaupapa mahi: He raruraru, he koa

He tino āwhina te whakaaro tuawhā mō tēnei kaupapa, inā rā ko ngā tirohanga o tēnā, o tēnā ki tēnei kaupapa. I te mea he hou te kaupapa ka haere ngātahi te arotake i ngā kupu hou mō ngā aroro reo me te kimi i ngā kōrero mō aua aroro reo. Engari, i te kairangahau e wetewete ana i te kōrero kaiuru, me whakaaro nui tonu ngā tikanga, ngā mahi, ngā whanaonga e māori ana ki taua kaiuru. Koia rā te take he mea nui aua kohinga whakaaro i te whakaahua 5.8 me ngā matatika. Pērā i te kaupapa ‘whakapapa’. Ehara tērā i te kaupapa i whāia engari nā ngā kaiuru tonu i whakatauirā ā rātou kōrero ki te kaupapa whakapapa, ā, he tikanga nui tērā ki tā te Māori titiro. Kāore hoki i whakaarohia he pānga nui o ngā kīpeha ki te whenua, ki tētehi anō o ngā tikanga o reira. Engari nā ngā kaiuru tonu i kī mai he mea nui te whenua mō te kaupapa Māori, mō ngā kīpeha pērā i te whakataukī, i te pepeha, i te whakatangata. Ka mutu, ko ētehi anō tikanga i reira pērā i te manaakitanga, i te whakanui, i te

whakarangatira i hou mai ki taku hinengaro mō te whakatakoto i ngā kōrero a ngā kaumātua ki te ūpoko kotahi i te Wāhanga 6. He whiringa tērā kia mana ai te kōrero.

Nā, he mea hopu ngā kōrero katoa ki te pūrere hopureo nei. He māmā te whakairi i ngā kōrero ā-waha ki runga rorohiko, ā, ka whakakupu haere ai. Mai i ngā kōpaki o ia kōrero, he mea āta pānui, he mea āta whakarongo kia taea ai te tangotango ake ngā kaupapa matua e hāngai ana ki tēnei rangahau. Ka mutu, ka kuhuna haeretia ngā kōrero kaiuru ki roto i ngā kaupapa tekau e hāngai pū ana ki te kaupapa nei.

Kia tika ai ngā matatika i pātaia ngā kaiuru inā ka hiahia kia pupuritia ngā kōrero kaiuru ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi. Ko rātou i whakaae ka pūmautia ngā kōrero uiui ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi, ko rātou i kī mai kāo, ka whakakorengia aua kōrerotanga.

5.4.6 Te Whakamātautau i te Tātai Momo-Kōrero

Mō tētehi marama ka whakamātauria te mahere momo-kōrero. He mea āta whiriwhiri ngā kaiuru ki runga i te mōhio ko rātou ngā mea e tika ana hei toro atu [*purposeful sampling procedure*] (see Patton, 1990). Arā, nā te rōpū rangahau tonu i whiriwhiri i tētehi hui rangahau. I reira te kairangahau matua, ngā kaitautoko i te rangahau, me ētehi kaimahi o te wāhanga reo Māori o Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. Tekau ngā tāngata i whiriwhirihia o ngā rōpū e 7 kia whai wāhi mai ki te huarahi whakamātautau. Ko ngā rōpū i whakaarohia e pēnei ana i te whānuitanga o te kaupapa: he kaiako nō te Kōhanga Reo, nō te Kura Kaupapa Māori, nō te Wharekura; he kaimahi nō te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori; he pūkenga nō tētehi wānanga reo; he tāngata tā pukapuka nō ngā wharetā e whā o te rohe o Poneke; he pouako nō ngā rōpū whakangungu kaiako.

Ka whātoro atu te kairangahau nei ki tēnā, ki tēnā o ngā tāngata kia kōrero tahi, kanohi ki te kanohi. Nā te rārangi pātai (tirohia te Whakaahua 4.1) i arataki tēnei wāhanga. Heoi, he mea hanga taua rārangi hei whakamātautau i te rārangi momo-kōrero (Āpitihanga 1), i te Tātai Momo-Kōrero (te Whakaahua 3.22) me ngā kīpeha (te Whakaahua 8.6) ki te taha o ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero. Ko ngā mahere momo-kōrero e rua nei i whakamātauria: Tātai Momo Kōrero: E Toru ngā Tū Momo-Kōrero (te Whakaahua 4.3) me te Tātai Momo-Kōrero. Ka whirihia kia rima ngā wāhanga hei

tirohanga: ko te whai hua, ko te whakamahi, ko te whai rauemi, ko te māramatanga, ka mutu, ko te hononga ki te marautanga. I kawea pērātia atu ngā pātai ki ia kaiwhakahoki kōrero. I tuaruatia hoki ngā pātai mō te taha kīpeha mēnā i whai wā. Kāore te kairangahau i te pīrangi ki te whakapōrearea i ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero i runga i te mea he momo tāngata ēnei, 'he iti te wā, he nui ngā tono'. Nā aua kōrero i hurihuri ai ngā kōrero mō te tātai momo-kōrero me ngā kīpeha hei rau atu ki roto i tēnei rangahau. Kei te Wāhanga i mua mai rā aua kōrero arotake.

5.4.7 Tā te Tuakana Arotake

Ka riro nā ētehi tuākana i tirotiro te kiko o ētehi wāhanga o tēnei rangahau. Nā reira i tipu ai te PONO¹² o te kaupapa. Arā, nā tēnā titiro, nā tēnā titiro o ngā tuākana i pai ake ai te tika me te pono o te rangahau nei. Ko ngā tuākana nei, ko ngā hoamahi o roto i Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi; ko ngā tāngata o Te Ohu Whakamaru i te Momo-Kōrero, ko te rōpū tautoko i tēnei rangahau; ko ētehi anō pūkenga o te whare wānanga; ko ētehi anō tāngata o waho atu i te whare wānanga, he tāngata matatau ki te reo me ōna tikanga; he tāngata o taku hapori reo Māori (kei te Āpitihanga 11 ētehi o ā rātou whakahokinga kōrero mai); he tāngata hoki o ngā hui me ngā wānanga i tae atu ai te kairangahau. Ka huihui hoki me ētehi atu ākonga tākutatanga ki te tari o Mason Durie. Ko Mason tō mātou hepara. Ka kauwhau mātou, ka kōrerorero, ka uia haeretia ngā kaupapa. He āwhina nui te whakakōrero i te kaupapa. Ā, nā taku hapori reo hoki i tirotiro te takoto o te reo. Ka mutu, nā ā rātou pātai ka tau mai tētehi anō māramatanga mō tēnei rangahau. Heoi e kitea mai ana he ōpaki ētehi o ēnei huarahi rangahau.

Otirā, ko te arotakenga ōkawa ka riro nā tētehi o waho o taku hapori tata i tirotiro te kounga o te pūrongo. Koia te whakatau a te rōpū arataki me te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. Ka whiriwhirihia e rātou ko Tākuta Peter Keegan o te Faculty of Education ki te University of Auckland hei arotake i te pūrongo whakamutunga i tukuna ai ki Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. I runga i tōna mōhiotanga ki tēnei mea te *literacy*. Hei whakarāpopoto i tāna kōrero, “Ka miharo au ki āu nā mahi, kāore e kore he nui ngā werawera i puta mai kia oti pai tēnei mahi nunui”(P. Keegan, whakawhitinga whaiaro, te tuawaru o Mei, 2006).

¹² validity

5.4.8 Te Kawenga atu o ngā Whakakitenga

Ki te uia ake mā wai rā tēnei rangahau, ko te whakautu poto mā te tangata kōrero Māori. Heoi anō, kia whaihua ai mā ngā tāngata kōrero Māori i kawea atu te rongo o ngā aroro reo o te rangahau nei ki ngā whakaminenga e whā: ki te hāpori reo Māori; ki ngā kura Māori (Kōhanga Reo, Kura Kaupapa Māori, Wharekura); ki ngā whare wānanga; ki ngā tari kāwanatanga (Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, Te Puni Kōkiri).

Ko te hīkoi whakamua tuatahi pea o tēnei rangahau, ko te whakamaui i ngā whakaaro nei ki roto i te kohinga pukapuka *Te Kōrari* (Joseph, 2004). Tekau mā ono ngā pukapuka e aro nui ana ki te whānuitanga o te mātātuhī: ko te karanga me te whaikōrero; ko te poroporoaki; ko te haka; ko te pakiwaitara; ko te tuhinga auaha. Ko te tirohanga pea te mea nui i whakaaturia i taua kohinga, inā ko ngā ariā reo nei kei te rārangi kupu: ko te huahuata, ko te kupu whakarite, ko te huarite, ko te tārua, ko te tārua orokati, ko te whakatangata, ko te aha atu anō. Heoi mai i tērā wā kua rerekē te whakaingoa i ētehi o ngā kupu i runga i ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru; ko te ‘ariā pohewa’ koia ko te kīpeha; ko te ‘noho ōrite’ ko te kupu tārara. Kāti, he tīmatanga taua kohinga pukapuka, ka haere tonu te rangahau i ngā kupu mātātuhī i tēnei tuhinga kairangi.

Nā, mō te kawē haere i te kaupapa nei, kanohi ki te kanohi, ka hui atu au ki te taha o ētehi tino kairangahau reo Māori ki te kauhau i tāku i hiahia ai ki te rapu me ētehi kitenga iti āku i tērā wā (Joseph, 2003a). I raro i te karangatanga o Te Puni Kōkiri tērā i te 6 o ngā rā i te marama o Mei. Ka taka te wā, ka whakamōhiotia atu tāku i kite ai i tētehi hui mā ngā tari whare wānanga puta noa o Aotearoa i te marae ki Waipapa (11/05/2005). Ka hui hoki ki te taha o ētehi rōpū whakangungu kaiako ki Papaioea (29/08/2005), ki Ōtautahi ki Te Waipounamu (20/5/2005). I tū te hui ki te ki Ōtautahi e rua wā i roto i ngā tau e rua. He kaiako reo Māori nō te Kōhanga Reo, nō te Kura Kaupapa Māori, nō te Wharekura i reira. He mea āta whakatakoto ngā whakakitenga i roto i te horopaki tuhinga auaha. I kauhau hoki mō tētehi anō rā ki ētehi ākonga o Te Ataarangi (Joseph, 2004d) o Awanuiarangi ki te marae o Parikino i te awa o Wanganui. He mea mau i runga DVD tērā mā rātou. Ka mutu, ka kauhau atu ki ngā

hoamahi ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi (2/08/2006) mō tētehi kauhau rangahau. I pērā ai kia kore e wareware te whakahoki i ngā kōrero ki ngā hoamahi nāna nei i āwhina te kaupapa.

Ko ētehi anō rautaki i whāia ko te tuku i ngā whakakitenga mā roto i ngā tānga reo Māori. Tuatahi, nā ngā tuhinga auaha i kawē atu ētehi whakakitenga. Ahakoa te whakapae a ētehi ehara tērā huarahi i te mea tika, e ai ki tā Gergen rāua ko Gergen koia tētehi huarahi pono hei kawē i te rongo rangahau (tirohia Denzin rāua ko Lincoln, 2000:1029). He mea nui pea tēnei i runga i te mea ki te tāia noatia ngā whakakitenga ki rō hautaka whare wānanga, ki rō pūrongo tari kāwanatanga kei kore e tae atu ngā hua nui ki te tokonui tāngata. Inā rā ka aukatia te pānuitanga mai mā te iwi. Nāwhai anō, ko te whakakākahu i te kōrero rangahau ki te kōrero paki, kātahi ka tae atu te rongo ki tua i ngā pakitara whare wānanga. Nā, i te wā ka rangahaua ngā kōrero nei ka tonoa te kairangahau matua kia tuhituhi i ētehi pukapuka mā ngā tamariki. Koia ko *RT3: Ki Tua o Rangiatea*, (Joseph, 2004b) *RT3: Ki Tua o KTPae*, (Joseph, 2005a); *RT3: Ki Tua o Tāwauwau* (Joseph, 2006). Kei ngā pukapuka wāhanga¹³ me te tuhinga poto (Joseph, 2003c) te mahi o ngā momo-kōrero me te huhua o ngā kīpeha. Ka mutu, tērā e kitea te whakamahia o ēnei kīpeha: te kupu raweke, te waihangā whakataukī, te tohutoro, kāti, te nuinga o ngā kīpeha i rangahaua kei aua tuhinga. I te pukapuka pikitia ko *Tinirau rāua ko Kae* (Joseph, 2007) ko te kīpeha rangatira mō te katoa o taua pukapuka, ko te huarite. Ko te mita i whai atu i tā Hepora Young whakamātau hei ngeri (tirohia *Te Mātāwai Tuatoru*, 1992:30). I roto i te kōmeke *Kaitoa* (Joseph, 2007a), ko te kīwaha te kaupapa nui. Ka mutu, ka whakapākehātia kia kī rawa i ngā kīwaha o Aotearoa mā ngā toa pukapuka. Ahakoa kāore i āta whakamāramatia te waihangatanga o ēnei tuhinga āku, ko te tūāpapa o ngā tuhinga ko ngā whakakitenga rangahau mō te momo-kōrero, mō te nuka reo, mō te kīpeha, mō ngā MĀTAPONO MĀTĀTUHI¹⁴ hoki. Ā, ko tētehi tohu i te takahia pea te ara tika, ka riro mai te honore, Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori Award i Huia Short Stories Awards mō te tuhinga poto e kīia nei ko Tama Tāhae, Tama Ora (Joseph, 2003c). Ahakoa he TUHINGA WHAKAMĀTAUTAU¹⁵ noa iho tāku i tuku atu ai.

¹³ chapter book

¹⁴ principals of literature

¹⁵ experimental writing

Tuarua, ka whakairia ngā whakaaro rangahau ki roto i ngā tānga e kiia nei he TUHINGA PONO¹⁶. Ka kuhuna te Wāhanga Tuarua o tēnei tuhinga kairangi hei atikara ki roto i te hautaka, inā *He Pūkenga Kōrero* (Joseph, 2003b); nā ngā kanohi miromiro o whare wānanga kē i tiroiro. Ka riro hoki nā ngā atikara nei ki *He Muka* (Joseph, 2004), ki *Kōkiri Paetae* (Joseph, 2005c:12), ā, ka kawea atu hoki ētehi pitopito whakaaro ki te niureta nei *Kōrerorero* (Joseph, 2004e) ki te hapori reo Māori o Papaioea, ki te ipurangi hoki (Tiwaha.org.nz). Koia i runga i tā te whakahau nui a Fine mā, arā kia tuhia, kia tāia ki ngā momo tuhinga maha kia tae atu ai te rongō ki te hapori, ‘mā te tuhinga māmā nei te reo, inā mā te pānui whakamārama, mā te puka iti, mā te puka hapori^v’ (Fine, Weis, Weseen, & Wong, 2000: 128).

Kei te Whakaahua 5.15 e whai mai ana te whakarāpopotonga o ngā huarahi i kawea atu te rongō o ngā kitenga rangahau. Otirā, māku e kī he huarahi rangahau atu anō te whakaputa pukapuka e mau ana ngā whakakitenga rangahau e kitea mai ai e ētehi o waho ngā hua o roto i te rangahau nei.

¹⁶ non fiction

Te Whakaahua 5.13: He Rautaki hei Kawe atu i ngā Whakakitenga

Te Whakaminenga	I Whea	Te Mahi	I Tohaina
<i>kaiako reo Māori</i>	Hoaka Pounamu, Hokowhitu	whakangungu kaiako, kauwhau	kōrero, puka
<i>kaiako reo Māori</i>	‘Hui Reo’ Waimarama, Rotorua	matapaki	puka
<i>kaipānui reo Māori</i>	Aotearoa	tuhinga poto <i>Tinirau rāua ko Kae</i>	Huia Short Stories KŌMEKE ¹⁷
<i>kaiako, ākonga</i>	Kura Kaupapa Māori	Te KOHINGA ¹⁸ ‘RT3’	PAKIPŪTAIAO TAKITORU ¹⁹
<i>tari Māori o te whare wānanga o te motu</i>	Waipapa Marae	kauwhau	puka
<i>kaimahi Māori</i>	Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, ‘Te Taura Whiri’ Te Puni Kōkiri	rangahau matapaki kauhau	pūrongo puka pepa
<i>kaimahi rauemi</i>	Papaioeia, Ponēke	tono pūrongo	pūrongo
<i>kairangahau reo Māori</i>	<i>He Pūkenga Kōrero</i>	atikara	hautaka
<i>Ākonga reo Māori</i>	Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi	pukapuka ākonga	taumahi rangahau
<i>Hapori reo Māori</i>	<i>He Muka, Kōkiri Paetae</i>	atikara	māheni

¹⁷ comic

¹⁸ series

¹⁹ science fiction trilogy

5.5. Te Kimihanga i ngā Kupu Ahureo

Anei te whakapapa me te kōrero mō tētehi kupu kotahi o tēnei rangahau hei tauratanga i pēwhea te kimi kupu. I a au te whakaaro o te rōpū kupu ka hiahiatia kia rangahaua. Inā ko te rōpū e whakahui ana i te whakataukī, i te kupu whakarite, i te kīwaha. Engari ko te aha te ingoa o tēnei huinga kupu? Ka kīia he ‘kounga’ i tā te Marautanga Reo Māori, i te mea, koia ko te ‘kounga o te tuhi’. Kāore i tino rata atu ki te kupu i te mea he nui ngā ‘kounga’ kei te whakawhiti atu ki te reo kōrero, ki te reo whakaata hoki. Ahakoa rā, ka kawea atu ko te ‘kounga o te reo’. Nā, ka mea mai tētehi kaiuru, he ‘kupu whakanikoniko’ i runga i te āheinga reo pea o taua huinga. Ā, ka kīia he ‘kupu whakanikoniko’ i te mahere momo-kōrero mō tētehi tau.

Ka taka te wā, ka kī mai tētehi atu pūkenga i whare wānanga kē he ‘nuka reo’, heoi he whānui rawa pea taua kupu, he whānau noa te huinga kupu nei. Nā, ka tae atu au ki Pōneke ki tētehi tūwheratanga whakaaturanga ka rokohanga noa atu ki tētehi mātanga reo, ka pātaia ōpakitia atu mō tēnei mea te *figurative language*. Ko tāna ko te ‘reo peha’, aha! Me tango kē au i te ‘reo whakaahua’! Ka mutu, ko te ‘reo more’ te reo hāngai tonu, taukiri e! Ka whai haere tērā aroro reo i tā te pepeha tikanga tonu, ka pai. Nā reira, ka kapohia taua whakaaro, engari kīhai i tino aro ki te whakarōpūtanga. Koia pea te momo reo inā whakamahia ai taua rōpū, arā he reo peha tonu ka puta. Heoi, i tata atu ki te ingoa o taua huinga kupu.

E ono marama pea o muri mai ka tau atu ki Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori. Nā tētehi kaimahi o reira i homai tētehi kupu kē atu, ko te kupu ‘kīpeha’, hareruia! Mārama kau ana, he kīanga peha tonu. Kua tatū, ko te kīpeha te ingoa o taua huinga kupu e whakatairite ana i kaupapa kē. Heoi, he whā tau pea e rapuhia ana taua kupu kotahi. He tika rā tā Phillips rāua ko Pugh (2003: 88), i te tīmatanga o te rangahau tākutatanga he nui rawa atu te kore mōhio, i te mutunga ka iti iho te kore mōhio. Ko te kimi kupu mō tēnei kaupapa whare wānanga tētehi āwangawanga e kore pea e kitea

inā ka mahi au i tēnei rangahau mā taku reo i pakeke ake ai. Hei aha koa, me reo Māori te rangahau mō te reo Māori. Hei whakaatu i te whanaketanga o te whakakupu i taua aroro reo:

Te Whakaahua 5.14: Te Whanaketanga o Tētehi Kupu Ahureo

He pātai: He aha te kupu mō tēnei huinga kupu: whakataukī, kupu whakarite, kīwaha?

Wā Rangahau	ARORO REO ²⁰
2002	He kupu mō <i>figurative expression, figure of speech?</i>
	‘kounga o te tuhi’
	‘kounga o te reo’
	‘kupu whakanikoniko’
	‘nuka reo’
2006	kīpeha

Ka kitea i tērā tauiratanga ētehi whakaaro rangahau mō te hanga kupu o tēnei tuhinga. I tino puare te hinengaro o te kairangahau ki ngā kōrero a tēnā me tēnā. Ki te kore e mataara kua mahue atu tētehi kupu pai. Waihoki, he mea nui te AROTORUTANGA²¹, anā ko te titiro ki ētehi taunakitanga e toru neke atu, kātahi ka kitea te hua ki waenganui. Arā, tokorua ngā tāngata i kī mai he momo ‘peha’, me te arotake atu mā te pūkenga o whare wānanga kē. Hei tauira, ko te tautoko me te whakatoi o tēnei pouako o te Whare Wānanga o Waikato, “Ka rawe ki a au te kupu "kīpeha" mō te "figures of speech". Ka hinga au i a koe... E tika ana kua tākuta kē koe mō te hanga i tēnei kupu.” (W. Houia, whakawhitinga whaiaro, te tuawhitu o Hongongoi, 2006). Me taku whakahoki he mea kimi kē nāku, heoi kua mana pea i reira. Ka mutu, i huihui au, i torotoro atu mā te ipurangi me ētehi anō tāngata matatau ki te reo ki te matapaki i

²⁰ language concept

²¹ triangulation

ngā kupu. Nā rātou anō i kī āe, kāo rānei. Mei kore ake rātou kua taka noa iho mai ngā kupu i te rangi.

Heoi, ehara kau i te mea ko te katoa o ngā kupu ahureo i pēnei te rapu. Ko ētehi he mea whakamāori e au i runga i taku mōhiotanga ki te aronga o te kupu, me taku hiahia kia mutu rā anō taku rangahau. Ko te nuinga o ngā kupu ahureo kei tētehi rārangi kupu kei te mutunga o tēnei tuhinga hei wetewetenga.

5.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Ko tā tēnei Wāhanga he whakaatu atu i te huarahi i takahia kia hangā mai ai tēnei peka o te mātauranga reo nei. E manako ana ko te pūtaketanga o te rangahau, ko te kaupapa Māori me ōna kawenga, me ōna ritenga. He ara tāpokopoko te huarahi rangahau. He hiki i te wairua o te kairangahau; he tāmi i te wairua o te kairangahau. Mai i taua RERENGA KĒTANGA²² ka kīia me ngākau iti, me ngākau nui ahakoa ngā piki, ngā heke ki te rapu kōrero e mārama ai tētehi kaupapa.

He mea tupu mai te kaupapa Māori i roto i ēnei rua ngahuru tau kua hori ake nei. He mea whanake ake kia tika ai te huarahi rangahau ka tahi, ka rua kia whai hua te rangahau ki te iwi Māori. Kua whakatakotoria ētehi take hei wānanga e pā ana ki te whakatutukinga o te rangahau nei. Kua ngana nei ki te whakamārama atu i tā te kairangahau whai i ngā mahi rangahau i roto i te tika, i te pono, i te māramatanga, me te aroha anō o tētehi ki tētehi. Kāore pea he tua atu o ērā tikanga kia toka te manawa ora o te kairangahau, kia manawa nui mai ngā kaiuru, kia hāpai hoki i te kaupapa mā te iwi māna te rangahau. Ka mutu, i tēnei Wāhanga ka kitea ko te WHAKAHONONGA RANGAHAU²³ o te ao Māori me te ao hauāuru, arā ko te rangahau ki tā ngā mātāpono Māori me te rangahau ki tā ngā mātāpono pūtaiao o te ao hauāuru. Ki konei hono ai aua huarahi rangahau e rua.

²² paradox

²³ research at the nexus

Ahakoā rā ngā taumahatanga kia tutuki pai ai tēnei rangahau, ko te mea nui pea o te rangahau nei ko te rapu mātauranga, ko te kimi māramatanga mō ētehi āhuatanga reo e hiahiatia ana e te hāpori Māori. Ko te Tātai Momo-Kōrero hei kōtui i te tini momo-kōrero, ka tahi. Ka rua, ko te kohinga kīpeha hei tātari i te mātātuhi. Ehara rawa i te mea he kōrero rangahau e hiahiatia ana e te katoa o te hāpori reo Māori, heoi, he kōrero mā rātou e hiahiatia ana ki te ako i te reo Māori mō roto tonu i te reo Māori. Ka mutu, he ara e tītokona atu ai te reo ki taumata kē. Kāti, ko ngā kōrero kaiuru, ko ngā tātāritanga kōrero, ko ngā whakakitenga matua kei ngā Wāhanga e whai tata mai ana.

Ngā Whakataukītanga i te Reo Ingarihi

ⁱ He was quick, intelligent, bold, resourceful, cunning, and fearless.

ⁱⁱ Language planning, status planning, corpus planning

ⁱⁱⁱ discipline, knowledge, training, practice, creativity, and hard work.

^{iv} Context, define situation, perspective, ways of thinking, process, activities, events, strategies, relationships, methods

^v in the more accessible languages of pamphlets, fliers, and community booklets

TE WĀHANGA TUAONO

He Kōrero Mātāputu, He Kōrero Kounga

Ki te kore te reo kua kore tātau.

Hepora Young¹

Kia mau ki te reo Māori kei ngaro noa tō tuhi māreikura.

Pātariki Te Rei²

6.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

6.2 Tā Kui Ani: ‘Kua riro koe i te paki o Hewa?’

6.3 Tā Koro Ānaru: ‘E Māori ana te wairua o tō kōrero?’

6.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

6.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Ko tā tēnei Wāhanga he tūhura i ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ētehi kaiuru. I te wetenga i ngā whakahokinga kōrero tērā ka tere te kitea he whānui rawa ngā kaupapa i kōrerohia e te tokorua nei. Ā, kei te hāngai pū te katoa ki te kaupapa rangahau. Me te mea hoki, ko ngā kōrero kaiuru nei, koia hei tūāpapa whakaaro mō ngā āhuatanga e kounga ai te momo-kōrero. Neke atu i te toru tekau tāngata i kōrero mai i ō rātou rā whakaaro. Otirā, kei te Wāhanga e whai mai ana ērā e whakarāpopotohia ana. Heoi, he hōhonu kē atu ētehi o ngā whakahokinga kōrero i ētehi anō, ā, kāore pea e tika ana kia noho wehewehe, kia noho marara ētehi o ngā kōrero kaiuru ki tēnei tuhinga kairangi. Nā reira ka noho ko ngā whakahokinga e rua i tēnei Wāhanga hei tūwhera i ngā whakahokinga kōrero matua. He kōrero kuia, he kōrero koroua. Koia hei tāhu kōrero e hekeheke ai ngā āhuatanga e kounga ai tētehi kōrero. Ka hāngai pū ā rāua kōrero ki te kaupapa whānui o tēnei rangahau, ki te mātātuihi, ki te mātākōrero, ka mutu, ka whakamārama rāua me pēhea e whakarākei i tētehi kōrero ki tā rāua titiro.

¹ Meha, R. (1996:130)

² Williams, H. (1995:2)

Nā reira i whakarāpopotohia ngā kōrerotanga e rua nei kia āhua whai i ā ngā kaiuru whakatakoto kōrero. He paku whakamārama i te tīmatanga o ia kaiuru, te roa o te kōrero, te mahi a te kaiuru, te wāhi i matapakina ai tēnei kaupapa. He mea tini ngā ingoa. Kāore i kōrerotia te iwi, kei tere mōhiotia ko wai e kōrero ana i aua kōrero. Kia ahatia, mā ō rāua reo ā-iwi tonu pea tērā e tohu.

He hōhonu ō rāua whakaaro, he whānui ā rāua titiro. I pēnei ai pea i te mea he tāngata matataua rāua ki te wetewete i ngā āhuatanga reo. Arā ake, he manukura kua roa nei e wānanga ana i ngā REHUREHUTANGA³ o te reo. He oti anō rā, he rerekē te kuia i tā te koroua. Ka kōrerohia te tuhinga paki e tētehi, ka kōrerohia te whaikōrero e tētehi atu. Ahakoa rā te momo-kōrero tērā e kitea he hononga tonu kei waenganui.

Waihoki, i te mutunga o ēnei kōrero ka kōtuia ngā whakaaro ki tētehi ripanga e whakaatu ana i ētehi ARIĀ REO⁴ e ātaahua ai te momo-kōrero Māori (kei te Wāhanga 10). Tērā ka kitea ehara i te mea māmā ki te whakatakoto ripanga e tika ana me whai i ngā wā katoa kia kounga ai tētehi momo-kōrero. He wā kē, he wāhi kē, he kōrero kē, he tangata kē, ā, he tirohanga kē tā tēnā, tā tēnā ki tēnei mea te whakarākei kōrero. Ahakoa rā, nei rā ētehi aroro hei whakaroaro inā ko te kounga o te mātātuhi, o te mātākōrero kei te wawatahia.

6.2 Tā Kui Ani: ‘Kua riro koe i te paki o Hewa?’

I kōrerorero māua ko tēnei kuia ki roto i tōna tari mahi. Kotahi haora te roa. He kikī rā te rūma i te pukapuka, i te rauemi ko ētehi nāna anō i tuhi. Kua roa ia e tuhi kōrero ana mā te hunga nohinohi. Heoi, he pouako, he kaituhi, āe, he tangata i whāngotea ki te reo Māori. Ka mutu, i reo Māori ki te mahi, i reo Māori ki te kāinga. I tōna kāinga neke atu i te toru whakatipuranga kei raro i tōna tuanui e kōrero Māori ana. Ka mutu, hui ana taua whānau whānui, ahakoa huritau, ahakoa kirihimete, ko te reo Māori te reo whakawhitiwhiti.

³ nuances

⁴ language notions

I te mea he nui ngā tūnga o tēnei kuia, ka mea mai ia kia huri te kōrero ki tāna mahi i tēnei wā, ki te tuhi pukapuka. Mō te tukanga tuhituhi, ka mea mai te kuia ka tīmatahia āna tuhinga ki tētehi kōrerorero i te tuatahi i te nuinga o te wā, kātahi ka huri ai ki te wherawhera i ngā āhuatanga o te tangata me te kaupapa o te tuhinga. I tēnei kuia e tuhi ana ka hīa ake ngā kupu mai i tōna puku, mai i tōna manawa inā hoki ko tāna:

I a au e tuhi ana ka puta tēnā mea, te whakaaro ki roto i a au. Ko tētahi āhuatanga o aku tuhi...ko te tuhi i roto i te reo, ā, kīwaha. Hāunga tērā, i roto i taua reo kīwaha rā, ko taku hiahia i ngā wā katoa kia uru te whakaahua i roto i aua tuhi rā.

Koia pea ko te whakamahia o te reo peha, arā, ko ngā kupu whakarite hei hanga whakaahua mā te kaupānui. Mā reira e mau pai ai te aronga o te hunga pānui.

Nā, i ngā tau nei kua hoki ōna whakaaro ki te wā i pakeke ake ai ia. Ka maumahara ake ia ki ngā rerekētanga o te reo o ōna mātua. Ka mutu, ko te rerekētanga o ngā āhuatanga reo o tēnā tangata o tēnā tangata. Koia pea ko te RĒHITA.

Me taku whakahoki mai i ngā kōrero i rangona ai e au i a au e tamariki ana. Ko aua kōrero, e mōhio ana tāua he maha aua momo-kōrero. Ko te kōrero a te pāpā, otirā, a te kaupāmu. He kōrero haruru...ko te reo tohutohu i ngā wā katoa... Ahakoa tērā, kei roto i ana kupu ko taku pāpā tērā, te ngako o te reo... Te reo o taku māmā, he reo rotarota... he reo whakatakiri... Ko taku māmā pea o aku mātua, nōna te reo whakaahua. Kātahi anō nei ka hoki mai taua reo rā mai roto i a au. Ā, kātahi ka tāpiri haere i a au e pakeke haere ana ko te reo o te hapori, te reo o aku, o ngā kuia, o ngā koroua, ko te reo o te rangatahi, ko te reo o te hunga pēnei i ngā kaiwhaikōrero.

He wairua manahau i waenganui i a māua ko te kuia nei. He kaituhi tahi pea māua te take. Ka mea mai ia he hiahia nōna 'kia tū ahau ki te kōrero i runga i te marae'. Kātahi ka pakaru mai te katakata. Heoi anō i te huringa o te kōrero ka whakaaro ake māua ko āna tuhinga kē hei marae ātea, hei whare kōrero mōna. Heoi, ko ngā kupu e rangona ana e ia mai i ngā whaikōrero, mai i tana tamarikitanga koia hei hanga whakaahua māna i āna tuhinga. Otirā, kāore ia i whakaingoa i aua āhuatanga reo o te reo peha i te wā ka pakeke ake. Nō tata nei huri kē ai te aronga ki tāna i tuhi ai, inā:

Nā te mea, kua tīmata au te tiki atu i aua kupu hei whakaahua ake i tōku nā wairua. Kua kite hoki au i roto i taua reo whakaahua e hiahia nei au mai ētahi

o wō tuhinga, ee, i a au taua reo, engari kare kau he ingoa o taua reo i taua wā, engari... kua kite ahau i roto, ee, i taku whakaputa, ko te reo, ko te reo whakarite, ko te reo huahuatau kua kaha rawa atu’.

I a ia e tuhi ana ka wawata ake mēnā ka mau te pikitia e tuhi nei ia ki te hinengaro o te kaupānui kua tutuki i a ia te mahi tuhituhi. He kaha hoki te hiahia nō ērā o waho kia kai mai i āna kupu:

Kia kitea ai te kaupānui te pikitia e kitea ana e ahau. Aaa, nō reira, kua kaha taku whai i tērā tuhinga i nāianeī. Tērā momo tuhinga whakatakoto i nāianeī... mā te pouako kia pai ai tana tiki atu i ētahi wāhanga o te tuhinga hei tauira māna i mua o te ākonga. Ā, mā te pakeke e hiahia ana ki te pānui i roto i te reo, pēnei i te pakeke he reo tuarua nōna te reo. Nā te mea, ko taua momo pakeke, kua pānui ia i ngā pukapuka i roto i te reo Pākēhā, kua kite ia i taua momo reo. Kua waia ki taua reo. Nō reira, ka hiahia ki taua... e whakaponona ahau ki te nui tēra momo tuhinga, kua kite... kua hiahia hoki te ākonga, te pakeke ahakoa a wai ki taua reo.

He āhuatanga nui ki tā te kuia nei te whakatakotoranga o te reo. ‘Ko te hāngai o te whakatakoto’. Arā, i a ia e tuhi ana he mea nui kia kite te kaupānui i ngā mea e kite nei ia. Nā reira ka mahia he momo reo e whakairo ai i te pikitia ki te hinengaro o te kaupānui. Ki a ia koia ko tōna taha pouako tērā kei te here i a ia. Heoi, hoki atu hoki atu ia ki te whakatikatika i tāna kōrero ka mea mai ia:

Kua tapahi ahau i a au anō nā taku ngākau rua. Kāre au e tino whakaponona kei te kite, ka kite te kaupānui... Kei reira ahau i nāianeī, kua tīmata au te whakaputa ake i te ia o Ani i pakeke mai ai ia i roto i te reo, i ngā momo reo katoa, te reo kāuta, te reo kīwaha, te reo rotarota, te reo whaikōrero, ngā momo reo.’

Tērā e kitea ana i ēnei kupu āna ētehi whakaaro nui mō te kounga o te momo-kōrero: Ko te rēhita o te reo, ōpaki, ōkawa; ko te TAERA⁵ o te reo, reo kōrero, reo waiata; ka mutu, kia aro hoki ki tāna whakamahi i te reo, he REO PEHA⁶ tonu. Inā ko te whakamahi i tōna ingoa mō ‘tōku’, arā, ‘i te ia o Ani i pakeke mai ai’, ki te hurihia

⁵ style

⁶ figurative language

taua rerenga ki te REO MORE⁷, ‘i te ia o tōku pakeke mai ai’. He āhuatanga reo pea tēnei te whakaputa i tō ake ingoa i a koe e kōrero ana mōu anō.

Nā, ko tā Ani whakamārama pēnei i te āhua o te kupu whakarite:

...e tohu ana, e whakarite ana pea i te tangata ki tētahi, ki te mahi a te tangata i mahia ai e ia i a ia i te mata, i a ia e haere ana i te mata o te whenua. Nō reira, kua whakaritea... kua tīkina atu he huinga kupu hai whakaatu i tōna āhua hai whakanui...Te kupu whakarite, kei roto i te kupu te tohu e whakarite ana i tētahi ki tētahi.

Heoi, kāore i hohoro mai ngā kupu whakamārama mō taua huinga kupu. Ka tere tana whakamārama mai nō ngā tau tata kē nei ia ka aronui ki te AHUREO⁸:

Ka tīmata nei i te tiroiro i wētahi o ō mahi me ngā kupu ka putaputa mai mai te Taura Whiri me te wānanga, me ngā wānanga. E tino pono ana, ko taku kī me mōhio hoki ngā tamariki. I a au e pakeke ake ana e rongorongo ana au taua reo, engari kāre au e mōhio i tōna tātai ki hea, ki hea taua reo, ki raro i tēhea pou aha rānei whakarite. Engari, i nāianei, e tino kī ana ahau, me mōhio ngā tamariki kia eke ki te wā e tika ana he mōhio rātau ki... he aha te kupu whakarite, e pēhea tōna whakapapa, tōna takotoranga me pēhea he aha? Me pēhea te whakamahi, hai aha, kia aha? Hai aha e pā ki te kaituhi, ki te kaiwhakarongo rānei, ki te kaikōrero rānei, ki te kaipānui rānei.

Ki a ia me uru tēnei momo reo ki ngā titonga mā te hunga pānui, ‘Koia... hai whakaoho i a ia, hai whakatau i a ia, hai whakanui ake i te tuhinga hai... whakatū i te wanawana...’ He tino Māori tēnei titiro ōna, arā, ko te uru mai o aua whakaaro mō te ihi, mō te wehi, mō te wana, inā ake ko te whakamahi i te reo kia pā atu te ‘wanawana’ ki te hunga pānui. Heoi, he rangahau kē atu anō tērā, arā, mā te tuhituhi ka tū te wanawana?

Nā, ko tētehi kōrero tuku iho o tōna whānau i matapakina e te kuia, ko ngā kōrero mō Hewa. Ki a ia, he āhua rite a Hewa ki a Rēhia, ‘he tangata, he ariā pea’. Ka hoki ōna mahara ki ētehi kupu a tōna whaea:

⁷ literal language

⁸ metalanguage

I ētahi wā ka kōrero mai ki a au i a au e tamariki ana, whitu tau pea taku pakeke. Kei te kōrero mai ki a au, kei te kite mai kāre wāku taringa kei te whakarongo, kāre hoki wāku mahara i te aro atu, kāre i te whakarongo, nō reira kāre i te aro atu. Kua whiu taku māmā i te kōrero, “Aaaa, kua kawea koe e te paki o Hewa, Ani”.

Tērā anō te wā ka hoki atu ōna mahara hei whakawhānui ake i tēnei mea te pohewa. E hāngai ana tēnei ariā mō Hewa i te mea he whakaaro tino Māori mō te tuku i ō whakaaro kia rere, inā kia auaha:

Kua haere mātau ko waku, taku māmā me aku whāea ki te awa, ki te horoi kākahu, horoi i wā mātau kaka me ngā kaka a taku whāea, a taku kōkā... herehere a Mere, mātau ko ngā tamariki. Kei te, kei raro atu mātau e kaukau ana kua tiwaha ngā whāea, “Haramai ki te kai.” Ka heri kai mātau. Kei te taha, kai rahakī ahau e noho ana, e, i... kua kitea e au te rākau nei, te pororākau nei e pōteretere ana, heke ana. E rua, e toru pea ngā tiwaha mai a taku, karanga, taku māmā, kua rongo ake au... mea, “Nā, kua kawea te tamaiti rā e te paki o Hewa.” Kua tautoko ngā whāea, kua kī, “Aa, ko ia tēnā.” Tērā, tērā āhua.

Nā, ka āhua tekau tau te pakeke o te kuia nei ka pātai atu ia ki tana whaea, ‘He aha te paki o Hewa?’ Ka taki mai te kuia i te kōrero a tōna māmā ki a ia, kia mōhiotia, neke atu i te rima tekau tau te tawhito o tēnei maharatanga ōna:

“He wāhi anō tērā, te paki. He wā, he wāhanga i roto i te ao nei. Ko te paki o Matariki, ko te paki o Rehua, te paki o Hewa.” A, mārāma au he wāhanga te paki, he momo wāhi, engari, ko Hewa, kāre au e mōhio ki te Hewa nei. I mea atu ahau, “Ko wai a Hewa?” Ka mea mai, “Ko Hewa te kaiheri i te mahara ki ōna ikeike, ki ōna tawhiti roa, ki ōna hōhonutanga, ki ōna wāhi katoa, nō reira, i a koe e titiro ana ki te rākau rā, he aha wō whakaaro i a koe e titiro ana?” Kātahi ka mea atu au, “Ooo, i kite ahau i tētahi punua tangata e noho ana i runga i te rākau.” Ka mea, “Nō hea tō tangata?” Mea atu, “Eaaa” Kātahi au ka whakaahua atu taku kitenga. Ka mea mai ana, “Ana, koinā a Hewa.” Kei te tiki koe i ētahi āhuatanga i tua kē atu i te ao i pakeke nei koe, i te miraka kau, i te haere i roto i te whārua... Engari, ko te pohewa ki a au, koirā te hari, te tiki atu i te whakaaro. Ki te kite i tētahi mea kātahi ka whakapiri atu i te

whakaaro mai, mai waho atu o taua mea kite rā koe. E whakanui ana, e heri ana ki ngā wāhi katoa o te maha... o te whakaaro, o te roro.

He āhua rite te whakaaro mō Hewa ki te reo peha, inā ka tau ki wāhi kē whakamāramatia ai. Nā, ka whakaaro ake te kuia nei he pai ki a ia te whakaaro pohewa. Ka kite ia i te kupu 'pohewa' ka hokihoki ōna mahara ki ngā whakamārama a tōna māmā me te mea hoki:

Kāre anō ahau kia whakamārama ki tētahi atu mō te kōrero a taku māmā. Kua riro koe i te paki o Hewa. Nō reira, ko taku whakamārama i te kōrero a taku māmā... kua riro i waku whakaaro... kua heria ahau, ko taku tinana kei konei engari ko waku whakaaro kua heria... I pakeke mai hoki mātau i tērā āhuatanga. Ko taku whāea tērā. He wahine pohewa tērā. I roto i tōna reo rotarota. Nō reira, i roto i taua reo rotarota ōna rā, kua puta ērā pohewatanga: te tangi, te āhua, ngā momo tangi, ngā momo āhua, ngā momo whakaoho, te ngākau, ngā momo whakaoho i ngā karu, te titiro, ngā momo whakaoho i te hinengaro. He tuku iho tērā i roto i tō mātau aho wahine, i te taha o taku māmā. He nui aku, te aho wahine, tō mātau nā aho wahine

E mea ana hoki te kuia, kei tōna whānau, kei ōna tuākana, tēina, kōtiro hoki te āhei ki te HURI I TE KUPU⁹. Hei whakatauiria i tāna ka kōrero mai mō ētehi o ōna kuia:

Ko rāua ngā kaiwhakangahau i roto i ngā hui, i roto i tō mātau marae. Ka taea e rāua te tiki te kupu kātahi ka whakatangitangi pēnei ngā whakatangitangi a ngā taitamariki o nāianei. E mahi nei te *rap*, i te aha nei, wērā momo... Kāre au e tino mōhio. Oti anō, ngā wāhine nei, ki te kore nei i roto i ngā hui ahakoa i ngā tangihanga, āhua pōhara ana te marae. Nā te mea ko rāua te kaiwhakangahau, ka tū rāua ki te... Pēnā he, he, me kī pea he kupu pēnei... 'Hei ata tai'. Ka taea e rāua te hanga he ngahau e whai ana i tēnā momo reo. Nā runga i a rāua tau wērā. Ka whai mai hoki tēnā, tēnā, tēnā i roto i te whare. I ngā pō, i mua rānei i te pō whakamutunga o te tūpāpaku. Kāre he rakuraku, kāre he aha. Koirā, kua tū, kua ngahau, kua hanga i taua wā tonu. Ko te raruraru, kāre hoki e taea e koe he mīhini hopu e wērā wā. Nā, he nui wā rāua mahi ngahau. Ka haere hoki me rāua. Kua kore hoki tēnā momo, ummm,

⁹ coin a phrase

wahine tangata i nāianeī, te tiki atu i te kupu, kātahi i roto i te rua meneti, i roto i te meneti. Kua oti tētahi ummm, whaka, tētahi ngahau, tētahi tūwaewae, tētahi whakanekeneke hai whakangahau i te tangata. Nō reira, koira tō, koira tōku nā tātai me tōku pakeketanga mai.

He whakaaro nui kei ngā kupu o te kuia nei. Mō te MĀTĀKŌRERO¹⁰, koia kei te hunga matatau mō te hanga kōrero i taua wā tonu. He MOMO-KŌRERO TENE¹¹ pea ki tā Kāretu tēnei āhuatanga (tirohia *E Rere Manu e te Manu*). Ā, ka ngaro te hunga matatau, ka ngaro tērā āheinga ki te hanga kōrero i taua wā tonu, ka kaha te uru mai o te kōrero kākā kē.

Kātahi ka kōrero te kuia nei mō tētehi momo reo, e mea ake ana he reo ‘nenekara’¹². Heoi, ehara i te mea he tikanga kore, he tikanga kē.

Anei, me kī pēnei. Kei roto i tō mātau whānau tētahi tangata. Kāre e tino kōrero. Tangata mōhio, tangata mārama, oti anō, he iti te kupu, engari he nui te kōrero. Nō reira, ka kōrero ana, me kī, ka kōrero mātau mō taua tangata... Ko te reo ka tohua tētahi āhua mōna, ka kī, “Kei hea te tangata hoihoi rā?” Mōhio katoa taku whānau ko wai taua tangata hoihoi rā. Ko te tangata kāre rā e tino kaha ki te kōrero. Nō reira, kua huria. Kua tīkina te reo hei whakaahua i te āhua kē atu rerekē noa atu i te tangata.

Ka mea mai tētehi anō kaiwhakahoki kōrero, tūturu, he āhuatanga reo tērā o tōna iwi. Ko te whakahua i tētehi ingoa kē mō te tangata kei te kōrerohia inā he ingoa karanga kua ko tōna ingoa tonu. Koia ko te reo peha, heoi he whakatauirā hoki te kōrero i runga nei i te āhuatanga reo nei, te KUPU HĀKIKI¹³ hei whakatoī pea. I pātaia atu, mēnā kei te ātete i te tikanga tūturu, ka whakaae mai ia he pērā. He pai taua momo reo ki tōna iwi, ā, ka whakatauirā i te taenga mai o tētehi ope i Te Waipounamu. Nā te tungāne o te kuia rātou i whakatau me te kī ake “Nau mai koutou e hika mā ki tēnei tāone nunui kīia nei ko Ruātoki. Hai aha atu hoki a Pōneke. Koinei te tāone matua o te ao.” He KUPU WHAKAPEHAPEHA¹⁴ pea taua tauira. Koia tētehi āhuatanga o te reo

¹⁰ oral literature

¹¹ extemporised text type

¹² nonsense

¹³ irony

¹⁴ hyperbole

peha, o te reo i kōrerotia e te kuia nei hei hanga whakaahua mā te tangata. Ka kōrero tonu te kuia:

Kātahi ka pātai. “He aha te tikanga o tēnei? Kei te āhua mate pea te māhunga o te tangata rā, nā te mea, kei te kī, nau mai ki tēnei tāone nunui.” Nō reira, he aha tērā?... He aha? Mārama katoa mātau... He whakanui kei roto i te mihi rā, engari, ko ngā mea kei te ako i te ... reo tuarua nō rātau, kua raru. Kei te whakamārama kupu ki te kupu. Kāre anō i puta mai, mai taua wāhi rā.

Nā, e kitea ana i āna kupu tērā pea he hononga o te taumata reo o te tangata ki te māramatanga ki te tikanga o te reo peha. I runga i te mea, he aronga kōaro tō te reo peha. Ehara rawa i te mea mā te mata o te kupu e whakaata te tikanga o roto, kei tua kē te tikanga. E kore rawa e kitea ahakoa pēhea te roa e titiro ana ki te ‘kupu ki te kupu’. Nā whai anō pea ki tētehi tangata, he ‘nenekara’. Ka mutu, ka kī te kuia nei mō taua momo reo, ‘Nā koirā pea kei te taupatupatu ki te hinengaro o ngā taringa reo rua’. Mō te kairangahau nei, ā, he whakapae nōku mā kairangahau kē e hāpai ake, ka kite atu te reotahi i te whakaahua o te reo, ka kite atu te reorua i te āhua o te kupu, kaua ko te whakaahua o te kupu, nā reira i raru ai te reo peha, te reo whakarite ki a ia. Kāore e kitea ana te whakaahua kei te whakatairitea.

Mō te reo whakarite, ki te kuia nei he mōhio kē atu nōu inā koia tō reo i pakeke mai ai koe. Ka mutu, ka kōrerohia tētehi o ana whanaunga nō ngā moutere o Te Moananui-a-Kiwa:

I roto i te horopaki ko te mōhio ahakoa te pakeke mai a Toka¹⁵ i tōna reo. E mōhioitia ana e koe he pērā anō te whakawhitiwhiti o iwi nei, o iwi nei, ā-iwi, i wā rātau, i tō rātau reo. Nā te mea ko Toka i pakeke mai i Hamoa, ko mātau i pakeke mai i Rūātoki. Kei te rite tonu pea te rere o wērā momo-kōrero. He reo, ehara pea i te reo nenekara... He reo whakanui, whakaiti, he reo whakawhiti ki wāhi, ki āhua kē. Engari, koirā te tino, koirā e tino mōhioitia ai pea te tangata i pakeke mai i roto i tōna reo ake... Kāre au e mōhio he aha te, te tino whakamārama, engari, kei ērā momo kōrero e tere ai tō kite ai. Eeee, otirā, he reo ōpaki, tino, mō te paki nei, wēnā momo reo, nē rā.

¹⁵ He ingoa huna.

Ka pātaia te kuia he aha ngā āhuetanga reo e tino eke ai tētehi kōrero, ka āta whakaaro ia, ka kī ake:

Ka hoki anō ahau ki waku tuhinga. Ko tētahi tino āhua ki a au mō te tuhi, ka tuhi ana ahau ko te reo whakawhitiwhiti. Nā, kei roto i te reo kōrero nei. Koirā pea te nuinga o waku tuhinga. Kei roto te kōrero, kei roto te wero... koirā au e kī rā ko tāku i pakeke mai au i tēnei momo āhuetanga o te āheinga o te reo, ngā momo kīwaha katoa i rangona au. Nā, kei reira. Ahakoa he aha waku tuhi, ka puta taua reo.

Ka kōrero te kuia ehara rawa i te mea me rawe te tuhinga i te tuhituhinga tuatahi heoi, ka waiho ki tāhaki, kātahi:

Ka haere atu anō ai ki te tiki kia tuhi noa, kia rere noa ngā whakaaro, kia puta tōna reo, kia rere tōna reo... kia eke, kia noho kia kite ana ngā...rau whakaniko, rau whakaharahara, rau whakarākei, whakarākeitanga o taua tuhi.

He mea nui pea tēnei mā te hunga e ako ana i te tuhituhi, inā ehara rawa i te mea ka eke te tuhi i te tuhinga tuatahi, ka eke pea i te tuhinga tuangahuru. Nā, mutu ana tā māua nei kōrerorero mō te auahatanga, mō te pohewatanga, ka mea mai te kuia atawhai nei inā hiahia anō ki te kōrero kei te pai noa iho kia peka atu ki a ia.

6.3 Tā Koro Ānaru: 'E Māori ana te wairua o tō kōrero?'

He manukura tēnei koroua. He tangata kua rongonui i te motu, reo mai, titonga mai, waiata mai. I te nui o āna mahi ka uaua te whai atu i te wā pai, i te wāhi pai kia kōrero tahi māua, heoi ka riro nāna ētehi kauhau i tētehi hui reo ki Te Whanganui-a-Tara. Nā, ka peka atu au, ka kauhau mai ia, ā, tō ana te rā, ka hui tahi māua ki tētehi rūma hōtera ki te wherawhera i ngā āhuetanga mō te momo-kōrero Māori. I te mea ko ia tētehi o ngā pouako mō tētehi wānanga reo ka tīmata ngā whakawhitinga kōrero ki ngā momo-kōrero e whakaakona ana e ia. Ko tāna:

Ko ngā momo katoa. Kei te āhuetanga o taku hiahia... Nā reira, ka tirohia ngā momo katoa kia kitea ai mēnā ko tēhea te momo e uaua ana ki a rātau, ko tēhea te momo e ngāwari ana ki a rātau. Nā, ko tētahi o ngā mahi i kite ahau he uaua ki a rātau, ko te whakapākehā tonu i ā rātau anō kōrero i tuhi ai i te reo

Māori...kua kitea te ngoikore o te reo Pākehā ki te nuinga o rātau, te nuinga, me taku tūmeke i tērā, nā te mea hoki, he kore tonu pea e waia kia kī atu, he maroke tērā, nā, kimihia mai anō tētahi atu āhuatanga i puta ai te wairua o tāu i tuhi ai ki te reo Māori, kia mau tonu ai te wairua nē, mai i tētahi reo ki tētahi reo. Koinā tētahi o ngā whāinga nui i roto i te mahi. A, anei te kore tonu e waia ki tērā āhuatanga kua āhua pai pea ināianei nā te mea hoki, kua roa mātau e mahi ana i tēnā mahi.

Me kī, he pērā i ngā whakaaro o Kui Ani, kia kaua rā e aro ‘kupu ki te kupu’, engari kia tirohia te wairua o te kōrero, inā rā ko ngā whakaaro i te tuatahi. Ko tāna he whakapiki ngātahi i ngā reo e rua o te ākonga mā te whakapākehātanga. Ka haere tonu tana kōrero:

Engari, ko ngā momo-kōrero kua tuhia e mātau te haka, te ngeri, te aha, te aha, ērā mea katoa. He uaua hoki te kimi mai i ngā whakaaro o roto i te ngeri mehemea kāore koe i te mōhio i tā te kaitito i whai ai... Koirā kē te uaua o tērā mahi. He rerekē te mahi ki a au nei, whakapākehā waiata, haka, waiata nei ahakoa he aha te momo waiata i ngā tuhituhinga noa iho nei a te tangata. I roto i ngā tuhituhinga, kāore koe e whakarāpopoto i tō whakaaro, nē? Ka tuhia e koe te katoa o tāu i pīrangi, engari i roto i te waiata e rua noa iho nei pea ngā kupu, kotahi noa iho pea te rārangi mō e hia kē nei te nui o ngā whakaaro kei a koe. Koirā te tino rerekē o tērā.

Ko te ia o tēnei kōrero, kei ētehi momo-kōrero tēnei tū āhuatanga; he iti te kupu, he nui te kōrero. E mea ana i roto i ana whakatairitenga o te tuhinga ki te waiata, he nui kē atu ngā tikanga i roto i te waiata. Pērā tonu pea i taua huinga momo-kōrero katoa i raro i te kārangarangatanga kōrero ōkawa, arā te karakia, te karanga, te mihi, te poroporoaki, te whaikōrero, te whakapapa. Te tikanga me nui te kōrero i te kupu ruarua noa iho nei. He kupu tawhito pea, he kupu ā-iwi pea, he kupu whakarite, he mea nui te tikanga. Ehara i te whakapākehā noa iho kei te kōrerohia i konei, ko te whakamāori hoki i tētehi kōrero, arā, ko te kimi māramatanga e mau ai te ia o ngā huatau o tā te kaitito.

Nā, ko tētehi āhuatanga o te hanga tātai momo-kōrero, he whakaaro kē atu tō tēnā, tō tēnā he aha ngā momo e tika ana me uru atu. Kore kau he hē, heoi, he rerekē rawa pea

ētehi o ngā kōrero ki tēnā, ki tēnā. Koia ko tēnei momo-kōrero e kōrerotia ana e Ānaru kīhai i paku whakaaro me uru atu te kairangahau i runga i te mea pea he titiro kē tā te hunga mātāpuputu nei:

Kei a koe ngā waiata haurangi?... Ngā waiata o te hunga haurangi, me whakauru koe i ērā. Nā te mea, kei reira tētahi reo me tōna tohungatanga e kore pea i kite i roto i te, pērā i te waiata a Mīria e kī rā, ‘E toru i te pō e kore au e ngata, engari, kia ono, engari kia ono ka pai au e’.

Ka tere te kitea ko tētehi āhuatanga o te tohungatanga o te reo e kōrerotia ana ko te whakapoto i te kōrero ki te rerenga ruarua. Ā, mō te waiata haurangi ko tētehi nuka reo ko te TOHUTORO AI,¹⁶ he kōrero e hāngai tonu ana ki te wā, ki te wāhi, ki te whakaminenga hoki, arā, e tika ana mā te hunga haurangi. Heoi, ko tā te koroheke nei me mahara ake he waiata ngahau ēnei, ahakoa te kōrero ai me te mea hoki a ō tātou tūpuna, ‘Kāore e huna i te whakaaro’:

Ko te mea nui hoki kia kaua e whakamā ki tō te Pākehā whakamā, nē. Ehara kē hoki i te, kei te hinengaro kē o te tangata, te kino, te paru, te aha rānei. Ehara kē i te mea i pērā kē te whakaaro o te kaitito i te wā i titoa kēhia mai hei whakangahau, hei whakakata i te tangata.

Nā reira, ki a ia he tino whakaaro Māori i roto i aua kupu ai. Heoi, ka hanga pōuri te koroheke nei i te ngaronga haeretanga o aua momo waiata, anā ‘ko tō koutou whakatipuranga hoki, kāore i te mōhio ki ērā momo waiata’. Ko ētehi o ngā take e ngarongaro nei taua momo, kāore te hunga mātātahi i te whakangahau pērā i tā rātou. He waiata Pākehā kē ka rangona. Ko tāna whakahau ki ngā iwi kia kohia aua momo waiata ‘i te wā kei te ora tonu ngā mea mōhio ki aua momo waiata’.

Ka kōrero te koroua nei i te HANGANGA¹⁷ o aua momo waiata ki tana titiro iho. Ko tāna, ko ‘te reo o roto i ērā momo waiata me ngā mea hāwhe kaehe¹⁸ nei, e toru pea ngā rārangi Māori kotahi te mea Pākehā’. Ko tētehi whakaaro mō ēnei momo-kōrero, ka noho pea ko ngā mea ‘hāwhe kaehe’ nei ki te horopaki ōpaki. He pērā anō i ngā

¹⁶ sexual reference

¹⁷ structure

¹⁸ half-caste

KUPU MINO¹⁹, i ngā kīanga hāwhe kaehe, i ngā kīwaha nō te reo Pākehā ka whakamāoritia ai, he wā, he wāhi mō taua āhuatanga reo. Otirā mōku nei, waiho mā te ao paki te REO MINO²⁰, kaua mā te ao kawa.

Heoi ka whakatauiratia anōtia ētehi atu rerenga kōrero o tēnei momo waiata. He HUAHUATAU²¹, he TAIRITENGA²² ēnei e whai nei hei hanga i te whakaahua ki roto i tō hinengaro. Heoi i runga tonu i te wairua tino whakangahau:

Taku mōhio kei tō iwi o Maniapoto he nui ngā waiata o reira, ā, i homai e Ani rāua ko Pare²³ tētahi o ngā waiata a Waikato. “Wahine kino koe, he whakatapu i tō paipera, kaiponu ki tō paipera, kore koe i homai kia wherawherahia e”. Nā, ērā momo, mēnā ko te tangata whakarongo kāore i te tino mōhio ki te kōrero Māori, ka whakaaro, oh, te paipera, kei te wherawhera noa iho nā. Engari, ko tērā kei reira, ki a au nei, tētahi tino tohungatanga o te kaitito ki te whakauru i te nui o te whakaaro i roto i nga kupu itiiti noa iho... he mea tika ki te reo Pākehā nā te mea hoki, ko te kupu paipera tonu, ana, mōhio koe, nō muri tonu mai i te taenga mai o ngā Pākehā, engari tērā i tā te kuia rā, nē. “Kore koe e mōhio ko Mīria tōku ingoa? Ā, he whakaako i ngā tāne ki te oneroa e”. Koirā te whiti tuatahi o taua waiata nā, “Ka haramai ko tētahi toru i te po”. Kei reira anō ētahi atu whiti... Ko te mate hoki, kua kore ngā kaumātua, kua kore e haurangi pērā i ngā kaumātua i te wā i a au e tamariki ana. Koirā ngā momo waiata ka waiata i runga i te pahi ka hoki mai i ngā huihui, mai i ngā tangihanga.

I mea mai te koroheke nei i roto i tōna wānanga ka whakaakona ngā kupu tawhito i rangona ai e ia i a ia e tamariki ana. Pēnei i te kupu ‘kua naneatia’, arā, he KUPU TAURITE²⁴ mō te puku, anā kua makona. He āhuatanga reo tēnei ki a ia e kounga ai te kōrero. Ka pātaia ia mō te taha ki te kounga o te kōrero me te ako ākongā, ko tāna:

¹⁹ loan word

²⁰ He rēhita e kīkī ana i ngā kupu mino, i ngā whakaaro Pākehā rānei, pērā i te kupu, i te kīanga, i te kīwaha (pōhara, kuru pai, me whakaaro ki waho o te pouaka).

²¹ metaphor

²² analogy

²³ He ingoa huna.

²⁴ synonym

Ana, i a au e kī atu rā ki a rātou kia Māori, kia Māori ko te wairua o te kōrero. He nui ngā mea. Ana, whakarongo au ki te rangi nei [ki te reo pōwhiri], kei te Māori ngā kupu, engari kāore i te Māori te wairua o te kōrero. Me Māori pea te whakatakoto o te kōrero. Ka taea hoki ngā kupu te huri kia Māori ai te takoto o te kōrero. Ko te mate hoki ki taku whakarongo, kei te whakaaro Pākehā hoki rātou anō, kua pērā anō ki te whakatakoto mai i ngā kōrero.

E toru pea ngā whakaaro matua i roto i taua rerenga whakaaro: kia Māori te wairua, kia Māori te whakatakotoranga kōrero, kia Māori te whakaaro. Nā, ka meatia mai ko tētehi whāinga o tana wānanga ‘kia Māori te wairua o te kōrero’. Ko tāna i whakatauiria mai ai ko te titonga ā-rōpū i tētehi waiata hei mihi ki ngā ringawera. Ko te rerenga kōrero a tētehi o ngā ākonga e pēnei ana, “Tēnei aruranga ka hoki horokukū ki te kāinga” mō te *reluctant to leave for home*. Nā, ka mea mai te koroua me huri, ‘Tēnei aruranga, ka horokukū ki te hoki ki te kāinga’. Ko tā te koroua nei, ‘ko te āhua tonu o te whakatakoto. Kāore hoki i te Māori e pērā, e kīia nei he *adverbial usage* nē? Kāore te Māori e pērā.’ He TURE WETEREO²⁵ tērā ki a ia. Arā, me kaua e āpiti atu te TŪKĒ²⁶ ki te kupu mahi. Ka whakatauiria anō mai ia i tētehi tauira e hē ana, ‘Hoki tere koutou’. Ko tāna kē, “Kia tere te hoki.” Ā, koia te momo whakatakotoranga e whai nei ia ki āna ākonga kia tau ai tō rātou reo Māori.

Ka kōrerotia mai e ia ngā momo ākonga āna i te wānanga, ko tētehi take nui pea mō te whakaora reo Māori me tēnei kaupapa rangahau, ko te wairua o te kōrero:

Kāore he mate o te reorua nā te mea, ko te nuinga... he reorua. Engari ko ētahi, he tino pai rawa atu pea te hopu i te reo, ko ētahi kei te reorua tonu te āhua o te whakatakoto mai nē. Kāore anō kia tino Māori nei te, te wairua o te kōrero.

Ka whakatauiria ia i ngā momo ākonga e rua āna me ā rāua rerekētanga. Ko tētehi, ‘he whakarongo koa nō te taringa. Ana, kua taea e ia pea te huri i te kōrero’. Heoi ko te mea tuarua me āta whakamārama atu ki hea whakatika ai, ā, ‘Ehara i te mea kāore i te mōhio, engari he kore i waia ki tērā momo whakatakoto i te kōrero’. He pānga pea taua whakaaro ki tēnei mea te whakaako i te reo Māori. Arā ake, ko ētehi ākonga ka

²⁵ grammar rule

²⁶ adverb

kapo noa i ngā tauratanga reo, ko ētehi anō me āta whakamārama i ngā momo takotoranga hei whakanikoniko i te reo. Koia tā tēnei tuhinga rangahau, he āwhina mā rātou kāore i te hopu i aua whakanikonikotanga o te reo mā te taringa. Mā te āta whakaatu kātahi ka mārama, ka mau, ā, e manako ana ka karawhiua.

Nā, i te Wāhanga Tuatahi o tēnei tuhinga kairangi ka whakaaturia he āwangawanga tō ngā tohunga reo ki te tāmitanga o te reo Pākehā i te reo Māori. He pēnā hoki tēnei koroua:

Kua kaha te uru mai o te reo Pākehā ki roto i a tātau me te reo Māori. Kua kaha te whakaaweawe mai o te reo Pākehā. Whakaawe kino nei i ētahi wā, engari, ko tātau kē kei te tuku kia pērā.

Ko tāna kei ngā kaiwhakaako kē te mana kia huri i taua āhuatanga. Koia ki a ia he take nui rawa atu ko te whakangungu kaiako i ngā kura toi tangata, i ngā whare wānanga:

Kei te āhua tonu ōu, o te kaiwhakaako, o te kaiwhāngai i te reo...Kei reira kē te raru, te ora, te mate rānei o te reo kei tērā o ngā hunga.

Kia kaupare atu i taua tāmitanga o te reo Pākehā ka pātai atu inā me pēhea e akona ai te wairua Māori, ko tāna i whakautu mai ai:

E kore e taea e koe te wairua Māori te whakaako, ki a au nei. Ka taea e koe te waia tā te Māori e whakatakoto i te kōrero te whakaako. Ana, kei roto i tērā, ā, nāwai rā, nāwai rā ka rongo koe i te wairua o tō te reo Māori. Oh, e Māori ana te wairua o tō kōrero.

Kātahi ka kīia mai te huarahi e mau ai taua wairua, arā, ko ngā tāngata i pakeke ake i te reo te taumata:

Kia rongo mai rā te rere o te reo mai i te waha o te tangata i pakeke mai, koirā te reo. Me kore e tūpono i roto i tērā rongo noa iho, kua kapohia mai te rere o te kōrero, ā, nāwai rā nāwai rā, kua puta mai te waha...koirā hoki te tino kaupapa... He aha te take o te whāngai i te tangata ki te kupu mehemea kāore e whakamahia?... Ana, ko te mea, he whakamahi, ka mutu, ka whakarerekē haere i te whakatakoto kia whānui ake ai tō whakamahi, kia whānui ake ai tō whakamahi.

Ko tētehi anō āhuatanga reo e kouna ai te kōrero ki tā Ānaru nei, ko te whakahua i te reo ki tā te IWI MITA²⁷:

Tōna rere, koirā pea te mea tino, engari ko te mea nui ki a au, kia rangona e te, e wai rānei te Māori o tō whakahua i te kupu, me tō whakamahi i te kupu. Ko te tino tikanga o te oro pea, tērā kōrero kia rere te reo o tēnā iwi, o tēnā iwi, o tēnā iwi.

Mō tēnei mea te REO Ā-MOTU,²⁸ ka mea te koroua, me kōrero te reo e mōhio ana koe, nō muri kē mai kimihia ai ngā āhuatanga reo ā-iwi:

...i roto i tēnei wā, e haramai nei koutou te hunga tamariki ki a mātau, ahakoa ko wai. Kāore e kore, i roto i ā koutou kōrero, i roto i ō koutou reo, ka uru atu ētahi o ā mātau kupu, ētahi o ā mātau whakapapa, kāore he raru o tērā ki a au nei. Ko te mea nui, ko te reo Māori tērā e kōrerotia ana. Ko ētahi iwi, kei te kī mai, e hē, ehara tērā i tō mātau reo, ehara tērā i tā mātau kupu, engari, hōhā katoa au i tērā kōrero. Kia hoki koe ki tō kāinga i te kore koe e rata ki taku kupu, kei te pai. Whakarere ki rāhaki, whakamahia ko tāu.

I a au ka whakarongo ake ki te kiko o tā māua kōrerorero, ka aro hoki au ki te whakatakotoranga o āna kupu. I te wā ka whakamāramatia e te koroua nei he aha i pai ai tētehi o āna ākonga ki a ia, ka mea mai, ‘he koi a runga nei’. He HUAHUATAU²⁹, heoi he momo huahuatau, he KUPU HAUTANGA³⁰ taua kīanga. Arā, kāore i mea mai ia ‘he koi te hinengaro’, ahakoa rā he kupu whakarite tonu taua kīanga, tūturu, ehara te hinengaro i te mea koi. Kei te tairitea te hinengaro ki tētehi āhuatanga e whai wāriu ana ki te tangata, he taputapu koi. Nō reira, i te koroua e kōrero ana mō te kouna, ko tōna reo ka ranginamu tonu. He pērā te nuinga o ngā kaiuru, inā rā, he tere te makere ihotanga o te reo, he reo mārama, he reo peha anō hoki ō rātou.

Ka matapakina hoki ētehi āhuatanga e kouna ai te whaikōrero. Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui ko te HONONGA Ā-KŌRERO³¹. Ko te kōrero i roto i te kōrero, ko te āhei hoki ki te tiki

²⁷ tribal accent. Koia tā Aotea kupu ki W’anganui rā anō (kaiuru tuawhā).

²⁸ standardised language

²⁹ metaphor

³⁰ synecdoche

³¹ intertextuality

atu i ngā kōrero, me kī, ko te KETE MĀTĀKŌRERO A TE TANGATA, A TE IWI³² puta noa. Koia ko te mihi, ko te whakapapa, ko te kōrero tūhono, ko te aha atu. Heoi, ko tētehi pūkenga nui o te whai i te kōrero ki tā te Māori titiro, ko te taringa whakarongo tonu ki aua kōrero ka whakahoki atu ai. Inā tana whakatauiria:

Anei pea, i a mātau e haere nei ki Ūawa, ka tū mai a Tame,³³ nāna... te rawe a ngā kōrero a Tame. Ko te tangata e tū atu i tēnei taha, ā, kāore anō i paku, kotiti kē atu, kāore nei i paku tiki atu i te, he nui ngā kōrero a Tame, ngā mihi mai a Tame, whakapapa mai a Tame, te tūhonotanga o Tūhoe ki a Ngāti Porou, ērā mea katoa. Ka titiro ki te pōrangi o tēnei taha nā te mea, i pōhēhē mātau he tangata mōhio, ana, i a ia hoki te koha, whakatakotohia atu e ia te koha ana, kua mutu, kua kore e taea e mātau te tū... Koirā hoki te mate nui o ēnei wā ki a au nei. Kāore tātau i te whakarongo ki ngā kōrero e pahū mai ana i tērā taha. Kōrero kē noa atu i tēnei taha, kōrero kē noa atu i tērā taha... Kore pea e mārama ki ngā kōrero a tētahi. Ka mutu kē te kerēwa tō whakatoī atu, kua tino kore mārama.

Koia hoki tētehi pūkenga matua o te kaikōrero, he hopu i te ia o te kōrero ka whakautu atu ai. Ka homai hoki e te koroua nei ētehi āhuatanga e whā e eke ai te kaikōrero:

Ko te pai tonu o tana whakatakoto... Me tana whakakata mai i a mātau. Nē? Ki a au nei, koirā katoa ngā, ngā āhuatanga o te kounga o te kaikōrero, ka taea e ia te whakakata i te tangata, te tūhono mai i a ia ki a rātou, te kōrero mō te kaupapa i haere atu ai, me te hāngai o taua kaupapa ki a rātou.

E kitea ana pea mai i te kōrero o runga nei he mātāpono hei whakaarotanga ake mā te kaikōrero: me ngahau, me tūhonohono, me whai kaupapa, me whakahāngai te kaupapa ki te whakaminenga. Ehara rawa i te mea mā te kaikōrero anake aua mātāpono, heoi mā te kaituhi, mā te kaiwhakaatu³⁴ hoki. Nā, ko tana whakatauiria mai i te kōrero pai a te kaikōrero pai, ka hua mai i ngā āhuatanga reo, i ngā mea ātaahua, anā, ko te ātaahua o te whakatakoto i ngā kōrero, ko te ātaahua o te whakapuakinga kōrero, ko te ātaahua o te wairua Māori. I taku pātaitanga atu mō tēnei mea te

³² He rerekē ngā tino momo-kōrero kei tēnā tangata, kei tēnā e mau ana.

³³ He ingoa huna.

³⁴ presenter

whakaātaahua i te kōrero ka whakatauirā anō mai ia i tētehi TOHUTORO³⁵ i roto i tētehi mihimihi. Koia te mīharotanga o te hunga mātāputu matatau nei, he nui ngā kōrero hei whakatauirā i tā rātou i kī ai:

“Koutou e noho mai nei”, āhua pēnei e mea, “E ngā iwi noho mai, ngā pāpāringa o te moana o te motu.” Kāore he ingoa, engari ko ngā tāngata whakarongo i te mōhio, kotahi noa iho te moana o te motu, ko Taupō, nē? Nō reira, ko Ngāti Tūwharetoa tērā e mihia ana. Tērā momo. Kāore koe e whakaingoa, engari kei roto i te āhua tonu o tō whiu i ō kupu, kua mārama mai te hunga whakarongo ko wai tāu e kōrero rā.

Nō reira pea ko te mahi nui mā te taringa Māori ki te hopu i te tikanga o ngā kupu, ahakoa kei wāhi kē te aronga. Me uaua pea te ware reo (matatau rānei!) e whakawhiti atu i te huanga nei, ‘ngā pāpāringa o te moana’ ki te ‘moana’ o ‘Taupō’ ki ‘Ngāti Tūwharetoa’ inā kāore i te taunga ki aua momo kīanga peha. Ka mutu, i tēnei kōrerotanga āna ka kōrerohia haeretia te reo peha. Ki te koroua mā reira e kounga ai te kōrero, ā, mā te TOHUTORO e kounga ai te kupu mihi:

koirā anō hoki tētahi āhuatanga kei te ngaro haere i roto i ngā kaikōrero nē? He kore tonu pea nō ngā mea o tēnei wā e mohio ana, koirā tā mātau e whāngai atu nei...kia riro mā rātou e whakamahi. Engari, ko ae, ko te *allusion* noa hoki tērā... me pēhea te kōrero mō tētahi, mō te *allusion*... mēnā tāu i te pīrangi kōrero mō Raukawa, kua kī tāua, “E koutou i heke mai i Te Aitanga a Mahinārangi rāua ko Tūrongo. Tēnā koutou”. Tōna tikanga e mōhio ana ko Raukawa tērā, engari ko tērā momo whakatakoto i te kōrero nē?

Ko tāna hoki koia rā te take kei te ranginamu te rerenga kōrero kua whakataukītia mai i ngā kōrero ā-iwi. He kupu itiiti mō te roanga atu o tētehi kōrero o mua, o tētehi kōrero tupuna:

Koirā hoki tāu e kī mai mō te whakataukī a mea, a Parewhete ki a Wairangi, i kī rā ia, “He aha koe i haramai ai i te rourou iti a haere, tē noho atu ai i te tokanga nui a Noho.” Engari, ki te kore koe e mārama ki tana kōrero, ka pātai, “He aha tā te wahine e kōrero nei?” Yeah. Ina hoki, ki a au nei, ko te rourou iti a haere, koia tonu, te wahine koretake nei, he aha koe i haramai ai? Nā te

³⁵ allusion

mea, ka patua koe, mēnā koe i noho atu, ka ora koe. Koinā te tino tikanga. Engari, ki te kore koe e mōhio ki te roanga atu o ngā kōrero. Ko te horopaki, nē? E tino kore e mārama tērā kōrero, nā te mea he kōrero ātaahua tērā. Ahakoa i patua ia e Wairangi, he mea mate tāne nōna ki tētahi atu. Yeah. Engari, koirā ngā kōrero o roto i ngā iwi, ki te kore e taea, e kaha, ka ngaro. Nā te mea, he ātaahua ērā rerenga kōrero.

Ka mea mai te koroua nei inā ka riro māu e mihi, ‘ko tāu mahi kē, he whakanui i ō rangatira. Nō reira, kimihia ngā kōrero e taea ai e koe tērā te whakatutuki’. Koia tā auā kīanga ā-iwi. He whakatairanga i te whakaminenga. Ka whakatauiratia tāna i kī ai i tētehi haerenga āna ki te tangihanga:

Koirā tā mātau e whai nei. Koirā katoa ngā āhuatanga me mōhio... Ā, ehara i te mea me mōhio i taua wā rā, engari me mōhio, me tiki atu i hea, kia pai ai te whakauru mai ki roto i ngā kōrero. Pēnei i a mātau, ka haere mātau ki te tangi a ngā tamariki o te aituā o te parekura nei. Ana, ka kī mātau, he mōhio nōku i tētahi waiata a Ngāti Porou, kei reira te rārangi e mea ana, ā, “Kua rukuruku a Te Rangitāwaia i ōna rīnenga.” Nā, ki te kore koe e mārama ki tērā, ka mārama ngā mea o Ngāti Porou, nā te mea ko te tikanga o tērā, ko Hikurangi Maunga kua uhia e te kohu, ngā tohu o aituā. Engari, he waiata tērā nā rātou, kei reira taua rārangi, “Ka rukuruku a Te Rangitāwaia.” Ko Te Rangitāwaia, he ingoa anō nō rātou mō te maunga o Hikurangi. Ka mutu, ka tiro mai rātou ki te kite hoki te manuhiri, ka, “Oh, mōhio tēnei manuhiri.”

Mō te whakarākei i te kōrero, he pūkenga kōrero pea atu anō tērā. Arā, ko te rerekētanga o te mōhiotanga ki te māramatanga, inā rā ahakoa mōhio ai koe ki te whakanikoniko kōrero ehara i te mea me whakanikoniko i te kōrero. Mā te wā tonu e tohu me rere ō kupu ki te rangi tūhāhā, me tau rānei ō kupu ki te whenua:

He mōhio nōu āhea whakauru mai ai, āhea hāngai ai, āhea whakanikoniko ai i tērā momo i tāu kōrero, nē? Ka taea noa e koe. I roto i te wā ka māmā noa iho ki a koe. Kia kaha ake nei tō mōhio, kia kaha ake nei tō mōhio ki ngā kōrero, kua ngāwari noa iho... He wā tōna kia ngāwari noa te kupu...Me wā ano tōna, ka whakaaro, eh, me ruku. Me ruku. Me ruku (Katakata)... Ae, ae. Kia tac ki te takeretanga o te moana, ana, ka puea ake ai.

Kei te kitea i tana huahuatau ‘me ruku kia tae ki te takeretanga o te moana’ mō te āta titiro ki te hōhonutanga o tētehi kaupapa. Heoi anō rā, ko ētehi momo-kōrero ki a ia ka tika me hōhonu, ‘Mēnā he waiata wairua mōteatea nei... kua he kupu kai parāoa noa iho nei. Me āhua kupu hōhonu kē atu i tērā’. He pērā anō ngā poroporoaki ki a ia. He mea kite e ia te whakatauiratanga o te poroporoaki i ngā niupepa reo Māori o mua. Ā, i te mea ka āhua maroke haere te poroporoaki ka whakaaro, ‘He aha te mate o te haere tonu o tērā wairua, ngā poroporoaki?’ Ā, ka titoa e ia ētehi i runga i te whakatakotoranga o nehe mā. He kaupapa nui tērā kia tōia mai ngā āhuatanga reo o ngā mātua tūpuna ki roto i te reo o nāiane.

E mea ana hoki te koroua tērā te wa ka puta te whakamīharotanga mai i te ngākau ki tētehi āhuatanga, koia ‘ko te rongo o te ngākau’. Heoi, ‘kāore e taea e koe te whakakupu i taua āhua. Engari, kei roto i a koe e mea ana, ae, ooh, tino pai ki a au tēnei’. Ko te rongo ā-ngākau pea tērā ki te ihi o te kaikōrero, o te kaupānui.

Nā, ko tāna i whakamārama ai mō te huahuatau, he whakamārama e kore e kitea ki wāhi kē atu. He tauira mō te titonga o te KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA³⁶:

Ko te huahuatau, he kupu nā mātau tērā o Te Taura Whiri. Kei roto i te waiata, “He kākano ahau i ruia mai i Rangiatea.” He huahuatau tērā āhua, pēhea, pēhea. Ā, ko te kupu whakarite... he *simile* nē? Engari, ko te huahuatau he *metaphor*. Koirā mātau e kimi kupu ai kia tino rerekē tētahi ki tētahi. Ā, nā te mea, e kōrero ana tātau te ao Māori mō te kupu whakarite, engari i te nuinga o te wā, he huahuatau kē. Engari, he whakaaro nō tātau ā-Pākehā nei. Nā reira, i tīkina atu he kupu, engari, i kite mātau... kei te tino raru katoa i roto i ngā kura reo rā, nē? Nā, ko Te Wharehuia, ki a ia, ahakoa whakataukī, he whakarite, he rite katoa, nā, kāore he hē o tērā, ko te mea nui, e taea ana te whakamārama. Engari ko ngā mea pēnei i a koe nā, kua roa ki roto i ngā kura, whare wānanga nei, kāore e kore ka pātai i tēhea ngā mea ngaro. He aha kē te rerekē o tētahi i tētahi. He pātai pai tonu tērā. Ko te mea nui, kia mārama tonu ki a koe he aha te rerekē o tētahi i tētahi.

³⁶ specialised vocabulary

He whakaaro nui i roto i taua kōrero kua taha ake nei. I hangā te kupu ‘huahuatau’ ki runga i te mea ka raruraru ki roto i ngā akomanga reo. He whakaatu i te wehewehenga o ēnei kupu, o te kupu whakarite me te huahuatau mā te ākonga, mā te kaiako. Nā, i a māua e kōrero ana ka pātaitai mai te koroua ki a au mō ōku whakaaro. Ko tētehi āhuatanga pēnei ko te rerekētanga o te kupu whakarite me te huahuatau. Ko tāku ko te momo rerenga kōrero e tohu ai inā he kupu whakarite, arā ko te whakamahia o te ‘rite ki te’, ‘ānō nei he’, ko tāna:

Kei te tika tō whakatau, nā te mea hoki, i kī kē au, kua roa e kore ana, e āta whakawehea ne, te huahuatau mai i te kupu whakarite. I whakawhānui, i whakakao katoahia mai ki raro i te karangatanga kupu whakarite. Ki taku mōhio ko te nuinga, kāore i te mārama. Ā, ka mutu, kāore i te whakaaro nui ki tērā āhua o te reo. Koirā katoa ngā āhuatanga e raru nei. Nē? Ki tāku titiro.

Ka āta tātari i taua whakaaro ōna, i te reo peha a te Wāhanga Tuawaru e tere mai nei. I kōrero māua mō ngā tāngata e ako ana i te reo me aua āhuatanga reo, te kupu whakarite, te huahuatau. Ko tāna, ‘Ki a au nei, i roto i te wā, ka mōhio te tangata ki te whakamahi i aua āhuatanga rā o te reo...Nā, ka taea tērā mōhio i roto i te wā’. Heoi he rerekē anō ki a ia te tika o te whakatakoto me te kounga, arā:

I ētahi wā, ahakoa te kino o te reo, kei reira tonu tōna wairua Māori...Tētahi paku kākano nei, engari, ko te mate kē o tērā, ka hōhā koe ki te whakatika i te kaha nui o ngā hē i ētahi wā nē? Yeah, kua kite au i tērā momo mahi. I te wā i a au e whakaako ana i te tohu paerua... Nā, kua mārama kē, kua pai kē ō rātau reo i tērā wā. He ngāwari te mahi i te mahi. Engari, ko te kounga kē, mēnā kei te kaha te hē o te whakatakoto i te kupu, kua kore he kounga o te kōrero nē? Rerekē pea, ko te tika rānei o te whakatakoto mai me te kore e tika. Ko te whakamahi pea i ngā whakanikonikotanga o te reo, me tō mōhio atu, he mārama nei he aha i whakamahia tērā whakanikonikotanga me tēnei, me tēnei, me tēnei. E tino hāngai ana ki aua kōrero rā. Koirā katoa ngā tohu o te kounga o te reo. Ki te kore hoki e taea te whakarāwai e te kaituhi. Ka tika engari, ka maroke nē?

Koia hoki te wero mā te kaiwhāngai i te reo, kia kimi huarahi e kounga ai te reo. Koia ko te whakamahia o te reo peha kia:

...kaua e maroke, kaua e maroke, kaua e maroke. Ana, i roto i te wā... me tiki atu i ngā whakataukī, ka whakauru ko tētahi wāhanga rānei o te whakataukī, e hāngai ana ki aua kōrero rā. Ne. Ko te tiki atu rānei i te karu i te kōrero ka mea, ka pēnei, i roto i tētahi o ā mātau waiata, ‘Kua tau mai rā e Rangi te whakamaru a pō.’ Nā, ko te tikanga o tērā kōrero, he waiata tērā, he mihi mā mātau ki a Te Atairangikaahu, i tētahi o ngā koroneihana, engari, ko te tikanga o tērā kōrero, kua tae mai rā he rangi te whakamaru a pō, ko te nui o ngā tāngata he rite ki te maru i te pō. Me whakawana te marae. Tērā momo, he momo huahuatau tērā, he mea tiki noa atu, ka whakauru mai. He mea kimi noa iho mō taua rārangi rā.

Ka whakatauiratia anōtia ētehi o āna kupu whakarite. He mea whakahāngai pea tāna HUAHUATAU ROA³⁷ ki te ingoa o Te Atairangikaahu, he KUPU RAWEKE³⁸ tonu. Ka mutu. He tohu nō te āhua reo o te tangata matatau ki te reo:

...ko ērā momo, ērā momo huahuatau, ‘te manu noho mātārae’, pēnei anō taku, te mihi ki a Te Ata i te koroneihana. ‘Ko koe, kei taku manutaki, kei taku manutaupua, kei taku manutuauro, ko taku manu noho mātārae. E rere i ō rangi e hoka, e tiu, e tapakō,’ kua warewaretia tētahi atu kupu anō. ‘Ko wai i hāro, ko wai i hāro i tō whenua’. Āe. Nā katoa ērā he *simile* pea ērā. Whakarite ērā, he hāro, he topa, he, ehara i te huahuatau. Whakarite ai...i te manu nē.

Ka kōrero māua mō te ‘*cliche*’, he ‘KUPU MANINOHEA’ pea ki a ia, arā, he kīanga kōrero kua āhua pau te hau, me kī. He mea nui pea tēnei aroro i te mea ka maroke ana te kōrero me kimi whakatakotoranga kē kia wairua ihi ake ai ngā kupu e auau ana te rangona:

He tino tangata whenua tēnei i roto i ēnei whakaaro. Kāore he hē o tērā i ētahi wā. Nā te mea koirā hoki te kōrero ka hāngai i taua wā, nē. Engari, he wā tōna me āhua kimi anō tētahi atu kōrero, koirā te wairua, engari he kupu kē noa atu. Ka hoki te Māori, ko te *cliche* ka kī noa iho te maroke hoki, hoki atu, hoki atu, koirā, mm. Me kimi kupu mō te *cliche*’...Pai tonu. Māku e whakaaro... He kupu kua āhua maninohea pea.

³⁷ extended metaphor

³⁸ pun

I a māua e kōrero ana, ka whakatauiratia ōna whakaaro ki ētehi waiata nāna anō i waiata haere. Kei te waiata nei ētehi KUPU TAURITE³⁹ mō te makona o puku, mā reira pea e kaupare atu ai te KUPU MANINOHEA⁴⁰.

Ā, engari, kia roa tonu koe e tuhi ana e kōrero ana, kātahi anō pea ka uru mai tētahi paku, tētahi paku whakaaro ki roto i a koe. Me huri pea au i tēnei kōrero kia āhua Māori ake... Ko taua waiata rā i mea, ‘Nānea ana a tia’, i kōrero mai a Mātai. “I tā te niho wera, nānea ana a tea te ringa wera. Mokore anō te rere a Mihi i tā te wahawaha. Nā, i tā te wahawaha whiunga o haupā (waiata) o Haupānamunamuā, i te whiunga o Haupānamunamua. Ah, pura ana te kanohi o tahu aroha”, ā, ka haere te rārangi, ‘nā konei a Ruranga nā konei a Ruranga, ka horokukū ki te hoki ki te wā kāinga ki te taha o te rau, kī mai da da da da da’. Nā, ka tohu ērā kupu he kukume ki te tangata whenua, ko te niho wera me te wahawaha he kupu nō te iwi kāinga, ka haere ki te whāngai tamariki.

Ko tētehi huarahi ako i ngā āhuatanga reo nei, tukuna ai ngā ākonga ki te kimi kupu hou hei ‘whakakākahu’ i te reo mihi:

... hei mihi ki ngā ringawera. Engari, ia wānanga, ahakoa ko aua ringawera tonu kī atu, me mihi. Ana, he waiata atu anō, he waiata atu anō. Nā roto i ērā mahi ana kua waia haere ki ngā huahuatau nei, ki ngā kupu whakarite nei, ki ngā rerenga whakataukī nei. Ā, me te kimi haere anō i ētahi kupu atu a tēnei a Rūranga me tērā rārangi, arā, ko ngā manuhiri ērā, kua kore, kua kore pīrangi, oh whakatenatena ki te hoki. Ā, he kino atu ki a rātau, ahakoa ko aua whakaaro tonu rā, me kimi he kupu kē atu he whakakākahu i ērā kōrero. Ahakoa ko aua mihi tonu rā, kua mihi tonu rā, kimiha ētahi atu kupu. Āe.

Mō ngā kīanga nei, ‘te wahawaha’ me te ‘niho wera’ ka pātai atu ki te tohunga reo nei mehemea koia hei tauratanga mō te *metonymy* (tirohia te Wāhanga Tuawaru ki te whakamārama mō te KUPU HAUTANGA). Ka tere te whakaae mai me tāna kī mō tēnei momo ara wetewete i te reo:

³⁹ synonym

⁴⁰ cliché

Ka pōuri i ērā mahi i mahia i a mātau i te kura, te *metonymy*, te *alliteration*, te aha noa iho, te *assonance*, te aha noa iho, ērā āhuatanga katoa. Nā reira, kua waia rātau ki ērā āhuatanga ki te reo Pākehā. Nōku i uru kaha nei ki te reo Māori, ka whakaaro au, ah, katoa ērā āhuatanga kei roto i te ao Māori, kei roto i te reo Māori, engari, kāore e whakamāramahia ana, kāore e whakatauirahia ana, ka mutu, i te korenga o ngā tamariki o ēnei wā, Pākehā mai, Māori mai, e whakaakona kē ērā āhuatanga i roto i ngā kura, he tauhou katoa ki ērā āhuatanga.

Kei te Wāhanga Tuawaru aua kīpeha i huaina e te koroheke, ko te tūmanako ka kuhuna haeretia e ngā kaiako ki roto i te akomanga.

Ko tētehi TIKANGA⁴¹ nui i whakahaua e te koroheke nei atu i te reo peha, ko te takoto o te kōrero, arā, kia iti te kupu kia nui te kōrero. Ahakoa ka kore te whakaminenga e mārama ki te tikanga, mēnā ka mārama te kaiwhakaputa kua whai hua:

Ā, nā reira, kei te kī atu au me poro ngā rārangi, kaua e roa rawa, mā te iti o te kupu te nui o te whakaaro e kawē. Nā te mea, kua waia rawa ki te whakaatu i ngā mea katoa. I a rātau nei hoki, koirā te āhua. Kua kore e mōhio ki te waiho mā te kupu iti te nui o te whakaaro e whakaputa. Ahakoa kāore e mārama mai ngā mea whakarongo, kei te pai. Ko te mea nui kia mārama ko te rōpū waiata i ngā kupu. Ko ngā mea kāore e mārama mai ki ngā kupu ka noho noa iho i konā whakarongo ai ki te reka o te rangi, me te pai o ngā ringa, te pūkana, te aha noa iho. Engari, kāore i te mārama he aha te tikanga o ngā kupu.

E meatia ana e ētehi anō kaiuru ko tētehi āhuatanga nui kei te pā ki te kounga o te reo ko te matatau o te tangata ki te reo. I ētehi anō wā nā te ngoikore ki te whakapakari ake i te reo te take, arā, kua totoka ki tētehi taumata reo tē piki ake ai. I ētehi anō wā nā te reoruatanga te take:

...ko te Māori o te wairua o te kōrero, koirā pea te mea, kei te whai mātau kia mau tonu. He uaua tērā nā te mea ko te nuinga, tika tāu, kāore i pakeke mai i te reo Māori. Nō reira, i runga i a rātau nei hoki, ka hoki tonu ki te reo Pākehā hei āwhina mai nē. Ana, kāore e taea tērā te kore, ā, te kore e whai atu mēnā

⁴¹ convention

koinā, mēnā i pakeke mai koe, ko te reo Pākehā kē tō reo matua. He wā tōna ka hoki anō ki reira whakawhirinaki atu ai... Ko tō rātau pai, kua kite tonu rātau, me huri pea te kōrero, oh, ka pātai mai rānei ki tētahi o mātau, me pēhea e āhua Māori ake te takoto o te kōrero.

Ka kōrerotia ētehi āhuatanga reo e tino hē haere ana ki a ia, arā, he ‘hōhā’. Ko tāna whakatauirā, ‘ka kī hoki ko te nuinga o ngā kaikorero, “ko tana wahine a Mere”’.

Kaua pea ko tēnei, ‘ko tana wahine, ko Mere’. Hei whakatauirā anō i tēnei ka mea,

“‘Haere atu ki a ia, ki a Te Wharehuia’ ka kī ko ētahi, ‘Haere atu ki a ia, a Te Wharehuia’... Kua kore i whai i te tauira nē? Tōna tika me whakahoki anō te...[*participle*]... Kei te whakatikatika au i te tuinga roa a tētahi tangata kei tētahi o ngā whare wānanga. He āhua pērā tana reo. Ka kī mai, ngā tamariki, ngā mama, ngā tamariki, pāpā, māmā, rā, rā, rā... Ka pērā. Whai i tā te reo Pākehā whakatakoto... Ā, ki a au nei, kei te haramai te wā ka whakaaehia tērā momo whakatakoto e tātau. Nā te mea, he poto nē, he kore, engari, ngā mea pīrangi kia mau tonu te, te āhua wairua Māori nei, “Ko rātau e haramai ko ngā mātua, ko ngā whaea, ko ngā...” ka āhua pērā. Koirā tā te Māori whakatakoto.

Heoi, he tohunga reo tēnei e mōhio ana ka huri, ka rerekē te reo i te takanga o te wā. Nāna tēnei i āpiti atu:

Engari, kei te haere mai te wā, ko ētahi āhuatanga mai i te reo Pākehā ka whakaaetia, ā, ko ētahi, ka whawhai tonutia e koutou. Āe. Ki te kore mātau i konei, ana, kua riro mā koutou tērā whawhai e whawhai. Ka tuku rānei, kei a koutou kē te tikanga. Kāore hoki mātau i konei hei whakahē. Engari, koutou ka uru kaha mai ki te reo, e kore pea ō koutou taringa e whakaae ki te nuinga o ngā āhuatanga hou e uru mai nei. Ā, ko ētahi pea ka, ka noho hei āhuatanga mō te reo Māori o ēnei wā. Ana, kāore he mate o tērā nā te mea, kāore hoki te reo e mau tonu i tōna āhua mō āke tonu atu i roto i te wā ka huri, nē. Ko te mea nui kē, kia kaua e Pākehā te whakatakoto mai. Mēnā ka taea tērā, ana kua pai.

Heoi anō rā, ko tētehi rerekētanga i te takanga o te wā ko te āhei ki te whakahāngai i te kōrero i runga tonu i ngā āhuatanga o te wā. He āhuatanga nui te pūkenga tene⁴² ki tā te Māori ahurea. Ka ngaro tērā, ka ngaro rā tētehi āhuatanga nui o te Mātākōrero:

Ko te whaikōrero pea tātau i rata ai. Koirā te āhua tino kaha rawa atu nei te rerekē. Ka mutu, me te karanga anō pea. Ērā, me titiro e tāua ēnei mea e rua. I pērā ai pea nā te ngaro haere o te reo. He kore tonu nō ngā tāngata e mahi ana i ērā mahi i nāiane i tino mōhio ki te reo. Nē? Mēnā kua āta whakarongo ngā wāhine karanga, te nuinga, kāore noa iho he paku kōrero i roto i ā rātau kupu. Ko te kī noa, “Haere mai, haere mai”, ana, kāore he kōrero. Kāore i hāngai ki te wā, ki taua wā rā me ngā kōrero e āhei atu ana ki taua wā rā. Pēnei i taku tuahine i te rangi nei. Āe rānei he karanga tērā, he haparangi noa iho nō te waha, aua, kāore tāua e tino mōhio. Engari, ko aua kupu rā āna, koirā tonu ana kupu karanga ahakoa haere kē mēnā kua whakarongo. Kāore i whakaaro, ā, kāti, anei te kaupapa. Me pēnei kē pea te whakaaro. Ana, koirā tā mātau whakaako nei i roto i te mea.. Yeah, te kī atu, ko tō kaupapa ko ngā whakataetae haka me haere mai ki [Wāhi]. Me kī, koirā te kaupapa. Me hāngai ō karanga ki tērā kaupapa. Ana, kua mate ngā wāhine ki te kimi, ngā wāhine o te tangata whenua, ngā wāhine o te, o, engari, i kitea ai e rātau ngā kupu nē. Kia waia ai ki te kimi kupu e hāngai ana ki te kaupapa...Engari ki a au nei, ka taea tonutia e koutou, ko te mate kē he kore nō koutou e waia ki tērā āhua. Me whakawaia kē i a koutou. I roto i te wā poto ka taea mēnā kei a koe ngā kupu me ngā whakaaro, ka taea noatia.

Ka kīia mai e te koroheke nei ka whakamātauria kia ako kupu ngā ākonga. Kia rite rawa atu ngā ākonga inā tū ana, tau ana. Hei tauira mō te whaikōrero, ki a ia ‘Ana, pērā anō te whaikōrero. Mēnā tokotoru koutou kei te tū, mahi nui mehemea ko koe te tuatoru ki te kimi kōrero rerekē ake i ā ēnei. Mm. Koirā te tohungatanga o te whaikōrero’. Atu i te whaikōrero, i te karanga, ko tētehi anō momo-kōrero kei te iti haere tōna mana ko te paki, arā, ehara i te tino momo-kōrero ināiane i:

Kōrero ahiahi, kōrero takurua, ērā kōrero katoa. E kore nei e tino, nā te mea, kua kore tātau e noho noa iho ki te kōrero nē? Pērā i ngā wā o mua. Ka noho tātau mātakitaki i te pouaka whakaata. He aha, he kai rānei, he aha rānei

⁴² extemporisation skill

engari, kua kore e maringi noa iho mai te kōrero pērā i te wā o ngā kaumātua rā... He kōrero paki i te, ko te tikanga o te kōrero paki ki a mātau, he mea kōrero whakangahau nei...Engari, ko Te Wharehuia, e hia nei hoki ngā mea kei a ia. Mm. I te pērā katoa ngā kaumātua. Pērā rātau i te kōrero i roto i te wharenuī. Ka mutu ngā mihimihi, kei te takoto katoa hoki te whare, ā, kua tū mai tēnā koroua me tāna pakiwaitara.

Ko tētehi anō āhuatanga reo kua rerekē i te wā o ōna mātua tūpuna, ko tāna, ko te whaikōrero i te kāinga tonu, kua ko te marae anake. Āna rā, kua rerekē te reo Māori i tēnā whakatipuranga i tēnā whakatipuranga:

I tō kāinga tonu, maumahara au tō mātou, kotahi noa iho te rūma o tō mātau whare ko aku korōua... Nā, ka haramai ētahi o te whānau, ka noho mai mātau pēnei anō i te whare nui nei, engari, tū rā anō taku pāpā ki te whaikōrero rā. Tū rā ana rātau i te mihi mai. Kua kore ērā tikanga, engari, i pērā ai rātau nē. Ki te haramai he tangata ki tō whare, ā, tū rawa te reo ki te mihi, ki te whaikōrero. Nā, ka taea katoatia ērā āhuatanga, te whakahoki mai pēnā koirā te hiahia. Ehara i te mea kua tino ngaro, ngaro noa atu nei. Engari, kua kore anō tēnei whakatipuranga Māori e waia... Ki te tū atu koe ki te mihi ki ō manuhiri [ināiane], kua whakaaro, oh, he aha te mate o tēnei nā? Nē? (katakata) Te pōrangi o tēnei ki te mihi mai... Engari, koirā te tikanga. Pērā taku pāpā... Kua tino ngaro noa atu ērā āhuatanga.

Nā, noho reka ana, haere reka ana tā māua nei kōrerorero. I te taunga kē mai o te pō mutu rawa ake ai, ā, he nui te hua o tā māua nei wānanga. Ka rūrū māua, ā, ka totitoti atu te koroua nei ki tōna rūma hōtēra moe ai. I hikaka katoa taku ngākau i te hua o te wānanga me ia. He nui ōna whakaaro hōhonu mō te whakakounga i tētehi momo-kōrero. He ture reo, he mātāpono, he kīpeha hoki.

I ōna whakaaro me ō te kuia rā i kōkiri whakamua ai ētehi whakaaro whānui mō tēnei mea, te whakarākei i te momo-kōrero. He nui noa atu ngā take i wānangahia i tō te kairangahau i whakaaro ake ai. Ka mutu, ko te pūtaketanga pea o tēnei Wāhanga, he whakatakoto whakaaro mō tō tātou nei Māoritanga me tēnei mea te momo-kōrero. I runga tonu i te mea ka takea mai te momo-kōrero i tō tātou nei ahurea. Mā te reo o te hunga mātāputu e wāwāhi te tirohanga hōhonu ki te kaupapa nei, mā te reo o te

mātātahi e whai atu i te Wāhanga e tū nei hei tāpiri atu i ētehi anō āhuatanga reo e rerehua ai te momo-kōrero.

6.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

I tēnei Wāhanga kua whārikihia te nui o ngā whakaaro, o ngā kaupapa, o ngā kōrero mō te momo-kōrero Māori ki tā ētehi kaumātua. He nui tonu ngā aroro tino whai take o ngā kaiuru nei e pā ana ki te whakarākei i ā tātou momo-kōrero. Ko tētehi hua, ko te whakakupu pea i ētehi ara e ātaahua ai ētehi momo-kōrero, ā-tuhi, ā-waha. Ā, mā reira e āwhinatia ai ngā ākonga, ngā kaiako, ngā arero Māori ki te whakanikoniko i te kōrero. He āhuatanga reo, he ture reo, he kupu reo, ā, he reo te kai.

I whānui te titiro i tēnei Wāhanga kia mārō te horopaki o tēnei rangahau, ka tahi. He nui ngā āhuatanga ahurea i wherawherahia i tēnei Wāhanga, pērā i te rerekē haere o te reo. Ka rua, kia kitea ngā reo o ēnei tokorua matatau rawa ki te reo Māori. He mea nui kia noho motuhake te tokorua nei i te pai marire o ā rāua kupu. Hei te Wāhanga Tuawhitu e whai mai ana ka āhua whāiti haere ki ngā mātāpono tekau e rōreka ai te momo-kōrero. Heoi, tau ana ki te Wāhanga Tuawaru, kua kūiti rawa atu te titiro ki tētehi mātāpono kotahi ki tā ngā kaiuru katoa i kī ai, āe, he mea nui rawa atu mō te whakarākei momo-kōrero. Arā, ko te reo peha. Koia te momo reo pea e harikoa ai taua koroheke. Taihoa ake rā ka ruku atu.

Heoi anō rā, i pātai atu au ki te koroua mēnā ka whai tikanga te whakamahi i tāku i rangahau atu nei i roto i ngā akomanga Māori, ko tāna, ‘He aha i kore ai! He aha i kore ai!’ Ki te koroua, ko te kore mōhio, ko te kūare ngā take e kore nei e whai tikanga ēnei āhuatanga reo ki roto i tēnā kura wānanga, i tēnā kura wānanga. I aua kupu āna ka waerea pea te huarahi kia nuku atu ki ngā kōrero e whai nei, he ruku ki te whakahokinga kōrero a tēnā kaiuru, a tēnā kaiuru. Mā ngā kōrero nei, mā ngā kōrero rā e whai mātāpono ai hei tūāpapa mō te titiro ki te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero.

TE WĀHANGA TUAWHITU

He Mātāpono Mātātuhi, He Mātāpono Mātākōrero

Engari kia tirohia te āhua o ngā tuhi kōrero a ngā tīpuna me ngā kaituhi o nāianei, ka kitea he mahi nui tā tātou, arā, te whai atu i ngā tapuwae o ngā tīpuna, kia āhua rite te kounga o ā tātou tuhi kōrero ki a rātou.

Katerina Mataira, 1993

Koia anō tētahi pakanga nui, ko te tuhi i ngā kōrero kia whai i te wairua Māori, ko te rapu i te whakaaro Māori, ko te pēhi i te whakatakoto kupu o te reo Ingarihi... [kia whai kē i] tā te Māori whakatakoto i te kupu.

Hirini Moko Mead¹, 1990

7.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

7.2 He Mātāpono Mātātuhi, he Mātāpono Mātākōrero

7.2.1 Te Aronga ā iwi, Te Aronga Māori

7.2.2 Te Kaupapa Māori

7.2.3 Te Pūtaketanga

7.2.4 Te Rongo ā-ngākau

7.2.5 Te Reo ā-iwi, te Reo ā-kaupapa

7.2.6 Te Reo Peha

7.2.7 Te Whakatakotoranga Māori

7.2.8 Te Momo-Kōrero

7.2.9 Te Tikanga Māori

7.2.10 Te Kōrero Whaihua

7.3 He Anga Mātāpono: Mātātuhi, Mātākōrero

7.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

¹ Te Tari Taiwhenua (1990: vii)

7.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Ko tā tēnei Wāhanga he whakakao i ngā whakaaro o tēnā kaiuru, o tēnā kaiuru mō ngā āhuatanga e pai ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Ka māwhitiwhiti te haere ki tēnā whakaaro, ki tēnā kōrero, heoi anō, ko te tāhuhu kōrero ko ētehi mātāpono e Māori ai te momo-kōrero. I konei ka kōtuia ngā kōrero kaiuru e hāngai pū ana ki tēnei take, te whakakounga i tētehi momo-kōrero. Arā ake, mā tēnei Wāhanga e whakautu ai i te pātai rangahau: Me pēwhea e kounga ai tētehi momo-kōrero?

Taka ai ngā kōrero kaiuru ki raro iho i ngā mātāpono tekau. He mea hanga tonu i runga i ngā kōrero kaiuru me ngā KAUPAPA REO² ka matapakina i te Wāhanga Tuarima. E kīia ana, he mātāpono mātātuhi, he mātāpono mātākōrero i te mea mō te reo, ki te tutuki ngā mātāpono e whai nei, tērā pea ka eke te kōrero ki te taumata e tika ana. Nō runga i te mea, kei te tangata te whiriwhiri ki hea whakamahi ai i ia mātāpono mō te horopaki.

Tērā e kitea e honohono kē ana ngā mātāpono nei, ā, kua whakatakotoria pēneitia kia matapakina ia kaupapa reo. Ko te tirohanga whānui e pēnei ana: mai i te ahurea ki te horopaki, mai i te horopaki ki tā te tangata whiriwhiri i te momo reo e tika ana mō taua horopaki; mai i te whiringa reo ki te momo-kōrero e tika ana hei whakatutuki i tā te tangata i hiahia ai i taua horopaki (tirohia te whakaahua 7.6).

Nā, he nui ngā āhuatanga e kounga ai te momo-kōrero: mai i te aronga ā-iwi, te whakaaro Māori; ki te kaupapa Māori, ngā kaupapa o te wā e auau ana te rangona; ki te pūtaketanga, te take e kōrerohia nei tētehi kōrero e te tangata; ki te rongo ā-ngākau, te hononga atu, te hononga mai o te whatumanawa o tētehi tangata ki tētehi tangata; ki te reo ā-iwi, reo ā-kaupapa ngā REO³ e tika ana mō tētehi horopaki; ki te reo peha, te momo reo whakatairite e hanga whakaahua ai ki te hinengaro; ki te takotoranga Māori, ngā rerenga, ngā kīanga e Māori ai te momo-kōrero; ki te momo-kōrero, ngā kīnga, ngā tānga e tika ana hei whakatutuki i te kaupapa mō tētehi horopaki; ki te tikanga Māori, te tāhu, te whakatakotoranga whakaaro, te raupapatanga whakaaro e tika ana; Ka mutu, ka ea aua āhuatanga i te kaituhi, i te kaikōrero, i te kaiwhakaatu,

² language framework

³ register: Ko ētehi o ngā kaiuru ka whakamahi i te kupu 'reo' mō te kupu 'rēhita'.

kātahi ka mau rawa atu ko te wehi. Arā, ka kīia he kōrero whaihua, anā, kei reira katoa ngā āhuatanga e whaihua ana te kōrero ki tā te whakaminenga.

Mō te whakatauiria i ēnei mātāpono, he pērā anō i te Wāhanga Tuaono kua taha ake nei, ka whakatauiratia e ngā kaiuru ngā ARORO REO⁴, ngā āhuatanga reo ki roto i ngā momo-kōrero e whai tikanga ana ki a rātou. Nā reira ka noho ngātahi ētehi whakaaro mō te whakapapa, mō te whaikōrero, mō te waiata tawhito ki te taha tonu o ngā whakaaro mō te takawiri arero mā ngā tamariki, mō te tukupū⁵, mō te pukapuka pikitia. Tērā pea ka kitea ahakoa te momo-kōrero, tērā tonu mā ngā mātāpono e hiki te reo ki te taumata whakahī.

7.2 He Mātāpono Mātātuhi, he Mātāpono Mātākōrero

He nui ngā whakaaro o te hunga i whai wāhi mai ki tēnei rangahau mō ngā āhuatanga e Māori ai te momo-kōrero. He manomano ngā kupu a te ohu kaiuru, neke atu i te tekau mano kupu i tuhia mō tētehi kaiuru kotahi, ā, arā atu anō ngā kaupapa reo i puta. Ko ētehi o ngā take kāore i uru atu, kei rahi rawa atu te tuinga. Hei tauira, ko te kōrero ā-tinana tērā. Ki tētehi kaiuru i ētehi wā kāore ia i aro ki te kiko, ki te kupu, engari anō te āhua o te tū. Ki tētehi atu ko te mita kē te mea nui, ko te piki, ko te heke, āe, ko te reka o te tangi. Heoi anō rā, he rangahau kē atu tērā te titiro ki ngā koringa tinana, ki ngā huanga oro. He iti noa te tirohia o aua āhuatanga i konei.

Ko te nuinga o ngā whakaaro kei konei e whakarāpopotohia ana he mea hāngai ki te whakarākei i te reo o te momo-kōrero. Me te mea hoki, mīharo katoa te kairangahau i ngā whakaaro o tēnā kaiuru, o tēnā kaiuru. E pārekareka ana hoki te takoto o te reo o ētehi. He reo peha tonu tō ngā tāngata matatau, hei tauira ko tā te kaiuru tuaono:

Hei kōrero whakakapi, e āhua pēnei ana, ko ngā momo [kōrero], ko ngā taewa, pūhā, kiko poaka, engari ko te kaupapa te kōhua. Ka kore e kohuatia, he āhua mātao tonu tō kai. E kore e reka ki a koe.

Arā, he reo whakatairite tonu ō ētehi kaiuru pēnei, me āta rakuraku i te māhunga kia kimihia ake ai he māramatanga. Ko te tikanga o aua kupu whakarite, ki te kore e whai

⁴ language notions

⁵ text message

kaupapa ngā āhuatanga reo pērā i te momo-kōrero, i te kīpeha, e kore nei taua kōrero e eke. Ka mutu, ki te kore e whakaihihi, tērā ka kore e wehi, e kore e wana. Heoi, e manako ana ki te whiua ngā mātāpono ki rō kōhua ko te reo ka rōreka. Ko te kōhua, ko te anga mātāpono i te mutunga o tēnei Wāhanga.

Ko ētehi o ngā kaiuru mārama ka kotahi atu ki ngā tino take e kouna ai te reo. Hei tauira, he mea nui ki tēnei kaiuru ēnei āhuatanga kia kouna te reo: ko te tangi o te reo, ko te kaupapa, ko te reo peha, ko te whakatakoto kōrero, ko te whakahāngai ki te whakaminenga, inā:

Kia mārama te tangi o tō reo, kia tika te haere o te kōrero. Kia kaua e whakaparahako i te kaupapa, i te tangata. Ki a au ko te tino tangi o tō reo, mehemea ka hiahia te tangata ki te whai mai i te āhua o te kaupapa e kōrero ana koe, koirā te tangi. Kei runga i te tangi o te whakahua o ngā kupu, kei runga i tō rapu i te kīwaha, kei runga i tō rapu i te rārangi kōrero hei tautoko i taua kaupapa, kei runga i tō mōhio ki te here atu ki te kōrero nō roto i te pukapuka o te whakaaro, o te titiro a mea, ērā momo āhuatanga katoa. Me tō titiro atu hoki ki te tangata kei te kōrero atu koe, mēnā kei te moe, mēnā kei te tuku atu ia i tētahi whakaaro ki a koe ‘Oh, kua rongo kē au i ēnei kōrero’, he aha atu he kōrero i tua atu i tēnā’. Me te, koirā te momo tangi nē, te hiki rānei o tō reo, te paku rānei o tō reo, te here rānei o tō reo.

Kaiuru Tuawaru

Taka mai ana ēnei whakaaro ōna ki raro iho i ngā mātāpono tekau nei. Otirā, kua whakarāpopotohia ngā whakaaro o te ohu kaiuru ki tētehi mahere. He mahere mātāpono mō te mātākōrero, mō te mātātuhi. Anei te whakapotonga:

Te Whakaahua 7.1: He Mātāpono hei Whakaū i te Momo-Kōrero

Kia Tika	Te Whakapākehātanga	Hei Tauira
7.2.1 Te Aronga ā-iwi	<i>correct iwi perspective</i>	Rangi, Papa, tūpuna, moana...
7.2.2 Te Kaupapa Māori	<i>correct Māori themes</i>	reo, tikanga, whānau, Te Tiriti
7.2.3 Te Pūtaketa	<i>correct purpose</i>	whakanui, whakatau, whakaiti
7.2.4 Te Rongo ā-ngākau	<i>correct connection</i>	tū te ihi, mau te wehi, ka wana
7.2.5 Te Reo ā-iwi, ā-kaupapa	<i>correct register</i>	te reo o mua, te reo o muri ⁶
7.2.6 Te Reo Peha	<i>correct fig. language</i>	kīwaha, kupu whakarite, huarite
7.2.7 Te Takotoranga Māori	<i>correct phrasing</i>	te rerenga mahi āhua/hāngū ⁷
7.2.8 Te Momo-Kōrero	<i>correct text type</i>	ngā momo-kōrero ōkawa, ōpaki
7.2.9 Te Tikanga Māori	<i>correct conventions</i>	te hanganga, te tāhu whakaaro
7.2.10 Te Kōrero Whaihua	<i>effective discourse</i>	mārama ana, tika ana, hāngai ana

7.2.1 Te Aronga ā iwi, Te Aronga Māori

Ko tētehi mātāpono kāore i āta whakaarohia e te kairangahau i mua i tēnei rangahau ko te ARONGA MĀORI⁸: inā ko ngā whakaaro, ko ngā aroro, ko ngā ariā e tino Māori ai te tūāpapatanga o tētehi momo-kōrero. E mea ana ngā kaiuru ki te mārō a reira ka takoto pai atu ērā anō mātāpono.

Mēnā ka kōrero au ‘whakamāori i te reo’ i ahu mai tēra whakaaro i te ao Māori, i te hinekaro Māori, i te honoka o te tākata ki tōna whēnua o tōna whakapapa te pūtaiao me ēra mea, koinā te, me kī, te Māori te *world view*.

Kaiuru 11

Heoi anō, he Māori ake pea ngā whakaaro o roto i ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero i ētehi atu. E mea ana tētehi kaiuru i a ia e titiro ana ki te tātai momo-kōrero, ‘Mā ngā momo-kōrero ōkawa e whakakāhahu i te tangata.’ Arā, te tikanga kei te karakia, kei te karanga, kei te whaikōrero, kei te poroporoaki, kei te whakapapa, kei taua huinga momo-kōrero te tūturutanga o te whakaaro Māori. Ā, ki te whakamaua aua momo-

⁶ Ko te reo o te marae ātea, te reo o te kāuta.

⁷ neuter verb sentence structures/passive sentence structures

⁸ Māori concepts

kōrero ki te ngākau, tērā tētehi oranga o roto. Nei rā tā te kaiuru tuarua mō ngā mea e kaingākau ana ki a ia:

I really love karakia. All the concepts are there. All the world is there. I like anything traditional basically. Karakia. Waiata tawhito. Whakataukī. All those sort of things because it's like a great piece of art, you can look at it and see how it was, it's like a conduit to the old people. And so you can grasp what they were thinking, and saying and doing and living at the time. And they're so wonderful. There was one I was thinking of for this aronga-ā-iwi, there's one waiata from South Taranaki that goes through all the stages of grieving... but in a Māori way. You can get those concepts and live it, and breathe it, and sing it if you understand all those things ngeri, haka, whatever, they really do speak to you and so you do have some sort of a connection to the old people. And in Māori that's a big deal. If you have no connection with the old people there's something missing there. I don't know if that's the same in every culture but it is in Māori. Otherwise whakapapa wouldn't be important, waiata tawhito wouldn't be important.

E kitea ana ka āpitingia atu ko te mōteatea ki taua huinga momo-kōrero whai mana i runga i ngā aroro tino Māori e taka mai ana i reira. Koia hoki tā tēnei kaiuru:

Ko te tūāpapa o te hinengaro Māori i ahu mai i tēra reanga, he reo i noho i puta nā reira i whakamāramatia ai i roto i nga mōteatea. Tuhotu Ariki. Nau Mai e Tama. He mea kua ākona e mātou. He mea nā Rangitāne, he nui te āhua o te reo, te whakamahi i te reo hei whakawhitinga whakaaro Māori i roto i te whakamahinga o te reo.

Kaiuru 23

Heoi anō, kua kōrerotia kētia ki te uia te tangata he aha te momo-kōrero e whai mana ana ki a rātou, ka rerekē anō te whakautu a tēnā, a tēnā. Ahakoa tērā, ko te nuinga o ngā kaiuru i mea mai ko taua huinga momo-kōrero ōkawa tētehi rōpū nui whakaharahara. Ka mutu, ki ētehi ko te tino momo-kōrero, koia ko te whakapapa:

Ko te reo karakia tonu, ko te reo o whaikōrero, o mea. He aha tētahi anō?... ngā momo whakapapa... Ko ngā momo whakamahinga o tēnei kaupapa, o tēnei mea te whakapapa ka noho ko te whakapapa te mea matua. Anei ngā momo whakapaparanga kia kitea ai he aha te mea e whakaaro nuitia ana i taua

wā. Ko te kōrero rānei mō ētahi tīpuna, ko te titiro rānei ki te whakatakotoranga o ngā reanga, ko te kite rānei i te pikitia nui, mā tērā ka tīkina atu tētahi tikanga hei whakapuaki.

Kaiuru 27

Nā, ka takina e taua kaiuru ētehi o ngā tauratanga o te whakapapa. Ko te aho pea te wāhanga iti. He takinga ingoa, me kī. Heoi, he hononga o tētehi ingoa ki tētehi. Nā, mō ia momo takinga tērā ka whakaaturia tētehi āhuatanga o te ao, heoi he paku nei te rerekētanga o ia momo takinga. Ehara rawa i te mea ka hōhonu te ruku i tēnei mea te whakapapa ki tēnei tuhinga, he rangahau kē atu tērā. Heoi, kāore pea e taea te kōrero te aronga ā-iwi me te kore aro ki te whakapapa. Hei tauira noa, mā te tātai kōrero e tūhonohono tātou ki te ao o ngā tūpuna, o Rangi, o Papa, heke iho ki a tātou (Orbell, 1985: whakataki); heoi, ehara rawa i te mea he heke whakararo noa te kaupapa, kei te tuia kētia ki runga, ki raro, ki ngā tahataha hoki (Smith, 2006: 207); mā te whakapapa tonu e whakaatu, e whakatōpū ngā āhuatanga o te ao tūroa (Royal, 1998: 80). Hāunga ērā, nei rā ētehi TIKANGA⁹ o te whakapapa: mā te tāhuhu e honohono te kaikōrero ki ōna hononga tāne (Sterling i rō Salmond, 1985: 30); mā te ‘tātai hikohiko’ e whakaatu ngā tūhonotanga matua o ngā tūpuna,¹⁰ ā, ‘Ka tīmata mai koe i te tipuna, kāre koe e whakahua i ētahi ō ngā mea, ko ngā mea matua anake... ka mahue ētahi ō ngā tipuranga nē i roto i tō whakapapa’(kaiuru tuatoru); ka mutu, mā te taotahi e taki tētehi rārangitanga tūpuna, ā, mā te whakamoe e hoatu ngā ingoa wāhine ki te taha (Williams, 2002: 204). Mōku ake, he KAUPAPA WHAKAARO¹¹ aua tauratanga whakapapa hei whakaatu i tā te Māori titiro. Heoi, he rangahau atu anō tērā. Ehara hoki i te mea koia te katoa o ngā momo tauratanga, heoi hei tirohanga atu ki tā te Māori whakaaro ki te tātai i ōna tūpuna, ā, ki te tātai i tōna ao.

Ka tuhia e te kaiuru 27 ēnei anō tauira whakapapa, mai i te ‘takiaho’ ki te ‘kauwhata’ i raro nei ki te pepa. Kua āpitingia atu he kupu whakamārama, ā, ko ana kupu whakamārama e whai ake nei.

- Takiaho He takinga o te aho, he huanga ingoa tūpuna.
- Tātai He whakahuahua i tētehi āhuatanga e hāngai ana ki te horopaki,

⁹ conventions

¹⁰ He mea tiki atu i <http://maaori.com/whakapapa/whakpap2.htm#Introduction> i te tuaono o Poututerangi 2006.

¹¹ thinking frames

inā he tātai kōrero, he tātai tūpuna.

- Tāhu Ko te hononga matua o tētehi whakapapa.
- Whakapapa Ki te kaiuru 23, ko te 'whakapapa' tētehi āhuatanga āhua hou nei kia whakatakoto i te tātai tūpuna ki runga pepa.
- Kauwhata He kauwhau i ngā tātai tūpuna

Ko te rerenga matua e mea ana, 'Ka mau tonu te tāhu ki roto i te hinengaro'. He rangahau kē atu anō, heoi anō ko te whakapae ka puta, ki te tūturu te whakamau i te whakapapa ki te hinengaro, tērā ko tō titiro atu ki te ao, he tirohanga tino Māori nei. Arā, ka kitea te hononga, te pānga o tētehi āhuatanga ki tētehi.

Ngā momo kōrero whakapapa. Nā, mō te whakapapa. Katoa mō te whakapapa, engari mā te.. ko tā te whakapapa he whakatakoto kia kitea e koe ngā whakatipuranga pērā rā. Ko tā te tāhu kua tīkina atu e koe tētahi tāhu. Ana, ka heke ki tētahi whānau, hapū rānei. Ka hoki anō ki te tāhu. Ka heke, ka haere anō, ka heke, pērā rā, nē. Ka mau tonu te tāhu ki roto i te hinengaro hei kaupapa whai māu. Tā te kaupapa, me tohunga rawa te tangata nā te mea kia pēnei nā. Kia tīmata koe ki kō, nā, ka pekepeke haere. Ka noho kaupapa te whakapapa. Ko ngā hekenga, ko ngā tātai katoa kia āhua pikitia nei, nē. Nā reira me tohunga rawa te tangata kia mōhio ai ia te whanaungatanga o tērā ki tērā.

Kaiuru 27

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui o roto i ngā kōrero nei, ko tā te tātai kōrero he hanga pikitia ki roto i te hinengaro o te tangata. He mea nui tēnei āhuatanga kia kouna te kōrero. Tāpirihia atu, he mea nui ki ngā kaiuru kia kuhu ko te whakaaro Māori ki roto i ā tātou momo-kōrero whānui tonu. Ko tētehi huarahi kia kumea mai te whakaaro Māori, ko te reo peha:

...ko te āhua o te kupu whakarite, engari kia Māori mai te whakarite ki te taiao... 'Me ko Kōpū e rere ana i te pae'. Rawe kē au ki tērā... Ka kitea e koe he tangata, he wahine ātaahua rānei.

Kaiuru 25

E mea ana tētehi kaiuru, ahakoa he reo tika, ki te kore e tika te aroro, arā, e Māori ana te aroro, kāore e eke rawa ana. Pēnei i te reo peha. Ehara i te mea mā te kupu whakarite noa e Māori ai te momo-kōrero. Hei tā te kōrero kaiuru kua taha atu nei,

mehemea ko te taiao te tūāpapa o te reo peha, kātahi ka tau kē, inā ko te whakatairite i te tangata ātaahua ki tō tētehi āhuatanga ātaahua o te taiao. He pēnei anō tēnei kaiuru. Ko te tūāpapa o ana titonga, ko te taiao. Tērā ki te tahuri te whakaaro ki te ngahere, ki te moana, ki hea atu, me te whakakaupapa i tāu i kite atu ai ki ētehi kupu ruarua, kātahi pea te huarahi pai ki te hanga i te reo peha hou:

I tito waiata au i tērā wiki mō tētahi kuia i mate... He pikitia tāku, koinā te mea, te tino pikitia pea, he whakaahua i roto i a au... “me he tōrea i te whatika tai”... mehemea ka kite koe i te tōrea - koinā te tino mahi a te Māori, te whakaaro ki tētahi mea o te pūtaiao hei whakairiiri atu tō pikitia ki ruka. Nā ko te tōrea i whakaaro au i tētahi wā i tae atu au ki te taha moana, kāre he paku tapuwae i te oneone atu i te tapuwae tōrea, nā mēnā ka mōhio koe ki tēnei manu i kā wā katoa. Ka haere takirua te tōrea, ka kite koe i ēnei tapuwae e whā i roto i te oneone... ka noho tahi te tokorua mō te katoa o te ōraka... Me taku whakaaro, A! Ka aha kē tērā tōrea mēnā kua mate tana hoa, mēnā kotahi noa iho e rua noa iho kā tapuwae i te oneone... pēhea te pikitia i tēra wā... arā te kupu whakamārama mō te mokemoke, te kupu whakamārama mō te take a te mapu o te manawa... Koinā pea te rerekētaka o te ao Māori. Ka hokihoki atu tātou ki ēra tūmomo whakaahua, ēra tūmomo whakaaro hei whakairi atu o ā tātou waiata, kupu kia whānui anō te māramataka...

Kaiuru 11

Hei tūhono i aua whakaaro taiao me te kōrero mō te whakapapa, kia titiro ki tētehi tauira nā te kaiuru tuarua. Nāna i kōrero tētehi paki hei whakaari i te aronga Māori i roto i tētehi rerenga kōrero kotahi. I tētehi rā ka kite atu ia i ētehi tamariki o te kura kaupapa Māori e papatu ana i tētehi rākau. I reira tō rātou kaiako. Ka kī te kaiako nei “Kaua e patu i te rākau”, kātahi ka wehe atu. Ū tonu ana te patunga. Ka whakatata mai te kaiuru ka mea iho, “Ha! He pēnā tā koutou manaaki i a Tāne?” Ki taua kaiuru nei koia te rerekētanga o te whakaaro Pākehā me te whakaaro Māori. He whakapapa pea tōna. Ka mutu, e kitea ana ko te whakapapa me te taiao te tūāpapa o te whakaaro kei taua pātai iti rā.

Ko aua KĪANGA PEHA¹² e whakahua ana i ngā āhuatanga taiao, i ngā tūpuna Māori, i ngā Atua Māori, ka tino whai hua pea ki tā te Māori whakaaro. He whakaaro pai, he kīanga pai, he reo pai. Inā:

ko te tangata pai i runga i te reo irirangi Māori, i te reo irirangi, ko te tangata mōhio ki te whakairo kōrero, ki te whakairo kupu. Mōhio hoki ia ki ngā kupu me te whakamahi i ngā kupu. Ā, mōhio au ki tēnā kupu, mōhio au ki tēnā kupu, ki te whakamahi i tēnā kupu... kei te kōrero ia mo tēnei āhuatanga kātahi ka whakatō kupu, te kupu tika i roto i tōna rārangi kōrero kia pai ai te whakamārama. Koirā ngā mea pai ki au. Hei mea...hei whakaātaahua ake i tō reo. Mo te reo irirangi... mo te pouaka whakaata he āhua māmā ake pea. Ka mea; “Ā, kei te kite mai koe!” *katakata* “Kei te ua i kōnei, kei te whiti te rā i kōnā, ā, kia ora rā!” Engari i runga i te reo ā, ka mea; “Ā, anei ngā tohu a Tāwhirimātea.” Koirā, he ātaahua te reo Māori.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ko tētehi anō o ngā tauira o te kaiuru tuarua, i a ia e taiohi ana ka taka ia ki te hē, ā, ka mea tōna kaumātua ki a ia, “Haere ki te whakarongo ki ngā kōrero a te moana.” Ka whakaaro ake te kaiuru, “He aha rawa te tikanga o tēnā kōrero?” Heoi, ka haere atu ia ki te taha moana noho ai, whakatā ai, mātakitaki ai i ngā whawhatinga ngaru, me te whakarongo ake anō ki te pāoroortanga mai o te moana, kātahi ka mākererekere atu ngā āwangawanga, ka tau te mauri. Nā, kei roto katoa aua whakaaro Māori i taua rerenga kotahi, “Haere ki te whakarongo ki ngā kōrero a te moana.”. Nā reira tēnei kaiuru i kī ai, ko te aronga Māori te mea nui rawa atu. Mā te aronga Māori te tirohanga Māori e taea ai. Mā te aronga Māori ko te momo kīwaha, ko te momo whakataukī rānei e tika ana mō te horopaki. Ko tāna:

I guess training people at a young age to, to think along those lines, and that’s how they see the world. They see Tangaroa, they don’t see the sea and so those things become meaningful and so as they go on they, they are not only saying the words, they are experiencing, they’re learning it, and living it and breathing it.

Ki taua kaiuru he wero nui rawa atu ki te ako i te whakaaro Māori, i te aronga Māori mēnā he pāpaku noa te reo o te tangata. Otirā, ahakoa pakari te reo, inā he

¹² figurative phrases

whakatakotoranga pai tonu, ki te kore e kitea tā te Māori titiro, ki a ia ka kore tonu e pai. Ka mutu, ko tētehi TIKANGA MĀORI¹³ kia kaua e tōtika atu ki te kaupapa. Ka huaina he kōrero kē, ā, ka riro mā te whakaminenga e āta whakaaroaro he aha te hononga o taua kīnga ki te kaupapa. He whakaaro Māori, he kōrero Māori hoki tērā:

...it's that aronga ā-iwi, it's that kaupapa seen to be above everything, so from the kaupapa you can get kawa, you can get tikanga and then everything else, so karakia you can mainly hear and all that. So the karakia, what I would consider beautiful tend to be those that have come from sort of traditional Māori concepts in that, it's from the environment, it's from Rangi and Papa, it's from some sort of basis from tūpuna as opposed to colonisation. So you can just tell, you can hear it if you understand it. It's come from that, it's that pūtaketanga mai that really makes it beautiful for me. And there's the individual language slabs that's like heaps of beautiful sort of metaphors and comparisons, but, you know, tend to be somewhat oblique, not too direct. It seems to be you know with many things as in the taonga for the body and taonga, stuff like that, that tended to be not so direct about it. It tended to do the karakia and whakataukī and waiata for something else. But the people really knew what they were talking about...I think that's certainly part of what some of the old people... have been trying to get across in order to understand those things.

Kaiuru tuarua

Ka whakatauiratia e te kaiuru tuarua tētehi rerenga āna e kounga ana ki a ia, me te kī ake, ko tā te kaikōrero pai he whakahua i tētehi whakatakotoranga kōrero, kātahi ka whakaaro ake te whakaminenga, 'Wē! He āhua pai tonu taua rerenga kōrero'. Hei whakamārama ake i tēnei whakaaro āna ka kīia mai i tētehi rā mihimihi ka whakaritea e ia tētehi o ana tauira ki a Māui nā runga i tā te tauira ekenga ki taumata kē noa atu, ā, ko ia hoki te pōtiki o te whānau. 'Kia moumahara tātou nāna ngā mahi whakahirahira. Ehara nā ōna tuākana'. Nō muri kē mai ka wānanga ai, he whakaaro Māori tērā. Ki a ia ko te tūāpapa o ngā akoranga māna ko te ARORO¹⁴ Māori i pērā ai tana āhei ki te 'whakaaro Māori'.

¹³ Māori convention

¹⁴ concept

Ko tētehi anō āhuatanga nui o te mōhio ki te aronga ā-iwi i te tuatahi ki te kitea atu tētehi āhuatanga reo e tauhou ana ki a koe, tērā pea ka kitea te aroro i te tuatahi kātahi ko te reo:

...so I think there's a lot of things like that certainly in my learning and being taught and stuff that were along those lines that get the, get the big concept and you'll be able to understand the individual words and, and you know, even down to the specifics like if, if you picked up a grammar book that doesn't make sense but it does make sense in the big context and because it is a karakia or a whakataukī or a waiata, you can change it and make it not grammatically correct. 'E kino wa'ine e reia... Kino, [the noun] after the [adjective] ...what!? [is that all about?]

Kaiuru tuarua

Koia hoki tētehi tauira mō te TIKANGA¹⁵ o te whakataukī. Arā, ko te whakataukī he momo-kōrero e mau ana ngā whakaaro ka tino whakarāpopototia nā reira he rerenga kētanga āna kia pērā ai. Waihoki, he tikanga motuhake tā ia momo-kōrero. Ki te kaiuru tuarua he pērā te kupu. Ki a ia he tikanga tērā māna kia kaua e hohoro ki te whakamāori ā-ingarihi nei ki te KUPU MINO¹⁶, engari me aro nui atu ki te aroro kātahi ka whakamāori ai:

...need the vocab to cope with their world. Second language learners don't have it. What's the word for microwave? Kei whea te whakawera! You don't need to bloody work that out right now. And it's very clear and it's about communication. You can research it and say umu rauiti, and umu ngaruiti, or maikorowewhe, but you don't need that right now... Get away from transliterations [loanwords] then our brains wire themselves to think in that way instead of saying 'Meatia ki roto i te maikorowewhe'. It's, 'Komotia atu ki roto i te whakawera'. Dialect word, real traditional word and you just made it up at the time...

Hei whakarāpopoto i tēnei kōrero mō te whakaaro Māori, e tika ana pea kia titiro whakamuri kia neke whakamua tō tātou nei reo:

¹⁵ convention

¹⁶ loan word

Ki a au nei kia Māori ai te reo kia hoki anō ō tātou whakaaro, a whakaaro nei ki te ao o ngā mātua tīpuna, i reira kē ngā tauira hei whai mā tātou. E hia kē nei ngā tauira kua whakatakotoria hei ara mō tātou engari i te nuinga o te wā...ko te nuinga o ngā tāngata kāore i te whai i ērā tauira kōrero nei, kupu nei, engari ki a au nei ko tērā te tino whāinga... me kī he rangatira anō tērā whakaaro kia ora anō ngā kōrero, ngā rerenga kōrero a ō tātou nei tīpuna. Kia tangata whenua anō ki tēnei ao hurihuri.

Kaiuru 12

7.2.2 Te Kaupapa Māori

Ka huri te wā, ka rerekē ngā kaupapa o te iwi. Arā, he kaupapa kē kei mua i tō tātou nei aroaro i tēnei wā i ngā kaupapa i kōkiritia e ngā tūpuna i tō rātou nā wā. He wāhanga nui te kaupapa ki te horopaki. Mai i ngā kaupapa o te wā, i te horopaki ka puta ētehi momo-kōrero e hāngai ana ki aua kaupapa. He mea nui tērā whakaaro i te mea kāore te momo-kōrero e taka kau i te rangi. He take tōna, he KARERE¹⁷ ōna e hāngai ana ki ngā kaupapa o te wā.

Kei te pukapuka a Mason Durie *Ngā Tai Matatū* (2005:235-252) ka tirohia ngā kaupapa nui e pā ana ki a tātou i ēnei rā. Ā, kei ia upoko he kaupapa nui: ko tēnei whenua; ko te tupuranga me te oranga o te iwi; ko ngā rawa Māori pēnā i te whenua; ko te hī ika; ko te pūtaiao me te auahatanga; ko te ture; ko ngā kaupapa here a te Kāwanatanga; ko te tōrangapū o te iwi (reira tonu: 235). Ka hangā e Durie he anga e kōkiri whakamua ai te iwi Māori. E whā ngā huinga kaupapa i te reo peha: ko te Tai Ata; ko te Tai Tangata; ko te Tai Tini; ko te Tai Ao. Mā te whakarāpopotonga e whai nei ka kitea ētehi kaupapa nui a te Māori i tēnei wā tonu.

Ko te Tai Ata, ko tā te ira tangata noho me te whenua. He hononga ā-wairua ki te taiao. Koia hoki tā te iwi taketake titiro ki te ao. Ko tā te Māori, ki a Durie, e toru ngā ao: ko te ao wairua, ko te ao tangata, ko te ao o te hunga mate. Koia rā e kaha whakahuatia nuitia ai rātou kua ngaro ki te pō. Ki tā te Māori titiro kei reira tonu rātou hei arataki i a tātou i tēnei ao. Ahakoa noho ai ki whea. Nā, he kaupapa nui mō tātou,

¹⁷ message

ko te nekehanga a ngāi Māori ki ngā tāone. Hāunga te take ka noho a Ngāi Tāua ki te tāone kei reira tonu te kaha whakaū o ngā kura Māori ki ngā uara Māori, pēnei i te hononga ki a Rangi, ki a Papa.

Ko te Tai Tangata, ko te noho a tangata takitahi, takirōpū ki a Durie. E whā ngā āhuatanga mō te tangata. Ko te tupuranga o te pāpori ka tahi. Arā, i tokonui tātou i mua i te taetanga mai o Tauīwi. I tino heke, ā, ka piki anō ā te tau 2021 ka hauwhā te taupori o Aotearoa (reira tonu: 238). Ka rua, ko ngā āhuatanga porī-o-haoha pērā i te ekenga mātauranga, te pikinga orangatanga, te kaumātuatanga, te kaiārahi tōrangapū. Ka toru, ko te whai wāhi atu ki ngā tikanga Māori. Pērā i te kōrerohia o te reo Māori. Ka whā, ko te whai wāhi atu ki ngā rōpū puta noa, ki te whānau, ki te hapū, ki te iwi, ki te rūnanga, ki te iwi whānui. Inā, ehara taku toa i te toa takitini.

Ko te Tai Tini, ko te whai wāhi atu ki ngā rawa o te iwi. Hei tā Durie, e rua ngā taha. Tuatahi, ko ngā rawa ahurea pērā i te reo, i ngā mōteatea, i te mahi toi, i ngā pūrākau. Katoa tēnei tuhinga ka taka mai i reira. Āpitingia atu ko te mātauranga me ngā wāhi e kōingotia ana e te Māori. Tuarua, ko ngā rawa kikokiko nei. Ko te whenua, ko ngā awa, ko ngā moana, ko ngā ngahere, ko ngā tauranga ika, ko ngā takutai moana, ko te ao tūroa. Ko ngā whakaaro matua o konei, ko te pupuri, ko te whanake, ko te whakaora, ko te whakawhānui i aua rawa. He kaupapa nui tonu.

Ko te Tai Ao, arā, ko ngā kaupapa o te ao whānui nei kei te pā ki a tātou. He pānga ki te nohotahitanga o te iwi, he pānga tikanga, he pānga ohaoha, he pānga taiao. E rima ngā āhuatanga e pā nei ki te iwi Māori ki tā Durie: Ko te ture; ko te kaupapa here; ko te ia me ngā tikanga o te wā; ko te hangarau; ko te whakaaro (tirohia Durie, 2005: 246-48 mō te roanga ake).

Nā, koia ētehi o ngā tino kaupapa ki a Durie e pā ana ki te iwi Māori i ēnei rā. Ko ētehi o aua kaupapa he taumaha tonu. Ki tētehi kaiuru kei te tāmia rawatia ngā ākongā me ngā pouako e tētehi kaupapa nui, ko te whakaora reo. Ā, kāore e whai wāhi ana ki te whakangahau i tā te Māori i ngahau ai:

Ki a au nei ko tētahi o ngā ārai... kua āhua taumaha te reo ki runga i ngā tamariki... kei runga i ō rātou pakihīwi te oranga mō te reo, “Ko koutou ngā tamariki e whakaora ana i te reo.....ngā tau e heke mai nei, nā reira kia tika te

reo”. He taumaha te reo ki ētahi tamariki, nā reira kāore rātou e rongō i te wairua harikoa o te reo, ngāwari, hātakēhi, he mea taumaha te reo ki runga i ētahi o ngā tamariki. Taumaha rawa tērā ao ki runga i ngā pouako hoki. I a au e whakaako tamariki, tamariki nohinohi ka hanga mātou i ngā kupu mene karanga, *nonsense words*... he pai ki a rātou, ka kata rātou i runga i te harikoa... Hātakēhi ki ngā tamariki ki te hanga kupu... ka tīkina e rātou ngā kāri ha he hi ho hu, ki te hanga kupu, ka kata! Ka kata ki roto i ngā puku engari he taumaha tēnei mea te reo... ki te nuinga o ngā pouako, ki te nuinga o ngā tamariki kua rongō au i tērā taumaha ki runga i a au, nā reira kāore pea e wātea ana ngā tamariki me ngā pouako ki te tākaro ki te reo, ki te rāwekeweke... He wā ki te whakatika reo, he wā hoki ki te tūhura i ngā momo āhuatanga katoa o te reo engari kei te mata..., tērā pea ka matakū ngā pouako, kei te whakaaro ahau mōku i tēnei wā ki te mahi, nā ko te tino hiahia kia tino tika te reo i ngā wā katoa, nō reira kua āhua mārō...

Kaiuru tuawhitu

He wā mō te whakataumaha, ā, he wā atu anō mō te whakamāmā. E mea ana tētehi kaiuru he tino kaupapa, he tino TIKANGA te whakakatakata mēnā kei te whakahaere koe i tētehi hui, he mārena rānei, he huritau rānei, he aha atu anō. Ko tāna, me hanga kōrero paki e hāngai ana ki taua wā tonu. He āhua rite tēnei āhuatanga ki te whakatoī. Ki ētehi kaiuru he mea nui te whakatoī ki tā te Māori titiro. Anā, kei te reo whaikōrero, kei te reo kōrerorero, heoi te mate kē ki tētehi kaumātua, me tino eke tō reo kia whakahoki i taua reo whakatoī. Kei te ngarongaro haere taua āheinga ki te whakautu i te whakatoī ki te whakatoī. Ka mutu, ki tēnei anō kaiuru, he pai kē atu te whakamāmā i te whakataumaha i te kōrero:

...me pēhea whakareka ai, kei runga i te whakaaro o te tangata kaikōrero, te whakareka i te kōrero, te whakamāmā i te kōrero, kia kaua e tino taumaha. Kaua e tino taumaha, i te mea hoki, kia taumaha ana, ō, ka hōhā.

Kaiuru tuawaru

Ki te nuinga o ngā kaiuru e tika ana kia tīmata ki tētehi kaupapa, kātahi ka huri ki ngā momo-kōrero. Hei tauira:

...a tērā wiki, ka tīmata ahau ki te kaupapa hou, ko te whānau a Tama Nui i te Rā. Ko tāku, kia aro atu ki ngā huahuatau me ngā kupu whakarite. Ka

honohono ahau i ngā rotarota hoki. Taku nei whakaaro, ka haere ngātahi ērā, ana mā te aro ki ēnei momo-kōrero, ka whai kiko ahau mō te whakaako i ngā kupu, ngā kīwaha, ā, hei whakanikoniko i ā rātou tuhinga. Ko ētahi o ngā tamariki he rawe mō te tuhi whakaaro, engari mō te whakanikoniko, mō te whakahihiko i te wairua, ā rātou tuhinga, kāre i a rātou tērā. Nā reira, ka hoki anō au ki tērā me te kounga. He mahi nui tērā ki ahau. Mehemea kāore te kounga o te kōrero i reira, ana, maroke. Waiho ki te pae kia kohia te puehu. Ki ahau nei, me pērā te āhua o te tuhinga hei hopu i te kaipānui.

Kaiuru 17

Ko tā te kaiuru tuatoru, he kaitā pukapuka, tērā ka taka mai ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero i te kaupapa. Arā, mō te kaupapa nei o te kura mō te tikanga ā-iwi, he momo-kōrero hei tautoko i taua kaupapa:

...ko te tikanga ā-iwi ka hāngai tonu ki te iwi tonu me āna tikanga nē. Ko te nuinga, ko te whenu, ko te wāhanga o te marautanga i tuhia aua pukapuka ko te wāhi me te taiao, nā reira i taea te whakauru atu i ngā kōrero tuku iho, ngā momo kōrero tuku iho pērā i te mōteatea, pērā i te pepeha me ētahi he pakiwaitara hoki, ko te mea hoki ko ngā pakiwaitara, ko ngā pūrākau e hāngai ana ki te taiao nē i noho nei ngā tīpuna...

He pērā anō te kōrero a tēnei kaiuru mō te marautanga i a ia e titiro ana ki te Tātai Momo-Kōrero o te Wāhanga Tuatoru. Ko te kaupapa ka tahi, ka rua ko ngā momo-kōrero. Ki a ia mā reira, mā te hoatu kaupapa e pai ake ai taua mahere momo-kōrero. Arā, te whakaatu ki hea taka ai tēnā kaupapa me tēnā kaupapa i raro i tēhea kārangarangatanga momo-kōrero. Ko te mate kē pea, ahakoa te kaupapa, katoa ngā momo-kōrero kei te hāngai ki te kaupapa ka kōrerotia.

...mō ngā kaupapa marautanga ehara i te mea hou kia tīkina atu ko ngā whānau atua nei hei tohu i ngā kaupapa i roto i ngā kura. Ko ngā manu. Ko ngā kaupapa o Tangaroa o wai ake, o wai ake, o wai ake. Nā, ko taua whānau kotahi rā, taua whānau atua rā. Nā, mehemea ka tirohia tēnei nā, tērā pea mō te kōrero, mō ngā momo kōrero rānei kia tīkina atu ko tetahi kaupapa kotahi, tētahi tauira kotahi, kei roto i taua tauira ētahi wāhi, rohe, aha rā hei whakawehewehe i ngā momo kōrero nei. Koinā noa iho tāku.

Kaiuru 27

I te hōhonutanga o ētehi kaupapa ka riro mā tangata kē e whakamārama, e arataki rānei ki te māramatanga. Ko tētehi huarahi hei whakapakari i te hinengaro, ko te tuku i te urupounamu. He momo pātai hei whakawhanake i te tirohanga ki te ao Māori. Koia tā tētehi o ngā kaiuru, arā, ko tā tana kaumātua he tuku pātai, ahakoa i waenga tāone noa rāua e kai aihikirimi ana, ka pātai te koroua rā: ‘Nō reira, he aha i tahuri ai a Tāne ko raro ki runga, ko runga ki raro?’ He ōpaki te horopaki, he hōhonu te kaupapa. Ko tā taua kaiuru he whakamātautau hoki tā ngā pātai o te koroheke kia kitea mēnā kua rite kia piki ki taumata kē kia kai i ētehi kai mārō kē atu. Nā, ki te eke te whakahokinga kōrero, kua ea tērā kaupapa. Heoi, ka uua haere ngā momo pātai, ka hōhonu haere te titiro ki te ao Māori. Koia hoki tā tēnei kaiuru:

...kei runga tonu i te kaupapa me te hōhonu, he hōhonu rawa, kāre he take kia whangaihia ki ngā tamariki nohinohi. Ko te mea hoki ko, kia whāngai tonu i te kai tika kia mau ai, nā reira koinā ki a au nei, pērā i ētahi o ngā kōrero pūrakau ahakoa he korero kua mau ki te hinengaro o te tamaiti, ko te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa taihoa pea kia pakeke ake kātahi ka mārama, ka mōhio ki tērā, ki te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa. Nā reira... mō ngā momo kōrero he tapu pea kei runga... He tapu anō i runga anō i te hōhonutanga o te mātauranga, o te mōhio tanga o te kaupapa.

Kaiuru tuatoru

Āpitingia atu, kei te āhua tonu o tō reo whakamārama i te kaupapa tētehi mea nui. Kei ēnei kupu kaiuru kitea ai me kaua e hoki atu, hoki atu ki ngā kupu ōrite ki te whakamārama i tētehi kaupapa:

Ki a au nei ko te tangata *pai* mō te kōrero, ko te tangata mōhio ki ngā tumomo kupu, he tino *nui* tāna whakamārama. Ehara i te mea ka mea atu...ā...he ōrite tāna kōrero mo ia kaupapa. Ka kōrero tēnā tangata mo tētahi kaupapa, kātahi ka puta mai tētahi kupu, ka mea atu, “Uuuuu!” Tētahi kōrero, ka; “Uuuuuuuu!” Tētahi whakatauākī, kīwaha... he mea nui wērā, hei whakamārama... Pērā hoki i te kāinga, ka mea rātou i ngā kōrero, ngā huahuatau.... “Kino kē koe, e kare! Kino kē koe!” Mōhio tonu au, ā, ko te tino ia o tērā kōrero he *pai* koe. Ā, he mea nui wērā, kia puta wērā kōrero. Ko wētahi o ngā kaiwhakapāhō, *ē tama!* Ahakoa he aha te kaupapa, he ōrite te

reo! Kāore he tino rerekē ngā kupu, kāore he tino...me whai tātau i ngā kōrero tūāuriuri whaioio, kia whakaātaahua ake te reo. Koirā ki a au nei ngā kupu, ngā kōrero, kia matatau hoki koe ki ngā hītori, ki tō kaupapa.. Kia matatau koe ki tō kaupapa.

Kaiuru tuaono

7.2.3 Te Pūtaketa

He nui ngā take ka titoa tētehi momo-kōrero e ngā mātua tūpuna. Mehemea he taunu, tērā pea ka titoa he whakautu ki roto i te pātere. Mehemea he kitenga hou, tērā pea ka whakamaua ki rō whakataukī. Mehemea he mahara i tētehi hara, tērā pea ka hīa ake he haka, he manawa wera rānei. Nā reira, he pūtaketa tā ia momo-kōrero.

He rerekē te pūtaketa o te whaikōrero ki tā te reta. Ka mutu, he nui tonu ngā pūtaketa o te reta. He nui ngā momo reta. He reta hei whakaipoipo, he reta hei pōhiri atu, he reta hei tono atu, he reta hei whakamārama. He āhua pērā anō te whaikōrero. He mihi ki ētehi, heoi, arā ake anō ētehi momo, he mea ora, he mea mate, he mea tūhonohono, he mea tutū puehu, he mea whakaea nawe. Nā, kia tū māia te tangata me tōna reo Māori, me ako ia momo-kōrero, me ako hoki ia pūtaketa e hāngai ana ki tāna mahi, ki tōna ao. Ki te mau i a koe ngā momo-kōrero tērā pea ka wātea te ngākau, ka āio te hinengaro, ka tau te tangata ahakoa haere ki whea. He mana pea tō te KETE MOMO-KŌRERO¹⁸.

Nā, e āwangawanga ana tētehi o ngā kaiuru kua huri te pūtaketa o ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero pērā i te pepeha. Ko tōna tikanga hei whakamōhio te pepeha nō hea te tangata. Ki tēnei kaiako, kua hurihia te pūtaketa hei kupu mihi kē. Engari ia, he rerekē tētehi momo-kōrero i tētehi, arā, ehara rawa te pepeha i te kupu hei mihi, hei whakanui. Ki te takia te pepeha hei kupu mihi kei whakanui kē i te kaikōrero, kaua ko te kaiwhakarongo:

Ka tūtū haere ngā tamariki ki te mihi i a rātou... ko te tūmanako ka ako ngā tamariki ki te mihi ki ngā tāngata, ki te mihi hoki ki ngā āhuatanga o te wā, me tērā te tino pūkenga ka akongia kia kaua te tamaiti e tū ki te mihi he āhua ōrite ki te kākā e mihi ana, e mihi ana ia rā, ia rā. Engari kāore he kiko ki roto. Ko

¹⁸ repotoire of text types

tērā te tino tūmanako kia ako te tamaiti ki te whakahāngai i te mihi ki te tangata ki te whakahāngai i te mihi ki te kaupapa, ki ngā āhuatanga o te wā, engari ki tōku nei titiro hoki kua āhua rangirua mātou i roto i ngā akomanga ināiane mō te mihi me te pepeha... Ka tū ētahi tamariki ki te whakahua i tō rātou pepeha... ki ētahi, he mihi tērā, engari ehara i te mihi, ka tū te tamaiti ki te whakahua i tana pepeha... engari ko te tino kaupapa o te mihi ki te whakanui tangata, ki te whakanui āhuatanga...

Kaiuru tuawhitu

Koia hoki te pūtake o tēnei mea te whaikōrero ki tā tēnei kaiuru, arā, he tūhono i te kaikōrero ki te kaiwhakarongo. Heoi, mā te momo whakatakotoranga kupu hoki e pērā ai; kua mā te kī i te kupu 'taku' engari mā te kupu 'tātou' e tūhono ai te kaikōrero ki te kaiwhakarongo. He tino Māori te aroro nei, arā, 'me ohu' (tirohia *Te Hinatore* mō ētehi anō whakaaro Māori), me kua pea e takitahi:

Ki a au nei, ko te āhuatanga hei whakareka i te kōrero ko te āhua o te tangi o te reo o te tangata. Ko tana whakarewa haere i ana kōrero, tana tūhono i ana kōrero ki tētahi kaupapa hāngai ki te hunga whakarongo, ko tana kakama te tangi o tana reo i roto i a ia e kōrero rā, ehara i te reo āki, ehara i te reo tohutohu, engari he reo whakahuihui eh, he kōrero, he reo ahakoa he aha tana kōrero ka hāngai ki te hunga whakarongo, he kōrero hūmārie, ka taea tonu e koe te whakahūmarie i te kōrero o te whakapapa, ā, ka puta tō tātou tipuna ne. Nā i roto hoki, ka mea 'A ko taku tipuna' me huri e koe 'Ka puta tō tātou tipuna' nā, nā tō tātou tipuna ka puta tēnei kōrero. Anei i kōrerotia e ia tēnei kōrero i tērā o tō tātou marae. Nā koirā te āhua o te tangata, hei here, hei here. Mēnā kei te huri au i te reo, ā, ko taku tipuna ko mea, ā, nā taku tipuna i kōrero, arā i taku marae. Nā mahue katoa te iwi rā nē, kāore te iwi i reira i roto i te kōrero.

Kaiuru tuawaru

Ka kōrero tonu te kaiuru tuawaru me te whakatau i āna kupu ki te reo peha:

Ana koirā te tino pūtake o te whaikōrero... ki a au rā ko taku āwhina, kua kite au i te hanga o te tangata. Kātahi ka mōhio tonu koe me pēhea te hoatu i te kōrero, he aha ngā kōrero, me ahu mai ngā kōrero i hea, ana, mutu rawa ake, ānō nei he kākahu aua kōrero rā mō te tāngata.

Heoi anō rā, he wā kia paiheretia te iwi, he wā kia whakawehetia. Koia tā tēnei kaiuru, he wā tōna ko te pūtaketanga o te kōrero he whakapātaritari. Ehara i te mea kei te whakapono te kaikōrero ki āna kupu, heoi he TIKANGA tonu o tētehi momo-kōrero - kia whakatakotoria te manuka, kia tutū te puehu, kia hīa ake he kōrero:

He rerekē ngā wāhanga. Ngā wāhanga kei te whakapāhō. Ko wētahi he, he talkback... he rerekē tērā no te mea ko tō mahi i roto i tērā wāhanga he akiaki, he akiaki kōrero, he whiu pātai, he whiu kōrero, ki te akiaki, ki te whakawera i te toto o ngā kaiwhakarongo. Koirā. Ehara i te mea he tino whakapono koe ki ngā kōrero, engari ko tō mahi, pēnei...mēnā ka...kei te kōrero mō te Pāti Māori, ka mea te kaiwhakapāhō, “Ā, ki au nei, kāore he tino take o tēnei pāti, te Pāti Māori. Ahakoa kei te haere tātou ki te hīkoikoi i te mata o te whenua mō te Pāti Māori, ki a au nei, he karetao tonu tēnei o te kāwana.” Kātahi ka, ka wera wera katoa ngā raiti o ngā...ka waea mai ngā koroua, ngā kuia...koirā tō mahi: he akiaki. He whakahau atu, he whakatutū pea i te puehu kia pai ai te kōrero.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ko ētehi pūtaketanga mō te tito waiata ko te tuku rānei, ko te pupuri rānei. Arā, ko te tuku i ngā kare-a-roto kia rere kia kore ai e mauaharatia tētehi take. Ā, ko te pupuri anō rānei i ngā kōrero mō ngā reanga kei te pihi ake kia kore ai e wareware tētehi hara. Inā hoki tā tēnei kaiuru, he āwhina ngā kupu o ngā waiata tawhito ki te whakamana i ngā tono ki te Taraipiunara o Waitangi i te rironga whenua atu, ā, ka tika me hoki whenua mai. I mua rā ko te pūtaketanga o ngā waiata pēnei, he maumahara pea, he ngaki utu mō ngā reanga kei te haramai; ināianei kua whai hua i tētehi atu pūtaketanga, inā he taunaki, he whakamana i ngā tono kia ea ai aua hara:

engari i tuhia kētia hei waiata tangi... pēnei tonu i te tangihana, he tangihanga mō te whenua, ā, ka murua, ka panaia, ka hunuku te iwi ki tētahi wāhi. Na, kua haere mai rātou, kua rūrihia te whēnua, kua riro i a rātou. Nā ko tā mātou mahi, ko taku mahi he titiro i aua hīkoitanga rā, ko wai i reira e noho ana, he aha koe i mōhio ai, ana i roto i ngā waiata ka kōrero rātou he whare i konā, he māra kai i konā, te tuahu ki konā, i kona tō mātou tipuna e tāpuke ana, ērā momo katoa. I roto i ērā waiata ka puta ērā waiata i roto i te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero me te karanga, me te mea hoki ka kī atu koe ki te karauna, arā te poraka

whenua nō tēnei hapū, ko te rangatira i reira ko mea, ko te marae ko mea, ko ngā mahi a ngā tāngata i reira anei, anei, anei. Kua kī mai te karauna he aha koe i mōhio ai, anei te waiata e kōrero ana. Ana, kua kī atu koe ‘Waiatatia atu te waiata’, ana kua waiata rātou.

Kaiuru tuawaru

Ko ētehi tāngata e kī ana ko tā te waiata a muri i te whaikōrero hei kinaki. Kātahi te kōrero takahi i te mana o taua momo mutunga kē mai o te ātaahua. Ka whakamāramahia te take waiata e tēnei kaiuru ki te reo peha tonu:

I kite ai tātou i ēnei rā, ko tēnei mea ko te waiata, waiatatia i muri o te whaikōrero ne, hei hiki i te tapu o te kōrero, engari nā runga i ngā whakawhitiwhiti kōrero nei kua kite tātou ko tētahi atu āhuatanga o te waiata hei pono, hei whakaatu i te ora o te kōrero, kua kite tātou hei poutokomanawa nē? Hei kaupapa whakaari i te āhua o te iwi, nā reira kei tua noa atu te waiata i te kōrero noa iho, i te waiata noa iho.

Kaiuru tuawaru

Kia tahuri atu ki te taha tuhituhi, ki te kaiuru tuawhitu, he hiahia nōna kia mōhio ngā ākonga nohinohi ki ‘te painga me te oranga kei roto i te mahi tuhituhi mō rātou’. Engari, pakeke rawa ake ngā tamariki, ka āhua ‘maroke ngā tuhinga’. Ka meatia ‘Kāore he hononga kei waenganui i te mahi tuhituhi me te ao o te tamaiti’. Ka whakamāramatia e te kaiuru tuawhitu:

Ko te nuinga he hokinga mahara, i tuhi mātou i ētahi tuhinga pohewa, i tuhi mātou i ētahi tuhinga, kāore au i te mōhio ki te kupu tika, engari he tuhinga e pā ana ki te āhua o te ao, he tuhinga, kāore au i te mōhio ki te kupu Māori ahakoa i te whakaako au i ngā tamariki, engari ko te *descriptive writing* nē, mō tētahi tino wāhanga kia whakaahua ngā tamariki i te āhua o te ao nei ki ngā kupu. Engari ko te nuinga he hokinga mahara, he hokinga mahara, he tuhi tohutohu, nā te mea he māmā rawa tērā ki te tuhi i ngā tamariki ki te ako i ngā tamariki, ki te tuhi tohutohu.

Ko tētehi huarahi e ea ai tērā hiahia ōna, ko te mōhiotanga pea ki te pūtaketanga o ia momo-kōrero, o ia momo tuhinga. He tuhinga hei whakaihiihi rānei, hei whakamārama rānei, hei whakaatu rānei i te ao e noho nei rātou, hei aha rānei, inā:

Kei te tikanga anō o taua momo tuhinga te mea e kī ana me pēhea, he aha te mea matua, he aha te kaupapa, tikanga matua rānei o taua momo tuhinga. He tohu rānei, he whakamōhio rānei, he tuku wairua rānei...

Kaiuru 27

Nā, ko tētehi tikanga nui a te Māori, ko te manaaki i te tangata. Ko tētehi taha nui ōna, atu i te kai, i te waiata, ko te kōrero hei whakangahau.

Ko te reo pai ki ngā iwi katoa ahakoa he aha, ko te reo whakakatakata. Mōhio tonu au, he reo... ko te reo katakata, koirā te reo o tātau, o te iwi Māori. Kei a tātau ō tātau ake nei... kei te reo... kei te iwi Māori ōna ake whakaaro mo tēnei mea ko te whakakatakata.

Kaiuru tuaono

Nā, ki te kaiuru tuawaru ki te ‘kata katoa ngā tāngata, tērā tonu, kua hono mātou’. Koia pea tētehi pūtaketanga nui o te paki, he paihere i te iwi. Ā, i tēnei wā o te tāmitanga o ngā tini kaupapa e tika ana pea kia ngahau te iwi. Nā, ehara rawa i te mea ko te kōrero tapu anake ka rangona i te marae. He wā, he wāhi mō ngā momo-kōrero me ngā momo kaupapa katoa o runga i te marae, o roto rānei i te whare nui. Ki konei mutu ai mō te pūtaketanga, ā, mā ngā kupu e hoki mai ai ngā whakaaro ki te papa. Ko te kōrero paki te momo-kōrero, ko te ai te kaupapa, ā, ko te ngahau te pūtaketanga:

I rongo atu au ki ngā kuia kōrero i te marae. He tika hoki tēnei kōrero. Kei te... i kōrero mo tētahi koroua nō Ruātoki. I Ruātoki mātau. Tētahi o ngā kuia... I reira mātau i tētahi hui... takoto ana mātau... koirā tētahi reo *ātaahua* katoa ki a au. Ko te reo o te wharenuī. Ka oti ngā karakia, ka oti ngā mihimihi, ā, ka takoto. Ka moe. Kātahi, waenganui pō ka tīmata ngā kōrero. Tahi, rua karaka i te ata pea ka tīmata ngā koroua, “O, pai te...” Kei te tū tonu...kei te noho ngā koroua me ngā kuia ki te whakawhitiwhiti kōrero. Kōrero pakiwaitara, kōrero hītori, i reira mātau, ā, ka whakarongo kōrero, ka moe, whakarongo kōrero... *oho* ake au i tētahi pō...tēhea wharenuī? Rongokārae, Ngāti Rongo, Ruātoki. I te kōrero rātau mō tērā mahi, te mahi whai wahine, whai tāne. Kōrero tēnei kuia...i tōna wā, ō, tekau mā whā pea ōna tau. Tekau mā rima noa iho. Ka moe i tētahi o ngā tohunga o Ruātoki. Rima tekau tau pea tēnei koroua. Moe i tēnei puhi o Tūhoe. Koinei te kōrero o te kuia; “O, he nui te taiaha o te koroua. Te mārō o te taiaha o te koroua, ka

utaina [e] koe he kene miraka kei runga e kore e piko.” *Kata* katoa mātau!
Kata katoa.

Kaiuru tuaono

7.2.4 Te Rongo ā-Ngākau

Ahakoia he rawe te takoto o te kupu, mō te kōrero ki te kore e rangona te wairua, tērā pea e kore e titi te whakaihiihi ki te ngākau o te hunga whakarongo, ka wehi kore, ka wana kore. Engari, kia tū te ihi o te kaikōrero, pēnei i ngā kōrero kua kōrerotia ake nei: ko te Māori o te whakaaro, ko te hāngai o te kaupapa, ko te tau o te pūtaketanga, ko te tangi o te kupu, ko te kori o te tinana, ko te whītiki o te kī, ko te aha atu, kātahi ka mau ko te wehi. Inā rā tā te kaiuru 23, ‘Tērā pea ko te hononga o te reo o te ngākau ki te hinengaro. Ki te kore e pērātia, ka kīa he pāpaku te reo’. Nā reira, he mea nui kia whakaahuatia tētehi pikitia ki te hinengaro, āe, engari anō kia whakahikohiko hoki tonu i ngā karenga o roto i te ngākau. Me rongo ā-ngākau te whakaminenga kia whai hua ai. Hei tauira, ka whakamārama mai tētehi kaiuru i ngā āhuatanga i eke ai te kōrero a tētehi tama me tāna ‘manu kōrero’ i te kaiuru e mātakitaki atu ana. Ka toa taua tama i te whakataetae:

Ko te uru me te whakaputa i te wairua o te kōrero, o te kaupapa i whakapuaki mai. Koira te mea tino, te ihi, te wehi, te wana, te wairua. Tino kawē te minenga ki taua mahi, mīharo

Kaiuru 15

Ki ētehi kei te taha kōrero anake e kitea ai aua āhuatanga o te wehi, o te wana. Heoi anō, nei rā ētehi kupu a ngā kaiuru hei whakaarotanga ake. Kua whakatōngia te ihi o te kaituhi ki rō pukapuka, ka pā atu ai ki te kaipānui mā te karu, mā te taringa rānei. Ā, rongo ana te ngākau i te pānuitanga iho, ki tā ētehi kaiuru, ka wehi, ka wana:

...ko te pukapuka pai rawa ki ngā tamariki nohinohi i a au e whakaako tamariki ana ko *Marama Tangiweto*. Ko te painga o tērā ki a rātou he āhua ōrite ki te reo ki runga i ia whārangi nē, tērā tētahi nō reira ka taea e rātou te kōrero, te pānui tahi me te pouako...me tētahi anō ka tino aroha, aroha ana ngā tamariki ki a *Marama Tangiweto*, i a au e pānui ana ka tangi ētahi o ngā tamariki, tino aroha rātou ki a *Marama Tangiweto*. Nā te mea i ētahi wā he tino mamae ngā tamariki nē, tērā te ao kura ka kī tētahi kāore he pai tō hāte or ka pana tētahi,

he tino mamae tēnā, nō reira ka tino rongo ngā tamariki i te mamae o Marama Tangiweto, engari kei te puta mai ētahi pukapuka i ēnei rā he pai te āhua, he pai ngā pikitia, he pai pea te reo a roto engari kāore e tino rongo ngā tamariki i ngā āhuatanga o ngā *characters* ki roto.

Kaiuru tuawhitu

E tautoko ana tēnei kaiako i te kōhanga reo kei ngā tamariki nohinohi ā rātou pukapuka pai, ā, he take i pērā ai. Inā:

At the moment *Hōhepa te Pūru* is the favourite... They like the suspense in *Hōhepa te Pūru*. They feel sorry for Hohepa and they get animated and say, ‘Noooo Hōhepa’. And you get some of them wailing. It’s the theatrics of Hōhepa, and they can all join in on the rakiraki sounds. It’s the participation factor.

Kaiuru 13

Nā, mai i te pukapuka tamariki ki te mōteatea, ko te mea e hono ana i aua momo-kōrero tino rerekē, he hīnga mai nō te ngākau kia tau atu ki te ngākau o tētehi atu. Ko tā tēnei kaiuru ko te PŪTAKETANGA o te mōteatea, ko te tuku i te mōteatea o te ngākau. Ahakoa te momo-kōrero, he tuku pea te mahi, inā ka tau ki ngākau kē, kei ngā āhuatanga nei e kouna ai te kōrero:

ko te mōteatea, koirā ko te mōteatea o te ngākau. Katoa rā, ahakoa he aha te momo mōteatea ka hū ake i te mōteatea, i te mōteatea rānei i te ngākau, he tangi. Koirā, ka mōteatea au, e mōteatea ana, marama rawa atu... Mehemea he whakaaro tohe, pai, aroha, tangi, aha ake rānei, ka hua katoa mai, ka puta katoa mai i te ngākau o te tangata.

Kaiuru 27

He wā tōna ka pupū noa ake te mauri i te tangata e kōrero ana, e waiata ana. Ko aua momo-kōrero pea, he kīanga nō te ngākau, koia ngā mea e mau ana te wehi, e tau ana ki te ngākau. Kātahi ka rongo, ka mōhioia, ‘O, kei reira e!’¹⁹:

Mehemea ka whakaarohia ōku kuia... he nui ā rātou waiata, waiata tangi, harihari, aha noa, waiata noa, waiata haurangi. Nā rātou katoa ā ratou waiata i tito i runga i wā rātou ake rangi tahito, engari ko aua rangi tahito nei i titoa i

¹⁹ Kei reira; he kīwaha whakanui.

runga tonu i te ia o taua wā. Nā, mehemea i te haurangi rātou ana kua whai atu i ngā tikanga o taua wā tonu rā ka rongo hoki i te rangi haurangi... Nā te ngākau i puta ake ai...

Kaiuru 27

7.2.5 Te Reo ā-iwi, te Reo ā-kaupapa

Katoa rā ngā iwi o te motu e hiahia ana ki te pupuri i tō rātou reo ā-iwi. He kaupapa nui hoki te reo ā-iwi ki te nuinga o ngā kaiuru. Ka whakataukītia a Tāmāti Kruger e tētehi o ngā kaiuru. Ā, ko tā Tāmāti, ‘Ko te hoariri o te reo o Tūhoe, ko te reo Māori.’ Arā, ko te whakaōrite haere i te reo ā-iwi ki te reo ā-motu. Ā, ka mea mai tētehi kaiuru kāore ia i pai ki tēnei kīanga, ‘Ngāi Māori’. Ka whakatauirā mai ētehi o ngā kaiuru i ngā rerekētanga o ētehi iwi hei tauira noa i ngā āhuatanga taketake nei. Kei te Whakaahua 7.2 nei.

Te Whakaahua 7.2: He Reo ā-Iwi

Āhuatanga Reo	Iwi/Rohe	He Tauira nā ngā Kaiuru
Te Whakahua	Kāi Tahu	/k/ Te hine <u>k</u> aro Māori
	Taranaki	/d/ Kei <u>d</u> e pai ²⁰
Te Kupu	Tūhoe	‘matemateaone’, nō te pūrākau mō Māui rāua ko Hinenuiitepō
Te Rerenga Kōrero	Wanganui	‘Māke’, ‘Mātu’ pēnei te mā i te hō i te hōake, hōatu
	Ngā Rauru	‘ne i’ mō te mehemea
Te Momo-Kōrero	Te Arawa	te ‘pōkeka’
	Waikato	ngā ‘tongi’ a Tawhiao

²⁰ Nō Taranaki ki te tonga tēnei kaumātua, ā, tērā pea he reo ā-tangata: ideolect.

Heoi anō ēnei take tōrangapū o te wā, ko te mea nui, he wā, he wāhi e tika ana me ruku i te hōhonutanga o tō reo ā-iwi, he wā kē atu pea kia kōrero i te reo ā-motu. Kia ea ai te pōwhiri i te marae, ā, kia eke ngā momo-kōrero o reira, kāore e kore e tika ana kia karawhiua ko te reo ā-iwi rānei, ā-hapū rānei, ā-whānau rānei. Heoi, inā rā i runga i taua mātāpono kia whaihua ki te whakaminenga, kia mārama tonu, ki roto i ētehi anō horopaki, me kōrero ā-motu pea. Pērā i ngā tanga tūmatanui, i ngā pukapuka mā te matawhānui.

E meatia ana e ētehi kaiuru me pupuri tonu te reo o te rohe e noho nei te kōhanga reo, te kura kaupapa Māori, te whare kura, te whare wānanga. E kitea ana i ēnei rā mahia ai te kupu 'reo' kia whai i tā te whakaaro Pākehā, *register*. E rua ngā aronga o tēnei whakaaro (Chalker rāua ko Weiner, 1998: 340): tuatahi, he reo ōpaki rānei, he reo ōkawa rānei, he reo tawhito, he reo kīwaha rānei. Arā, mā te wā, mā te wāhi e tohutohu he aha te momo reo e tika ana hei karawhiu. Tuarua, ko te reo ā-kaupapa. Ko ngā momo kupu, ngā momo rerenga kōrero, ngā momo whakahua mai i tētehi kaupapa, inā ko te reo o te kāuta, ko te reo o te marae ātea, ko te reo o te kura. Nā whai anō pea i kī ai ētehi o ngā kaumātua kāore rātou i aro ki te 'reo' o te hunga kāwitiwiti e kuraina ana ki te reo Māori o ēnei rā. Ehara i te reo, ko te kaupapa kē pea e puta mai ana i te kura, ā, he reo marautanga, he reo ā-kaupapa, he rēhita kura me kī. Inā tā tēnei pouako e whakangungu ana i ngā kaiako reo Māori:

I kōrero au ki aku tauira mō ngā tūmomo reo Māori i ēnei rangi nei, i kite... waimarie nōku i te mea i kite au i ngā tūmomo reo, ehara i te mea mōhio au engari kite au i te reo o te marautanga, he rerekē ngā kupu, he rerekē ngā whakatakotoranga. Ehara i te mea i waia haere au ki tērā reo but i mārama au.

Kaiuru tuaiwa

Ka haere tonu te kaiuru nei me tāna whakamārama i ngā reo rerekē e rangona ana i ngā wāhi rerekē ka tae atu ia:

Tuarua te reo o te kāinga, te kuia, kōroua kāre e kitea e Ngai Tahu i te mea kua kore ngā kaumātua e kōrero ana i te reo Māori, engari haere ki Te Ika, kei reira te reo parāoa e kōrero ana. Tētahi reo anō ko te reo o Te Panekiritanga me kī. Te reo o Tīmoti mā, te reo tiketike, te reo whakanikoniko, whakarākei, te reo rurutao... he nui ngā kupu ka taea te whakamārama but he reo anō tērā... He māmā te kōrero paraoa he pai tēnā engari ina whakaako rātou [ngā kaiako] i

ngā tamariki me mōhio ngā tamariki te reo ātaahua nei te reo kōrero [kaua ko]
te reo māmā noa.

Kaiuru tuaiwa

Nei anō ētehi atu reo ā-kaupapa mai i te kaiuru tuaono. E kitea ana kia kīia ai he reo ā-kaupapa tērā pea he kupu ā-kaupapa, he kīanga, he whakatakotoranga ka rangona i tētehi kaupapa tē rongo atu ai ki wāhi kē:

He paki, ā, he kōrero kīwaha, he kōrero ā-rohe, he kōrero ā-iwi, he kōrero whānui. He rerekē te kōrero ā-iwi ki te kōrero whānui. Ā... hākinakina... ā, he rerekē te hākinakina... He reo kaupoi tērā... koirā te reo o te puihi. Koirā... te reo o te kāuta pea. Koirā te reo o te kīhini. Ā, mō te whaikōrero, ā...he rerekē tērā tūmomo reo. He reo anō tērā. Ki tāku nei...mea mai tētahi ki a au, he nui ngā tūmomo reo. Engari, he reo o te ngahere. Ko ngā kupu me ngā kōrero o te ngahere. Kaua e kōrero i wēnei kupu i tētahi atu wāhi kē. Te reo o te ahi. Te reo o te kīhini. Ā, te reo o te marae, me te reo o te tohunga. Ā te... i mea mai ki a au, “He nui ngā tūmomo reo. He reo whakamārama, he reo, he kōrero, he reo whakaako. He rerekē te reo whakaako. He tohutohu. He rerekē te reo tohutohu. Ā... he tino... he nui ngā tūmomo reo. Te reo o te tohunga, ā... he reo anō tērā. He reo kihikihi...”

Kaiuru tuaono

Ko tā tēnei kaiuru, ahakoa rā he tangata i tupu ake i te reo, ā, he tohu āna mō te whakamāori, whakapākehā i te reo Māori, i te wā ka hūnuku ki kaupapa mahi rerekē, kātahi ia ka ako i tētehi atu ‘reo’. He reo mātauranga pea. E kitea ana i ēnei kōrero kaiuru, he kaupapa he reo, he kaupapa he reo. Otirā, e tino kore rawa nei e mau i tētehi tangata kotahi ngā reo ā-kaupapa katoa – mahi atu, hākinakina atu, runaruna atu, aha atu.

Kua whā tau e mahi ana i konei. Arā noa atu ngā kupu, ngā kōrero, ngā kīwaha kua mōhio au ināianei mai i taku tīmatanga ki tēnei mahi tae noa ki tēnei rā.

Kaiuru tuarima

Ki konei whakakopi ai i tētehi kōrero kaiuru mō te tapu o ētehi kaupapa, o ētehi kōrero. I te tapu o ētehi kaupapa e kore e rongo nuitia, arā, ka rāhuitia mō te ware kei tānoatia, ā, tērā pea e kore ērā tāngata e mōhio ki taua ‘reo’:

He *nui* ngā tūmomo reo, ā... ko te taiaha o Tūhoe... I a au i mahi rangahau haere i ngā rangahau...a! He tūmomo reo mō te...mō wērā tūmomo mahi. Ā...kōrero atu au mō ngā kōrero mō te parawhakawai. Mō te taumātakitahi. Ngā kupu mō tērā āhuatanga, mō te pakanga. He reo mō te pakanga. A! Koirā tētahi kaupapa nui i roto i te ao Māori, te pakanga. Engari he āhua tapu wērā mea; te paraparaitoi, ngā kupu pērā. Ngā whakatakoto pērā, me ngā karakia. Ngā karakia, ā: “hei kaha paranītia” kupu whakatakoto...ngā kōrero pērā...mō wērā tūmomo āhuatanga.

Kaiuru tuaono

7.2.6 Te Reo Peha

E kore e tōroatia tēnei whakamārama mō tēnei mātāpono, i te mea kei te Wāhanga katoa e whai mai nei te rahinga o ngā whakaaro mō te REO PEHA²¹ nei. Heoi anō kia whakataukītia ake tētehi kōrero ā-iwi nā Pei Te Hurinui i takoto i tāna pukapuka *King Potatau* hei tauira atu i te reo peha. He kupu riri ēnei nā Te Rangihaeata, nā te irāmutu a Te Rauparaha ki tētehi rangatira o Maniapoto i a rātou i runga i tētehi poti (tirohia Jones, 1959: 108 mō te roanga ake o tēnei kōrero), inā:

Koia anō kei tō pāpā – pātiki!

Me hī koe ki te matika,

Ka hurihia ki runga ki te waka;

Ka tiraha tō poho

Ka motu koe!

He reo whakatairite te reo peha, ā, kia mōhio te aronga o ngā kupu nei me mōhio he aha kei te whakatairitea. I te rerenga tuatahi kei te whakaritea te tangata ki te ika, inā rā ko te ika, ko te tangata tuatahi ka taka ki raro i te toki i te pakanga. Ko te ĀHEINGA REO²², he kupu whakaiti. Nā, he HUAHUATAU ROA²³ te katoa o tēnei kōrero i te mea ka ū tonu te WHAKATAIRITE HAERE²⁴ i ngā KĪANGA PEHA²⁵, ānō nei he ika taua tangata, arā, ka hīa ake ia, ka takoto, ka hurihia, ka tapahia. Heoi anō, me uaua ka mōhio ki te

²¹ figurative language

²² language function

²³ extended metaphor

²⁴ figurative chains

²⁵ figurative phrases

tikanga o taua kōrero inā kāore i te taunga ki tēnei reo peha. He reo tawhito tonu. Koia rā tā tēnei kaiuru:

Tērā pea ko ētahi o ngā kōrero a Tawhito, kei te hāngai atu pea ki ngā kōrero, ki ngā mahi pea o mua. Ki te kore koe e mōhio ki te tikanga o te hitori rānei o taua iwi, o taua hapū, kāore pea koe i te tino mārama ki te tikanga o te waiata, ki te whakatakotoranga o ngā kupu. Yea i think he aha tērā... ko te *allusions* nā and it just seems that ēnei rā, he āhua māmā ake te whakatakoto i te kupu me te whakamāramatanga o ngā kupu, nē.

Kaiuru 14

Ahako kua rerekē pea te āhua o te reo, kei reira tonu ētehi waha kī e pupuri ana i te mauri o te reo. Inā rā kei te rehurehu te tikanga o te reo i te kitenga atu, ā, me wānanga kia tau mai te māramatanga o ētehi kīnga tohunga:

Ko ngā whaikōrero kua rangona e tāua i roto i ngā wiki tata nei. Tēnā o ngā tangihana ki roto o Ruātoki. Ngā tohunga pēnei i a Pou Temara, tōna rākau kōrero, i a ia e pekepeke nei kia rongopai te tangata i a ia e tuku nei i te rerenga korero kia tino rangona ai te taringa...Whakaaro ake au ki te rongopai i ērā tāngata e kōrero pēnā ana, ki te raku te mahunga i te kore mōhio...nā te hōhonutanga o te kupu. Me te mea hoki pea, te mita o te reo, nō rātou anō o tēnā iwi, o tēnā iwi o ōna ake kupu. I pērā ai au. Nā taku kore mōhio, kore tino mārama i te kupu. Tētahi rerenga kōrero kua rangona e au ana ko te ‘tira mataipō’. Ko te hunga mate tēnā, anā, ko te ‘tira mātai ao’, ko te hunga ora tērā. He aha hoki te tikanga o ‘te mātai pō me te mātai ao’?

Kaiuru 14

Ko te nuinga o ngā kaiuru i mea mai he mea nui te reo peha, ahako he uaua te whai i te tikanga i ētehi wā. Ki tētehi o ngā kaiuru, he pouako ia e whakaako ana i ngā kaiako i te kura toi tangata, e mea ana kei te kaiwhāngai te oranga o tēnei peka o te reo:

Ko te raruraru nei kāre ngā kaiako i te tino mārama he aha kē nei tērā atu momo mahi, he uaua kia whakaako te tamaiti ki te kore rātou i te mōhio koirā te mahi o te Māori. Me whakaingoa ērā tūmomo... whakamahi ki te taha o te tauira o ērā tūmomo mahi, wāwāhi ērā mahi, te *alliteration*, te mahi haiku pea,

te mahi *metaphor*, mahi *personification*, ērā tūmomo, *simile*, hurihia ki te reo Māori...

Kaiuru tuaiwa

Ko te mate kē pea, kāore anō tātou kia tino ruku ki ngā KĪPEHA nei mā te reo Māori hei tohutohu atu ki ngā ākongā ki hea raweke ai, ki hea auaha ai:

Ko te mea tuatahi kua pānuihia te, kua rongona, kua pānui ngā tamariki i te rotarota. Ka kōrero mātou mō ērā āhuatanga mō te, kia āhua you know kāore i a au ngā kupu tika mō, i te reo Māori mō te, mō ērā *poetic devices* he aha rānei engari ka kōrero mātou mō, kia āhua ōrite te tangi, hau, kau, mau, rau, tau te paparuatanga o ngā oro, te paparuatanga kupu me ko ngā mea pakeke i te, ko te tino mahi a te rotarota ki te whakarāpopoto whakaaro, e pai rawa rātou ki te mahi rotarota.

Kaiuru tuawhitu

Ko tētehi āhuatanga ka kitea i ēnei kōrero kaiuru i tēnei Wāhanga kāore anō kia noho tūturu te reo whakamārama o te reo peha ki te reo Māori, ahakoa matatau te tangata ki tāna kōrero, ahakoa pūkenga ki te kura reo Māori, ka whakawhirinaki atu kē ki ngā kupu Pākehā ki te whakamārama i tēnei mātauranga reo. Koia tā te nuinga o ngā kaiuru, ā, koia nei tētehi take nui ka rurukuhia te reo peha ki te Wāhanga e whai nei. Hei tauira atu anō:

He reo whakaata te reo Māori. He reo whakaata. He reo whakaata ngā reo katoa, engari ko te reo Māori ka tīkina ai ngā pēnei i roto i te karakia nei, ngā tūāhuatanga o te tinana, ā, kia whakamāramatia te putanga mai o te Tūteremoana me te hononga ki te ao wairua. I whakatupuhia ngā tamariki i runga i te māramatanga nā te hono ki tō rātou ao ki ngā kōrero nei... Nā reira you've got the *similes* and the *personification*, all of those things there.

Kaiuru 23

7.2.7 Te Whakatakotoranga Māori

Nā, hei whakatuwhera i tēnei mātāpono, kia kotahi atu ki tētehi tauiranga rerenga kōrero o te kaiuru tuarua, me tana whakamārama he aha te take he WHAKATAKOTORANGA TINO MĀORI²⁶, inā:

Kua pau i a au te w'enua te tiroiro 'aere.

Ka rawe ki a ia tēnei rerenga kōrero i ēnei take e whā:

- He RERENGMA MAHI ĀHUA²⁷, he mea pai, he mea Māori.
- He reo ā-iwi, he reo nō tētehi rohe.
- He pai te whakaaro, he mea Māori.
- He pai te āpiti atu i te kīanga mahi, 'te tiroiro haere', ki tētehi rerenga mahi āhua.

I pēnei ai te tiroiro a ētehi kaiuru ki te reo Māori i runga i tō rātou matatau. Nā reira ahakoa he rerenga kōrero kotahi, he kōrero kē atu i taua tauiranga: ko te whakatauiria i te whakatakotoranga Māori, ko te reo ā-iwi, ko te aronga Māori. Ka kitea ahakoa he iti te kupu, tērā hoki ka hono atu ki ērā anō mātāpono e kouna ai te reo.

I mua i te tiroiro ki ētehi momo whakatakotoranga Māori, me wetewete i ētehi whakatakotoranga ehara i te mea Māori. Koia tētehi take auē nui kei te reo Māori o nāianeī. Ko tētehi whakahau matua a ngā kaiuru me kaua rā e whai i tā te reo Pākehā whakatakoto, arā ngā kōrero nei a te kaiuru 11, 'Nā reira pea... me Māori te rere... Mō te takoto o te kupu kia kore ai e whai atu ki tā te Pākehā tauira...' Nā, kātahi ka toko ake te pātai, he aha ngā takotoranga ehara i te takotoranga Māori? Anei ētehi tauira e hē ana ki ngā kaiuru. Ko tā te kaiuru 22 'Kei te whai te tamaiti i te āhua o te reo Pākehā'.

²⁶ Māori sentence structure/syntax

²⁷ neuter verb/stative construction

Te Whakaahua 7.3: Kaua e Whai i tā te Reo Pākehā

Whakatakotoranga Pākehā	Whakatakotoranga Māori	Ture Reo
He aha tēnei mō?	Hei aha tēnei?	<i>A sentence cannot end with a preposition.</i>
I horoia ō ringa? 'I!'	I horoia!	<i>A single preposition is not a phrase, so it is ungrammatical.</i>
Anei he waiata mō koe	Anei te waiata māu.	<i>Pronouns should not be used to split M-class possessives.</i>

Ko tētehi āhuatanga o te waimehatanga o te reo Māori, ahakoa ka huri ki hea tērā ka kitea, ka rangona ētehi whakatakotoranga e hē ana. Ko tētehi mahi a ngā pouako o ngā hui reo o Te Taura Whiri he mātakitaki i Te Whakaata Māori kohikohi ai i ngā hapa hei akoako mā ngā ākonga kia kaua e pērā. Heoi, ahakoa pouaka whakaata, ahakoa tānga pukapuka, ahakoa reo irirangi, kei reira te tini o ngā hapa:

Kia pai te mita, kia tika te whakatakoto, kia *Māori* te kōrero! I rongo atu au ki wētahi e kōrero ana i runga i te reo irirangi Māori... He teihana Māori, engari ko ngā kaiwhakapāhō kāore i te tino mōhio ki te kōrero Māori... kei te āhua hē te reo. Pēnei kē te kōrero: “Anei he waiata mō koe!” Koirā te whakatakoto... kei te hē tēnā. Kei te kōrero māi wētahi: “Ā...Kei te pīrangi waiata koe?” Koirā te āhua o te kōrero, kei te hē tēnā. Ahakoa kei te kōrero Māori tonu, kei te hē te whakatakoto.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ahakoa momo-kōrero ā-waha, ahakoa momo-kōrero ā-tuhi e tāmia ana e te whakaaro Pākehā, ā, ka puta mai i reira te whakatakotoranga Pākehā. Waihoki, he wāhanga nui te kura hei whakaora i te rerenga whakaaro Māori, kātahi ka rerekē te rerenga kōrero Māori:

I roto i te ao o te kura, o ēnei rangi, o tēnei kura kua tino whakararuraru te ia whakaaro, ia kōrero, kāore te reo Māori te noho urutapu. Mōhio ana tāua ki tērā, he uaua kia huri tō te tamaiti whakaaro i tana whakatakoto i ana kupu, ā-

kōrero, ā-tuhi kia mutu te whai i te ia o te reo Pākehā. Nō reira, he mahi nui tērā i roto i te kura, kia Māori nei te āhua o te whakatakoto i te kōrero hei mea tuhi, kia tū rānei a ia ki te kōrero.

Kaiuru 23

Ko te rongoā, ko te whakaatu atu pea me pēwhea e Māori ake ai te kōrero kia kaua rā e whai i tā te Pākehā. Koia hoki tā te koroua i te Wāhanga kua taha atu nei, inā mō te ture reo mō te *adverbial usage*. Heoi, kia whai i ngā ture me whai tētehi reo e whakamārama ana i te reo, arā, he METAREO²⁸. Ko tā tēnei kaiuru, e tino whai wāhi ana te kupu ‘kīanga’ ki roto i ana akoranga hei whakatauira atu ki āna ākongā i te ara whakarerehua i te kōrero:

Kaha ana au ki te whakamahi i te kupu kīanga. Nā te mea ko ētehi āhua o te reo, ehara i te mea he kīwaha, ehara i te mea he kīrehu, engari he tino kīanga. Ko te *expression* pea mō tāku e whakamahia ana. Pēnei i te whakamahia o te ‘nō reira’ i ētehi wā, he kīanga Māori tērā. He kīanga anō te tāpiri, te “tēnā koutou tēnā koutou tēnā koutou” kia mutu ai te kaiwhaikōrero i tana kōrero. He mea Māori noa, nā reira he kīanga. Ka pātai mai ngā tamariki he aha te take ka pēnei ai te whakamahi i te kupu ‘ai’. Mēnā he tamariki rawa he uaua kia mārama ki te tamaiti te tikanga o te whakamahi o te kupu ‘ai’ engari e tika ana me tīmata te tamaiti ki te uru i tērā i roto i te kōrero. Ka pērā ahau, kia Māori nei te āhua o te kōrero.

Kaiuru 23

Nā, ki tā te kaiuru tuarua, he pēnei kē te whai mai o ngā mātāpono nei: mai i tā te Māori titiro, tā te iwi titiro, kātahi ko tā te kupu mō te ao, ka mutu, ko tā te whakatakotoranga. Ā, ka whakamāramatia te takotoranga Māori:

Relative clauses and double passives. It needs to be reemphasised that Māori is passive because everyone is using active sentences. Even though they might be saying Māori words, they’re not emphasising it how it should be in Māori... [hei tauira atu anō] ‘Ka āhei i a ia.’ Fifty years ago you would have heard that a lot, but now you get ‘Kei te āhei au ki te...’ So English, and second language learners are making Māori language an active sentence structure language

²⁸ metalanguage [nā tētehi kaiuru taua kupu, heoi, e whai tonu ana i tā te reo Pākehā].

rather than a passive one. [Also] ‘Kei te haere AU ki te hāpu. Māku e haere ki te hāpu.’ Actor emphatics are not happening. Not learning those constructions, let alone the vocab.

Kaiuru tuarua

Nei rā tētehi take nui kei te pā ki te reo Māori ki tā tēnei kaiuru. Ahakoa whāngotea ai te tangata mai i te Kōhanga Reo puta rawa ake, me mataara tonu tātou kei riro te wairua o te reo Māori i te reo Pākehā. Arā ake, he reo Māori ka puta, he reo Pākehā ka takoto:

There’s a kura kaupapa guy just graduated... I did his whaikōrero to introduce him. And when I was speaking to him and his sister they couldn’t understand me, and he’s 18 and gone through kura kaupapa and that all his life. So, you know not only the vocab, but the speed at which I spoke, the words I used, the concepts I used. They didn’t have a clue... they can’t understand me when I’m saying ordinary things, just talking, not being particularly difficult or anything like that... They’re 18 and still talking at a 10 year old level. Kei te haere au ki te, kei te patu au i te poaka...trying to use neuter verbs though, but in an active way because they haven’t learnt the construction... so it kind of sounds awful. If somebody is speaking to you in passive sentences whether it be passive terminations or neuter verbs they are speaking in a more traditional way in a more Māori way. It’s like iambic stress rhythm as opposed to syllabic stress rhythm.

Kaiuru tuarua

Hei tautoko ake anō i tāna, ko tā te kaiuru tuawhitu e mea ana, ‘Ko te mea uaua rawa mō ngā tamariki i a rātou e tuhi tohutohu ana, ko te tuhi i ngā kupu, ngā kupu ngū, me kī, ngā *passives*, kāore te nuinga e tino mārama ki te tikanga o ērā kupu’. Ko te mānukanuka i runga i aua kōrero kaiuru kia Māori te reo Māori me uru ko te takotoranga hangū i roto i ngā momo-kōrero pērā i te pūrākau (Bauer, 1997 :477), engari ki te kore te whakatipuranga e rea ake ana e whakamahi i ngā momo rerenga kōrero pēnei, ka Māori tonu te reo?

I ētehi wā, kei te mātāpono nei, te reo ā-iwi te mana, ā, ko tā te takotoranga Māori, he whai atu i te rerenga kētanga o te reo ā-iwi. Hei tauira, ko tētehi NUKA REO²⁹ i kōrerohia e tētehi kaiuru mai i tōna iwi ake, ko te huri i te kupu kia hē te takoto. He momo KĪPEHA WHAKAWHERE³⁰ tēnei:

Koirā tētahi o ngā kōrero, mātau o te kāinga. He kōrero hei whakakatakata, hei whakaheahea. Ka mea mai koe; “Ā, kia ora! Haere atu mai!”... Ka oti tō [whai] kōrero, ka mea mai; “Ā, tēnā koutou, tēnā koutou, kai putu au e raro.” Katakata katoa.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ko tā tēnei rāwekeweketanga reo, he whakangahau i te iwi. Koia hoki tā tētehi pouako mō te takawiri arero nei *Kāpata Kākāriki* i roto i te pukapuka tamariki *He Kohikohinga*:

Kāpata kākāriki, yeah, pai tērā ki ngā tamariki, me he pai hoki ki a rātou ki ētahi nanakia, me ko tēnei te whakawhitinga o te reo Ingarihi me te reo Māori, he pai ki ētahi nanakia ki te whakawhiti i ētahi āhuatanga o te reo Ingarihi ki te reo Māori, me ētahi....ka mōhio rātou he mahi nanakia tērā. Pēnei ka tuhi te tamaiti i te kupu ‘nono’, ka pātai atu au ‘He aha koe e tuhi...’ i te katakata ngā tamariki, ka kī mai tētahi ‘Oh, Whaea, ehara i te kupu nono, ko ‘no, no’ tērā’ You know, ērā momo... he hātakēhi ērā ki a rātou.

Kaiuru tuawhitu

I ētehi anō wā ka whakahoutia te whakatakoto i te kupu kia hou tonu, kia pai ake ai ki te whakaminega:

Ko te mea nui, he aha te mea e hiahiatia nei e koe kia whakaataahua... ina huri koe ki te karanga he pai noa kia mea mai ‘haramai ngā manuhiri tū-ā-rangi’ ēngari whiua tērā ki te taha, ka taea pea te whakarākei ērā kupu kia kaua e hoki atu anō ki ngā kupu i rongona whānuitia e te ao.

Kaiuru tuaiwa

He maha tonu ngā tāngata i kī mai kāore he reo tua atu i te reo o te mōteatea a ngā tūpuna. Ko taua reo matua i roto i te mōteatea, koia ko te reo peha tonu. E tautoko ana

²⁹ literary device

³⁰ rhetorical figure of speech

te kaiuru 12 e whai nei, heoi anō, ko te mate kē, tē aro nui i te tokomaha tāngata he aha kē te aronga o taua reo:

Ki a au nei, ko te reo Māori, me kī o roto tonu i ngā waiata koroua, te reo matua ki a au. Kātahi nā te ātaahua o te kupu, o te whakanikoniko, o te whakairo whakaaro mā te kupu noa iho e whakaputa engari ki te nuinga o ngā tāngata o ēnei rangi, nā te kore reo tē taea te mōhio te mārama rānei ki ngā whakaaro i roto i ērā waiata, o ērā kupu. Nā te rētōtanga kē o te wai, kua toromi kē te tāngata...

7.2.8 Te Momo-Kōrero

Kei ngā Wāhanga Tuarua, Tuatoru, Tuawhā ngā kōrero mō tēnei mea te momo-kōrero, ā, kua nui pea a reira. Ko te mea nui, kei te kitea ko ērā atu mātāpono he kōrero whānui tonu. Ko te Aronga ā-iwi, ko te Kaupapa Māori, he kōrero mō tō tātou Māoritanga, tō tātou nei ahurea. Ko te Pūtaketanga, ko te Rongo ā-ngākau, he mātāpono whānui hoki mō te horopaki. Tau ana ki te momo reo e kōrerotia ana, he nui ngā whiringa, te reo peha, te reo ā-kaupapa, te whakatakotoranga. Tau ana ki te momo-kōrero.

Heoi, nei rā hoki ētehi pitopito whakaaro e hāngai ana ki te whakamahia o te momo-kōrero kāore anō kia āta wherawherahia. Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui o te ao Māori, ko te āhei ki te mahi i te mahi, kua mō te whakamārama noa i te mahi. Arā, ki tā te Māori titiro, kāore e tika ana mēnā ka ākona ngā whakamārama mō tētehi momo-kōrero me te aha, kāore e taea te whakamahi taua momo-kōrero. Otirā, me āhei i te tangata te whakamahi i tāna i ako ai: kōrerorero mai, waiata mai, mōteatea mai, mihi mai, aha mai. Inā rā ko te kawē i te momo-kōrero ki roto i ngā nohotahitanga a te iwi. Anei te kōrero a tēnei kaiuru mō te whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero hei whakatairanga i te matenga o tētehi koroua, o tētehi pou o tō rātou kōhanga reo. Mā mahi ka ora, mā te whakamahi momo-kōrero ka ora te ngākau:

So for instance we had an urupā not far away from where we were and a tauheke that used to come in quite a bit died and went past in his hearse you see. So I had the kids out there: boys doing the haka, girls doing part of the ngeri mate; had a kuia doing a karanga; and I was doing a ngeri mate and tauparapara and all that sort of stuff... and they slowed down as they went past

and the pouaru was overjoyed to see our tribute. He was a lovely old guy and full of knowledge.

Kaiuru tuarua

Ka mutu rā, ko ētehi momo-kōrero ka rerekē te pūtaketanga i te takanga mai o te wā. He pērā pea i te waiata ā-ringa Paikea, he karakia i te tuatahi, he mōteatea, kātahi ka huri hei waiata ā-ringa. Koia tā te kaiuru tuarua mō ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero he rite tonu ngā kupu, he rerekē te whakamahia. Koia hoki hei āwhina mā te hunga ako, i ngā horopaki rerekē tērā ka whakamahia tētehi momo-kōrero kia nui ngā wā, heoi he rerekē te kawē. Inā rā:

So you only have to learn one thing but, very specifically done in different ways, so, chanted as a karakia, done as a waiata usually with a different tempo and then done as a poi with a totally different tempo.

Kaiuru tuarua

7.2.9 Te Tikanga Māori

Ko tētehi āhuetanga nui o te tikanga Māori, ko te hanganga. He hanganga tā ia momo-kōrero, ā, ki te kore e whāia ka kore te whakaminenga e pai atu. Hei tauira mō te momo-kōrero ā-mata ko te pānui pātū: me nui ake i te A3; me whai pikitia, whakaahua rānei; kia ruarua noa iho ngā kupu; mā aua kupu e whakaatu ai i tētehi KARERE³¹ e tika ana me maumahara ake. Hei tā tētehi momo-kōrero ā-waha, hei tā te whaikōrero, āe ka huri te takoto i te horopaki, inā he hui mate, he hui ora rānei, heoi, i te nuinga o te wā tērā ko te tikanga e pēnei ana: te kupu whakaaraara, te tauparapara, te mihi mate, te mihi ora, te kaupapa, te whakakapinga, kātahi ko te mōteatea. E kore rawa e rangona te tauparapara a muri ake i te mōteatea, heoi tērā te wā ka rangona te mihi mate, te mihi ora ā muri ake (tirohia Rewi, 2004). Ki a Poia Rewi ko ētehi hanganga kua toka, ko ētehi wāhanga o te hanganga kei te tangata tonu te whiriwhiri heoi i roto i ngā āhuetanga o te wā.

Me kī, ko ētehi hanganga kāore pea e taea te neke ko te mutunga ki te tīmatanga, te tīmatanga ki te mutunga kei raruraru pea. Hei tauira, inā: kia tukuna te mōteatea i te tīmatanga o te whaikōrero; kia hoatu te whakakapinga i te tīmatanga o te pūrākau; kia

³¹ message

kīia te kīanga tūhono, ‘hui e, tāiki e’ i te tīmatanga o te karakia. Nā reira, ko ētehi wāhanga o te hanganga e tika ana me mutu i te mutunga. Ko ētehi atu tāhu e tika ana me tīmata i te tīmatanga kei whakaarohia e te iwi he pōrangi: kia takina te wero i te mutunga o te pōwhiri; kia mihia ngā mate i te mutunga o te reta; kia tāpirihia atu te rārangi kai i te mutunga o te tohutaka. He mea nui rawa te hanganga hei arataki i te whakaminenga; ka kotiti, ka kore rā e tika te arataki haere i te kōrero.

Ki tētehi kaiuru, he rite te hanganga o te kōrero ki te hanganga o te whare, pērā tonu i tā Te Wharehuia Milroy (tirohia Moorfield, 1996: 260-266), inā: He whare kōrero (te kaupapa whānui); he whatu kōrero (ngā wāhanga o te kaupapa); he pouahi (hei whakamātautau, aromatawai i nga kōrero). Ko tāna:

Nā, ko te tauira nei ko te whare kōrero. Kei reira katoa ngā kōrero e noho ana me kī. Te kaupapa whānui, nā ka tīkina atu ētahi āhuatanga o taua kaupapa, ka āta tirohia nā reira i kī ai te whatu kōrero. Ko te whatu kōrero he āhua e whakahāngai nei i ngā whakaaro ki tētahi kaupapa, ki tētahi pou, tētahi heke, tētahi wāhanga rānei o taua whare kōrero. Nā, ka tae atu ki te wāhanga tuatoru nei o te pouahi, ana kua tīkina atu tētahi āhuatanga hei whakamātautau i nga kōrero i wānangahia. Ā, he huarahi whakamātautau taua tikanga mō te whare kōrero, tērā tērā.

Kaiuru 27

Ki tētehi kaiuru whakawhitia ai ngā pūkenga kōrero a te pū kōrero ki roto i ētehi anō momo-kōrero. I pēnei ai i te mea he ‘tāhu kōrero’ tāna hei hanga i te kaupapa. Koia tonu te raupapatanga o ngā whakaaro, ā, he mea nui tērā mō te TIKANGA:

Mēnā ki te mōhio koe ki te whaikōrero, mōhio tonu koe ki te mahi whakapāhō. Ki te mōhio koe ki te whaikōrero, mōhio tonu koe ki te hanga kōrero. Mōhio tonu koe ki te whakatakoto kaupapa. Mōhio tonu koe ki te whakatakoto te tāhū kōrero. Mōhio tonu koe ki te hanga i tētahi kaupapa uaua i roto i tō ake hinengaro, kātahi ka whakapāhō, kātahi ka kōrero. Pērā hoki te karanga. Me, me whai haere i wērā mahi pea, i ngā...ā...ki a au nei, me pērā. Mēnā...ki te titiro atu koe ki ngā tāngata whaikōrero, ngā mea *tino* matatau ki te whaikōrero, ā, he nui ngā pūmanawa o wērā tāngata i roto i wētahi atu mahi. Mōhio tonu rātau ki te kōrero, ki te tuhi reo. Mōhio tonu rātau ki te, ki ngā tumomo reo. Ki te kōrero i ngā kōrero paki, i ngā kōrero...

Kaiuru tuaono

He rerekē ngā tikanga o ia momo-kōrero. Mā ngā tikanga nei e whaihua ai te kōrero ki te whakaminenga. He tikanga kē tā te kōrero paki, he tikanga kē tā te poroporoaki. Anei ētehi tikanga taketake mō tētehi momo-kōrero ā-tuhi kua whānau mai i roto i ngā tau tata nei. Ko ngā tikanga mō te karere ā-waea. Ki ngā kaiuru i te mea he iti ngā pū ka taea te tuku i te wā kotahi, kei te tupu ko ētehi āhuatanga reo, āhuatanga motuhake o tēnei momo, arā:

- he poto ngā rerenga
- he poto rānei ngā kupu
- kāore i te whai i tā te ‘wetereo tika’, i tā te kārawarawatanga tika
- kāore he tohutō, kāore rānei he pū rua
- Kei te mahia tā te kupu Pākehā tangi i ētehi wā, inā ko te 2, mō te tu (*two*), ko te tangi Māori rānei, ko te 2 mō te rua rānei.

Anei e whai nei ētehi anō āhuatanga reo o tēnei momo-kōrero ā-tuhi. Pēnei i te reo-ā-iwi, tērā ka tipu he reo-ā-hapori, ā, he reo-ā-tangata,.

Te Whakaahua 7.4: He Tikanga Motuhake mō te Tukupū

Tauira	Whakamāori
K t pai e hoa. Kia pai t po. Ko t whakaaro t mea nui.	Kei te pai e hoa. Kia pai te pō. Ko te whakaaro te mea nui.
Kia ora e hoa. K hea koe? K poneke ahau.	Kia ora e hoa. Kei hea koe? Kei Pōneke ahau.
Taku 4kapae	Taku whakapae.
I tae mai te txt.	text
Ka 2taki k t taone	Ka tūtaki ki te tāone.
Pai tera 4katau. Hei t 12	Pai tērā whakatau. Hei te tekau mā rua.
Haramai ra k nga 442 o Poneke	Haramai rā ki ngā whāwhārua o Poneke.
Me 2taki ttou k cafe c a te hau2 haora	Me tūtaki tatou ki Café Cuba ā te haurua haora.
K t aha koe i nyanei?	Kei te aha koe ināiane?

Nā, i tukuna mai e te kaiuru 12 he ruri tukupū, he ruri huarite hei whakamārama i ngā āhuatanga taketake o te tukupū - kei te taha katau o te Whakaahua 7.5 te whakamāoritanga. Ko tā te kaitito o tēnei me whakamāori i te kupu ‘*dog*’ hei tīwhiri, hei whakahuarite i te kupu ‘2e’. Inā rā kei te huarite ngā rārangi 2 me te 4, te 6 me te 8.

Te Whakaahua 7.5: He Ruri hei Whakaatu i te Tikanga Tukupū

Nā te Kaiuru 12, kaiako reo Māori

Te Reo Tukupū	Te Whakamāori
Hei! Anei te 1 ruri mahau. He mea huarite.	Hei! Anei tētahi ruri māhau. He mea huarite.
1. he 11, he 1pu, he 442, he 22,	1. He tahitahi, He onepū, He whāwhārua, He tutu,
5. he 4no, he 2e, he piywaka, he dog.	5. He whānau, He tūi, He pīwaiwaka, He kurī.

Hei tauira atu anō, anei tētehi tikanga mō te kōrero paki kāore pea e tika ana i ētehi anō momo-kōrero pērā i te karanga, i te poroporoaki:

Oo, kia kaha tonu koe ki te rūkahu, ki te mahi whakaari i te kōrero, ki te whakareka i te kōrero, ānō nei ko taua kōrero rā, te tīmatatanga o te ao me te kukume mai i te tangata ka pana i a rātou nē, pēnei nē. Nā, he maha ngā momo kōrero paki... ka ako mātou i ngā kōrero o *Romeo and Juliet*. Ki a au nei, maroke ai te tangata nei i a Haka Pea, he kōrero rā ia mō te kōrero, ‘*Wherefore art thou*’. Ki a au nei ko tana kōrero, ‘Kia tere, kia tere, kei hoatu au te kai ki tētahi atu.’

Kaiuru tuawaru

E hāngai ana te tikanga ki ngā tūmanako o te whakaminenga, arā, ko tā te whakaminenga he whakatau wawe ki ngā tikanga o te momo-kōrero, ā, ka whāia haeretia. Mō te paki, ki te whai i te tikanga nā te kaiuru o runga ake nei, me hinengaro pūaha, tērā ka rongo i tētehi rūkahu, i tētehi kupu raweke, i tētehi tohutoro ai, inā ko te kai, ko te ai i te tauira kua taha atu nei. Āpitingia atu tētehi anō tauira hei whakaatu i tēnei reo peha o te kōrero paki:

I te wā i haere mai ai a Tūhoe ki konei noho ai nē, ka kai rātou i ngā kina rā, i taua pō. I te mōmona o te kina... Mutu tonu te karakia i taua pō, oh, ka ngongoro noa iho. E rua kē ngā taha e ngongoro ana. Ka ngongoro a ihu, ā, ka ngongoro a muri. Na mōhio koutou ki te ngongoro a muri, o, hoatu kē tētahi whakamārama ne. Na, tērā ne, hoatu kē tētahi whakamārama. Koirā tētahi momo kōrero kāore i te rongohia ināiane.

Kaiuru tuawaru

He Māori pea te whakaaro inā ka kī, ka ngongoro te whare i te momona o te kina, ka pakē, ka haruru, ka kōrero, tērā momo reo. He Māori kē atu aua kīnga i te REO PEHA³² i te kīnga mā roto i te REO MORE³³ nei, 'ka patero rātou'. Anā, ka kotahi atu ki te kaupapa. He tikanga pea tērā o te paki, inā kia reo peha tonu, heoi, he rangahau atu anō kia tirohia mēnā e tika ana taua whakapae.

Mō ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero, ko tētehi tikanga kē ōna, ko te rerekētanga o te takotoranga kupu. Ki te aro te tangata ki te waiata, ki te mōteatea, ki te whakataukī, ki taua huinga momo-kōrero, me whānui te titiro kia mārama ki te aronga o ngā kupu:

Ina ka tuhia he paki hei pānui mā te katoa, kia tika te takoto o te reo kia...ko te āhua o te wetewete reo, ko ngā rerenga kia tika. Ēngari mō te āhua o te waiata, e āhei ana ki te whakarāpopoto. I ētahi wā he rerekē, ehara i te mea me mātua whai i ngā tikanga o te takoto o te reo nātemea he waiata, he momo anō tērā.

Kaiuru 25

³² figurative language

³³ literal language

Koia hoki tā te koroua i te Wāhanga Tuaono. He pēnei kia whai i te manawataki, heoi i ētehi anō wā, kia whai i te tikanga o te waiata, arā, ‘kia iti te kupu, kia nui te tikanga’, tērā ka whakapotohia kia takoto mai ko ngā kupu, ā, e kore pea e takoto pērā mēnā he momo-kōrero atu anō pērā i te pūrongo.

Nā reira, kei ia momo-kōrero he tikanga motuhake, he wāhanga motuhake, he hanganga motuhake. Hei tauira atu anō, kei te pāpāho ōna ake tikanga, āe, he hononga hoki ki ētehi anō momo-kōrero inā:

He tino reo Māori ngā reo e whakapāhō, i roto i ngā tohu ā Tawhirimātea, ngā kōrero hākinakina. Ki au nei, koirā ngā reo, koirā ngā tūmomo reo o te... o te reo irirangi, o te reo whakapāhō. He rerekē te reo whakapāhō ki te reo kōrero. Ko te rerekētanga o te reo kōrero, me wētahi atu tūmomo reo, he whakawhitiwhiti kōrero. Engari ko te reo whakapāhō, he whakapāhō kōrero. He whakapāhō, he whakamārama. Ki te kōrero atu koe ki te tangata, kei te kōrero kōrua tahi, kei te kōrero kōrua tahi mō tētahi kaupapa kei te whakawhitiwhiti whakaaro, whakawhitiwhiti kōrero i waenganui i a kōrua, ā, ko kōrua ngā mea kei te hanga i te pikitia. Engari mo te whakapāhō, ko koe anake te mea hanga i te pikitia. Koirā tō mahi hei kaiwhakapāhō. Ā... he rerekē ngā wāhanga. Ngā wāhanga kei te whakapāhō... Ā, he ōrite pea ki a au nei te reo whakapāhō ki te whaikōrero. Nō te mea kei te tiro mai, i a koe e whaikōrero ana, *tiro mai* te iwi ki a koe. Kei a koe te wā. Kei a koe tō rākau, kei a koe...ā... kei a koe te... tō kōrero. Ko tō mahi he whakamārama. Ko tō mahi he whakapuaki, he whakapāhō, ā, pērā hoki i runga i te reo irirangi, he whaka...he tūmomo whaikōrero tērā ki a au. He āhua ōrite ki te whaikōrero.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ka whakawhānuitia haeretia e te kaiuru tuaono nei tāna whakatairite i te reo pāpāho ki te reo whaikōrero. Ko te tikanga ki a ia, he rite tonu aua mea e rua, he marae ātea, ā, e tika ana me whakatau pērā atu ki ngā kaiwaea. Ki te kore, kāore e eke te kōrero:

Ko wētahi, *mōhio* tonu rātou ki ngā tikanga. I a koe e kōrero i te...i ngā kōrero whakawhitiwhiti, i ngā kōrero talkback, mōhio tonu rātou ki te mihi atu, mēnā he kaumātua, ka waea te kaumātua ka mea mai "Ā, Koro tēnā koe, tēnā koe hei te rangatira. Haramai, nau mai, nau mai ki tō tātau nei reo irirangi." He tika hoki tēnā. Engari, ki te waea atu koe ki wētahi atu o ngā

teihana, ka mea atu: “Ā... ko au tēnei.” “Kia ora. He aha wō kōrero. Tēnā kōrerohia mai. Tēnā kōrerohia mai wō kōrero.”

Kaiuru tuaono

Ka haere tonu te kōrero a te kaiuru tuaono nei me tāna mō te reo hākinakina. I te mea he tere rawa taua momo reo, me tere ngā kīanga me ngā rerenga kōrero:

Koirā te reo...mō te hākinakina, koirā nā, he pai ngā tāngata rā hei karawhiuwhiu atu, hei whakawerawera atu i ngā taringa o ngā kaiwhakarongo. Mea mai, “Auē! Kia kaha!” Pai hoki te whakatakoto i ngā kōrero. Ko te rerekētanga o te hākinakina, ko ngā kupu me te āhua o te whakatakoto. Ki te kōrero koe ki tētahi atu hōtaka ka mea koe; “Kei te...ā...kua kiki te pōro ki te taha katau, ki te parirau.” [he reo pōturi] Ki te kōrero te hākinakina ka mea, “Ka kiki ki te parirau!!!” pērā atu momo-kōrero, he āhua whakapotopoto i ngā kōrero. Engari, he whakamārama tonu. He tere ake hoki te reo. He tere ake. Koirā, me whai haere koe i ngā tāngata mōhio ki te hanga kōrero. Ā, he āhua koi rawa te hinengaro, he tere rawa te whakatakoto i ngā kōrero. Poto noa iho te wā, engari ko tō mahi, hei whakamārama he aha ngā nekeneke i runga i te papa tākaro i te wā poto noa iho.

Kaiuru tuaono

Ko te whakataukī Pākehā e kī ana, ‘He poto, he reka’. Rangona ai aua momo kīanga pērā i te KUPU PEHA³⁴ ki waenganui i ngā tohunga reo. Ki tētehi kaiuru i maringanui tōna pakeketanga ake ki te taha o tōna pāpā, i te mea he tangata kōrero Māori:

He waimarie... i tipu mai mātou i roto i ngā tāngata kōrero paki o te kāinga i ngā wāhi katoa. Tangata teka katoa, whakareka. Taku pāpā eh, oh, ko ia eh. Pakupaku noa iho te kōrero, engari, whakamōmonatia

Kaiuru tuawaru

He tino tikanga tēnei, kia itiiti te kupu, kia nui te kōrero. Kitea ai tēnei wairua o te reo i ngā tuhinga a ngā tāngata matatau:

Kei a Te Heikoko... ahakoa ko ētahi mā ngā tamariki, ko ētahi mā ngā pakeke, ahakoa te aha kei reira ana kupu, he pai ana pērā i tana whakamāoritanga o te *Pingipingi Pī*. I reira tētahi wāhanga, me kī ka kapo ia i ētahi kupu mai i ngā

³⁴ quip

whārangi kua hori atu ana, ā, kua whakaritea tētahi... pērā i... tana whakamāori i te Chicken Licken. I reira tētahi... takawiri arero. I roto i tana pukapuka ko tētahi o ērā mea, taku mīharo hoki, rua noa iho ngā kupu engari he takawiri arero anō te kupu.

Kaiuru 12

I mea mai tētehi kaiuru i tōna haeretanga ki tētehi wānanga kua paku mārama ake ia ki ngā tikanga o te karanga. I mua i te wānanga kīhai i mōhio me pēhea, heoi, ka kī ake ia ka matapakina: te kawa o te karanga, te mahi a te karanga, te tū i runga marae, te hīkoi me te karanga, te rerekētanga o te karanga o te manuhiri me te tangata whenua, ngā kaupapa karanga, te whakatō i te kākano o te kaupapa hei whai atu mā te kaiwhaikōrero, ka mutu, ko te teitei me te manawataki o te reo. Heoi anō mō te kupu, ko tētehi tikanga o te karanga ko te whakarāpopoto o te kaupapa kei ngā rārangi ruarua nei. ‘Kāre au i te mōhio i mua i tērā, he ture me te wā tika ki te whakaheke i te reo...kia kore ai e whati’. Āna rā, he tikanga tā tēnā momo-kōrero, tā tēnā momo-kōrero hei akoako mā te tangata kia whai tūrangawaewae ki roto i te ao Māori.

Ki tēnei kaiuru, he kaituhi pukapuka, anei ētehi tikanga e whai wāhi ana ki te pukapuka wāhanga, arā te hanganga, te raupapatanga whakaaro, te IA O TE KŌRERO³⁵. Ka tairitea anōtia ki tā te whaikōrero hanganga:

He tika anō mēnā he pukapuka wāhanga...me kī...ngā taumata me eke ki tētahi taumata...he paku *climax* ki ia wāhanga, kia whai, kia kaua e maroke te wāhanga, me whai ia i tētahi take motuhake, ā, ka ea ka aha atu rānei ki tērā atu o ngā wahanga...he rite ki te hanga whare. Kei te whakarite i ngā paraka, kia teitei ake, ā, kei te mōhio koe kei te haramai tētahi pīki mea engari kāore koe i te mōhio he aha tērā mea tae noa ki te wā ka puta mai. Ētahi wā he *anti-climax* kē te mahi, ā, kātahi ka pahū rawa te pukapuka, ētahi wā ka, ‘Oh kua pahū, kua pai’. Engari kia pērā, kia whai take ia wāhanga kia kaua e maroke, kia kaua e kōrero kurī noa iho, me whaitake. Ka tere hōhā ngā tamariki ki ngā kōrero kurī, ngā pahupahu noa iho, me whaitake, me whai rātou i tētahi *intrigue*, tētahi mea huna rānei. Kia piki ake i te hiahia o roto, kia pānui tonu.

Kaiuru 12

³⁵ plot

E mea ana tēnei kaiuru anei ētehi tikanga ka aroa i a ia e tito ruri ana. Ka kitea ko te tangi tētehi tikanga nui o tēnei momo-kōrero, o te ruri:

Me kī ... kua maumahara au ki ngā kupu a Tīmoti, kia kaua e maroke, nā reira i a au e tuhi ana kei te aro tonu au ki ērā kupu me tērā whakahau, kia rata mai ngā tamariki ki te reo, kia tino, kia āta tau te taki o te ruri, kia kaua e tapepe haere, kia pai ai te rere o te kupu, me te mea nei kia pai te pakiwaitara o roto tonu i te ruri, kia whai wāhi anō ngā tamariki, kia hiamō, kia ngangawe, kia manawareka.

Kaiuru 12

Tērā te wā takea mai ai te momo-kōrero me ōna tikanga i te ao Pākehā. Arā, ko ngā whakahaere, ko ngā ture, ko te wairua nō tauīwi kē. E pai tonu ana tērā, heoi anō kia mahia pea taua momo-kōrero i runga i taua mōhiotanga. Koia tā tēnei kaiuru e whai nei mō te taupatupatu:

Ki a au nei i ahu mai tēnei mea te tautohetohe e mōhiotia nei e tāua i te ao Pākehā, ko ngā ture o te tāima, te tangi pere, ko te kupu whakataki, he aha tētahi kupu, te tīmataka o tō... te whakatakoto kaupapa, tokotoru o tō tīma, tētahi whakatakoto. Kaupapa mea mai, ana te kōrero o te tangata, te kōrero o te kōrero... te tangata i waenganui, whakatakoto puku o te kōrero o te taukumekume, te tangata whakamutunga...whiriwhirihia ngā kōrero katoa kātahi ka whakawhiu kupu whakaotinga. Kātahi ka hoki mai tētahi kia whakahoki kōrero anō mō te kōrero tekau hēkona. Ki a au nei i ahu mai te taupatupatu mōhiotia nei e te iwi Māori i te taha Pākehā... mēnā ka whai i ngā tikanga Māori pēra ki te tauutuutu i runga i te marae he pai ake te tauutuutu ki a au pērā ki te taupatupatu, i te mea tū tētahi ka whakahoki tētahi, tū tētahi ka whakahoki... āhua pai inā hiahia tētahi kia whiu kōrero whawhai, aha atu rānei...

Kaiuru tuaiwa

7.2.10 Te Kōrero Whai Hua

He nui ngā āhuatanga e whaihua ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Ko te katoa o ngā mātāpono kua hipa atu e whai pānga ana ki te hua o te kōrero. Heoi, ehara i te mea me uru te katoa ki tētehi momo-kōrero kia whai hua ai. Kei te āhua tonu o te horopaki. Heoi, he āhuatanga reo atu anō kāore anō kia kōrerohia, ko te kōrerohia o te reo kia māmā.

Tokomaha ngā kaiuru i kī mai kia whaihua te reo me māmā te takoto. Mēnā ka māmā, ka mārāma. I whakatauiratia e ētehi kaiuru te āhuatanga reo o ngā tūpuna i ngā niupepa tawhito, i ngā tuhinga tawhito, ā, i ngā waiata tawhito hoki. Inā tā te kaiuru tuaiwa, ‘Ko ētahi mea pai ki a au ko ētahi reta kua tuhia e ōku tūpuna ki te kawana, he rawe, he māmā te pānui... ka mau i a koe i taua wā, ehara i te mea me wānanga kia mōhio. I ētahi wā mahi hōhā tērā’. Ka haere tonu ia, ko te mea nui o konci, ehara rawa i te mea me whakanikoniko i te kīnga i ngā wā katoa kia whai hua ai:

Mēnā ka pānui koe i ngā reta a ngā tūpuna, ngā niupepa, ngā waiata hoki he māmā, pērā ki te waiata Paikea, ‘Uia mai koia’, *ask me and I will tell you. I mean* he māmā tēnā, engari he ātaahua hoki ngā kupu... me mārāma tō reo, me mārāma te kaupapa, ka taea te whakanikoniko, engari moumou wā ki te kore...te kaiwhakarongo e mārāma ana...

Kaiuru tuaiwa

Engari kia Māori anō te reo, mēnā ka tiro ano tātou ki ngā waiata kua tuku iho e ngā mātua tūpuna, he ngāwari tonu te reo o roto, ngāwari rawa me te nui rawa o ngā korero, ahakoa te iti o te kupu he nui te kōrero. I ēnei rangi, mēnā ka tino whakarongo tātou ki te reo, auē... kei te whai rawa i ngā tauira o te ao Pākehā nei.

Kaiuru 12

He kaha nō tēnei kaiuru ki te tautoko i tērā TAERA³⁶. Arā ake, ko te whakatakoto kōrero kia māmā ai. Heoi, koia te wawata kia māmā te takoto, he uaua pea te ako kia pērā rawa te pai o ērā tohunga o te reo pērā i a Tuini Ngawai mā, he tohunga mō te whakatakoto i te kupu kia māmā te āhua, engari inā kē noa ake te nui o te tikanga:

³⁶ style: he kupu mino.

I whakaaro mātou, he mīharo nui te reo o tēnei haka [o Tāne-Rore nā Tīmoti Kāretu]. I taea e ia te reo te whakatakoto he māmā nei te whakatakoto, he tūāhuatanga motuhake i pai te māramatanga. *Simplicity*, kāore au i te mōhio ki te kupu Māori o tērā. Kia hoki ahau ki te tangata... E pēnei ana nga kupu a Ruka [Broughton], Ko te wero nui...*“the more simple the reo is, he would say, the better it is. And its finding the imagery and the nuance that achieves that.”* Is that what the literary devices are that make it so good? Ka panuihia ētehi o nga tuhinga, arā, ake te hōhonu, te whānui, engari kāore tonu i te mārama. Ko te mea uaua ki te whakaako ki ngā tamariki, kia māmā ai. Engari, kia whakaurungia ētehi āhuatanga kia reka ai te reo ki te kaiwhakarongo, ki te kaipānui.

Kaiuru 23

Ki te kaiuru tuawaru he mea nui kia rite te tangata ki te kōrero. Ka whaihua te kōrero mēnā ka mārama koe ki āu kupu, kātahi ka whaihua rawa atu ki te whakaminenga. Nō reira me mōhio koe:

Ki te wetewete i te kōrero, ki te whakatangi i te kōrero, ki te whakarangatira i te kōrero, ki te whakaputa i te kōrero, ki te whakapapai i te kōrero, ki te rapu i te ora i roto i te reo.

Kaiuru tuawaru

Ki tēnei kaiuru, me mārama ki te horopaki e whakaputa ana tētehi āhuatanga reo, i reira ka whai hua ai:

...e tika ana me whānui te āhua o te reo, te whakatakotoranga o te reo, i te reo, engari e āwangawanga ana ahau i ngā wā katoa, e pēhea ai te kaiwhakaputa i te reo, ā-kōrero, ā-tuhi, me tino mārama ko tērā te wā, ko tēnā te horopaki, ko tērā te āhua e tika ana mō tēnei momo kōrero, te whakamahi rānei i tētahi kīwaha, te whakamahi rānei i tētahi whakataukī. Ka hoki ngā pouako i ngā kura reo, kua whakahokia mai ngā kete, i roto i ā rātou kete ētahi atu mea hei whakauru kia whānui ake hei whakawhānui i te reo o ngā tamariki, engari kāre i te mahia i runga i te māramatanga i tētehi pūnaha rānei, arā te wāhi tika, te wā tika, te horopaki tika e puta ai te reo.

Kaiuru 23

Hei tautoko i tāna, ki tā te kaiuru tuaono me kaua noa e rite ki te kākā, 'Never just recite things. Knowledge of what you're saying so you know where to emphasise, what you're emphasising.' Mā te mōhio ka tau ki hea whakawana ai, ki hea whakanikoniko ai i tō kōrero. Ehara rawa i te mea ko ngā āhuatanga reo anake ngā āhuatanga e whaihua ai te reo, inā:

Etahi o ngā kōrero he hōhonu rawa... Ko te tikanga o te kōrero. Me te pai, me te kori o te kaikōrero ki te whakamārama i te hōhonutanga o te kōrero, kia māmā ai mā te taringa whakarongo. Tāna whakamārama i te kupu, i te tikanga o te kupu.

Kaiuru 14

7.3 He Anga Mātāpono: Mātātuhi, Mātākōrero

Nō reira ko tā te anga e whai nei he aro nui ki ngā āhuatanga e kouna ai te reo o tētehi kōrero rānei, o tētehi tuhinga rānei. He anga hoki tēnei hei āwhina ki te wetewete i ngā titonga a tētehi tohunga ki te reo o te Wāhanga Tuaiwa. Heoi, ko tā te anga nei he whakaatu i ngā ARIĀ³⁷ matua i tā ngā kaiuru, i tā ngā tuhinga kua pānuihia. Heoi, ko te WHAKAMAHI³⁸ i te anga tētehi āhuatanga nui. Kia whai hua te whakamahia o te anga kei ngā whārangi tata nei ka hangaia ētehi pātai e huri ai te aronga o te kaiako ki ia mātāpono. Mā reira anō e wetewete ai ētehi āhuatanga reo kei te waiata i te Wāhanga Tuaiwa.

Tērā ka kitea ki te anga mātāpono e whā ngā wāhanga. Tuatahi, he tirohanga whānui ki te ahurea. Ahakoa he tikanga ā-iwi, he tikanga ā-tangata hoki. Inā rā, he whakaponu kē tō ia tangata, he whakaaro kē ōna, he mahinga kē āna. Nā reira e tika ana kia whakaarohia aua āhuatanga mēnā e kimi māramatanga ana mō tētehi momo-kōrero. Ka mutu, mō ia iwi tērā ngā kaupapa matua e pā nei ki a ia. Mā te ahurea anō hoki e tohu he aha ngā tino kaupapa o te wā, heoi kei te tangata te whiriwhiri ko t/ēhea ngā kaupapa ka kōkiri whakamua. Inā ko tētehi āhuatanga e taka mai ana i te mātauranga, i te reo, i te tōrangapū, i te ohaoaha, i te whakaponu, i te aha kē atu.

Tuarua, ko te horopaki e kōrerotia ana, e tuhia ana te momo-kōrero. Me hāngai tonu te kōrero ki te whakaminenga kia whai hua ai: te kaupapa, te take e kōrero nei koe, te KARERE³⁹, te TAERA⁴⁰ o te kōrero, te māramatanga o ngā kupu, te aha atu. Mā reira e hono atu ai ki tā te whakaminenga hiahia, ā, he hononga ā-ngakau tērā. Mā reira hoki e puta ai te ihi, te wehi, ka mutu pea, te wana.

Hei āpiti atu, ko te mea tuatoru, ko te reo o te kaikōrero, o te kaituhi. Mā reira anō e tūhono atu ai, e whakawehe ai rānei i te kaikōrero me te whakaminenga. Ko te whiriwhiri i te reo e tika ana mō te horopaki tētehi mea nui: kupu mai, kīanga mai, rerenga kōrero mai, whakahua mai. Ki te kore e tika te mātāpono te reo peha ka kore rawa atu e hanga whakaahua, ā, ka kore te whakaahua, e kore e whai hua.

³⁷ theory

³⁸ praxis

³⁹ message

⁴⁰ style

Te Whakaahua 7.6: He Anga Mātāpono: Mātātuhi, Mātākōrero

A Framework of Literary Principles: Written and Spoken

He mea hanga i runga i tā Murphy & Keegan, 2002; Carter, 2005.

Te Ahurea

1. Te Aronga ā-iwi, Te Aronga Māori	<i>Culture</i>
whakapono aroro whakaaro uara tikanga	<i>iwi/Māori perspective</i>
	kawa
2. Te Kaupapa Māori	<i>Māori themes</i>
pāpori tikanga ā-iwi tōrangapū ohaoha	hāhi

Te Horopaki

3. Te Pūtaketanga	<i>Context</i>
hui ⁴¹ wāhi, wā whakaminenga karere	<i>purpose</i>
	kaupapa momo-tukanga ⁴²
4. Te Rongo ā-Ngākau	<i>emotional connection</i>
ihi wehi wana whakamana	

Te Reo

5. Te Reo ā-iwi, Te Reo ā-kaupapa	<i>Language</i>
mita momo rerenga kōrero momo kupu	<i>dialect, register</i>
6. Te Reo Peha, Te Reo Māori	<i>Māori figurative language</i>
kīpeha whakatangi kīpeha whakawhere kīpeha huatau whakatairite haere	
7. Te Whakatakotoranga Māori	<i>Māori expression</i>
āheinga wetereo kīanga kupu	

Te Momo-Kōrero

8. Te Momo-kōrero	<i>Text Type</i>
kete momo-kōrero momo e auau ana te rangona ⁴³ tā te whakaminenga hiahia	<i>text types</i>
9. Te Tikanga Māori	<i>Māori conventions</i>
hanganga taera raupapatanga āhua kiko rere tere	
10. Te Whaihua	<i>effectiveness</i>
māmā māramatanga mō te whakaminenga taumata reo karere	

⁴¹ 'literary event': He wā, he wāhi e whakaputaina ai he momo-kōrero.

⁴² genre: kāore anō kia tau ki tētehi kupu Māori mō tēnei ariā reo, mō te momo wetereo o tētehi momo-kōrero.

⁴³ discourse habit

Mā te whakatakotoranga Māori e whakareka i te kōrero kia tino reo Māori ai te takotoranga mā te whakaminenga. He rerenga kōrero tino Māori rānei, he kīanga tino Māori rānei, he kīpeha rānei e Māori hoki ai te whakaaro.

Tuawhā, ko te momo-kōrero. Kāore e taea e te tangata te tū ake me te hanga i āna ake momo-kōrero e pā ana ki tētehi nohotahitanga ā-iwi. He tauiratanga tuku iho ngā momo-kōrero i runga tonu i te āhuatanga o te huinga tangata. Arā, me whakaaro ko te momo-kōrero e hiahiatia ana e te iwi mō taua wā. Ko reira hoki ngā tikanga Māori mō aua momo-kōrero. Ka whirihia te momo-kōrero e tika ana me te āpiti atu i tētehi hanganga e mōhiotia ana e te whakaminenga. Koia ngā tikanga Māori. He mea nui hoki te whakatakoto whakaaro mā roto i te reo mārama kia whai mai te whakaminenga. Ki te takahia aua ture ka kore e whai hua ki te whakaminenga.

E kitea ana, kua tuia i runga, kua tuia i raro ēnei mātāpono. Kua wehea kia tekau ngā mātāpono, kia whā ngā wāhanga i te mea he mārama atu te titiro inā ka whakarōpūtia pēneitia i tō te whakarārangi i ngā ARIĀ REO⁴⁴ rima tekau hei pānuitanga. Arā, hei whakaari noa i te mea whānui ki te mea whāiti, arā, mai i tō tātou Māoritanga tae noa iho ki te tikanga Māori kia kitea he nui ngā āhuatanga ka pā ki te kounga o te reo kia whaihua ki te whakaminenga. Waihoki, mō ia mātāpono, mēnā kei te tātarihia te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero, ka taea te tuku pātai atu, ā, mā te whakautuutu haere ka kitea mēnā kua eke rā te kōrero ki te taumata, kāore rānei. Nei rā ētehi o ngā pātai mō ngā mātāpono hei tātari i te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero. He whakapotonga kau, arā ake anō ētehi atu pātai e taea ana.

⁴⁴ language notions

Te Whakaahua 7.7: He Pātai mō ia Mātāpono

He Mātāpono	Kua Eke Taumata ia Mātāpono?
Te Aronga ā-iwi	Koia tā ie iwi/Māori tirohanga? He tikanga Māori? He aroro tino Māori?
Te Kaupapa Māori	He kaupapa nui tēnei ki tā te Māori titiro? Ka whai kiko te kaupapa, he aha ai? Ki te kore e aroa nuitia taua kaupapa, ka ahatia?
Te Pūtaketa	He aha te horopaki? E tika ana te pūtaketa o te momo-kōrero mō taua horopaki? Hei aha te momo-kōrero i taua horopaki?
Te Rongo ā-ngākau	Tērā ka rongo te ngākau i te ihi o te kaitito? Kua ahatia e te kaitito kia ngākaunui atu te whakaminenga?
Te Reo ā-iwi/Kaupapa	E tika ana te reo mō taua wā, mō taua wāhi, mō aua tāngata? He aha ngā āhuatanga reo nō taua iwi, nō taua kaupapa rānei?
Te Reo Peha	He whakaahua kei te reo? He aha ngā whakatairitenga matua? He aha i whiriwhiri ai te kaitito i aua kīpeha mō taua momo-kōrero?
Te Takotoranga Māori	E Māori ana ngā rerenga kōrero? He rerenga hāngū? He rerenga kupu mahi āhua? E whai ana i ētehi ture reo pērā i te 'a/o', 'no adverbial usage'...
Te Momo-kōrero	E tika ana te tū momo-kōrero mō taua horopaki ōkawa, ōpaki? Koia te momo-kōrero ka hiahiatia e te whakaminenga?
Te Tikanga Māori	E tika ana te raupapatanga o ngā whakaaro? E tika ana te hanganga mō te tū momo-kōrero? Kei te whai i te 'taera' mō taua momo-kōrero?
Te Kōrero Whaihua	E mārama ana te kōrero ki te whakaminenga? E hāngai ana te kōrero ki te whakaminenga? E tika ana te taumata reo me te 'taera' o te momo-kōrero?

7.4 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

I tēnei Wāhanga mokori anō te kairangahau kia rongo atu i ngā reo a ngā kaiwhakahoki kōrero me ō rātou whakaaro mō te momo-kōrero, mō te whakarākei i te momo-kōrero. Otirā, he rerekē anō tēnā kaiuru i tēnā kaiuru. Ki ētehi ko ngā āhuatanga reo te mea nui, ki ētehi atu ko te whakaaro Māori te mea nui, ā, ki ētehi anō ko te kaupapa te mea nui. He tika rā rātou katoa, he mea nui aua mātāpono katoa. Koia anō e tuia ana te katoa o ngā kōrero ki roto i ngā mātāpono. Ehara rawa i te mea me tutuki ia mātāpono kia whaihua ai te momo-kōrero, heoi, ki te ea te nuinga i te kaikōrero, i te kaituhi tērā ka ranginamu ake ki te whakaminenga. Ki te whakamaui atu ko te katoa o ngā mātāpono, kātahi pea ka ‘whakarurutao’⁴⁵ i te momo-kōrero.

Nā reira, i whānui ai te tirohanga i te hua o ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru ka tahi. Ka rua, e mea ana te whakataukī, ‘Mā te pūtaka ka tipu te rākau’. Kia mārō te pūtaka, ka kaha ake te tipu o te rākau. Pēnei i te kaupapa nei, ko te pūtaketanga o tēnei Wāhanga hei whakautu i tētehi o ngā pātai rangahau, me pēwhea e kounga ai te momo-kōrero? Nei rā, mahia atu ngā mātāpono kia REREHUA⁴⁶ ai te momo-kōrero. Waihoki, ko te mātāpono te reo peha koia tētehi taha nui kia rerehua ai ngā momo-kōrero ihiihi. Nā ngā kaiuru tonu te kupu akiaki kia ruku i te reo peha hei āwhina mā rātou. Koia rā kei te Wāhanga Tuawaru e whai nei te hua nui o tēnei rangahau. Tērā e kitea ko te tāmōre matua o te rākau kōrero e tau ai tēnei kaupapa rangahau ki tōna takotoranga, ko te whakamārama i te reo peha. Kātahi rā ka pūāwai tēnei kaupapa rangahau.

⁴⁵ make it shakespearean (kaiuru 9)

⁴⁶ aesthetically pleasing

TE WĀHANGA TUAWARU

He Nuka Reo, He Kīpeha

Mā te matatau mārire ki te reo,
ka ātaahua te takoto i te kupu ā-waha, ā-tuhi.

Miria Simpson, 1995: 105

Ko tāu kupu kōrero, ko tāku kupu kōrero
Utaina ki te takapou whāriki, ka ora te uki whaimuri

Huirangi Waikerepuru, 19 o Pipiri, 1995

8.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

8.2 He Aha te Aronga o te Nuka Reo?

8.2.1 Te Whanaketanga o te Ahureo

8.2.2 Hei Aha te Nuka Reo?

8.2.3 He Tūmomo Kīpeha

8.3 He Kīpeha Whakawhere

8.4 He Kīpeha Whakatangi

8.5 He Kīpeha Huatau

8.5.1 Te Huahuatau

8.5.2 Te Kīwaha

8.5.3 Te Kupu Hautanga

8.5.4 Te Kupu Whakarite

8.5.5 Te Pepeha

8.5.6 Te Tairitenga

8.5.7 Te Tohu

8.5.8 Te Tohutoro

8.5.9 Te Whakatangata

8.5.10 Te Whakataukī

8.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

8.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Kei tēnei Wāhanga ētehi o ngā āhuatanga reo hei whakautu i te pātai me pēwhea e eke panuku ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Koia ko tētehi peka o te NUKA REO¹, inā ko te REO PEHA². I runga anō i te mōhio he iti noa iho nei ngā kōrero e whakamārama ana i tēnei peka o te AHUREO³, arā ake, ko ngā nuka reo me ngā KĪPEHA⁴, ka kaha whakataukītia ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru me te whakahonohono i ngā kōrero kua rangahaua atu. Mā reira e whakaatu mai ai he paku hīnātore mō tēnei momo reo. He reo e whakatauriterite ana i tētehi āhuatanga ki tētehi atu. Kia kīia pēneitia, mā te kāhui kīpeha nei e Māori ai te reo Māori.

E taka mai ana i raro i te kārangarangatanga o te kīpeha, ko ēnei e mōhiohia whānuitia ana: ko te whakataukī, ko te pepeha, ko te kīwaha, ko te kupu whakarite. Ahakoa he iti ēnei rerenga kupu, he nui te tikanga. He tikanga e whai pānga ana ki te ao Māori, o te ao Pākehā anō hoki. Kēi ēnei kupu ruarua nei o te kīpeha he mātauranga, he mōhioanga, he māramatanga i tukua iho ai i tēnā whakatupuranga ki tēnā whakatupuranga. E kīia ana e ngā tohunga o te reo koia ētehi āhuatanga nui kia kounga ai te reo. Arā ake pea, ko tā te kīpeha he whakairo i te whakaaro o te kaiwhakaputa hei kawenga atu ki te whakaminenga. Kia ahatia? Kia whai pānga te kōrero ki te whakaminenga, hei whakahaukaha i tētehi ARORO⁵ i ētehi wā, hei whakarāpopoto i te whakaaro i ētehi wā, hei whakamārama i te take kōrero i ētehi anō wā, hei whakahoki tere noa i te kīnga a tētehi atu, hei whakangahau rānei, hei aha atu anō rānei.

¹ language (literary) device

² figurative language

³ metalanguage

⁴ figures of speech

⁵ concept

8.2 He Aha te Aronga o te Nuka Reo?

Ko ngā nuka reo, ko ngā kupu whakamārama o tētehi reo. Me kī, he ahureo, he metareo; ko te reo o te reo, ko ngā kupu whakaari i te aronga o te reo. Ko ngā nuka reo ngā āhuatanga reo e WHAKANIKONIKO⁶ ai i te kaupapa ki te hunga whakarongo, ki te hunga pānui, ki te hunga mātakitaki. Kei roto i te pukapuka arataki mā ngā pouako *Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa* e kīia ana he ‘kounga o te tuhi’ (1996: 195). Heoi, ehara rawa i te mea mā te tuhi anake ngā nuka nei hei whakakounga i te reo. Ina ka kōrerotia, ka tuhia rānei he kōrero ki tētehi whakaminenga mā ngā nuka reo nei e patipati, e pakepake ai i te ngākau, i te hinengaro, i te wairua o te tangata. Ahakoa reo kōrero, ahakoa reo tuhituhi. He wā tōna kia waiho ngā nuka reo, he wā atu anō me karawhiu ēnei nuka reo. Kei te PŪTAKETANGA tonu o te momo-kōrero te tikanga, me te horopaki me tā te KAITITO TAKOTO I TE KUPU⁷.

Ki te tirohia he pukapuka e pā ana ki ngā nuka reo i te reo Ingarihi, tērā ka kitea tēnei huinga kupu, huinga ariā e takoto mai rā me ngā whakamārama (Hei tauira ko Hough 2002b, ko McCarthy 1997, ko Anderson & Anderson 1997). Kia kaua e riro mā te reo Ingarihi te reo Māori e kōrero. Heoi, mō te ako i te tuhituhi, me uaua ka whakaako i ngā ākonga kia eke panuku ai te kounga o ā rātou tuhinga inā kāore e mōhio ana ki te nuinga o ēnei ariā reo (tirohia te Āpitihanga 2 mō ngā tohutoro me ngā kupu whakamārama).

⁶ to embellish, ‘to enhance with literary devices’, NZQA, Te Reo Rangatira 3.7, Paerewa Paetae, AS90788.

⁷ poetic license

Te Whakaahua 8.1: He Huinga Nuka Reo

<i>Alliteration</i>	orokati tārua	<i>Oxymoron</i>	kupu tātā
<i>Allusion</i>	tohutoro	<i>Parody</i>	whakatau
<i>Analogy</i>	tairitenga		pūhohe
<i>Atmosphere</i>	wairua	<i>Personification</i>	whakatangata
<i>Blurb</i>	tuhinga uhi o	<i>Point of view</i>	tirohanga
	muri	<i>Purpose</i>	pūtaketanga
<i>Character</i>	kiripuaki	<i>Plot</i>	ia o te kōrero
<i>Climax</i>	teiteitanga	<i>Resolution</i>	taunga
<i>Complication</i>	raruraru	<i>Repetition</i>	tārua (-tia)
<i>Dialogue</i>	kōrerorero	<i>Rhyme</i>	huarite
<i>Figurative language</i>	reo peha	<i>Sarcasm</i>	kupu
<i>Imagery</i>	reo whakaahua		whakahāwea
<i>Introduction/</i>	whakapuakinga	<i>Setting</i>	wāhi me te wā
<i>orientation</i>		<i>Simile</i>	kupu whakarite
<i>Irony</i>	kupu hākiki	<i>Structure</i>	hanganga
<i>Literal language</i>	reo more	<i>Style</i>	taera
<i>Metaphor</i>	huahuatau	<i>Symbol</i>	tohu
<i>Motivation</i>	toitoi manawa	<i>Theme</i>	kaupapa
<i>Onomatopoeia</i>	kupu ororite	<i>Tone</i>	hā

Nā, he mea homai ētehi o ngā kupu o tēnei Wāhanga e ngā kaiuru tonu, e te Ohu Whakamaru hoki, e taku haporī reo rānei. Pēnei i te kīanga ‘nuka reo’ mō te *language device/term* (T. Kārena, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Hūrae, 2005). He mea ahu mai i te kupu nukarau. Kua tīkina atu rānei ngā kupu i ētehi rauemi a te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, i ngā papakupu, i hea atu anō. E hia manomano kupu e taea ana te tiki atu mō ngā nuka reo, heoi kei tēnei Wāhanga ētehi tino hei tīmatanga ake. I te rangahau e whakahaeretia ana ka homai e tēnā, e tenā he kupu mō tētehi āhuatanga reo, mō te mātauranga reo. He neke atu i te 180 ngā kupu mō te mātātuhi kei te Āpitihianga 2. Kei reira tētehi paku whakamārama reo Māori hoki kia mārama mai ai i

te houtanga rawa o te kaupapa nei. Koia hoki ngā KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA⁸ ka whakamahia ki tēnei tuhinga.

Ko tētehi āhutatanga i kitea i tēnei rangahautanga, kei te mōhio ngā kaiako ki te nuinga o ngā kupu i te reo Ingarihi, heoi mō te whakaako, kāore i te whakaingoa i ngā kupu ahakoa kei reira te hiahia ki te ako i aua ARIĀ REO⁹. Ka mutu, he kupu tō tēnā kura, tō tēnā kura. Mō te *character* ka kī mai ētehi o ngā kaiuru: he ‘tangata’, he ‘kiripuaki’, he ‘kaitū’. Mō te *plot* ka kīia he ‘kaupapa’, he ‘anga kōrero’, he ‘ia o te kōrero’, he ‘tāhūhū’ rānei. Kua hinga ngā kaiako ki te kimikimi kupu i te korenga o te papakupu reo Māori mō te reo Māori.

Nā, e kīia ana he kupu tā tēnā kaupapa, he kupu tā tēnā kaupapa. Inā rā, ki te ako i te pāngarau, he kupu taketake i reira, kāore e kitea ana i waho o taua horopaki. Pēnei i te pūtaiao, i te hauora, i te aha, i te aha. Pēnei tonu me te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako. Arā atu anō ngā kupu kia mōhio ngā ākonga ki te kaupapa tuhituhi. Kia mōhio ka kotiti pēhea nei te tuhinga tauira; te taera, te wetereo, te kārawarawatanga, te whakaū ki te kaupapa, te rere o te whakaaro. Arā atu anō ngā kupu hei āta tātari i te kounga o tētehi kōrero, o tētehi tuhinga: hei tauira, te kūmuri hāngū, te kīanga, te whakataukītanga kōrero. He kupu ā-kaupapa mō te reo Māori ēnei hei ruku i te hōhonutanga o te reo. Koia ko te ahureo.

⁸ jargon

⁹ language notions

8.2.1 Te Whanaketanga o te Ahureo

I roto i ngā tau nei kua tupu haere ngā kupu hei whakamārama i ngā āhuatanga reo. Ko te tīmatanga ake pea, nā Cleve Barlow i whakamāori te pukapuka a Bruce Biggs “kia mau taatou ki to taatou reo rangatira me te whakaako hoki i taua reo i roto anoo i te reo”(Biggs, 1990: xvii). I taua pukapuka tonu ka mea ake a Biggs, “E kii ana ngā tohunga reo ‘he mahi uaua te koorero mo te reo ma te reo’, aa, kua hangaa e raatou he reo waananga, he reo kaaore e maarama ana ki te nuinga o te tangata, kia ngawari ai taua mahi” (reira tonu: xvi). Nō reira, ko te ahureo he huarahi e taea ai te wānanga te reo mā te reo. Ka mutu, e taea ai te wānanga te reo Māori mā te reo Māori me reo Māori te ahureo. Koia tētehi tohe nui o tēnei Wāhanga.

Ko tētehi o ngā kupu ahureo e hāngai ana ki tēnei kaupapa rangahau, ko tēnei kua maea ake nei i ngā tau. Ko te ‘taukī’ te *idiom* ki tā Barlow (Tirohia Biggs, 1990: 136). He ‘kōrero taukī’ kē ki tā Cormack rāua ko Cormack (2004: 44). He ‘rerenga kupu’, he ‘kōrero taukī’¹⁰ hoki ki te marautanga *Tihē Mauri Ora* mā ngā ākonga o te kura tuatahi (Ministry of Education, 1992). Heoi anō pea, ko te ‘kīwaha’ te kupu e tika ana, inā “Kua roa tēnei kupu e whakamahia ana hei ingoa whānui mō ngā momo-kōrero e whakaahua ana i ngā āhuatanga o ia rā, ā, me uaua ka kitea te tikanga tūturu...” (Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, 2002: 6). Inā i te tau 1997 ka whānau mai ngā peka e rua o te kīwaha, ka kīia ko te *idiom* he kīrehu, ko te *colloquialism* he kīwaha (Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 1997: 128). Engari ia e mea ake ana hoki Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga i te marautanga reo Māori he *idiom* te kīwaha (1996: 90). Auē taukiri e, ko te reo ahureo, te reo marara e. Heoi anō rā, kei te kupu taukī tonu te tikanga o te kīwaha me te kīrehu, arā ko te kīnga o ia rā ka tau ki wāhi kē mō tōna whakamārama. He pērā katoa ngā momo kupu ahureo atu i tēnei Wāhanga, kāore anō kia totoka rawa.

I ngā tau nei kua tohea hoki te tikanga o te kupu HUAHUATAU¹¹. He kupu whakarite kē e ai ki te manukura a Wharehuia Milroy (Moorfield, 1996: 42) me te marautanga toi i puta i te tau 2000 (Toi Marautanga, 2000: 125). Ki tā te papakupu *Te Matatiki* (Taura Whiri i te reo Māori, 1997) he rite tonu te *metaphor* me te *simile*, arā, ko te ‘kupu

¹⁰ E kīia ana he ‘expression idiom’

¹¹ metaphor

whakarite'. Tē kitea ai te kupu nei, te HUAHUATAU i roto i te marautanga reo Māori i te tau 1996. Kāore he kupu 'huahuatau' i te papakupu a Ryan i te tau 1994, ā, ka puta i te tau 1997. Ā, kei te moheni *He Muka*, tēnei whakamārama mō tētehi take i whai kounga ai tēnei whakaari, *Te Tangata Whai Rawa o Weneti*, 'Ka whakamahia hoki ko ngā kupu whakarite, ngā kīwaha me ngā kupu huahuatau o mua' (Pikia, 2002). Ā, i ēnei rā, e kaha whakamahia ana e New Zealand Qualifications Authority te huahuatau mō ētehi paerewa, inā kia eke te ākonga 'me whakauru i ngā whakataukī, kīwaha, huahuatau hei whakarekareka, hei kīnaki i ō kōrero (Unit Standards, Level 4: Resource 4.1). Koia anō tā ētehi kaiako whakamahi i ngā kupu whakarite me te huahuatau ki roto i ngā akomanga. Arā ake, kua wehea pea e ngā kaiako te tikanga o te kupu whakarite me te huahuatau mā ngā ākonga kia tino mārama ai.

Hei tauira atu anō mō tēnei whanaketanga reo, i puta te kupu nei te UI MAKIHOI¹² i te pukapuka *Te Whakamahi i Te Reo Māori i roto i te Marautanga o Aotearoa* i te tau 1997. I te toronga atu o te kairangahau ki ngā wāhi whakangungu kaiako, ka kitea e whakamahia ana ki Te Whakapiki i te Reo, heoi ki ētehi anō kaiako i kōrero mai kāore i mārama ki te tikanga o te 'ui makihoi' i roto i tēnei horopaki. Ahakoa kua tekau tau taua kupu e whakamahia ana e ētehi kaiako, kāore i te whakamahia whānuitia e ētehi atu. Ka mutu, ahakoa ka whakaputaina ngā kupu nei e ngā kaiuru, te kīrehu me te kīwaha, he uua rawa atu mā ngā kaiako kua roa nei e whakaako ana ki te kōrero tauira mai e kitea ai te rerekētanga o tētehi ki tētehi. Ko te āhua nei, kāore anō kia tangata whenua te noho mai o tēnei momo reo. Koia tā tētehi kaiuru mō ngā tāngata kāore i te waia ki ngā kupu hou o te hāpori, o Te Taura Whiri i te Reo, o te aha, o te aha, me tāna kī:

Engari, tōna tikanga ināianeī, kua tekau tau, tekau mā rima tau kē ngā kupu kua mārama tō koutou whakatipuranga he aha ērā kupu, ana, kei te rongo ahau...

Kaiuru 18

Koia hoki pea te āhuatanga o te wā, kei te tipu tonu tō tātou mōhiotanga ki te mātauranga reo. Ahakoa kua tupu te ahureo, he nui tonu ngā whāwhārua mātauranga reo me whakakīkī. Ki tētehi o ngā kaiuru he mea whanake ake tō tātou mōhiotanga ki

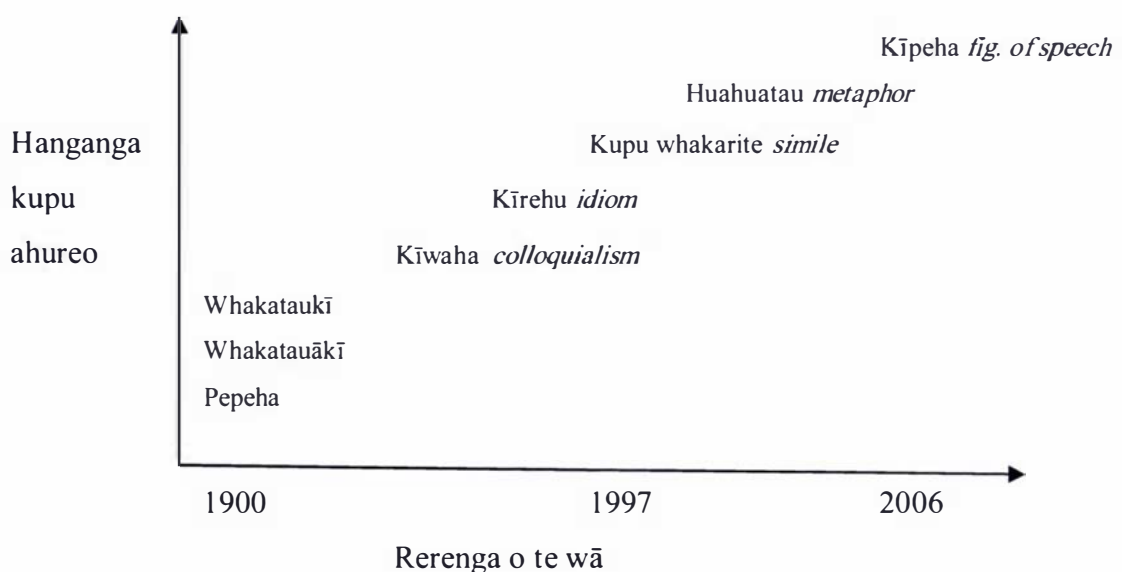
¹² rhetorical question

te mātauranga reo Māori i a tātou ka ako mā roto tonu i te reo Māori, ā, ki reira whanake tahi ai ngā kupu ahureo. I ngā wā o mua, i te wā o ngā tūpuna, inā tirohia ai ngā niupepa tawhito, tērā ka kitea te whakamahia o te kupu whakataukī, o te whakatauākī, o te pepeha (tirohia te pae tukutuku *Digital New Zealand Library*). Tē kitea ai ēnei anō kupu: te kīwaha, te kīrehu, te kupu whakarite, te huahuatau. I roto i te rua ngahuru tau pea ēnei kupu ahureo i maea ake.

Nō reira, mō te ‘kīwaha’, e rua ngā aronga o tēnei kupu kotahi, ā, ka whanau mai he kupu motuhake hei whakamārama i tērā anō taha ōna. Anā, ko te ‘kīrehu’. E kitea mai ana e rua ngā tikanga o te ‘kupu whakarite’, ā, ka whanau mai i ngā tau nei te ‘huahuatau’ hei whakaatu i tērā atu whakaaro. Inā rā te whanaketanga o ētehi kupu ahureo:

Te Whakaahua 8.2: Te Whanaketanga o te Ahureo Māori

The evolution of Māori metalanguage



Nā, mō te whakaingoa i tēnei huinga kupu nei, ki te manukura nei, ki a Wharehuia Milroy, he ‘whakapuakinga’ kē ēnei, ā, koia rā: te whakataukī, te whakatauākī, te pepeha, te kupu whakaari, te tongi, te kupu whakarite te kīwaha hoki (tirohia Moorfield, 1996: 36-43). Nā, ki te rōpū e whakamahi ana i ngā paerewa mā ngā kura, ki *New Zealand Qualifications Authority* (NZQA), ko te ‘nukanuka kōrero’ te ingoa whānui (Paearua 7260, 12 April 2006) mō tēnei huinga kupu. Ka mutu, ka kīia hoki e

NZQA he ‘kōrero whakanikoniko’ kē, *pithy sayings or aphorisms* (NZQA, 1548, putanga 3) arā, koia te whakataukī, te whakatauākī, te pepeha, te kupu whakaari, te tongi, te kīwaha, te kīrehu. Heoi, he ‘momo kōrero’ tā Moorfield (1996: 36); he ‘kounga reo’ (*literary qualities*), he ‘kupu whakanikoniko’ (*figurative language*) kē ki tā Nikora (2006). He oti anō rā, nō te tau 2006 ka hīa ake e Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori tētehi atu kupu hou e whakahuihui ai i ngā nuka reo nei. Ka kīa he KĪPEHA¹³. Kei raro i tēnei kārangarangatanga ko ērā anō kupu i kīia he whakapuakinga, he nukanuka kōrero, he kōrero whakanikoniko. Ā, koia te kupu e tau ana i tēnei rangahau. E kitea mai ana he rōpū he ahureo, he rōpū he ahureo! Ka mutu, he rerekē hoki tētehi kupu ahureo o roto tonu i tētehi rōpū, ai aue! Kāore pea tētehi rōpū i te kōrero ki tētehi. He take nui tēnei te kore taunga ki te kupu ahureo e tika ana. Ko te whakautu, ko te papakupu reo Māori mō te reo Māori, me te whakangungu i te kaiako, heoi he take kōrero atu anō tērā, he take rangahau kē atu hoki.

Te Whakaahua 8.3: He Kīpeha e Āhua Mōhiotia Whānuitia ana
Common figures of speech

Kīpeha	Kīrehu, kīwaha, kupu whakaari, kupu whakarite, huahuatau, pepeha, tongi, whakataukī, whakatauākī
<i>Figures of Speech</i>	<i>Idiom, colloquialism, prophetic saying, simile, metaphor, tribal aphorism, prophetic saying, general proverb, specific proverb</i>

E mārama ana i te takanga o te wā kua āhua tupu ngā kupu ahureo i te reo Māori, heoi anō, kei te ngoikore te whakaingoa, te whakamahia o ngā nuka reo nei i te horopaki mātauranga. Ko tētehi take nui pea kāore e whakamahia ana ngā nuka reo, kei reira te whakapae o ētehi tāngata me waiho rā te reo Māori kia ‘reo Māori’, inā rā koia rā tā te kaumātua i Benton me Benton (1999: 114) i *Revitalizing the Māori Language*.

Kua kōrero mai ētehi o ngā kaumātua ki a mātou, ā, kāore rātou i te hiahia kia kīkī rawa te reo Māori ki te kupu pōhauhau. He pānga tahi ki tā te reo Pākehā; inā rā he ritenga tōna ki tā tētehi iwi e rui kākano tarukino ana ki te māra pai o iwi kē.

¹³ figure of speech

Me pātai ake te tangata e ako ana mā te reo i te kura, i hea ake rānei, he tika, he whai painga mō te ora, mō te whakaora o te reo tā rātou i mahi ai, inā he pai aha tā te reo aromatawai, tā te tino arotake i te kounga o te tuhinga¹.

Ahakoia tēnei tirohanga ki ngā kupu hou, arā anō tētehi tirohanga mai i tētehi anō whakatipuranga. I kuraina tēnei whakatipuranga ki te reo Māori, ā, kei te ākona hoki te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako:

Ka kite au i aku tau 8 i tēnei tau he tino pīrangi, he nui ō rātou hiahia ki te mōhio he aha wēnei (ngā kīpeha). “Whaea, pēhea wēnei kupu, pēhea te whakatakoto?” I te mōhio au i te *onomatopoeia* i te reo Pākehā, kāore i te tino mōhio ki roto i te reo Māori. Engari ka kitea i roto i ngā tamariki tērā hiahia kia whakawhānui ake te reo. He rawe tērā, he tino pai tērā ki a au kei ngā tamariki tērā wawata. He tamariki koi, tino koi i tēnei tau.

Kaiuru 30

Engari katoa ēnei [kīpeha] i ako au i te wā i tīmata au ki te whai i te akomanga reo Pākehā, nō reira, e hāngai tonu ki te reo Māori. Āe, e tika ana, whakamāoritia, kia tae ki te wā e matapaki ana ngā tamariki, i waenganui i a rātou anō kia āhei rātou kia whai kupu i te reo Māori ki te whakahua i ēnei momo mea.

Kaiuru 25

Tērā pea kei te taukumekume tētehi reanga ki tētehi i runga i te mea kua tupu te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako o te marautanga i roto i te kura atu i ngā tau 1980. Ā, i roto i ngā tau nei kua tupu te hiahia o ngā ākonga ki te ruku i te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa reo, ā, he āwhina nui ngā nuka reo ki te pērā. Āpiti atu ki tērā, e kīia ana kāore ngā tamariki i te whakamā ki te nanao atu i ngā KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA¹⁴, engari anō pea ko ngā kaiako (Learning Media, 1996: 4). Heoi, ki te ako i te ahureo me ōrite te whakamahia o ngā kupu e tēnā kaiako, e tēnā kaiako, inā kia eke haere te ākonga mai i te tau

¹⁴ technical words, jargon

tuatahi tae noa ake ki te tau tekau mā toru, me haere ngātahi ngā kupu ahureo e mārama ana ki a rātou (Crystal, 2005: 480).

Nā reira, kei te tupu tonu tēnei reo i roto i ngā akomanga hei āwhina mā te ākongā ki te arotake, ki te waihanga i ā rātou ake kōrero. Ā, e tika tonu ana pea kia whai te reo Māori i tētehi reo whakamārama mō te reo. Koia tā tēnei kaiuru, ā, he ahureo atu anō kei te tupu mai:

Engari kāore i tau he kupu Māori ki runga hei whakamārama kē ēnei kupu. Nō muri mai ka kīa he kīwaha. Ko ngā whakataukī he kupu tawhito tēra. Pepeha he kupu tawhito. Whakatauākī he tawhito. Kei te titiro mātou ināianei he aha ngā momo hei titiro. Ngā momo kīanga, e rima pea ngā momo kīanga. Kīanga āwaiā: pakaru mai te haunga, tau kē, meinga meinga. E kore e taea te whakamārama mā te kupu. Me titiro kē ki te roanga atu. Engari he kīanga, he kupu āwaiā- turituri, whakarongo, kāti, kāo. Ngā kīpeha arā ngā pepeha, ngā whakataukī. Ko ngā kīwaha, he kupu hou tēnā. Ko te whakaaro nā Jim Milroy pea tēra i puta mai. He kīhono: he kīanga ēnei e whakahono ana: nō reira, heoi anō, otirā, kātahi ka... Taihoa tēnā, ka haere ki tētahi atu. I te mea me puta ēnei ki roto i ngā pukapuka mā ngā tamariki ina kore kua kore e puta mai i ā rātou tuhinga.

Kaiuru 34, kaumātua

8.2.2 Hei Aha te Nuka Reo?

Nā reira, ki te uia ake me pēhea e REREHUA¹⁵ ai te momo-kōrero? Me pēhea rānei e whai hua ai te momo-kōrero ki te whakaminenga? Ko tētehi whakautu, ko te āta whakamahia o ngā kīpeha nei e eke noa ake ai te momo-kōrero ki te panekiretanga o te reo. Ki a Miria Simpson (1995) e rua ngā take e kounga ai te reo Māori:

Heoi rā, mā te matatau marire ki te reo, ka ātaahua te whakatakoto i te kupu ā waha, ā tuhi. Kia kī atu au ki a koutou, he reo reka ki te taringa tō tatou reo, kātahi, tuarua, ka tae ana ki tōna taumata, ka rere ake he whakaahua ki te

¹⁵ aesthetically pleasing

hinengaro – inā tonu ki te rae nei, ki runga ake i ngā tukemata nei! Koirā te tino taumata o tō tātou reo, e haere ana te kupu, e rere ake ana ngā whakaahua o te kaupapa kōrero.

E tohea ana i konei ko te reo peha me ōna torotoronga katoa te pūtaketanga o tēnei whakahau a Miria. Mā te whakamahia o ēnei kīpeha: te huahuatau, te kupu whakarite, te kīwaha, te whakataukī, te aha atu anō, ka hangā he whakaahua ki te hinengaro, ā, kātahi ka rerehua te reo. He REO PEHA¹⁶, he reo WHAKAAHUA¹⁷.

Nā, he rite tonu te whakahau i te kauwhau a Tīmoti Kāretu ki te whakaminenga i te hui mō te *literacy*, Matariki Ahunga Nui (kauhau, 9 June, 2005). Tērā ka kī a Kāretu he pāpaku rawa te mōhiotanga o te tokomaha ki te MĀTĀKŌRERO¹⁸, ki te MĀTĀTUHI¹⁹. Me mātua mōhio ngā tāngata, kaiako mai, ākonga mai ki ngā kupu whakarite, huahuatau o te reo. Ka tonoa te whakaminenga kia hoatu he whakamārama mō ētehi kōrero: inā, ‘te tokorima a Mahuika’. Koia ko ngā matihao o Mahuika i te whakawetonga a Māui i te ahi. Ko tā Kāretu hoki i wero ake ai, pēhea rā ko ‘te tokotoru a Paewhiti’. He kōrero mō te iwi o Tuhoe. E toru ngā tama a Paewhiti, ā, ki a Kāretu he huahuatau taua kīanga mōna, mō Te Wharehuia Milroy, mō Pou Temara. Āpiti atu, ko te whakataukī ‘pai tū pai hinga nā wai ka oti’. Ahakoa te pai o te mahi, kāore rānei i pai, i roto i te wā, nā wai rā, nā wai rā, mā te ū tonu ki te mahi ka oti. Nā, ko tāna, te tikanga “Kua kōrerotia kētia ēnei momo-kōrero ki ā koutou tamariki,” ā, e tika ana kia kaha te akoako i ēnei TOHUTORO²⁰, i ēnei kupu whakarite, i ēnei huahuatau. He taunaki ake tāna whakahau i te pūtaketanga o tēnei Wāhanga.

Kei te Whare Wānanga o Wikitoria e akohia ana tēnei pepa Te Reo o ngā Tohunga 406 – *Te whūiki o te kī, te whakaniko o te kupu*. Ko tētehi whāinga matua o te pepa ko te āta wetewete i ngā tuinga o nehe kia kitea ko ngā kupu whakanikoniko:

Ko te matū o tēnei akoranga kia eke ake ngā tauira ki te ikeiketanga o te reo, kia mārama pū ai ki ngā kupu whakanikoniko i whaohia ai ki roto i ngā waiata

¹⁶ figurative language

¹⁷ imagery

¹⁸ oral literature

¹⁹ written literature

²⁰ references, allusions

tawhito, ngā karakia, ngā haka, ngā ngeri, ngā pōkeka, ngā tūmoto, ngā tauparapara, ngā whaikorero, ngā whakataukī, ngā pūrākau, te aha te aha.

(T. Karena, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Hurae, 2005)

Nā, ko te rārangi kupu mō te kīpeha, mō te mātātuhi kua whakatakotoria ki roto i tēnei tuhinga hei āwhina ki te wetewete i aua tuhinga (tirohia Mabbett, 1996; Corden, 2000). Heoi, ehara rawa i te mea ko te whare wānanga anake te wāhi hei ako i ngā nuka reo nei. Ki tā McCarthy (1997: 5), e toru ngā take matua mō te ako i ngā nuka reo ki nga ākonga o te kura:

1. Kia hōhonu ake te whakaaro, kia nui ake te pārekareka ki te Mātātuhi, ki te Mātākōrero.
2. Kia nui ake te āheinga ki te tātari, ki te matapaki i tētehi kōrero
3. Kia nui ake te āheinga ki te tuhi kōrero e tatū ana te ngākau o te kaituhi me te whakaminenga.ⁱⁱ

Waihoki, e tautokona ana e Corden (2000: 27-42) tā McCarthy, arā, e tika ana me uru ko ngā mātauranga ahureo ki roto i ngā kura tuatahi. Ehara rawa i te mea me waiho tēnei ahureo mā ngā tuākana i ngā wharekura. Ā, e toru ngā taumata o te reo:

Tokomaha ngā kairangahau e whakahau ana he mea nui te mōhiotanga ki te ahureo... ko te mātauranga ahureo a te tamariki i ngā tau o te kura tuatahi e pēnei ana, me kī kei ngā rōpū e toru nei, mai i te taumata ‘kupu’, ki te ‘rerenga kōrero’, ki te ‘momo-kōrero/momo tuhinga’.

- Te taumata kupu: te ororeo me te mātauranga arapū; te waia ki te kupu
- Te taumata rerenga kōrero: te tātaki kupu me ngā tauira whakatakotoranga; te kārawarawatanga
- Te taumata momo-kōrero/momo tuhinga: te hanganga kōrero, te raupapatanga, *te nuka reo* [nāku i tītaha].ⁱⁱⁱ

He mea nui ki tētehi kaiako ngā kīpeha nei. Ā, ka whai atu ia i te anga reo ki *Ngā Tauaromahi Marautanga o Aotearoa* (kei Te Wāhanga Tuarima). Tūturu, e taka mai ana ngā nuka reo, ngā kīpeha i raro i te taha hōhonu, i te mātauranga reo, i te āhuatanga reo o ngā tauaromahi. Ka mutu, he kaupapa nui e pā ana ki te MŌHIO KI TE KŌRERO²¹ (koia hoki tā Templeton, 1995 rātou ko Hough, 2002 ko Winch mā, 2004).

Arā:

Nā te mea, i au i te kura, ka aro noa au ki ngā ‘*surface features*’...Pēnei te pū matua ki te wāhi e tika ana, te ira kati, te piko, te tohu ohorere. Ko ērā momo, ā, ehara i te mea he kaha aroa i te pouako. I whakaaro nei au he mea nui kia aroa ki ērā. Engari, e ai ki, ki tēnei paipera [ki te tauaromahi]... me aro kē ki te hōhonutanga o te reo...‘*Deeper features*.’ Koirā ngā mea kei te aroa e mātou. Pērā i ngā huahuatau, ngā kupu whakarite... kīwaha, ko ngā kīanga whakataukī, koirā ngā momo whakatairanga whakaaro.

Kaiuru 17

Inā tirohia ana ngā tuhinga whakamārama a ngā tohunga reo Māori e tuhi reo Pākehā ana, tērā ka kitea ko rātou hoki kei te whakamahi i ngā nuka reo. Hei tauira, ko tā Kāretu whakamahi i ngā nuka reo nei i te atikara *Māori Print Culture: The Newspapers* i roto i te pukapuka a Curnow, Hopa & McRae (2002:1-15) *Rere Atu Taku Manu*. Ko tāna i arotake pēnei ai i ngā reta, ā, mā te tirohia o ngā nuka reo e kitea ake ai te hōhonu o te tikanga. Nō reira, e taea ana te whakamahi ngā kīpeha hei arotake i te kounga o tētehi kōrero, o tētehi tuhinga rānei.

²¹ literacy

Te Whakaahua 8.4: Tā Kāretu Whakamahi i ngā Nuka Reo, he Arotake Mātātuhi

Kāretu's usage of literary devices to evaluate text

Curnow mā, 2002:1-15

Nuka Reo, Kīpeha	Momo-Kōrero	Nuka reo me tētehi Taurira
Whakatangata	reta	<i>Personification of newspapers, letters, etc.</i> ‘Tēnā koe. Tēnei au kua mātakitaki iho ki a koe.’ ‘Nau mai, haere atu e taku reta ki te kawē mihi, ki te kawē kōrero.’ ‘Nau mai, haere atu e taku reta ki te kimi i taku potiki e arohatia nei e au i te ao, i te po’
Tohutoro	reta	<i>Allusion to the Bible, to traditional song and chant, to genealogy to proverb and mythology</i> ‘Kua hari ngā tūpāpaku katoa e mate ana i roto i te Ariki. (Whakakitenga 14, 13)’
Tohutoro	reta	<i>Reference to cultural traditions and philosophy</i> ‘Nō te mea ko Hine Teiwaiwa kei roto i te whare e hora ana i te takapau. Kei a ia te mauri o te ruahine e kake atu nei i te paepae poto.’
Reo ihiihi	reta	<i>Use of expressive language</i> ‘E tama mā! Āhua makutu tonu hoki tēnei āhua takotoranga kōrero.’
Huahuatau	waiata	<i>Metaphoric use, a waterfall are tears shed by a mother for her daughter</i> ‘Tiketike rawa mai Te Waiwhero’
Taera taketake		<i>Traditional style</i> ‘Me i matatau ana i ahau Ngā kōrero e takoto i te puka...’

Nā, ka whakamahia hoki e ngā kaituhi reo Māori ngā kīpeha nei kia pai ai te tuhinga. Inā rā te kōrero mō ngā tuhinga a Katerina Mataira ki roto i te pukapuka nei, *Wahine Kaituhi: Women Writers of Aotearoa* (1985):

Kia aro nui mai ai te whakaminenga Māori, ka tuhi a Katerina i te taera Māori, ko te kupu whakapeha, ko te tārua orokati, ko te tohutoro, ko te huahuatau^{iv}.

E tautoko ana a Cowley i te whakamahi i ngā nuka reo ki rō akomanga mō te ako tuhituhi (2002: 162-164; tirohia hoki Beazley & Marr, 1992, Dadey & Jones, 2000). Ko tāna mō te tuhinga roa he pai tonu ki te whakamahi i ngā nuka reo: te TĀRUARUA²² mō te whakahono haere i te rerenga whakaaro; te HUAHUATAU²³ kia hōhonu ake te whakamārama; te OROKATI TĀRUA²⁴ kia pai ai te tangi; te TĀTORU²⁵ hei whakahaukaha i te whakaaro kia wana ai (Cowley, 2002: 83). Ki te whai hua hoki te paki, ko tētehi āhuatanga reo e eke ai taua tuhinga paki e pēnei ana: ‘Ko ētahi tino āhuatanga o te reo he tīpako he whakamahi i ngā kīwaha, i ngā whakataukī, i ngā kupu huahuatau, i te reo whakarite hei whakaputa i te reo Māori taketake’(Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, 2004). Nā reira e meatia ana mā te whakamahia o aua kīpeha e kitea ai te tūturutanga o te reo Māori. Hei tauira atu anō, kia eke te reo pāhō me whai i ēnei āhuatanga reo o te tuhinga auaha ki tā NZQA, arā ko te paearu 20703 ‘Apply creative writing to reo Maori mō Te Reo Māori Pāpāho’ kei te kī:

The piece applies Māori expression and whakaaro in a creative manner that conveys the writer’s/performer’s ideas, thoughts and feelings using language features.

Range: language features may include but are not limited to – poetic language, onomatopoeia, meter, rhyme, metaphor, humour, illusions [allusion], high and low frequency kupu, slang, kīwaha, whakatauki, pepehā, te reo ōkawa, te reo o te kāuta, ōpaki.

Kei te whakamahia ēnei nuka reo i te reo Pākehā, engari ki te pānuhia te paearu i runga nei kāore anō kia reo Māori, kia whakamāorihia rānei te nuinga o ngā kīpeha me te hē o te tuhi i te kupu *illusion* mō te *allusion*. Auē taukiri e!

²² repetition

²³ metaphor

²⁴ alliteration

²⁵ triplication, ‘power of threes’

Ehara hoki i te reo tuhituhi anake te wāhanga e whakamahia ana ngā nuka reo. Kei te whakamahia hoki ēnei āhuatanga reo ki te horopaki kōrero Māori, pēnei i te whaikōrero i runga i te marae (tirohia Mahuta, 1974). I roto i te maimai aroha ki tēnei kaumātua, ki a Tame Te Maro (Ashton, 2005: 9) ka whakatauiratia ngā kīpeha āna nāna i waihanga ake:

[Nā Tame te Maro] i whiu te whakataukī, te KUPU ORORITE²⁶, te KUPU PŌHĒHĒ²⁷ Māori – me te whānuitanga o ngā kīpeha nāna anō i hanga mō taua wā tonu^v.

Nā, ka whakataukītia e Mahuta (1974: 13) tētehi o ngā kōrero peha i tētehi hui taumata mō te Māori Congress ki Pōneke. I taua hui ka tohea mēnā kua tae ki te wā ki te whakakore i ngā tūru Māori i te paremata. Ki tā Mahuta, ko te nuinga i whakahoki kōrero atu i te REO MORE²⁸, heoi nā tētehi o Tūhoe i whai kī i te REO PEHA²⁹, ā, tau ana ki te ngākau o te whakaminenga. Ki tā Mahuta, '[this] one short speech appealed to the Māori gathering more than all the long-winded speeches with their carefully worked out arguments'(reira tonu). Arā:

If the juice of the tutu berry is drunk while it is yet warm, it will cause madness. If the kernel of the karaka berry is eaten before it is cooked, it will cause paralysis. If the herring is eaten too hurriedly, it will cause choking, for that was the fish which choked Tamarereti.

Nā reira, he take tonu te reo peha i roto i te REO WHAKAWHERE³⁰ (koia hoki tā Sprague rāua ko Stuart, 2003: 210, 'reasoning by analogy').

²⁶ onomatopoeia

²⁷ malapropism

²⁸ literal language

²⁹ figurative language

³⁰ language of persuasion

Te Whakaahua 8.5: He Whai Pānga te Nuka Reo

Te Aronga	Hei aha te Nuka Reo	E ai ki tā Wai
Ako reo	āta tūhura i ngā āhuatanga reo	Learning Media, 1996: 103-104 McCarthy, 1997: 5 Corden, 2000: 27-42
Mōhio ki te kōrero	āta tūhura i te aronga o te kupu	Templeton, 1995: 397-400 Hough, 2002: 1-19 Winch mā, 2004: 39
Tuhinga	whakawana i te tuhinga	Beazley & Marr, 1992: 85-94 Cowley, 2002: 162-163 Dadey & Jones, 2000: 137-138
Manu Kōrero ³¹	aro nui mai te whakaminenga	Eyre 2003: 85; Leeds 2003: 174-175; Lamerton 2004: 50-53; Atkinson 2004: 221-223;
Arotake Mātātuhi	tātari i te kōrero	Myers-Shaffer, 2000: 203-251 Locke, 2001: 25-50 McCarthy, 1997: 14

³¹ public speaking

Tērā hoki ka kitea te nuka reo nei te WHAKATANGATA³² ki taua momo reo. Inā ki te tirohia ngā kōrero i runga i *Hansard*, ka kīia e Te Ururoa Flavell i te Rāpare, i te 27 o ngā rā o Hūrae, 2006 ki a Ngāti Mutunga i te wā ka whakatauhia te pire mō rātou:

E whakawā ana mātau mēnā kua ea ngā nama ki a koutou o Ngāti Mutunga i runga i te tika me te pono, me kī ko ngā mamae o ngā mahi a pokokōhua me ōna kāwai uri, a tāhae, a whānako, a kōhuru, a mūrere, a kūare, a whakaiti, a patu tangata, a patu mahara, a patu mauri³³.

E kitea ana he NUKA REO te whakatangata hei whakaihiihi i te kōrero, ā, kia mana hoki ai te kōrero ki te whakaminenga. Ka mutu, mō te Manu Kōrero, inā mō ngā ‘whaikōrero’ he āwhina nui hoki te huinga kīpeha kia whakatōkia te whakaaro ki roto i te whakaminenga (tirohia Eyre 2003; Leeds 2003; Lamerton 2004; Atkinson 2004).

Ka whakarāpopotohia i te Whakaahua 8.5 ētehi take he kaupapa nui te nuka reo. Ko te take whakamutunga, ko te arotake mātātuhi tētehi kaupapa nui o te anga kīpeha. Mā reira e wetewete te waiata-ā-ringa i te Wāhanga Tuaiwa e whai mai nei.

Ahakoā rā ēnei take whai pānga mō te kīpeha kia ruku i te hōhonutanga o ngā kaupapa nei, pērā me te tirohaehae i te kouniga o te mātātuhi (Myers-Shaffer, 2000 Locke, 2001, McCarthy, 1997), he āhuatanga hou tēnei mea te kīpeha i roto i ngā kura reo Māori. Ko te kōrero a te nuinga o ngā kaiuru, kaiako kōhanga reo, kaiako kura kaupapa Māori, kaiako whare kura, me tētehi *literacy teacher of Māori* kāore e tino whakamahia ana ngā āhuatanga reo pēnei. Ehara i te mea he kore pīrangi nō rātou, engari ia he kore mōhio nō ētehi ki hea tīmata ai, ki hea whakaako ai, ki hea whakatauhia ai. Inā rā tētehi o ngā kaiuru me tana tauira mō te whakatangata:

Mehemea he hou ēra [kīpeha] ki a au, kāore e kore he tauhou katoa ki ngā kaiako i roto i ngā akomanga. Mehemea ka tukuna ērā kupu ki a rātou, e tika ana kia whai atu koe, ko kōrua ko Whakamārama kia rangona e rātou, kia kitea hoki tētahi tauira me pēhea tērā e whakamahi ai i roto i te akomanga kia kaua rātou e pokea e te whakamā, e te kore mōhio.

Kaiuru 29

³² personification

³³ He mea tiki atu http://www.hansard.parliament.govt.nz/hansard/Final/FINAL_2006_07_27.htm i te tekau o ngā rā i te tau 2007.

Nā reira, ko te whakangungu kaiako tētehi ara whakatika i tēnei āhuatanga, heoi i mua mai i tērā ko te whakakao kōrero mō ngā nuka reo nei hei whāngai atu. Nā whai anō te roanga atu o tēnei wāhanga, he hoatu i te kupu me te whakamāramatanga mō ngā nuka reo nei. He hou ēnei kōrero. I tau ai kia arotahi ki ngā kīpeha, otirā ki ngā kīpeha huatau kia tino whai hua te rangahau mā ngā kaiako me ngā ākonga, waihoki mā rātou e hiahia ana kia eke panuku te reo. Ka toko noa ake ētehi anō urupounamu nei: He aha ngā tino nuka reo nei? He aha ngā whakamārama mō ngā nuka nei? Kitea ai ēnei nuka ki hea? He aha hoki ētehi tauira hei whakamārama i ngā nuka nei? He pēhea rā ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru mō ngā kīpeha nei? Mā te toenga o tēnei Wāhanga e whakautu haere ai aua pātai.

8.2.3 He Tūmomo Kīpeha

E māmā ake ai te mau ka whāia i tā Myers-Shaffer whakarōpū i te kīpeha (Myers-Shaffer, 2000: 206), arā ake kia toru tonu ngā peka. Ko te kīpeha huatau ka tahi, ko te kīpeha whakawhere ka rua, ka toru, ko te kīpeha whakatangi. I runga tonu i te mōhio he wehewehenga noa tēnei e māmā ai te hopu me te kite i ngā kīpeha. E tohe ana a Lanham (1991: 181) he kīpeha katoa ēnei, kāore ōna wehewehenga. Heoi, hei āwhina noa mō te whakamahi i ngā kīpeha mō roto i te akomanga kua pēnei te wehewehenga.

Te Whakaahua 8.6: E Toru ngā Peka o te Kīpeha

Three Branches of Figures of Speech

Kīpeha Whakawhere <i>Rhetorical Figures</i>	Kīpeha Whakatangi <i>Figures of Sound</i>	Kīpeha Huatau <i>Figures of Thought</i>
Kupu ātete <i>litotes</i>	Huarite <i>rhyme</i>	Kupu whakarite <i>simile</i>
Kupu hākiki <i>irony</i>	Orokati tārua <i>alliteration</i>	Huahuatau <i>metaphor</i>
Kupu huri hāngai <i>antimetabole</i>	Orokati tārua kē <i>consonance</i>	Tairitenga <i>analogy</i>
Kupu raweke <i>pun</i>	Oropuare tārua <i>assonance</i>	Pepeha <i>tribal maxim</i>
Kupu tārara <i>parallelism</i>	Ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i>	Whakatangata <i>personification</i>
Kupu tātā <i>oxymoron</i>	Tāruarua <i>repetition</i>	Kīwaha <i>colloquialism, idiom</i>
Kupu tātoru <i>triplication</i>		Kupu hautanga <i>synecdoche</i>
Kupu tauaro <i>antithesis</i>		Tohutoro <i>allusion</i>
Kupu whakapehapeha <i>hyperbole</i>		Tohu <i>symbol</i>
Ui makihoi <i>rhetorical</i> <i>question</i>		Whakataukī <i>proverb</i>

Hei whakamārama poto, mā te kīpeha whakawhere e takoto auaha ai ngā kōrero (Cuddon, 1999: 748) ki te whatumanawa Māori. Ki a Cuddon, ko te takotoranga te mea nui, e kore e whakarerekē i te tikanga o te kupu pēnei i te kīpeha huatau (reira tonu). Engari, kāore pea tēnei i te tino tika. Kia tirohia te kupu hākiki, he huanga tērā kāore te tikanga i te hāngai ki ngā kupu. Inā, he tikanga kōaro, ki tā *He Kohinga Kīwaha*, ‘he arero rua’ te tikanga (Mason, Jacaob & Milroy 1999: 52). Kei taua pukapuka ēnei tauira ‘wairua kawa’ nei, he kupu hākiki anō: ‘ka pai’, ‘tō kaha’, ‘ka aroha kē’; engari ko te tikanga kē o aua kīpeha he pēnei kē: ‘ka kino’, ‘tō koretake’, ‘kaitoa’.

Mā te kīpeha whakatangi e reka ai te kōrero ki te taringa Māori kia kore ai e tiotio. Tērā e rangona nuitia ana ēnei āhuatanga reo ki ngā waiata nā Hirini Melbourne i tito. Ko te take pea, he nui ngā waiata ko te taiao te kaupapa, ā, takea mai ai ngā oro i reira. Inā ngā waiata manu a Hirini: Pīpīwharaua, ‘tioro tioro tioro’ (TĀRUARUA³⁴); Tame Heihei, ‘Kikikikiki keki (ORORITE³⁵); Mohua, ‘Mohua mohua tēnā kōrua’ (HUARITE³⁶). Koia kei a Hirini mō te whakanikoniko i āna waiata ki te kīpeha whakatangi.

Mā te kīpeha huatau e tau ai ngā kōrero ki te hinengaro Māori. He hanga whakaahua te mahi i roto i ngā hinengaro o te whakaminenga mā te TAIRITENGA³⁷. Inā ētehi tauira: ko te kupu whakarite, ko te whakataukī, ko te pepeha, ā, i ētehi wā ko te kupu kotahi hoki. Hei tauira mō te kupu, ko te ‘rangatahi’. I mua rā, e rua ngā aronga o taua kupu (Williams, 2002: 323): he haerenga hohoro, he kupenga. Mō te kupenga, kei te whakataukī e mea ana, ‘Ka pū te ruha, ka hao te rangatahi’. Inā, ka ngenge tētehi ka ara mai tētehi atu. I te mahinga a tērā pukapuka *Te Reo Rangatahi*, kua āhua huri tēnei tikanga o te kupenga, ā, ka noho hei kupu whakarite mō te mātātahi, mō te taipakeke, mō te taiohi. Heoi mō te hunga kaumātua kei reira tonu pea te pikitia o te kupenga ki te hinengaro i te huanga o te kupu ‘rangatahi’. He reo peha tonu. Ki te hunga taiohi, aua atu. Ko te reo more noa pea. Koia te kīpeha huahuatau. He hanga whakaahua te mahi ki a rātou e whai ana i te tikanga o ngā kupu kei te whakaritea. Heoi anō, ko te

³⁴ repetition

³⁵ onomatopoeia

³⁶ rhyme

³⁷ analogy

tūāpapa o tētehi reo, ko ngā huahuatau nei kua ‘mate’(Deutscher, 2005: 118), ā, kua kore te hunga kōrero i aua huahuatau e mōhio he WHAKAAHUA³⁸ kei tua o ngā kupu.

Tērā te wā ka rangahaua katoatia ērā anō nuka reo, heoi, kia āta wānanga i tēnei peka o te reo, me whakairi ake ētehi anō āhuatanga reo i tēnei wā. Arā atu anō hoki ngā tini kīpeha – neke atu i te ono tekau i tā Quin (1993) – heoi, kua tau ki runga i ēnei e whai nei. He pāpaku pea te titiro ki ngā kīpeha whakawhere (kua mahia kētia e tā Houia-Roberts, 2003), ki ngā kīpeha whakatangi hoki. I ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru i tau ai kia āta wetewetehia te kīpeha huatau, ā, koia nei ngā kīpeha matua hei tāhu kōrero i tēnei Wāhanga. Ka mutu, i te korenga o te whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru mō ngā tongi me ngā kupu whakaari, waihoki, he kīpeha ā-iwi, ā, ka waiho mā rangahau kē. Nō reira, tekau ngā kīpeha i raro i te kārangarangatanga kīpeha whakawhere, e ono ngā kīpeha whakatangi, tekau ngā kīpeha huatau.

8.3 He Kīpeha Whakawhere *Rhetorical figures, schemes*

He āhuatanga reo ngā kīpeha whakawhere e kukume mai ana i te aronga o te tangata kia hou mai ki roto i ngā whakaaro me te kaupapa o te kaikōrero/kaituhi. Ko tā te kīpeha huatau he tau ki wāhi kē mō ana whakamārama. Ko tā te kīpeha whakawhere, kei te mōhiotia te tikanga engari ko te takoto o te kupu he āhuatanga motuhake. Ko tā ēnei hoki he āta huri i te kōrero, he rāwekeweke i te kupu kia kaua e whakapatipati noa i ngā taringa o te whakaminenga, engari ia he pai ēnei hei whakamaumahara, hei tohutohu i ngā whakaaro matua o tētehi kōrero, ā, hei whakangahau anō hoki. Nō reira kei te Whakaahua 8.7 tekau o ēnei momo takotoranga kupu.

Arā atu anō ngā momo kīpeha whakawhere. E ono tekau ngā tino kīpeha ki tā Quin (1993), neke atu i te rua rau i tā Lanham pukapuka (1991). Ko te tohunga mō tēnei kaupapa i te reo Māori ko Ngaere Houia-Roberts, ā, kei roto i tāna tuhinga kairangi ka mahia he mahere e wetewete ana i ngā tuhinga a ngā tohunga reo pēnei i a Tīmoti Kāretu me Tā Apirana Ngata. Ka whakarārangihia he huarahi wetewete, ā, e 20 āna momo takotoranga kupu (Houia-Roberts 2004: 80, tirohia hoki 2003: 82-84). Kei te

³⁸ image

tautoko tēnei i a Crombie rāua ko Roberts me te whakahau he āwhina tēnei huarahi kia eke panuku ngā tuhinga a ngā ākonga (2001: 32-33). Tērā hoki ka whakakotahitia e August (2001) ngā huarahi e rua, ko te *Literary* me te *Linguistics*. Heoi anō, tērā anō te wā ka āta whakamāorihia ngā kupu hei āwhina mā ngā kura reo Māori, hei kitenga mā te hāpori whānui o te reo Māori.

Nā, hei whakatauiria i tētehi o ngā kīpeha whakawhere nei kia tīkina atu tētehi o ngā kōrero a ngā kaiuru. Nei rā ētehi kīwaha i kōrerohia e te kaiuru tuaono hei whakatauiria i te KUPU HĀKIKI. E noho ātete ana, e noho kōaro ana te aronga ki te mata o ngā kupu:

Ā, ki a au nei ko te huahuatau...koirā ngā kupu pērā i 'ehara.' "Ehara tēnei i te mea pai" "Ehara." Ā...he āhua kāo te...kāhore. Otirā ki te mea mai koe, "Uuu, pai haere te tīma rā." Ka mea atu au, "Ehara!" He mea tērā, he *pai* kē. E rua....he rerekē wōna whakamārama mō te kupu kotahi, me te kōrero kotahi. Ka mea atu koe, ka kite atu koe i te tangata kaikōrero. Haramai te tangata whaikōrero, ka rūrū koe, ka mea atu, "Uuu, kino kē koe e tama! *Kino* tō kōrero!" Ā...ki te kore koe e mōhio, ka mea mai, "Ē! I mea mai te tangata kāore he take o taku kōrero!" Engari ko te tino whakamārama o tērā kōrero, he pai tō kōrero e tama, he pai... Ki te kore koe e tino mōhio, me āta whakaaro koe...he aha?!

Kaiuru tuaono

Nō reira, he āwhina tēnei momo titiro mā ngā ākonga ki te whakatakoto kupu perā i ngā tohunga reo. Mehemea ka whakaakona te momo takotoranga kupu pēnei i ngā kīpeha whakawhere, tērā ka māmā ake te tuhi me te tito kōrero mā ngā ākonga (Houia-Roberts, 2003). Heoi, i te korenga whakahoki kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru kua waiho tēnei huinga kupu me tōna āta wetewete, mā te wā anō e rangahau ake i tōna hōhonutanga, i tōna whānuitanga i roto tonu i te reo Māori. Ki konei paku kōrerohia ai he kōrero anō mō ia KUPU AHUREO o tēnei Wāhanga. Hei tauira noa mō te KUPU TĀRARA (H. Morris, whakawhitinga whaiaro, 2005). I a au i tētehi hui reo i te noho au i te taha o tētehi koroua, nā, ka huaina he kupu e te kaikōrero, 'Mārama mai tō kōrero, mārama mai tō whakautu.'³⁹ Ka uia atu te koroua he aha tētehi kupu hei whakaatu i

³⁹ Tom Roa (2004, Mahuru). Hui Kāhui Kaiwhakamāori, Te Whanganui-a-Tara.

taua tauira reo, ka kī mai, ‘Kei te tau ōrite, kei te tautika, kei te tau papatahi’⁴⁰. Ā, i te wā ka kawea atu ētehi o ēnei whakaaro ki ngā kaiuru he KUPU TAUTIKA kē. Heoi, ka whai atu i te pouako nāna i pai ki te kupu rara me te pikitia ka puta mō te tikanga o te kupu *parallelism*. He kupu, he kōrero, he kupu, he kōrero.

Heoi, mā te Whakaahua e whai nei hei whakaatu ētehi o ngā whakamāoritanga me ngā tauira o tēnei huinga kupu. He mea wānanga ngā kupu nei me ngā kaiuru, he mea kimikimi hoki ngā tauira e te kairangahau. Waihoki, kei ngā kupu whakamārama mō te kīpeha huatau ētehi anō tauira o tēnei peka o te reo.

⁴⁰ Huirangi Waikerepuru (2004, Mahuru). Hui Kāhui Kaiwhakamāori, Te Whanganui-a-Tara.

Te Whakaahua 8.7: He Kīpeha Whakawhere

Rhetorical figures, schemes

Kīpeha Whakawhere	Whakapāke hā	Whakamāori	Tauira
Kupu ātete	<i>litotes</i>	Ko te whakakāore i te kupu kōaro mō te tikanga o te kōrero.	‘Kāore e ārikarika ngā mihi’ (Tuuta, 2005) (he ārikarika, he iti; kāore he ārikarika, he nui.)
Kupu hākiki	<i>irony</i>	He ‘arero rua’, he ātete te tikanga ki te takotoranga o ngā kupu.	‘Kino kē koe’ (kaiuru tuaono) ‘Tō mōhio hoki, Rori’. (<i>Eke Panuku</i> 3) (He kupu whakatoi. Ko te tikanga kē, ‘Tō kore mōhio hoki’.)
Kupu huri hāngai	<i>antimetabole</i>	He tārua i te kupu, heoi, he mea huri kōaro.	Ko au ko te awa, ko te awa ko au. I te ao i te pō, i te pō i te ao...
Kupu raweke	<i>pun, witticism</i>	He tākarokaro i te āhua o te kupu, ko te tangi rānei, ko te tikanga rānei.	Tuhi, tuhi, tuhituhia! Tuhi Mauri Ora! (<i>Eke Panuku</i> 3: whā. o muri) (Tā te tangi-tihei/tuhi, tui/tuhi) Matariki kanohi iti (<i>Matariki</i> , 2007) (Tā te tikanga. He kanohi te mata, he iti te riki.)
Kupu tārara	<i>parallelism</i>	Ko te tāruatia o ngā kīanga, o ngā rerenga kōrero rānei kia noho ōrite ai tētehi ki tētehi.	Mate atu he tētēkura; ara mai rā he tētēkura. Mā te whakaatu ka mōhio, mā te mōhio ka mārama, mā te mārama ka mātau, mā te mātau ka ora. (Tate, 1991)
Kupu tātā	<i>oxymoron</i>	Ka whakanohoia tahitia ngā kupu e ātete ana ko tētehi ki tētehi.	He kaumātua rangatahi. Tino kino te pai. Ahi mātao
Kupu tātoru	<i>triplication (parallelism)</i>	He pai ki ngā taringa kia toru ngā huanga.	Haere ki Hawaiki nui, Hawaiki roa, Hawaiki pāmamao. E ngā mana, e ngā reo, e ngā kārangarangatanga.
Kupu tauaro	<i>antithesis</i>	He whakatairite i ngā whakaaro rerekē e kitea ai te hononga o tētehi ki tētehi.	Ki uta, ki tai. Mate atu he tētēkura; ara mai rā he tētēkura. Ko Rangi, ko Papa
Kupu whakapehapeha	<i>hyperbole</i>	He whakanui rawa atu i tētehi āhuatanga kāore i te pono rawa.	Hara mai rā ki te tāone nui o Aotearoa (Ruātoki). Manomano ngā tāngata i tae atu (e rima rau kē).
Ui makihoi	<i>rhetorical question</i>	He momo pātai hei tohe i te kaupapa. He tūmomo ui makihoi: tētehi kāore e whakautua; tētehi ka utua ā muri tata ake.	He aha te mea nui o te ao? Māku e kī atu he tangata, he tangata, he tangata.

8.4 He Kīpeha Whakatangi *Figures of sound, schemes*

Koia nei ngā kīpeha e whakaareare mai ai ngā taringa ki te kōrero. He tangi, he oro hei kai rōreka mā te taringa. Rangona ai ēnei kīpeha i ngā kōrero maha, heoi anō, kei ngā waiata, kei ngā mōteatea me ētehi anō momo pukapuka hoki te whānui o ēnei kīpeha e reka ai te tangi mā te taringa pikari. Nei rā tā te kaiuru l l e kī ana he aha te take he mea nui te kawenga o te reo:

He tika anō te kawē, he tikaka anō te kawē o te reo, mehemca kua hē te whakahua o tētahi ahakoa te ātaahua o te kupu, kāre ōu tarika i te whakaroko i te ātaahua o te tikaka mēna kua tiotio noa iho te whakahua ki te tarika nā reira he tino tikaka te kawē o te reo...

Kia tīkina atu ētehi tauira hei whakaata i ngā kīpeha whakatangi nei. Hei tauira ko te HUARITE. Ehara i te mea hou tēnei mea te huarite, heoi ko te mea hou ko te whakamahia nuitia hei tino kīpeha. Kāore ngā mātua i whakamahi i tēnei kīpeha (Jones, 1959: 129). Kei te kaha uru mai tēnei kīpeha o te reo i ēnei rā nā te tauiratanga i te reo Pākehā. Pēnei i ngā waiata huarite i takea mai i Amerika. Rangona ai ēnei waiata huarite i te whakaaturanga *Pūkana*. Ko te waiata rongonui o Aotearoa ko tā tātou ngaringari ā-motu tonu nā Tīmoti Kāretu i whakahou i te tau 1979⁴¹. Ko te huarite te kīpeha nui kia whai i tā te Pākehā ĀHUA⁴², inā:

...kia hua ko te pai
kia tau tō atawhai
Manaakitia mai,
Aotearoa.

⁴¹ Tirohia http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/God_Defend_New_Zealand.

⁴² form

Te Whakaahua 8.8: He Kīpeha Whakatangi

Figures of sound

Kīpeha whakatangi	Whakapākehā	Whakamāori	Tauira
Huarite	<i>rhyme</i>	Kia rite tonu te tārua i ngā oropuare, i ngā orotahi pūrua rānei.	‘Kia hua ko te pai, Kia tau tō atawhai’ (Te ngaringari a te motu) <i>Harore Parore</i> (He paki huarite nā Rangipunga (2007:45)) ‘E ngā manu korokī, e ngā manu korohī’ (Morrison ⁴³ , 2007)
Orokati tārua	<i>alliteration</i>	He tāruarua i ngā orokati tuatahi o te kupu.	‘Rurururu rerere rururu e’. (Ko te ‘r’ i <i>Pūrerehua</i> nā Hirini Melbourne.)
Oropuare tārua	<i>assonance</i>	He tāruarua i ngā oropuare ōrite i ngā kupu e noho tata ana.	‘Ruru kōkō kōkou’. (Ko te ‘o’ me te ‘u’ i <i>Rūrū</i> nā Hirini Melbourne.)
Orokati tārua kē	<i>consonance</i>	He tāruarua i ngā orokati ōrite i ngā kupu e noho tata mai ana, heoi, he rerekē ngā oropuare.	‘He kōtuku kai whakaata.’ (Ko te ‘k’ i tēnei whakataukī.)
Ororite	<i>onomatopocia</i>	Ko tētehi kupu e whai mārire ana i te tangi o te oro e rangona ana i te taiao.	Auau, huhū, kekē, kūkū, meao, oika oika, pahū, pahupahu, pakē, topatopa.
Tāruarua	<i>repetition</i>	Ko te tuaruatia, tuahatia rānei o tētehi mea.	Tēnā koutou, tēna koutou, tēnā koutou katoa.

⁴³ He huanga whakamihi nā Scotty Morrison, Television Broadcast, Te Karere, TVOne. 20/9/2007

Ko te TAERA⁴⁴ hoki o te reo o ētehi pukapuka whakaahua, koia ko te huarite pēnei i *Raiha Rō Roa* (Rangipunga, 2005):

Ko Tiu Namunamu

ko ia mō te hamu,

ko Paki Pūrerehua

e rere ana ki tua...

Koia hoki i *Tinirau rāua ko Kae* (Joseph, 2007b). Ko tā te kaiuru 12 i whakamahi ai i te huarite ki āna ruri kia kukume mai i ngā tamariki ki roto i te ao pukapuka ka tahi, ka rua, ‘e ngāwari ana te mau te hinengaro’. Kua mau ā-ngākau te tama a te kaiuru 12 i ngā kupu o tā Lynley Dodd pukapuka *Hairy McClary*, nā te huarite, nā te ūngeri, nā te tāruarua i pērā ai. E mea ana hoki te kaiuru 12 ka waiho tēnei kīpeha whakatangi te huarite inā ka tito ia i te kōrero mā te pakeke, ā, ‘Kua whai au... i ngā whakatauākī, ngā whakataukī, ngā kupu whakarite hei whakaniko i te kōrero.’ Nā reira pea, mō ētehi kīpeha, mā te wā, mā te wāhi, mā te whakaminenga, mā te momo-kōrero e tohutohu mēnā ka whakamahia, ka whiriwhirihia tētehi anō rānei kīpeha.

Mō te OROKATI TĀRUA, i kī mai tētehi kaiuru kāore i tua atu o Katerina Mataira ki te whakareka i ngā tangi o te reo i roto i āna pukapuka. Pēnei i te orokati tārua i te tapanga pukapuka *Te Huritau o Pingipingi Pi* i te tau 1995 nā Katerina Mataira i whakamāori. Anei te whakamārama mō te orokati tārua me ētehi anō tauira o tēnei kīpeha:

Alliteration: the use of the same consonant at the beginning of each word, as in ‘Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled pepper.’

He kupu pū tuatahi ōrite: he whakamahinga kupu he ōrite te pūkati tuatahi; ara, ‘tuna tīoioi, tuarā tīroiroi’; ‘noke neke nuku niki naki ngū.’; ‘e rere riroriro e rere runga rākau rewarewa e. Nā, i te mea he nui te whakamahia o ngā oropuare i te reo Māori, e kaha kitea ana tēnei momo kīpeha, te oropuare tārua. Inā tirohia ana ngā waiata a Hirini mō ngā manu, katoa ngā waiata ka whakamahia ngā kīpeha whakatangi, ā, ko te oropuare tārua hoki. Hei tauira,

⁴⁴ style

te waiata Ruru, tino tāruarua ana ngā ‘o’ me ngā ‘u’, anō ko te ruru tonu kei te waiata i te waiata.

Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Ko tētehi anō āhuatanga reo e kaha whakamahia ana i ngā waiata a Hirini, ko te ororite. I pēnei ai pea i te tirohanga Māori, i te whakarongo Māori ki te taiao me ngā oro ka puta mai i reira. Me uaua ka rongo i tētehi waiata a Hirini mō ngā rākau, mō nga manu, mō te taiao kāore e mau ana i te kupu ororite. Inā tā tētehi kaiuru whakahua i te waiata a Hirini mō te ngaro, ā, te take i eke ai taua waiata ko te ritenga tonu o te tangi, te rere, te piki, te heke o te waiata ki tā te rango tonu, arā, “Piki pakipaki pikopiko...”. Nei anō te waiata a Hirini, ko te Ruru (Melbourne, 2000).

Ruru

Nā Hirini Melbourne

Ruru ruru kōkō kōkō	tāruarua, ororite: tā te manu tangi
Ruru kōkō kōkō.	orokati tārua: te ‘k’
Whakarongo ki te ruru kōkō	
Kua tō nei te rā te rā	tāruarua: te rā
Te tangi nei o te pōuri	oropuare tārua, huarite haurua: ⁴⁵ kōkō, pōuri
Kua tō nei te rā te rā,	tāruarua: te rerenga kōrero ‘Kua’
Ruu-ru, ruu-ru, kōkō, kōkō,	orokati tārua, tāruarua
Ruru kōkō kōkō.	tāruarua

Nā, ko te tāruarua tētehi tino kīpeha kei te whakamahia i roto i ngā kōrero maha. Mehemea he whakaaro nui o roto i te kōrero, tērā ka tuarua, ka tuatorutia kia mau ai i te whakaminenga. Anei tā tētehi kaiuru mō te tāruarua:

‘Te Kiteora, kei hea ō hū?’ He kōrero tāruarua⁴⁶ tērā. Ka whai haere i ngā rā o te wiki, “i te Mane, i te Tūrei, i te Wenerei...” Me te kōrero, ā, he aha te kōrero a Pāpā? “Ehara! Anei kē ō hū!” Ka kōrerohia taua kōrero i ia toru whārangi, taku nei maumahara.

[Ko te tikanga o te tāruarua mā te tamaiti] Kia uru mai ia ki te kōrero, kia mau i a ia te ia o te kōrero, ā, māna hoki e kōrero i te wā kei te pānui atu te

⁴⁵ half rhyme

⁴⁶ refrain

kaipānui ki a ia. Mēnā he tamaiti koe, na, kei te whakarongo atu koe ki tētehi kōrero, ā, ka tāruarua te kōrero ka taea e koe te kōrero hoki, ahakoa kāre e taea e koe te pānui. Nā, kua mau koe i taua pukapuka! Tērā tētehi mea pai. Me te mea ka mau hoki i a koe te ngako o te kōrero. Yeah. Mēnā, he nui ngā kupu rerekē, tērā pea ka rere atu te tamaiti. Ka hōhā haere. Kua kite au i taua āhuatanga.

Kaiuru 16

Ka mutu, whakamahia ai te tāruarua e tētehi whaea o Kāi Tahu i a ia e pao ana me ana tamariki i roto i te waka:

I ētahi wā pēnei i a mātou e haere ana ki te kura, hawhe haora te roa i roto i te waka nā reira ka mate aku tamariki ki te whakaroko mai ki a au e waiata ana. Ētahi wā he mea ko te tāruatia... te tāruataka ō ētahi rāraki kōrero ka tino mau i a rātou, nā reira nā [taku pēpi] i tito:

“E haere ana tātou i te waka ki te kura e,
ki te kura e, ki te kura e,
e haere ana tātou i te waka ki te kura e
kia kite i ō tātou hoa e...”

Kaiuru 11

Kei te reo Māori ngā kupu ororite heoi anō kāore anō pea kia whakaingoatia, kia rangahaua rānei:

I’m only guessing because no one’s come up and said, ‘This is an onomatopoeic Māori word’, but you know for instance in the Tai Tokerau it’s pūpā for burp. It even sounds like a bit like burp. But in Taranaki it’s tokopaha. So that there’s ‘paha’, it’s coming out like a burp. Um, waharoa for yawn. Obviously not onomatopoeic but descriptive of what it is. So there’s all those sort of features that are there but nobody’s researched them. But I’m sure there are onomatopoeic words because not only are they descriptive, but they are descriptive of the sound. An easy one would be ‘kekē’. Kei te kekē ngā kōiwi. Or ngangā/rarā. Kei te ngangā te piripoho.

Kaiuru 2

Ka whakamāramatia mai e tēnei kaiuru te hononga o te tangi ki te tikanga o te kupu. Mō te OROKATI TĀRUA te tikanga ka tāruatia ngā orokati i waenganui i ētehi kupu, pēnei i te ‘k’ i te whakataukī, ‘He kūkū i te kāinga, he kākā i te haere’. Heoi, ka

meatia ake e tēnei o ngā kaiuru, he pai ki a ia tētehi kupu i te tāruatanga o tētehi orokati. He ōrite te aroro:

I ētahi wā nā te ātaahua o te maramataka o tētahi kupu, ka noho hei kupu whakarekareka atu i te tākata, pēnei i te kupu kātahi anō ka roko au i tēnei te maimoa. Pai te ‘m’ te maimoa, he āhua kāwari noa te whakahua mai mua, heoi anō ko tōna tikaka ko te āta tiakina. Pai ake, pai kē atu te kupu maimoa ki taku tārika i te tiaki, āhua kāwari te rere, he mea te whakawā nō te manawa anō tērā te maimoa.

Kaiuru 11

Ko ētehi anō whakaaro me whakaatu ki konei ko ngā kupu mō te ororeo, pēnei i ēnei: ko te ŪNGERI,⁴⁷ ko te PATU,⁴⁸ ko te MANAWATAKI,⁴⁹ ko te HAU,⁵⁰ ko te HAUKAHA,⁵¹ ko te OROKATI,⁵² ko te OROPUARE,⁵³ ko te OROTAHI PŪRUA,⁵⁴ ko te aha noa. Ko te rerekētanga o te huinga kupu e whai nei me ngā kīpeha whakatangi, mā te tangata e whiriwhiri mēnā ka kuhuna ngā kīpeha whakatangi ki roto i te momo-kōrero. Heoi anō rā, ko ngā kīpeha huatau e whai nei, kei te rangona, kei te kitea i roto i te nuinga o ngā momo-kōrero.

⁴⁷ rhythm

⁴⁸ beat

⁴⁹ pulse, main beat

⁵⁰ stress

⁵¹ primary stress

⁵² consonants

⁵³ vowels

⁵⁴ diphthongs

8.5 He Kīpeha Huatau *Figures of thought, tropes*

Nā, ka ruku i te ruku a te kawau mō te kīpeha huatau. I pērā ai i te nui o ngā whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru mō tēnei peka. Kore kore nei he whakahokinga kōrero mai mō ngā kīpeha whakawhere, ā, he iti noa iho nei ngā kōrero kaiuru mō ngā kīpeha whakatangi. Tērā ka kitea kei te taupatupatu ētehi o ngā whakaaro mō ētehi o ngā kīpeha, pērā i te huahuatau me te kupu whakarite. Hei aha koa. Ko te mea nui pea, ka whakaaturia ngā mōhiotanga i kitea, me ngā whakamāramatanga e ai ki ngā kaiuru me ngā pukapuka. He mātauranga hou tēnei, inā te whakakao i ngā maramara kōrero ki te wāhi kotahi mō tēnei mea te kīpeha huatau. Nei rā te Whakaahua 8.9 e whai mai ana ko ngā kīpeha tekau ka āta tirohia. Otirā, koia hoki te anga hei tātari i te ‘kounga o te tuhi’ i ngā titonga a tētehi tangata rongonui o te Wāhanga Tuaiwa e whai mai ana.

Te Whakaahua 8.9: He Kīpeha Huatau

Figures of thought, tropes

Kīpeha Huatau	Whakapākehā	Whakamāori	Tauira
Huahuatau	<i>metaphor</i>	He whakatairite i ngā mea e rua.	He manu tīoriori koe. Ko Māui tinihanga koe.
Kīwaha	<i>colloquialism, idiom</i>	He kīanga o ia rā e whakaatu ana i tētehi tikanga kē, kaua ko te tikanga o ngā kupu i te kīwaha tonu.	Kei whea mai (mō te ‘ka pai rā’ engari kei whea te aha?) Ka tau kē (mō te ‘ka rawe’ engari, ka tau ki hea?)
Kupu hautanga	<i>synecdoche</i>	He whakahua i te wāhanga o tētehi mea mō te katoa o taua mea.	He ihu oneone (ihu mō te kaimahi). He ringa wera (ringa mō te kuki). Pai ō wīra (wīra mō te waka).
Kupu whakarite	<i>simile</i>	He āta whakatairite i ngā mea e rua.	He rite koe ki te manu ki te tīoriori. Pēnei me te pīpīwharaua.
Pepeha	<i>tribal maxim, aphorism</i>	He kōrero e whakaatu ana i tētehi āhuatanga motuhake, i tētehi āhuatanga whai mana o te iwi.	Tini whetū ki te rangi, Rangitāne ki te whenua. Waikato taniwha rau, he piko he taniwha, he piko he taniwha.
Tairitenga	<i>analogy</i>	He whakatairite whānui i ngā mea e rua e kitea ai te ōritenga.	E kore te uku e piri ki te rino, ka whitingia e te rā, ka ngahoro (tirohia 8.33).
Tohu	<i>symbol</i>	Ko tētehi mea kikokiko hei tohu mō tētehi whakaaro.	He kai nā te ringa whero i taka (He whero, he tangata whai mana; he nui te manaakitanga). Ka ngaua e au te paepae hamuti (He tohu, he tikanga hei whakarite mō te pakanga).
Tohutoro	<i>allusion, reference</i>	Ko te whakahua i tētehi kupu, engari mā te tangata e mahara ake he aha te take kei reira taua kupu.	Tangaroa kiriuka, Tangaroa kirikōhatu (He kōrero mō te pakari tinana) A ko Tupurupuru! (He kōrero mō tētehi rangatira o Tūranganui-a-Kiwa)
Whakatangata	<i>personification</i>	He hoatu i ngā āhuatanga tangata ki tētehi mea.	Ko māua ko Taringa. Nō hea a Harikoa?
Whakataukī	<i>proverb</i>	He kupu iti e whakaatu ana i tētehi kōrero pono.	Mā pango, mā whero ka oti te mahi. (Mā te mahi ngātahi ka tutuki te kaupapa.)

8.5.1 Te Huahuatau

Metaphor

Ko tā te huahuatau, he tiki atu i ngā āhuatanga o tētehi mea hei whakamārama mō tētehi atu mea. Koia hoki te whakamārama mō tēnei rōpū, mō ngā kīpeha huatau katoa. Inā rā, he huanga ake, he aronga kē. Hei tauira, anei tētehi kōrero i tēnei kaiako e aro ana ki te take o tētehi tuhinga i rō akomanga. Kei te whakaritea te hanawiti ki te tuhinga, ko te kiko, ko te kaupapa, koia ko te mīti:

He aha pea i pēnei ai te āhua o tēnei tuhinga? He aha te tikanga o tēnei tuhinga? He aha te mīti i roto i tēnei hanawiti?

Kaiuru 17

Hei tauira atu anō, ko te whare. Tērā ka whakaritea te whare ki tētehi anō āhuatanga kia puta mai ai he māramatanga hou. Inā tā Mead (1990: viii) whakamārama mō tēnei kohinga pukapuka rangatira *Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau 1769-1869*, he huahuatau, he kupu whakarite, he tairitenga hoki kei te tauira nei.

Ki taku titiro ka tū te pukapuka nei hei tohu whakamaumaharatanga ki ō tātou tīpuna, hei whare iringa kōrero... Ko rātou ngā poupou o te whare, ā, ko ngā tuhituhinga ngā whakairo e kitea ai ō rātou ihi, ō rātou wehi, ō rātou mana.

E kitea ana e whā ngā huahuatau i tēnei tauira kōrero a Mead (tirohia te Whakaahua 8.10). Kia whai i tā Richards i roto i tā Abrams (2005) pukapuka rongonui mō ngā nuka reo *A Glossary of Literary Terms*, e rua ngā wāhanga o te huahuatau. Ko te TAKE⁵⁵, inā ko te kaupapa kei te kōrerohia; ko te WAKA⁵⁶, ko te mea kei te whakatairitea. Me kī, ka kawea ki wāhi kē, ki tikanga kē mā runga i taua waka.

⁵⁵ tenor

⁵⁶ vehicle

Te Whakaahua 8.10: Te Hanganga o te Huahuatau: he Waka, he Take

He Huahuatau nā Mead, 1990:viii

WAKA	TAKE
tohu whakamaumaharatanga	Pukapuka
whare iringa kōrero	Pukapuka
poupou o te whare	Rātou [ngā tūpuna]
whakairo	Tuhinga

He pēnei anō mō te whakaterenga i te pukapuka nei *Te Whare Kura 1* (School Publications Branch, 1960: 1), ko Hirini Mead tētehi anō o ngā etita. He kupu pōwhiri tonu ānō nei kei mua te kaipānui i te whare e pōwhiritia ana. E mea ana:

Uia mai koia whakahuatia ake, ‘ko wai te whare nei e?’

Nau mai! Haere mai

Tomo mai ki tō tāua Whare Kura.

He KUPU RAWEKE pea te tapanga *Whare Kura*, ko te ingoa o te pukapuka me te PŪTAKETANGA o ngā tuhinga o roto. Nā, mō te huahuatau mō te whare, koia hoki te mahi a ngā tohunga nei, a Durie, a Milroy, he whakahua ake i te kupu whare hei whakatairite i tētehi anō āhuatanga. Kua rongonui te huahuatau, ‘te whare tapawhā’ i te horopaki hauora.

Te Whakaahua 8.11: He Huahuatau: He Whakatairite i ngā Mea e Rua

WAKA	TAKE	Kaitito
Tauira	Huahuatau aroro	Nā wai
Whare kōrero	He whare te pukapuka	Mead (1990: viii)
Whare tapawhā	He whare te hauora	Durie (1995: 77)
Whare whakairo	He whare te whaikōrero	Milroy (Moorfield, 1996: 260)

Ko te huahuatau te tino kīpeha. Koia ki a Aristotle i roto i tāna pukapuka *Poetics* i ngā tau manomano ki muri (Neale, 1992: 15). He tohu te huahuatau nō te tohunga:

Ko tētehi mea nui, āe marika, ko te whakamahia paitia o ēnei kīpeha me ngā kupu tūhono me ngā kupu rerekē. Engari ia ko te mea nui kē ko te tohungatanga ki te huahuatau. He āhuatanga e kore e akona mā tangata kē; he tohu kua matatau rawa koe, i te mea kia meinga he huahuatau pai me rongo ā-wairua ki te ōritetanga o te rerekētanga^{vi}.

He maha tonu ngā huahuatau ko te taiao te pūtake. Koia tonu te ao i nohongia nei e ngā mātua tūpuna. Tērā ka whakatairitea he āhuatanga o taua huinga kupu ki te kaupapa, arā, te maha, te rahi, te mahi, te whanonga, te aha atu. Pēnei i ngā ōritenga o te tangata whai mana ki te āhua o ngā momo rākau, nui te mana, pēnei i te tōtara. E rua, e rua he tū tōtika pea. Anā, ki te hinga te tangata, ka kīia, kua hinga tētehi tōtara o te wao.

Nā, ki tā Lakoff rāua ko Johnson i tā rāua pukapuka *Metaphors We Live By* (2003) ko te HUAHUATAU ARORO⁵⁷ te mea nui e kitea ai te ahurea o te iwi. Ko tā rāua he kimi i ngā huahuatau aroro i roto i te reo Ingarihi hei whakaatu mai i te pūtakeketanga o ngā whakaaro. Me kī, mā te whakakao i ngā huahuatau e āhua ōrite ana ka kitea te matū o tā te iwi titiro. Nā, kia hoki ake ki te huahuatau mō te whare, tērā e kitea te huahuatau aroro, HE WHARE TE KAUPAPA.⁵⁸ Arā, ko te ritenga ki te āhua o te whare (tā Durie), ko te ritenga ki te hanganga o te whare (tā Milroy), ko te ritenga ki te tikanga o te whare (tā Mead). Ko tētehi tauira nui mō te reo kei tēnei taukītanga a Kāretu (Ihimaera, 1994: 226) e takoto ana:

Tōku reo, tōku ohoo

Tōku reo, tōku mapihi maurea

Tōku reo, tōku whakakai marihi

Inā rā mai i ēnei tauira ka puta ko te HUAHUATAU ARORO i tā te Māori titiro ki te reo Māori, arā, HE TAONGA TE REO. Ahakoa he taukītanga hoki taua kīanga, ā, kua

⁵⁷ conceptual metaphor

⁵⁸ Ko tā Lakoff rāua ko Johnson whakatakoto kupu mō tēnei ariā reo. He pū matua hei tohu i te huahuatau aroro.

rongonui i Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori i ngā tau 1990, koia tonu te pūtakeanga o aua puakinga a Kāretu.

Hei tauira atu anō, he tikanga nui te poroporoaki ki tā te Māori titiro, ā, he nui ngā huahuatau kei ngā kupu poroporoaki e noho ana. Heoi, hei whakarōpū i ētehi o ēnei huahuatau kua whai i tā Lakoff rāua ko Johnson whakatakotoranga. Ka kitea i te Whakaahua 8.12 e whai nei ko ētehi huahuatau aroro mō te mate. Ā, kua pū matua te huahuatau aroro. Arā, ko te pūtakeanga o te huahuatau aroro, koia pū tā te iwi titiro ki tōna ao.

Te Whakaahua 8.12: Tā te Māori Titiro ki te Mate me te Taiao

He mea whai i tā Joseph, 2004e: 16 *He Mihi, He Poroporoaki: Tā te Ākonga*.

Huahuatau Aroro	Whakapākehātanga
HE HURINGA TAIAO TE MATE	DEATH IS AN ENVIRONMENTAL TRANSITION
Kua pakaru	te kei o te waka
Kua hinga	te tōtara o te wao nui o Tāne
Ko Rehua	kua mate
Ka tanuku	te tihi o taku maunga
Kua whetūrangitia	te tangata
Kua roku	te marama i te pae
Ka whati rā ia	taku māhuri tōtara
HE HAERENGA TE MATE	DEATH IS A JOURNEY
Kua haere	ki tua o te arai
Kua haere	ki tua o te pae o mau mahara
Kua takahi	i te ara whānui a Tāne
Hoki atu	ki te kāinga kua whakaritea mā tāua te tangata
Hoki atu	ki te kāinga tūturu
Kauria	te moana ki Hawaiki nui, ki Hawaiki roa, ki Hawaiki pamamao
HE TAIAO TAKARIRI TE MATE	DEATH IS EXTREME ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS
Ka papā	te whaitiri
Ka hihiko	te uira
Ka karawhiua	e te ua
Ka pākia	e te hau
Ka ngarue	te whenua

He huarahi tēnei whakatōpūranga huahuatau kia kitea ai tā te iwi titiro ki te ao. Kua pāpaku noa te titiro i taua huarahi, heoi anō rā, he huarahi pai e whakaari ai i te tikanga o te huahuatau. He āwhina nui hoki pea hei ako i te ākongā ki te tikanga o ēnei momo huahuatau, ka tahi. Ki te aronga o TĀ TE MĀORI TITIRO,⁵⁹ ka rua. Ko tētehi anō āwhina, ko te mōhio ki te tūmomo wetereo o tēnei kīpeha. Anei e whai nei ētehi takotoranga me ngā tauira.

Te Whakaahua 8.13: He Wetereo Huahuatau: He Whakatairite i ngā Mea e Rua

Wetereo	Tā te huahuatau takoto	Tauira	Tikanga
PŪARO ⁶⁰ + pūaro	Ko..., ko...	Ko Hinemoa, ko au [whakataukī](Mead & Grove, 2001:228)	<i>beauty</i>
PŪIRO ⁶¹ + pūiro	Tōku, tōku	(Ko) Tōku reo, (ko) tōku mapihi maurea [kōrero nā Kāretu]	<i>treasure</i>
PŪMAHI ⁶² + tūpou	Kua A a E	Kua puku ngangara au [kīwaha]	<i>bloated</i>
Pūaro + PŪMAU ⁶³	Ko A + te/ngā E	Ko rātou ngā waewae [kīanga mihi]	<i>workers</i>
Pūaro + PŪNOA ⁶⁴	Ko A he E	Ko te aroha anō he wai [kupu waiata]	<i>love</i>
Pūaro + tūpou	Ko A E	Ko Hinetitama koe. [kīwaha, whakataukī]	<i>beauty</i>
Pūnoa + tūpou	He A E	He kōwhatu koe? [whakataukī]	<i>hindrance</i>

⁵⁹ Māori ontology

⁶⁰ focus particle/pūmua: preposition

⁶¹ possessive pronoun

⁶² verbal particle, TAM: Time Aspect Marker

⁶³ definite article

⁶⁴ indefinite article

Whakamihī ⁶⁵ + pūmau	E te...	E te manukura... [kīānga mihi]	<i>respect</i>
Tūpou + me kī + E	A + me kī + E	Tēnā rā koutou, me kī, ngā pou o tēnei kaupapa [kīānga mihi]	<i>stallwarts</i>

Nā, ki te tahuri atu ki te papakupu ā-hiko Te Reo Tupu, e taea ana te kimi kupu mā te MOMO KUPU⁶⁶, ā, ko reira te kupu *figuratively*.⁶⁷ E meatia ana e 50 ngā huahuatau i te papakupu *Wiremu* ā-hiko nei, neke atu inā tāpiritia ngā momo atu anō pērā i te manu taiko, i te manu taki, i te manu kura (tirohia te Whakaahua 8.14). O ngā huahuatau, neke atu i te haurua o ngā huahuatau katoa he mea mō te momo tangata, hapū, iwi. E 36 ngā huahuatau: 19 mō te rangatira (hei tauira: angaanga, kahika, kāhu); e rima mō te huinga tāngata (manu a Tāne, manu a Tiki, parito, pūrangi, pūtoi); e whā mō te toa (mumu, tōī, ure, manu tioriori); e rua mō te tangata (kiri, moko); e rua mō te tangata nui te mana (paewai, pakiwaru); e rua mō te iwi ora, mō te iwi tata mate (pūtoi, parahūhare); kotahi mō te pūkenga, pouako nei (pou).

Ko te mea uaua rawa atu, ko te kimi i te take i whakaritea ai tētehi mea ki tētehi atu mea, hei tauira ko te tē me te rangatira. Kia hoki noa ake ki te whakaaro mō te huahuatau: ko te huanga ko te WAKA; ko te taunga ko te TAKE. Mehemea koe ka mōhio ki te whakataukī, ‘Mate atu he tētēkura, ara mai anō he tētēkura’, tērā ka kitea ko te orange tonutanga pea kei te whakaritea i waenganui i te ‘tē’ me te ‘rangatira’, heoi me uaua ka kite i ērā anō tairitenga inā tē aro i a koe te tikanga o te kupu kei te whakaritea. Nō reira, he tapakau noa iho ngā pitopito kupu i te taha o te tikanga huahuatau e wānanga ana he aha ngā āhuatanga i tairitea. Waihoki, ehara ēnei huahuatau i te katoa i rō Wiremu, hei tauira kitea ai te ‘weu’ mō te rangatira heoi tē tohua ai e Te Reo Tupu. Kia ahatia, nei rā ētehi hei whakatauiratanga ake.

⁶⁵ vocative

⁶⁶ parts of speech, ‘momo tumu’ (Barlow i Biggs, 1990)

⁶⁷ I roto i te papakupu a Williams, *A Dictionary of Māori Language* (4th ed. 1915) ka meatia te kīānga, ‘te tau o taku ate’ he *figurative expression*. Heoi i te tānga tuawhitu kua tangohia taua āhuatanga reo mō taua kīānga. He pai kē atu kia whakaaturia he kīpeha taua kīānga.

Te Whakaahua 8.14: He Huahuatau i te Papakupu Wiremu: He Tairitenga Aha?
Metaphors in Williams Dictionary of Māori Language: What is being compared?

Kupu 'WAKA' <i>what's said</i>	Tikanga ā-mata <i>literally</i>	Tikanga Huahuatau 'TAKE' <i>figurative meaning</i>	Tairitenga [whakaaro noa] <i>comparison</i>
1. angaanga	upoko	rangatira	kaiwhakahaere, 'rangatira' o te tinana
2. haumiaroa	aruhe	Haumia-tiketike	tupu i te nukuroa o te whenua
3. kākahi	momo tohorā	rangatira	āhua nui
4. kahika	rākau	rangatira	āhua tōtika, teitei
5. kāhu,	manu	rangatira	pūrangiaho, kimi kai, titiro hāro
kāhu kōrako	manu	rangatira	āhua
6. kauati	rākau tahu ahi	rangatira	whakamahana, oranga tinana
7. kekeno	kekeno	rangatira	nui, kimi kai, whawhai
8. kete	kete kupenga	kōpū	āhua koropuku
9. ketu	huaki one	huakina te pō	mahi keri
10. kina	momo tahā	te puku nui	āhua puku nui
11. kiokio	fern	tāmoko	rārangi
12. kiri	kiri	tangata	he kupu hautanga
13. kōhanga	whare manu	wāhi whānau mai	āhurutanga
14. kōhanga	whare manu	pā	āhua pae, porotiti
15. kōrehu	kohu	pāpourī	pōrearea, tau, kāpō
16. kōtare	manu	pinono kai	whanonga, hiakai
17. kōtonga	hau tonga	pōuritanga	māeke, ākina
18. kouka	pae hamuti	mate, poka tōrere	pōuriuri, kore kitea
19. maikiroa	karakia	aituā	hapa?
20. manu			

manu taiko	manu tūtei	rangatira	kaitiaki, oranga
manu taki	manu tūtei	rangatira	kaitiaki, oranga
manu teka	manu tūtei	rangatira	kaitiaki, oranga
manu kura	manu	rangatira	kaiwhakahaere
manu a Tāne	manu	te ira tangata	uri
manu a Tiki	manu	te ira tangata	uri
21. māpihi	tūmomo hei	taonga	whakapiri tinana
22. mātārae	kūrae	rangatira	nui, whakahira
23. matū	ngako	ia o te kaupapa	kīnaki, te mea nui
24. moko	tāmoko	tangata	mana
25. more	weu nui	take	pūtakenga
26. mumu	hau nui	toa rangatira	kaha, koringa, mauri ora
27. niho	rei	mana	ngau
28. ngutu	waha	kōhimuhimu	mahi ngutungutu
29. paewai	tuna?	tangata whai mana	āhua tuna?
30. pāhao	kupenga	hopu kōrero	hao
31. pakiwaru	huarere pai	tangata mana nui	‘whakawhitinga o te rā’
32. parahūhare	toenga kai	iwi mōrehu i mahue i te umu	kongakonga
33. parāoa	tohorā	rangatira	kīrehe nui te kitea
34. parito	rito otaota	uri	ngākau, pokapū
35. pōrohe	kūtae nui, tuna	rangatira	kīrehe nui o taua momo
36. pou	rākau tōtika	whāngai	manaaki
37. pou	rākau tōtika	pūkenga	hāpai, tautoko, tū torotika
38. puāwai	putiputi	huruhuru kiwikiwi?	tae
39. pūrangi	kupenga	rōpū tāne, wahine	huinga
40. pūtoi	<i>bunch</i>	iwi, whānau	kotahitanga, piringa
41. pūwhero	āhua kura	rangatira	tae
42. tākupu	manu	rangatira	āhua, whanonga
43. taniwha	tupua	rangatira	mana nui,

			whakawehi
44. tangere	takere waka	rangatira	kawe i te iwi
45. tē	tētē kura	rangatira	ara ake anō
46. tiori			
manu tioriori	manu pātari	toa kaha	whakapātaritari
47. tōī	rākau, kāhu	toa	āhua
48. ure	ngarengare	toa	tū māro
49. ure	ngarengare	kaha	tukituki
50. waro	rua hōhonu	kāinga o Mate, poka tōrere	pōuriuri, kore kite

Ko tētehi kitenga nui a te kairangahau, ka whakamahia ko te kīanga nei, ‘me kī’ i mua, i muri i te kīpeha hei tohu ki te whakaminenga he kīpeha kei te puta, kua puta rānei. He pērā anō te kupu ‘hei’ mō muri anake te kīpeha whai ai. Inā rā ngā tauira mō ‘me kī’ i rangona i te hui *Literacy* ko Matariki Ahunga Nui ki Poneke i te tau 2005. E kitea ana ko ngā pou nei, koia tā *Wiremu* i kī ai, inā he pūkenga, he tangata hāpai i te kaupapa. Nā, ko te putiputi, ko te wahine. Nā, i tēnei kitenga ka āta titiro ki ngā kupu a ngā kaiuru hei PŪTEA KUPU⁶⁸ iti nei me te rapu i te kīanga ‘me kī’. Ko tētehi tikanga o taua kīanga, he mea whakarāpopoto noa iho, arā, ‘me kī pēnei au’.

Te Whakaahua 8.15: ‘Me kī’ – Hei Tohu he Huahuatau kei te Puta, kua Puta Rānei
‘So to speak’ – A pointer to metaphors that will be uttered, or already stated

Kei Whea Tauira
te Kīpeha?

Kei muri Tēnā rā koutou, me kī, *ngā pou o te mātauranga*
Kei mua Me te mihi anō ki *ngā putiputi*, me kī, nō Ngāti Mea

⁶⁸ corpus

Nei rā ētehi atu tauira nā ngā kaiuru tonu, heoi ko tā te kīanga ‘me kī’, he tohu i tētehi momo kīpeha. Kua tohua ki te taha o te tauira ko tēhea momo kīpeha. Ko tā te kaiuru tuatoru: ‘Kua kite atu mātou kei te hui tonu te ao, me kī...’. Mōku ake, kāore tonu te ao i hui, heoi, he tokomaha pea. Nō reira, he KUPU WHAKAPEHAPEHA⁶⁹ tēnei i mua i te kīanga kīpeha. Ko tā te kaiuru tekau mā tahi, ‘He uaua, me kī, te nui hoki ō kā tai roa o Kupe kei mua i a mātou, i a mātou e haere ana’. Arā, he whakataukī tōna rite, he TOHUTORO⁷⁰ tonu kei muri i te kīanga kīpeha. Ki tā te kaiuru 15 mō te tikanga o te whakawhanaungatanga, ‘Kei reira te whakapapa, me kī, ka noho hei tuanui...’. Arā, he kupu whakarite kei muri i te kīanga kīpeha.

Ko te whakapae mō tēnei kīanga ‘me kī’, he āwhina tēnei tauratanga reo hei whakaū i ēnei takotoranga ki ngā hinengaro o te whakaminenga kia ngākaunui mai, kia mataara mai, he kupu whakarite, he huahuatau, ka mutu, he reo peha kei te haere. He āwhina anō hoki te whakaingoa i tēnei kīanga peha mā te hunga pouako e whakaako ana i te reo peha.

Ko ētehi huahuatau he māmā noa te whai atu ‘ā-kupu nei’, ko ētehi anō he uaua ake inā kāore e mōhiotia ana te huinga kupu kei te whakaritea. Hei tauira ake, ‘He kōtare koe’ (Riley, 2001: 143). Kei te whakaritea ko te tangata e whanga ana kia karangahia ia ki te kai ki tā te kōtare e whanga ana i te taha awa kia puta mai te kai. Anei anō ētehi atu āhutatanga manu hei whakatairite i ētehi āhutatanga o te tangata.

⁶⁹ hyperbole

⁷⁰ reference

Te Whakaahua 8.16: He Huahuatau: Ngā Āhutatanga Manu me ngā Āhutatanga Tangata

Metaphors: bird characteristics and human characteristics

WAKA Huahuatau Āhutatanga Manu	TAKE Tikanga Kē Āhutatanga Tangata
<i>Tā te Tangi Manu</i> He kākā waha nui He manu tioriori	<i>Tā te Tangi Tangata</i> He tangata mārama, ātaahua te reo He tangata reo reka, waiata reka
<i>Tā te Momo Manu</i> He manu taki He manu taiko He kōtuku rerenga tahi	<i>Tā te Momo Tangata</i> He rangatira He rangatira He haerenga rangatira
<i>Tā te Āhutatanga Kai a te Manu</i> He kōtare koe He kūkū tāngaengae nui, he pārera apu paru He kōtuku kai whakaata He kūkū kai whauwhi	<i>Tā te Āhutatanga Kai a te Tangata</i> He tangata hiakai He tangata kaihoru He tangata āta kai, tau ki te kai He tangata tupuhi
<i>Tā te Whanonga Manu</i> He pōtiki nā te koekoeā He tou tīrairaka	<i>Tā te Whanonga Tangata</i> He pōriro He tangata kāore e āta tau

Kia pēnei ake pea te huahuatau aroaro, HE MANU TE TANGATA. Inā, ka whakatairitea te āhua o te manu, te mahi, te kōrero, te momo manu tonu. Koia pea tā te Māori titiro ki te taiao. Nā, kia mutu ake te kōrero huahuatau me tēnei o ngā whakahokinga kōrero. He whānau tahi ngā kīpeha nei, ka mutu, he hou tonu i te kura:

Kei te wānanga mātou i tēnei wā e pā ana ki te kupu whakarite, i te huahuatau, i te kīwaha, wērā. Kua tīmata ki te kōrero i roto i ētahi o ngā kura.

Kaiuru 24

8.5.2 Te Kīwaha

Idiom, colloquialism

E rua ngā aronga o te kīwaha nei i roto i te papakupu *Tirohia, Kimihia: A Māori learner dictionary* (Ministry of Education, 2006: 69), inā rā:

Kīwaha

1. Ko te kīwaha he rerenga kōrero e whakaatu ana i tētehi āhuatanga kē.
2. Ko te kīwaha he kupu, he kōrero kei te mōhiohia e ngā tāngata anake o taua wāhi.

Ki tētehi kaiuru he mea nui rawa atu te kīwaha e whakaaria mai ai tā kui mā, tā koro mā titiro ki te ao:

Ko ngā pepeha, ko ngā pepeha ā-iwi, ko ngā kīwaha, ngā kīrehu. Pai te kīwaha, te kīrehu mō te reo kōrerorero nei, te reo ā-kāinga nei, te reo parāoa. Ko ngā tongi, ko ngā tūmomo metawha – huahuatau te kupu, ka kitea ērā, ka kaha kitea... ērā tūmomo huatau i roto i ngā tūhinga ā ngā tūpuna... he rawe ngā kīwaha ki a au i te mea he kūaha te kīwaha ki te ao o te kuia, koroua.

Kaiuru tuaiwa

He kaupapa nui te kīwaha i roto i ngā reo katoa puta noa i te ao. Ko te pukapuka tuatahi kia aro nuitia te kīwaha, ko *He Kohinga Kīwaha*, āna, ki ngā kaituhi, ‘Ko ngā kīwaha nei te aka o te reo Māori, te kāwai e tuituia ai, e kawea ai ngā whakaaro o te tangata ki te taiao, ki te ao mārama’ (Mason mā, 1999: 6). E meatia ana e te kaiuru I I he waka te kīwaha ‘hei kawē atu i te wairua kino, i te wairua kawa, i te wairua pai me ēra mea’ ki tangata kē. Ko tētehi anō whakamārama a Te Wharehuia, tētehi o ngā kaituhi o taua pukapuka e pēnei ana (tirohia Moorfield, 1996: 52):

...i te wā e noho tahi ana ngā whānau, ngā hapū rānei, te iwi rānei i roto i a rātou anō kua tīmata te rere o ngā momo-kōrero kei a rātau anake taua momo rā, pēnei i ngā kīrehu, i ngā kīwaha. Nā, he maha ngā kīwaha, me kī a Te Tai Tokerau, e mōhiohia ana e rātau anake, e mōhiohia ana e rātau te aronga i roto i a rātau anake. Pērā anō me roto mai o Te Arawa, kei a ia āna kīwaha, kei a Tūhoe anō āna... Ka mau tonu iho i a rātau ko rātau anake e mōhio ana ki te tikanga o aua kōrero rā.

Kei te reo kōrero o ia rā ngā kīwaha. Mehemea koe ka whakatupuria ki te reo Māori, he māmā noa iho pea ngā kīwaha, ngā kīrehu hei whakamahi ki te wāhi e tika ana me whakamahi. Waihoki, mō ngā tāngata matatau, tērā pea ka kore mōhio he kīwaha te kīwaha, he kōrero noa, inā, ‘Kāore au i te mōhio ki tēnei mea te kīwaha. Koinā kē tō mātou nei reo ki te kāinga’ (Kaumātua, Kura Reo, Rotorua, 25 o Mahuru 2003).

Heoi, mō ngā tāngata reo rua me ngā tamariki kāore anō kia rongo i te horopaki me te aronga o te kīwaha, kātahi ka uaua rawa atu te kimi māramatanga o te kīwaha. I runga i te mea he rerekē te tikanga o ngā kupu kīwaha ki te mata o ngā kupu. Ahakoa rā he kaupapa nui te ako i te whakamahia o ngā kīwaha me ngā aronga kīwaha (Moorfield, 2005: ix), me uaua hoki ka kite i ngā kīwaha kei ngā papakupu me ngā puka wetereo e takoto ana (reira tonu). Kei te Whakaahua 8.17 e whai mai nei, tērā e kitea he momo whakatakotoranga o ētehi o ngā kīwaha. Me kī, he whānau kīwaha i tā te wetereo.

Ki a McCarthy rāua ko O’Dell (2006: 4) e taea ana te whakarōpū ngā kīwaha ki ngā ‘whānau’ e toru, inā ko tā te takotoranga (te Whakaahua 8.17), tā te ĀHEINGA⁷¹ (te Whakaahua 8.18) tā te kaupapa (te Whakaahua 8.22). Otirā, he whakarōpūtanga ēnei ki aua tohunga reo hei āwhina mā te hunga e akoako ana i te kīwaha.

⁷¹ function

Te Whakaahua 8.17: He Whānau Kīwaha: Tā te Wetereo

He mea tiki atu, he mea whakarōpū i ngā kīwaha i *He Kohinga Kīwaha*

Wetereo	Kīwaha Tauira	Kīwaha Pākeha
PŪWĀHI ⁷² + kupu wāhi	Kei reira	<i>'That's on the money!'</i>
(Kei + wāhi)	Kei uta!	<i>'That's on to it!'</i>
	Kei runga noa atu koe!	<i>'You're on to it!'</i>
	Kei whea mai!	<i>'Fantastic!'</i>
	Kei raro e putu ana.	<i>'(I'm) snowed under.'</i>
	Kei kō atu o kō mai.	<i>'Here 'n' there.'</i>
	Kei Mahurangi e haere ana.	<i>'That's way out left field.'</i>
	Kei tua o Tāwauwau.	<i>'You're way off.'</i>
PŪMAHI ⁷³ +	Kua taka te kapa.	<i>'I get it.'</i>
KUPU ĀHUA MAHI ⁷⁴	Kua pau te hau!	<i>'(I'm) stuffed.'</i>
	Kua mate koe i a au.	<i>'You're in the shit 'cause of me.'</i>
	Ka mahue tō toro mai?	<i>'Why the hell didn't you visit?'</i>
	Kua pakaru te pūkoro!	<i>'(I've) got no moola.'</i>
TŪPOU ⁷⁵ + kupu ingoa	Tō waha!	<i>'Watch your mouth!'</i>
(Tō/ō + wāhanga	Tō ihu!	<i>'Keep your nose out of it!'</i>
tinana)	T/ō taringa!	<i>'Are those ears painted on!'</i>
	Tō tero!	<i>'Up your arse!'</i>
	Ō raho!	<i>'Bollocks!'</i>
PUNGA ⁷⁶ + tūpou	Koia kei a koe.	<i>'You're on to it alright.'</i>
(Pū + Koe)	E koe!	<i>'Serves you right!'</i>
	E koe e koe!	<i>'Good bloody job!'</i>
	A koe rānei!	<i>'That's ripe coming from you!'</i>
	Kei a koe mō te rūkahu	<i>'You are sooo full of shit!'</i>
	Ki/hei a koe hoki	<i>'Get you!'</i>

⁷² locative

⁷³ Time Aspect Marker

⁷⁴ stative

⁷⁵ pronoun

⁷⁶ particle

Te Whakaahua 8.18: He Whānau Kīwaha: Tā te Āheinga Reo

Āheinga Reo	Tauira	Tikanga ā-mata	Wairua Pākehā
Whakamihi	Kei runga noa atu koe!	<i>You're on to it</i>	‘Shot!’
(<i>He Kohinga</i>	Koia kei a koe!	<i>You've got it</i>	‘You're the one!’
<i>Kīwaha,</i>	Kino kē koe!	<i>You're bad</i>	‘Bad ass!’ (good one)
1999:14-32)	Ka tau koe!	<i>You're an expert</i>	‘Second to none!’
	Kei reira!	<i>It's there</i>	‘Bang on!’
Whakahāwea	Kai a te ahi!	<i>Food for the fire</i>	‘Bugger!’
(<i>He Kohinga</i>	Kai a te kurī!	<i>Food for the dog</i>	‘You're dog meat!’
<i>Kīwaha,</i>	Kai hamuti!	<i>Shit eater</i>	‘Eat shit!’
1999:91-93)	Pokokōhua!	<i>Boil your head</i>	‘Fucken cunt!’ ⁷⁷
	Pokotiwha!	<i>Blast it</i>	‘Blast!’, ‘Fucker!’
Whakapae	He...kei te haere	<i>Something's going</i>	‘There's a X a comin’
	Tērā pea...	<i>Maybe there</i>	‘Possibly.’
	Kāore e kore...	<i>No none</i>	‘Undoubtedly.’
	Ehara	<i>No (yes)</i>	‘Would you believe it?’
	Te tikanga	<i>the meaning</i>	‘Supposed to be’

I ētehi anō wā arā tētehi kupu e kaha whakamahia ana ki roto i ngā kīwaha, ā, ka taka mai ētehi o ngā kīwaha i taua kupu kotahi. Ko te kupu ‘pakaru’ tētehi:

Pakaru	Kua pakaru te tero o te tīkaokao!	‘It's (you're) ‘stuffed!’
	Kua pakaru mai ngā hamuti!	‘Full of shit!’
	Kua pakaru te whero	‘Broken arse’
	(Ō) Pakaru mai te haunga!	‘Ratshit!’
	(Ō) Pakaru te hamuti i te wehi!	‘Shit-scared!’

⁷⁷ Kua memeha haere te tikanga o tēnei kīanga i te whakapākehātanga ‘boil your head’. Inā ka pēnei kē te whakapākehātanga, tērā ka hoki mai te mana o te kī (illocutionary force), arā, he kanga whakaharahara ki te kaiwhakarongo.

I ētehi anō wā ko reo kē te pūtaketanga o te kīwaha. Me āpiti atu tēnei anō whānau kīwaha. Ko ētehi tāngata kōrero Māori, pērā i a Te Waihoroi Shortland, e kaha whakamahia ana ngā kīwaha e takea mai ana i te reo Pākehā. I ētehi wā hei whakakata, i ētehi wā kia whakarāpopoto i te whakaaro o te kaupapa, ā, i ētehi wā he rite tonu ki tā te kīwaha Māori, he whakahokinga tere i te whakawhitinga kōrero hei whakaari i tētehi āhuatanga. Ko te whakapae a te kairangahau, ko ngā kīwaha nei nō te reo Pākehā tētehi āhuatanga nui o te RĒHITA⁷⁸ o te reo kōrerorero. Me tika rā te momo kīwaha mō te momo rēhita, ā, me kua pea e kaha te rangona o ēnei o ngā momo kīwaha ōpaki i te wā ōkawa.

Te Whakaahua 8.19: He Kīwaha nō te Reo Ingarihi

Kīwaha Pākeha	Whakamāoritanga	Nā wai, nō hea
Kei te wakuwaku i te tou o te kōhua.	<i>Scraping the bottom of the barrel.</i>	kaiuru 18
Titiro i mua i te peke	<i>Look before you leap.</i>	<i>Turtle Hero,</i> Whakaata Māori, 23.4.2007
Kua taka te kapa.	<i>The penny's dropped.</i>	<i>He Kohinga</i> <i>Kīwaha</i> , 1999:193
Kia tūpato ki tāu e wawata ai kei whiwhi.	<i>Be careful for what you wish for.</i>	Te Waihoroi Shortland, Te Tēpu, 4.2007
Kotahi te pikitia, He mano te kupu.	<i>A picture tells a thousand words</i>	Tapanga atikara, <i>He Muka</i>
Kākāriki pai ana au i te harawene.	<i>I'm green with envy</i>	Kaiuru tuarua
He pai me te koura.	<i>As good as gold</i>	Ngata, 1993a:19

⁷⁸ Register, 'te hā/wairua o te reo'?

Nā, e kitea mai ana i ngā kupu a ngā kaiuru e whai nei ko te kīwaha te kīpeha i kōrerotia nuitia e ngā kaiuru. Kei te tautoko te tokonui o ngā kaiuru, ko te kīwaha te pūtaketa tangata mō te kōrerorero me te tuhituhi, heoi me tika rā tonu:

We need the correct idiom, kīwaha, nuance, totally Māori in concept. And have that understanding. Like, ‘Kua taka mai te rangi’ – ‘It’s totally pissing down’ and think in those terms.

Kaiuru tuarua

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui pea o te kīwaha, ko te whakaū i te wairua o te ‘reo kōrero’. Inā rā, ko ētehi o ngā kīwaha, he mea whānau mai i te horopaki ōpaki, pēnei i te reo o te kāuta, i te reo o muri, i te reo whakahohehohe pāpāringa:

Ka hoki anō ahau ki waku tuhinga. Ko tētahi tino āhua ki a au mō te tuhi, ka tuhi ana ahau ko te reo whakawhitiwhiti. Nā, kei roto te reo kōrero nei. Koirā pea te nuinga o waku tuhinga. Kei roto te kōrero. I pakeke mai au i tēnei momo āhuatanga o te āheinga o te reo, ngā momo kīwaha katoa i rangona au. Nā, kei reira. Ahakoa he aha waku tuhi, ka puta taua reo.

Kaiuru 20

Ko te whānau mōteatea ā-kōrero... he kōrero mō kā mea ōkawa pēnā i te mōteatea te whaikōrero, te karakia, ērā, he mea whakakākahu i te takata. He momo-kōrero anō te whakatoi... te whakawero i te hinekaro me ērā mea. Nā reira, he tino momo tērā. Ko ērā kōrero me te kīwaha ērā mea kia rapu i tētahi waka hei kawatu tō wairua kino, te wairua kawa, te wairua pai me ērā mea nā reira ko ngā kīwaha, whakataukī ēra. Tae atu ki te reo o te whānau, te reo o te kāuta.

Kaiuru 11

Ko tētehi anō āhuatanga o te kīwaha, ko te hanga whakaahua i te hinengaro o te whakaminenga. I te mea he whakataurite te mahi a te kīpeha, ka riro mā te kaipānui, mā te kaiwhakarongo e wānanga te whakaahua kei ngā kupu:

I a au e tuhi ana ka puta tēnā mea te whakaaro ki roto i a au ko tētahi āhuatanga o aku tuhi kua kite au, kua kite hoki i wētahi, ko te tuhi i roto i te reo kīwaha. Hāunga tērā, i roto i taua reo kīwaha rā ko taku hiahia i ngā wā katoa kia uru he whakaahua i roto i aua tuhi rā.

Kaiuru 12

Āe rā, he mea nui te kīwaha, engari ki tā Williams (kauhau, 12 November, 2004), kei te noho mōrearea tēnei o ngā kīpeha. He take nui tēnei mō te whakaora i te reo, me te whakarerehua i te momo-kōrero. Ahakoa kāore tētehi reo e totoka ki tētehi wā, āe ka rerekē haere i te takanga o te wā. I te pānga nui o te reo Ingarihi, tērā ka whakamāoritia ngā kīwaha Ingarihi, ā, he āwangawanga kei tāmia rawatia te reo Māori ki aua kīwaha tauhou.

I ēnei rangi, mēnā ka tino whakarongo tātou ki te reo, auē, kei te whai rawa i ngā tauira o te ao Pākehā nei... ka whakarongo tātou ki ngā kōrero o ngā rangatahi i ēnei rangi, kua whakamāori i ētahi kīwaha Pākehā pērā ki te ‘That’s us’, ‘Ko tātou tēnā’, he pai tonu ēnā whakamahi kōrero ki a au ēngari kia kaua e waiho ko ērā hei reo matua mō tātou, pērā ki te ‘What’s that for?’ ‘He aha tērā mea mō?’

Kaiuru 12

Nā, kei ngā pouako te mahi nui kia tohatoha atu i te tini kīwaha ki ngā ākonga kia whakaaturia te ao e noho nei rātou kei huri kē rātou ki te hanga i ā rātou ake me te aro kē ki te reo Pākehā hei papa:

Kua kaha wānanga mātou i tēnei mea i te mea kua āhua huri rātou [ngā ākonga kura kaupapa Māori] ki te waihanga i ā rātou ake [kīwaha], nō reira, he tika te whakaaro me āta whakaako ngā kīwaha reo Māori nei nā te mea ko ngā kīwaha e puta ana i a rātou he mea waihanga nā rātou i runga anō o te takoto o ētahi kīwaha reo Pākehā... Nō reira, kei te kīia me hoki mai koe i te wā tākaro hei whakaatu i tā rātou i te korenga o te koa. Ka kī, “Rawe”. Kaha te aro ki te muku i taua āhua, engari kore ngā momo kīwaha.... kua huri rātou ki te waihanga i ā rātou ake, he mea anō.... me whakaaro au, ‘Tino’. Wairua kawa nei.

Kaiuru 25

I te kitenga mai o ngā kīpeha e whakarōpūtia ana, tērā ka huatau ake tētehi o ngā kaiuru he huarahi ako pea tēnei. Inā rā ko te aro ki ngā kīpeha i te tuatahi, kātahi ko ngā momo-kōrero, me ngā momo tuhinga.

Koia tētahi huarahi rerekē pea kei te whakaaro ahau. Ka tae atu ahau ki ngā kura ka āta titiro mātou ki nga tauaromahi. Ka āta titiro, ka āta wānanga mō

ngā āhuatanga reo mai i reira ka tīmata rātou ki te whakaako me kī ko te kīwaha, ka tīmata rātou ki te whakaako i te kīwaha ki ētahi tūmomo tuhinga, kāore rātou e tīmata ki konei (ki te nuka reo). Kua tīmata ngā kaiako ki ngā genre, pēnei i te recount. Ka tarai ki te whakahuri i ō rātou whakaaro ki te tīmata ki te kīwaha kē. Kia whakawhānui tērā ki ngā tūmomo tuhinga. He rerekē pea tērā titiro. He hiahia nō ngā kaiako kia mōhio he aha me kī, mō te mōteatea, he aha ngā mea ka whakaako, engari kei te whakaako rātou i nga genre, kāore rātou i te whakawhānui. Pēhea? Ka kite au i te kīwaha ki hea? Kāore au e kite i roto i te pakiwaitara noa iho. Engari ka whakaako noa rātou i te pakiwaitara mēnā ka tīmata rātou ki konei...

Kaiuru 24

Ko te mea nui o tēnei whānau kīpeha, ka tau ki wāhi kē mō tōna tikanga. He pēnei anō te kīwaha. Kua neke atu i te ngahuru tau te kupu kīwaha e whakamahia ana; heoi, kua puta ano tētehi atu kupu, ko te kīrehu. Ko te rerekētanga o te kīrehu me te kīwaha, he uaua ake ki te kimi i te māramatanga i te mata o ngā kupu o te kīrehu. Me kī, kei te āhua rehurehu te kitenga atu. Ahakoa rā i mōhio ngā kaiuru ki te kupu nei, ki te kīrehu, kīhai tētehi i tino mōhio ki te whakatauiria i tētehi:

Tāku i ako ai i tētahi o ngā kura reo, ko te kīwaha, mārama tonu tana tikanga i te wā ka whakahuatia, engari ko te kīrehu kua āhua huna nei te tikanga. Penei anō... kei runga noa atu koe he kīwaha, ko te kīrehu...he aha tētahi, aua?

Kaiuru 25

Nō reira, e mea ana te kaiuru he mārama ake te kīwaha i te kīrehu. Ā, ki te whai i te aronga o te kupu o te kīrehu, tērā ka rehurehu te kitea o te tikanga. Ka whakatauiratia e Moorfield (2005: 108) tēnei rerekētanga o te kīwaha me te kīrehu i tana papakupu. Ko ngā tauira tuatahi āna kei te whakaahua 8.20 e whai nei.

Te Whakaahua 8.20: Te Rerekētanga o te Kīrehu me te Kīwaha

Te Kīwaha me te Kīrehu

colloquial phrases, idiomatic expressions

	Kīwaha <i>colloquialism</i>	Kīrehu <i>idiom</i>
Aronga <i>meaning</i>	Māramatanga <i>clear</i>	Rehurehutanga ⁷⁹ <i>obscure</i>
		
	Pakaru ana tana hamuti i te matakū. <i>He was scared shitless.</i>	Kua pakaru taku pūkoro. <i>I'm broke.</i> (Moorfield, 2005: 108)
	Te āhua nei. <i>It would appear</i>	Kua puta a pito. <i>I'm full.</i>
	Ka tika hoki! <i>Too right</i>	Ka wani kē! <i>Awesome!</i>
	Kua rahi tēnā! <i>That's enough!</i>	Ehara ehara! <i>Bloody oath!</i>
	Ka kite rā! <i>See ya!</i>	Kei whea mai! <i>Fantastic!</i>

Nō reira, kia hoki noa ake ki ngā whakamāramatanga i te aronga o tēnei mea te kīwaha i te tīmatanga o tēnei kaupapa. Inā rā, 'Ko te kīwaha he kupu, he kōrero kei te mōhiotia e ngā tāngata anake o taua wāhi.' Ko te whakapae, he kīrehu kē taua whakamārama i runga i ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā kaiuru. Koia pea tā te whanaketanga o tēnei mea te ahureo, heoi ano, ka waiho mā te kīwaha hei kupu whakamaru i ngā momo kīwaha e rua i tēnei wā.

Ka mutu, ko te kīwaha tētehi tino kīpeha e kouna ai te momo-kōrero. Nei kore te reo peha nei, ka kīia he reo more tētehi momo-kōrero. Ki tā te Māori titiro, inā ka more noa te reo whakawhitiwhiti, kātahi te reo maroke ko tērā. Heoi anō rā, he pēnei te whakahokinga mai o te nuinga o ngā tāngata. He āhua hou tonu te kaupapa nei, ā, e haere tonu ana te kokiri whakamua.

⁷⁹ Waihoki – ko te rehurehutanga o te reo *nuance*, hei tauira: kei te ora; [tāpirihia te rehurehutanga] Kei te ora tonu rā; Kei te ora rawa atu; Kei te ora mutunga.

8.5.3 Te Kupu Hautanga *Synecdoche*

He hou rawa atu tēnei o ngā kīpeha, ahakoa kei te reo Māori. Ko tā te KUPU HAUTANGA⁸⁰, he whakahua i tētehi wāhanga o tētehi mea hei tohu mō te katoa o taua mea. He kīpeha tēnei e tino Māori ai te kōrero i runga i te mea he tino Māori te whakaaro. Hei tauira, e kaha rangona ana te kīanga nei, ‘waewae tapu’ mō te manuwihiri kāore anō kia pā te ihu ki te tangata whenua. I ētehi wā he pai kē atu te kupu iti. Me kī, he mea iti mō te mea nui. He kīnga rāpopoto te kupu hautanga.

Te Whakaahua 8.21: Kupu Hautanga: He Wāhanga mō te Katoa

He Wāhanga	Mō te Katoa o Tētehi Mea
Te ringa wera	mō ngā kaimahi
Te waewae tapu	mō te manuhiri
Aku huruhuru	mō ngā kaimahi
Aku ringaringa	mō ngā kaimahi
Te huru mā	mō te kaumātua
Te huru pango	mō te taiohi
Ure paratī	mō te tāne nui te mate wahine
Te wahapū	mō te tangata tau ki te kōrero

Mai i ēnei tauira ka kitea e whakamahia ana he wāhanga tinana mō tētehi rōpū tāngata. Inā ake ko te ringa, ko te wae, ko te huruhuru, ko te waha. Kei te haka Tāne-Rore nā Tīmoti Kāretu tētehi anō tauira (Kāretu, 1992: 21-22) e mea ana ‘Whakarongo rua aku taringa’. Anā, ko ‘aku taringa’ ko ‘te tangata’. Heoi, kia hurihia te rerenga ki te reo hāngai, ka mea ‘Whakarongo ahau’. Me kī, ko tā te kupu hautanga, he tiki atu i te kupu whāiti mō tētehi whakaaro whānui ake. Hei āpiti atu ki tēnei tirohanga, anei ētehi anō kīpeha, he kīwaha te nuinga mō te mata. Ahakoa he kupu hautanga mō te kanohi, he aro ki tētehi āhuatanga kē te tikanga. E kitea ana e rua ngā momo kupu hautanga. Ko tētehi, he wāhanga o te mea e kōrerotia ana (*synecdoche*); ko tētehi atu, he mea kē hei whakarite mō tētehi atu mea (*metonymy*).

⁸⁰ synecdoche

Te Whakaahua 8.22: Kupu Hautanga: He Wāhanga mō Tētehi Kaupapa Kē: Te Kanohi

Wāhanga kanohi <i>Part of face</i>	Tikanga ā-mata <i>Literal meaning</i>	Tauira Kīpeha <i>Example of a figure of speech</i>	Whakamārama ā-kupu <i>Literal explanation</i>	Tūmomo Kīpeha <i>Type of figure of speech</i>	Tikanga Peha <i>Figurative meaning</i>
Rae	Forehead	Rae wera* Tū ana a Raeroa, noho ana a Raepoto*	<i>Sweaty forehead</i> <i>Long forehead stands, short forehead sits.</i>	Kīwaha, whakataukī Whakataukī	<i>Hard worker in hospitality</i> <i>Proactive gets what she/he wants;</i> <i>Inactive waits for her/his fate.</i>
Tukemata	eyebrow	Ngā tukemata o Kahungunu	<i>The eyebrows of Kahungunu</i>	Pepeha, huahuatau	<i>Handsome</i>
Karu	eye	Ko Hinetitama koe. Matawai ana ngā karu i te tirohanga atu. Karu tītaha*	<i>You are Hinetitama, my eyes fill with tears just gazing at you.</i> <i>Slant eyes</i>	Whakataukī, Huahuatau Kīanga tāmi iwi ⁸¹	<i>Beauty</i> <i>Asian</i>
Taringa	ear	Taringa mārō* Taringa mangō+ Taringa huruhuru* Taringa hopuhopu* Taringa whitirua* I kaikainga ana taringa?	<i>Hard ears</i> <i>Shark ears</i> <i>Furry ears</i> <i>Grabbing ears</i> <i>Flapping ears</i> <i>Ear bashing</i>	Kīwaha Kīrehu Kīwaha Kīwaha Kīwaha Kīwaha	<i>Stubborn</i> <i>No ears, hard of hearing</i> <i>Aging</i> <i>'Nosey'</i> <i>Inattentive</i> <i>Eaten ears</i>
Ihu	nose	He ihu oneone* He ihu hūpē* Tō ihu	<i>Dirty nose</i> <i>Snotty nose</i> <i>Your nose</i>	Kīwaha, whakataukī Kīwaha	<i>Hard worker</i> <i>Inexperienced</i> <i>Don't be nosy</i>
Waha	mouth	He waha huka* He waha papā* Tō waha	<i>Foamy mouth</i> <i>Explosive mouth</i> <i>Your mouth</i>	Kīwaha Kīwaha Kīwaha	<i>Boaster</i> <i>Skite</i> <i>Shut it</i>
Ngutu	lips	He ngutu kākā+ Ngutu komekome* He ngutu kau+	<i>Parrot lips</i> <i>Chewy lips</i> <i>Merely lips</i>	Kīwaha Kīwaha Kīwaha	<i>Blabber mouth</i> <i>Gossips</i> <i>Just hot air</i>
Arero	tongue	Arero Māori*	<i>Māori tongue</i>	Kīwaha	<i>Speaker of Māori</i>
Kakī	throat	Hōhonu kakī*	<i>Deep throat</i>	whakataukī	<i>All talk</i>
Kauae	jaw	Kauae runga+ Kauae raro+	<i>Upper jaw</i> <i>Lower jaw</i>	Huahuatau Huahuatau	<i>Esoteric knowledge,</i> <i>Common knowledge</i>

*Synecdoche, +Metonymy

⁸¹ racist term

Ko te kīpeha e tata ana te tikanga ki te kupu hautanga, ko te *metonymy*. He paku nei te rerekētanga o te *metonymy* ki tā te *Synecdoche*. Ko tā te *Synecdoche* he whakahua i te wāhanga o tētehi mea mō taua mea tonu. Ko tā te *metonymy* he whakahua kē i tētehi āhuatanga mō te mea, i tētehi mea kē rānei mō te mea kei te whakatairitea. Hei tauira, ko te kīanga peha nei, ‘te manu tīoriori’ mō te tangata reka ki te waiata. Kei te whakaritea te tangi tangata ki tā te tangi reka o te manu. Nei rā ētehi anō tauira:

Te Whakaahua 8.23: Metonymy: He Āhuatanga mō te Katoa

Kupu Whakarite	Tikanga	Whakaritenga
he manu tīoriori	mō ngā kaiwaiata	te āhua o te tangi, he reka
ngā hau e whā	mō nga tāngata nō Aotearoa whānui	te wāhi i ahu mai ai ngā tāngata
te pūkoro	mō te moni	te wāhi whakamau moni
he pūkoro hōhonu	mō te nui o te moni	te āhua o te pūtea
he pūkoro pakaru	mō te korenga o te moni	te āhua o te pūtea
te taumata, te pae	mō ngā tāngata i reira	te wāhi e noho nei rātou
te poutokomanawa	mō te tangata hāpai kaupapa	te āhua o te mahi, he tautoko
ngā kapa puru	mō te tīma whutupōro o Tāmaki Makaurau	te āhua o te hāte, te kara
‘E tū, e Poto!’ ⁸²	mō tētehi tangata poto	te āhua o taua tangata
he putiputi	mō te wahine	te āhua, he ātaahua
he tāriana, he pūru	mō te tāne	te āhua o te kararehe, te momo

He huahuatau, he kupu whakarite pea ēnei ki tā te Māori titiro, heoi he tūmomo kupu whakarite tonu pea ēnei. E kitea mai ana i te hou rawa o tēnei o ngā ariā, kore kau he whakahokinga kōrero mai a ngā kaiuru mō tēnei o ngā kīpeha. Tērā pea ka waiho mō raro i te kāranganangatanga o te huahuatau, ā, ka pakari haere anō tēnei kaupapa ka puta ko tēnei kīpeha ki te ao mārama.

⁸² He tauira o tēnei nuka reo ‘diaphora’. Arā, he kupu māori (common) mō tētehi āhuatanga, mō tētehi ingoa tangata (Lanham, 1991:190), inā rā he tangata poto i.e. ‘Stand up, Shorty!’ He kupu whakatoī nā Kāretu ki a Wayne Ngata i te kura reo i te marae o Ngahutoitoi, 27.6.1999.

8.5.4 Te Kupu Whakarite *Simile*

Ko tā te kupu whakarite he āta tiki atu i ngā āhuatanga o tētehi mea hei whakataurite i te kaupapa kōrero kia mārama ai. Ko te kupu whakarite, ko te huahuatau, he tairitenga rāua tahi. Nā, ko te rerekētanga o te huahuatau me te kupu whakarite e pēnei ana. Ko tā te huahuatau ka waiho mā te tangata e āta whakaaro he aha te hononga o te whakaritenga o tētehi mea ki tētehi atu. Tērā pea ko tōna āhua - ko te rahinga, ko te tae, ko te maha; ko tētehi anō āhuatanga rānei. Heoi, tā te kupu whakarite he whakapakari ake i te hononga i waenga i ngā kaupapa e rua me ngā ōritenga mā te wetereo.

Ko tā tētehi o ngā kaiuru i whakatauiria ai mō te kupu whakarite, ka kite koe i tētehi mea ātaahua, anei tētehi kupu whakarite, ‘me he pītau whakarei’. Ka mutu, inā e tū ana te tangata ki te kūaha, ā, kei te aukati i te putanga atu me te urunga mai, ko tāna anō mō te huahuatau, ‘He arai awa koe?’ Ki a ia me te tokonui tāngata i uia koia te rerekētanga ā reo nei mō ngā kīpeha. He wetereo kē tā te kupu whakarite.

Ko te huahuatau [e pēnei ana], he kāhu ahau e rere atu ana, koia rā tētehi waiata e whakaakona ana e māua i tēnei wā. Ko te kupu whakarite [e pēnei ana], he ōrite koe ki tētahi poaka ki te kai. He paku rerekētanga, ko tētahi he hāngai, ko tētehi ehara i te hāngai. He uaua mā te tamariki ki te kite i te rerekētanga. Nā reira, mōku, me whakamārama i ngā āhuatanga o ēnei rā kia mau i a rātou pērā i te “He kāpō koe pērā i te pekapeka [nāku i MIRAMIRA⁸³].

Kaiuru 17

Waihoki, ki ngā kaiuru he tūmomo rerenga kōrero e tohua ana inā he kupu whakarite. Mā reira pea e māmā ake ai te kitea o te rerekētanga. Ahakoa pea kei te whāia tēnei ture reo i tā te reo Pākehā mō te kupu whakarite, koia hoki te tautoko mai a te rōpū nā rātou, nā te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero i arataki tēnei rangahautanga, arā, he momo takotoranga e kīia ai he kupu whakarite te kupu whakarite.

He kupu whakarite: he tūmomo āhuatanga reo e whakarite ana i ngā āhuatanga ōrite o ētahi mea e rua; arā, “kiwi...rite ki te kāpō mau tiripou”

Simile: a figure of speech expressing the resemblance of one thing to another, usually introduced by ‘like’ or ‘as’.

⁸³ bold

Anei ētehi tauria hei whakaatu i ngā momo rerenga kōrero mō te kupu whakarite. Kua tīkina atu i te pakiwaituhi, i te pukapuka wāhanga, i te papakupu, i te kōrero hākinakina, i te niupepa hou hoki i runga i te ipurangi.

Te Whakaahua 8.24: Te Wetereo o te Kupu Whakarite

Te Wetereo o te Kupu Whakarite	Hei Tauria <i>Like, as</i>
Ānō nei	Ānō nei kei te noho te upoko i runga i ētahi hiwi. (<i>Eke Panuku</i> 12) Ānō nei kua pania ōna ringaringa ki te pata. (Wilcox, 2005)
Ētia	Ētia koe he pōkai manu e whakatopa mai ana i te kare o te moana. (Hond, 1995:9)
E ai	A noho taku korehe i te poutū o te papa, E ai te miromiro... (Orbell, 1996)
Hei	Ka tū te pukapuka hei whare whakairinga kōrero. (Mead, 1990: viii)
i tā te	Me oke i tā te ururoa oke. (Kāretu, 2008: 1)
Kei te	He mano te Patupaiarehe, kei te tarakihi. (Williams, 2002: 113)
Me	He pai me te koura. (Ngata, 1993a: 19)
Me he	Me he kawau pū te āhua. Mehemea ko Kōpū ka rere i te pae. (Williams, 2002: 199)
Pēnei, pēnā, pērā i/ki/me te	Pēnei me te pīpīwharau. (Riley, 2001:64)
Rite tonu	He rite tonu koe ki te ngata. Ina hoki tō pōturi! (Hammond, 2004: 41) Rite tonu ki tōna pāpā te tau... (Haenga, 2004: 78) Rite tonu koe ki te poaka ki te kai. (Tauroa, 1990: 105)
Tōna rite	Ko te tangata ruarua hoki, tōna rite kei te ngaru o te moana, e puhia ana e te hau, e akina ana. (Paipera, Hēmi 1)

Me uaua ka mōhiohia te tikanga o te kupu whakarite inā kāore e mōhiohia ana te horopaki me ngā rerenga kōrero. Hei tauira, i te tau 2007 ka whakaputaina te TAKITORU⁸⁴ nei *Taku Ohoo* nā Peti Nohotima. He pakimaero mō ngā KIRIPUAKI⁸⁵ nei, mō Āti rātou ko Te Wera, ko Te Kuru. He taumahi mā te ākonga kei te pukapuka kaiako e whakamārama ana i ngā kupu whakarite a Peti. Kua miramiratia te wetereo o te reo whakarite i te Whakaahua 8.25 e whāia nei. Ko ngā kupu whakarite a Pēti tētehi o ngā take e eke panuku ai te reo me ngā whakaaro o roto i tēnei huinga pukapuka.

Te Whakaahua 8.25: He Ngohe mō ngā Kupu Whakarite

Taku Ohoo: Te Pukapuka Aratohu a te Kaiako nā Peti Nohotima (2007: 38, 70)

Te Kīanga Whakarite	Te Whakamārama
‘Ko Rena rāua ko Ati kua tū pēnei i te karetao.’	‘Ka whakaritea te tū a Rena rāua ko Ati ki te tekoteko. Kāore te tekoteko e nekeneke, kāore e oreore.’
‘...ānō nei he moa koe e hamumu ana.’	‘Ko te kī atu kia whakarite a Rena i tōna reo ki te reo tatangi o te moa.’
‘...ko ōna whatu rite tonu ki te hōpua wai uriuri.’	‘Kei te whakarite i te tae o ngā whatu o Kuru kī tētahi hōpua kāre e kitea atu a raro, arā, pango tonu.’

⁸⁴ trilogy

⁸⁵ characters

8.5.5 Te Pepeha

Tribal aphorism

He kīnga mana nui te pepeha. Mā ngā kupu ruarua o te pepeha e whakanui ake i te tino rangatiratanga o te iwi, o te hapū. Inā te whakamārama a Te Wharehuia, ‘Ko te pepeha he kōrero e pā ana ki ngā tūtuhu whenua o tētehi rohe, o tētahi iwi, otirā, e kōrero ana anō hoki i tōna rangatira, i tōna mana’(Moorfield, 1996: 39). Heoi, e mea ana hoki a Te Wharehuia i roto i ngā huihuinga whānui kia waiho mā iwi kē e whakahua ake te pepeha. Akene pea ko tōna tikanga, ko te tū whakaiti, anā kia waiho mā tētehi atu e mihi.

Ko te whanaungatanga tētehi kaupapa nui o te Māori, ā, koia hoki tētehi āhuatanga nui o te pepeha. Inā te whanaungatanga o tētehi ki tētehi:

1. Ko Kaitara ki uta, ko Moutohorā ki te moana.
2. Ka totō te puna i Taumārere, ka mimiti te puna i Hokianga; Ka mimiti te puna i Taumārere, ka totō te puna i Hokianga.
3. He muka nō te taura whiri o Hine Ngākau.
4. Ko Tongariro te maunga, ko Taupō te moana, ko Te Heuheu te tangata.

Mā ngā kupu pepeha e whakaatu i te hononga ā-iwi, ā-hapū rānei. Tērā ko te āhuatanga o te noho tahi o ngā iwi, o ngā hapū, ka tahi. Ka rua, ko tētehi kōrero o mua rānei kei te paihere i aua iwi, hapū, inā ki te pā tētehi āhuatanga ki te iwi tuatahi, tērā ka pā ki te iwi tuarua. Ka toru, he mea hekeheke rānei ngā iwi, hapū i tētehi tupuna nāna i kōtui ngā kārangarangatanga o tētehi rohe. Ka whā, he pānga rānei o te iwi ki te taiao, ki te tupuna hei whakaruruhau mā rātou.

Ka mutu, he pānga nui tō te pepeha ki te tuakiri Māori, koia ki a Margaret Mutu, ‘Ki tā te Māori, te whakautu tika ki te pātai, “Ko wai koe”[*sic*. nā wai koe?] ko ngā pepeha o ia hapū, o ia iwi puta noa i te motu me te whakapapa’(Mutu, 2001). I roto i ngā huihuinga iti tērā e rangona ana ngā tāngata e whakapuaki ana i te pepeha nei, inā he mihi e mau ana: i te ingoa o te maunga e whakaruruhau ana i te mana o te iwi; i te ingoa awa, moana rānei e noho ana hei puna o te ora; i te ingoa rongonui o te tupuna nāna ngā tātai hekeheke ki ngā uri whakatupu; i te ingoa o te iwi e paihere ana i ngā

hapū, i ngā whānau; i te ingoa rānei o te mea e ngākaunuitia ana e taua iwi (tirohia O'Regan, 2001: 52). Inā rā:

- Ko Hikurangi te maunga, ko Waiapu te awa, ko Ngāti Porou te iwi.
- Ko Tongariro te maunga, ko Taupō te moana, ko Te Heuheu te tangata.

Waihoki, he āhuatanga motuhake tā tēnā iwi, tā tēnā iwi, tā tēnā iwi. Mehemea he iwi moana, ka whakaritea ngā āhuatanga o te tai ki te iwi, inā mō Taranaki, 'Kāore e pau he ika unahi nui'. Mehemea he iwi e kaha ana te manaaki manuhiri, ā, he toa ki te whawhai, koia mō Tūhoe, 'Tūhoe maumau kai, maumau taonga, maumau tāngata ki te pō'. Mehemea he iwi kei a rātou mō te whaikōrero, koia ko Te Arawa, 'Ko Te Arawa māngai nui'. Mehemea rānei he whenua momona e nohoia nei e taua iwi, koia ko Ngāti Kahungunu, 'Heretaunga Hauku nui'. Me kī, tā te pepeha he whakaatu i tētehi āhuatanga motuhake e noho rongonui ai te iwi.

Kei te Whakaahua 8.26 he tauira o ētehi momo pepeha me ngā takotoranga motuhake o ia momo pepeha. E kitea ana te take kei tēnei huinga kīpeha te pepeha. He kupu whakarite tonu, inā ka tīkina atu tētehi atu āhuatanga hei whakatairite ki te iwi. Nā, kua whakarōpūtia ngā pepeha ki te KĪPEHA WHAKAWHERE⁸⁶. Ka mutu, ko te takotoranga o te pepeha, he KUPU TĀRARA⁸⁷. Inā, ko te tāruatia o ngā kīanga, o ngā rerenga kōrero rānei kia noho ōrite ai tētehi ki tētehi. Anei ētehi anō takotoranga kupu.

Ko te whakatakotoranga o te huinga pepeha tuatahi, ko ngā KUPU TAUARO⁸⁸ ki te rerenga kotahi, inā: uta, moana; rangi, whenua. He whakahaukaha whakaaro te mahi. Inā mō te pepeha tuatahi, ahakoa kei uta te iwi o Kaitara, kei te moana te iwi o Moutohorā, mā te mahi tahi ka ora. Heoi, ko te tairitenga o te pepeha mō Te Arawa, ko te kurupākara o runga, o raro, inā he rite tonu te haka a Te Arawa ki te whaitiri ki te rangi te hoihoi.

Tuarua, he KUPU ĀPITI WHAKARITE⁸⁹, inā ka huaina te iwi, te wāhi kātahi ka huaina he huahuatau hei āpiti atu i te tikanga o taua wāhi rā. Hei tauira, ko Maro kōwhao rau

⁸⁶ rhetorical figure

⁸⁷ parallelism

⁸⁸ antonym

⁸⁹ amplification by metaphor

(Mead rāua ko Grove, 2001: 234). Tuatoru, he KUPU TĀRUARUA⁹⁰ te mea nui i tēnei huinga pepeha, inā he whakakaha ake i te whakaaro kei taua iwi taua āhuatanga. Arā, he tokomaha ngā rangatira o Waikato, he rite tonu ki ngā piko o te awa Waikato te maha. Ā, he iwi kaha ki te tuku i te kai, i ngā taonga, i te tangata a Tūhoe. Tuawhā, ka whakamahia te KUPU HURI HĀNGAI⁹¹ e kitea ai te kaha o te whanaungatanga o tētehi ki tētehi, arā, ki te pā tētehi āhuatanga ki tētehi, kāore e kore ka pā ki tērā atu. Koia hoki mō te pepeha mō Wanganui, koia aua mea e rua kei te kaha te hono; ko te awa, ko te tangata nō te awa. Kua kōrerotia kētia te takotoranga o tēnei momo pepeha i te mutunga o te Whakaahua nei.

Te Whakaahua 8.26: He Hanganga o te Pepeha, he Kupu Tārara

He mea whai i ngā pepeha i rō Moorfield, 1996: xvii-xvii, rāua ko Ryan, 2002: 20-22

Momo Pepeha	Kīpeha Huatau	Kīpeha Whakawhere
Ko Kaitara ki uta, ko Moutohorā ki te moana. He whaitiri ki te rangi, ko Te Arawa ki te whenua.	Tohutoro Tohutoro, tairitenga	Kupu tārara, kupu tauaro
Ko Tūranga makau rau, ko te tukemata whānui o Kahungunu Ngāpuhi kōhau rau tangata Heretaunga haukū nui	Huahuatau Huahuatau Huahuatau	KUPU ĀPITI WHAKARITE ⁹²
Waikato taniwha rau, he piko he taniwha, he piko he taniwha. Tūhoe maumau kai, maumau taonga, maumau tangata ki te pō.	Huahuatau Tohutoro	Kupu tārara, kupu tārua ⁹³ kupu tātoru ⁹⁴
Ka totō te puna i Taumārere, ka mimiti te puna i Hokianga; Ka mimiti te puna i Taumārere, ka totō te puna i Hokianga. I rere kau mai te Awanui, mai Te Kāhui Maunga ki Tangaroa, ko au te awa, ko te awa ko au.	Tohutoro, huahuatau Tohutoro	Kupu tārara, kupu huri hāngai
Ko Tongariro te maunga, ko Taupō te moana, ko Te Heuheu te tangata. Ko Hikurangi te maunga, ko Waiapu te awa, ko Ngāti Porou te iwi, ko Te Kani-a-Takirau te tangata.	Tohutoro Tohutoro	Kupu tārara, kupu tātoru Kupu tārara, kupu tāwhā

⁹⁰ repetition

⁹¹ antimetabole, a form of chiasmus, ‘repetition in the opposite order’ (Quin, 1982: 102)

⁹² amplification by metaphor

⁹³ repetition

⁹⁴ triplification

8.5.6 Te Tairitenga

Analogy

Ko te tairitenga, ko te whakatairite i ngā kaupapa e rua kia kitea mārire te ōritenga. Katoa ngā kupu whakarite, he tairitenga. Engari, i ētehi wā he whānui ake te tairitenga i te kupu whakarite, me kī, he kupu whakarite roa. Kitea ai te tairitenga i te whakataukī, inā: He kurī, he tangata haere, kāore ōna tikanga, ōna aha. (Mead & Grove, 2001:91) Ko tā tēnei whakataukī he mea whakaatu i te ‘whakataurite rerekē’⁹⁵ ki waenganui i te kurī me te tangata. Ki te whakaritea te tangata ki te kurī, ehara rawa i te kōrero pai. He pinono kai noa iho te mahi, kāore pea he tūrangawaewae, ka mutu, ka haere ana, ehara i te haere rangatira i waenga tonu i te iwi, he haere takitahi anake. Inā rā, me kaua e rite te tangata ki tā te kurī mahi, āhua, kai, aha atu. E kitea ana i te tauira o runga nei he huahuatau tēnei ‘he kurī, he tangata haere’, heoi, he tairitenga i te mea ka haere tonu te whakatairiterite, ‘kāore ōna tikanga, ōna aha’.

Ko tētehi atu tauira i kōrerohia e te rōpū arataki i te kaupapa nei, ko te rerenga e whai nei i huaina i te wā ko Tariana Tūria ka pōtia mō te tūru Taihauāuru i te tau 2004. Ka kī a Huirangi Waikerepuru i te reo irirangi i mua tata mai o te pōtitanga: ‘Kotahi noa te hōiho i te rēhi. Ahakoa he uwha, he tāriana tonu’. Ka kitea he tairitenga tēnei o tā Tariana whakataetae me tā te hōiho rēhi. Ka mutu, he KUPU RAWEKE⁹⁶ i te mutunga iho mō te ingoa o Tariana. He RERENGA KĒTANGA⁹⁷ hoki, inā ka pēwhea te tāriana uwha? Me tohunga reo kia whakatakoto i taua momo reo.

Nā, nei rā te whakamārama a tētehi o ngā kaiarataki mō te tairitenga:

He tairitenga: he whakaritenga whānui. He maha ngā whakatauākī Māori e whakamahi ana i ngā tairitenga. Ko te nuinga ka whakarite i ngā āhuatanga o te taiao ki ngā āhua, ngā mahi hoki, o te tangata; arā,

“Ānō he whare tukutuku” he kōrero tēnei mō ngā mahi raranga tino ātaahua.

Ka whakaritea te mahi raranga ki te whare tukutuku o te pūngāwerewere;

“he tou tīwaiwaka” he kōrero tēnei mo te tangata oreore haere i ngā wā katoa’

Ka whakaritea te tangata e kore rawa atu e āta tau ki te rerenga haere o te tīwaiwaka; “He hiora tahutahu.” He kōrero tēnei mō te tangata māngere. Ka

⁹⁵ contrast

⁹⁶ pun

⁹⁷ paradox

whakaritea te kurī e noho tata ana ki te ahi kia tahutahu tana waero (hiore) ki te tangata māngere, noho noa iho.

Analogy: an extended comparison; there is an analogy between a pump and the human heart, in this case the functions are similar.

Te Ohu Whakamaru i ngā Momo-Kōrero

Anei anō ētehi atu tairitenga i ngā pepeha, i ngā whakataukī nei, i ngā huahuatau, i ngā kupu whakarite. Ko ētehi ka kitea he aha kei te whakaritea, mārama kau ana. Koia te tikanga o te tairitenga, he mea whakarite ki te kaupapa e mōhio ana te whakaminenga (Baldick, 2001: 10). Mō ngā pepeha e toru i te tīmatanga o te rārangi tērā pea me āta mōhio te tangata ki te kōrero kia mārama ai he aha kei te whakaritea. Arā, ko Taranaki me tōna oranga tonutanga; ko te tokomaha o ngā rangatira i te takiwā o Ngāpuhi; ko te tokomaha o ngā uri o Rangitāne.

Te Whakaahua 8.27: Te Tairitenga, te Momo Kīpeha, te Tikanga

Tairitenga	Kīpeha	Tikanga
<i>He whakatairite i te maha o tētehi me tētehi atu.</i>		
Kāore e pau he ika unahi nui.	pepeha	He tairitenga o te tini uri o Taranaki ki te mano unahi o te ika.
Ngāpuhi kōhao rau.	pepeha	He tairitenga o te maha o ngā rangatira o Ngāpuhi ki te rau o ngā kōhao.
Tātai whetū ki te rangi, Rangitāne ki te whenua.	pepeha	He tairitenga o te tini whetū o te rangi, ki ngā tini uri o Rangitāne ki te mata o te whenua.
<i>He whakatairite i te āhuatanga tauaro o tētehi me tētehi atu.</i>		
Tā te rangatira, tāna kai he kōrero; tā te ware, he muhu kai.	whakataukī	Ko te tairitenga i waenganui i te tangata mātau me te tangata kūware. Tā te rangatira he arotahi ki te kōrero, tā te ware he muhukai, he kore aro, ka warea kētia ki te kai.
He tītī rere ao e kitea; he tītī rere pō e kore e kitea (Mead & Grove, 2001:126)	whakataukī	Ko te tairitenga o te tītī ki te manuhiri. He pai kē atu kia kitea te manuhiri i te ao, kaua ko te pō.

He kura tangata e kore e rokohanga; He kura whenua ka rokohanga.	whakataukī	Ko te tairitenga o te tangata ki te whenua, inā, ka ngaro te tangata, ka ngaro katoa ōna pūkenga. Engari anō te whenua, e toitū ana.
<i>He whakatairite i te āhuatanga kē o tētehi me tētehi atu</i>		
He ope tauā anō tō te kai. (Eke Panuku 13: 3)	whakataukī	Ko te tairitenga ki te whawhai me te kai, he rite te kai ki te ope tauā, tērā kei ngau te puku.
E kore te uku e piri ki te rino, ka whitingia e te rā, ka ngahoro.	whakatauākī	Ko te tairitenga, ko te uku, ko ngā āhuatanga Pākehā ka utaina ki runga i tō Māoritanga. Ahakoa rā, he wā tōna ka kitea te tūturutanga.
He ao te rangi ka ūhia, he huruhuru te manu ka tau.	whakatauākī	He whakautu nā Tamaterangi, he rangatira nō Wairoa, i te korenga ōna e mau ana i te kākahu e tika ana (Mead & Grove, 2001:65). Inā, he tairitenga ki te taiao, kei te rangi, kei te manu e mau ana ngā mea me mau, engari ia, kore kau.
<i>He whakatairite i te āhuatanga kararehe ki tō te tangata.</i>		
He tou tīrairaka	huahuatau	He rite te nekenga o taua momo manu ki te nekenga o ētehi tāngata, e kore e āta tau.
He peo koe, he pitoto koe, he pīnono koe, he pirinoa koe, he kōtare koe (Brougham & Reed, 1987: 17).	huahuatau	He rite te whanga o te kōtare ki te whanganga o te tangata ki te kai, he pukukai. He tauiratanga o tēnei mea te OROKATI TĀRUA ⁹⁸ (Brougham & Reed, 1987: 17).
Me he korokoro tūi	kupu whakarite	He rite te tangi o te tūi ki tā te tangata mātau ki te whaikōrero, he reka te tangi.

Tērā e kitea te tino tikanga o te tairitenga i tētehi kōrero nui tonu. Me kī, he HUAHUATAU ROA⁹⁹. Tērā pea, ka kitea e te kaikōrero he hononga o ētehi kaupapa e rua hei whakamōhio i tāna ki te whakaminenga. Hei tauira, anei tā Tamati Reedy tairitenga hei whakarāpopoto i tētehi whakamārama āna mō te whakaora i te reo Māori. Ka whakaritea ko te reo Māori ki te waka. Arā, ka whakatairitea te kaupapa reo Māori me ōna kupu ki te kaupapa waka me ōna kupu. He mea nui tērā, kia whai pānga ngā kaupapa e rua. Kei te Whakaahua 8.28 e whai mai nei ngā kupu o te tairitenga me te tikanga o aua kupu. E kitea mai ana he nui ngā kupu whakarite e

⁹⁸ E meatia ana i te putanga 1998 o *The Reed Book of Māori Proverbs* he rerekē tēnei āhuatanga o te reo, te orokati tārua.

⁹⁹ extended metaphor

whakaraupapa haere ana. Mēnā he kaiwhakarongo koe, me areare tonu ngā taringa kia mau te aronga.

Te Whakaahua 8.28: He Tairitenga: He Kaupapa Kōrero, He Kaupapa Kē

Analogy: What's said, what's intended: Tāmari Reedy i tā Moorfield, 1992: 169

MOMO REO ¹⁰⁰	Reo peha WAKA	Reo more TAKE
<i>Kaupapa</i>	Kaupapa Waka	Kaupapa Reo Māori
<i>Kīpeha</i>	Tairitenga	Tikanga ā-kupu
<i>Tauira</i>	“Me te mea nei kua mānu te waka o te reo Māori, kua tere whakamua. Ko te tūmanako hoki, kia ū pai. Ko tātau ngā kaihautū o taua waka. He maha ngā toka kei waho e tū mai ana. He maha ngā hau pūkeri hei whakatītaha te haere. He wā ka puta te āio, ka takoto mōwai-rokiroki, ka marino te moana. He wā ka tutū te puehu i a Ngarunui, i a Ngaruroa...”	Kua tīmata te kaupapa o te reo Māori, kua haere whakamua. Ko te tūmanako hoki, kia tutuki pai. Ko tātau ngā kaimahi o te kaupapa. He maha ngā wero hei whakararu i te kaupapa ā tōna nei wā. He maha ngā āhuatanga hei whakapōrearea i te haere o te kaupapa. He wā ka tino pai te haere o te kaupapa. He wā kāore e tino pai ana te haere o te kaupapa i te pānga mai o ngā raruraru nui.

Me uaua ka rongu i tēnei whakatairitenga roa i runga i te mea me tohunga rawa te kaikōrero ki te whakatō i te whakaahua, inā rā, te whakatairite i tētehi anō kaupapa, ā, ka whakahāngai tonu ki te kaupapa tūturu. Tērā te wā hoki ka roa rawa, ka ngaro te kaiwhakarongo. Mō runga nei kei te kitea kua tīkina atu ēnei kupu e taka mai ana i te ao o te waka, arā, te haere o te waka, te kaiwhakahaere i te waka, te ara waka, me ngā āhuatanga o te taiao o te waka hei whakatairite i te haere o te reo Māori, ōna

¹⁰⁰ register

kaiwhakahaere, tōna ara, ōna āhuatanga. I runga i te mea me matatau hoki te kaikōrero me te kaiwhakarongo ki ngā kaupapa e rua me ngā huinga kupu mai i ia horopaki - ko te kaupapa e kōrerotia ana me te kaupapa kei te whakaritea - nā whai anō pea i uaua ai te kite i tēnei kīpeha. Ka mutu, kia whai i tā Lakof mā whakatakotoranga, me kī pēnei ake, HE WAKA TE KAUPAPA. Arā, ahakoa te kaupapa, ka taea te whakarite ki tā te waka haere. I whakamutua te tairitenga nei e Tamati ki te kōrero nei me te mahara anō ko te reo Māori kei te whakaritea:

‘Nā noa tēnei pepeha a Ngāti Tūwharetoa hei whakamutu i ēnei kōrero:

“Kia tika te hoe i te waka, kei pariparia e te tai, ka monenehu te kura”.’

Te Whakaahua 8.29: He Whakatairite i te Huinga Kupu: Te Waka ki te Reo Māori
A comparison of semantic fields: Canoe to Māori language

Kaupapa: Waka	Kaupapa Kē: Reo Māori
Mānu	Tīmata
Tere whakamua	Haere whakamua
Ū	Tutuki
Kaihautū	Kaimahi
Toka	Wero
Hau pūkeri	Wero
Whakatītaha	Whakapōrearea
Āio	Pai
Mōwai-rokiroki	Pai
Marino	Pai
Ngarunui	Raru nui
Ngaruroa	Raru roa
Hoe tika	Mahi tika
Kei pariparia e te tai	Kei huri kē te wā
Ka monenehu te kura	Ka taka te taonga ki te hē

8.5.7 Te Tohu

Symbol

Ka huaina te tohu, ka huri kē te whakaaro ki tētehi ariā. Pērā i te whakaaro o ngā mātua mō te paepae hamuti. Inā, ‘Ka ngaua e au te paepae hamuti, hei whakaora mōku’ (Williams, 2001:245). Ka noho te paepae hamuti hei tohu mō te kaupare atu i te kino mēnā ka haere ake ki te pakanga (Reed, 1963: 107). Ki te ngaua te paepae hamuti, he tohu kua haere ki raro i te maru o Tūnatauega. Arā, mō te tohu, tērā ka noho tētehi mea o te ao kikokiko hei tohu mō te ao wairua.

Pēnei i te haki e mau ana i te tōrino me ngā tae nei: te whero, te pango me te mā. Āna, ko te tino rangatiratanga. Koinā te mana, te tikanga o te tohu, he whakarite i ētehi mea e rua i roto tonu i te hinengaro, i te ngākau o te tangata. Hei tauira, ko te ahi mō te mana whenua, ko te rīpeka mō te Karaitiana, ko te pātaka mō te manaakitanga, ko te moa mō te ngarotanga. Inā hoki mō te haka:

Ko te haka he tohu whenua rangatira.

Kāretu (1993: 11)

Ki te tirohia ngā whakataukī, nga kīwaha, arā, ko ngā momo kīpeha, kei reira ētehi kupu kotahi e tohu ana i tikanga kē. Pērā i te whakataukī, ‘He kai nā te ringaringa whero i taka’ (Mead rāua ko Grove, 2001: 80). Ko te whero rā he tohu rangatira. Ko te aronga o taua whakataukī, te tikanga, e kore te rangatira e harihari kai. Mēnā kua pērā kātahi te tohu manaakitanga. Kei roto i tētehi anō whakataukī mō te whero e mea ana, ‘Mā whero, mā pango ka oti te mahi.’ Arā, ko te mahi ngātahi o te rangatira, o te tūtūā hoki ka tutuki ai te kaupapa.

Anei ētehi anō tohu me tētehi kupu hei whakamāoritanga. Arā atu anō ngā tohu me ngā whakamārama mō ia tohu. Hei tauira, ka noho ko te kete hei tohu mō te mātauranga i te wā i kake ai a Tāne/Tāwhaki ki te rangi tūhāhā. Nā, koia ko ngā kete o te wānanga. Heoi, i te kohinga whaikōrero a Te Atairangikaahu, *He Rourou Iti*, ka noho ko te rourou hei tohu mō te paku mātauranga kei roto. He tapanga whakaiti pea. Koia hoki tā Reweti Kohere me tāna pukapuka *He Kōnae Aronui* (1951). Tērā pea, ko te huahuatau aroro mō tēnei mea te mātauranga ki tā te Māori titiro, HE IPU TE MĀTAURANGA. Kāti rā, he tohu tā tēnā iwi, tā tēnā iwi.

Te Whakaahua 8.30: He Tohu: He Mea Kikokiko mō te Whakaaro Waitara

Symbols: A tangible object for an abstract idea

Te Mea: Take <i>Denotation: Subject</i>	Te Aronga Kē: Tohu <i>Connotation: Symbol</i>	He Tauira <i>An example</i>
_____	→	
Ipu kete rourou	mātauranga manaakitanga	Ko te kete tūāuri, ko te kete tūātea, ko te kete aronui (kīanga karakia) Tēnā koutou mō tā koutou rourou... (He pōkeka nā John Tapiata)
Ika mangopare parāoa	kaha rangatira	Kia matenga ururoa te tangata. (whakataukī, Williams, 2002: 470) Ka hua au me haere i muri o te tira parāoa. (whakataukī, Williams, 2002: 264)
Manu pīpīwharauoa kōtuku	kōanga manuhiri rangatira	Pīpīwharauoa, nāu i tō mai te mahana (he waiata nā Hirini Melbourne) He kōtuku rerenga tahi (whakataukī)
Kararehe kioire hipi	apokai kūware	He kioire puku rua. (kīwaha) He roro hipi ia. (kīwaha)
Tae pango whero	tūtūā rangatira	Mā pango, mā whero ka oti te mahi. (whakataukī) Mā pango, mā whero ka oti te mahi. (whakataukī)
Rākau kawakawa tōtara	mate, ora tōtika	He aha te tohu o te ringaringa? He kawakawa. (ngeri mate) Kua hinga tētehi tōtara nui o te wao. (kīanga poroporoaki)

Kei ia iwi ōna tohu e huri ai ngā mahara o te tangata. He whetū, he maunga, he awa, he waka, he marae, he ika, he manu, he aha atu anō rānei hei whakariterite mai i te ao tūroa ki te AO WAITARA¹⁰¹. Ko tētehi tohu ā-iwi mō ētehi iwi o Taranaki, ko te raukura koia hei tohu i te taha wairua, i te maungārongo, i te whakaaro pai¹⁰². Ko te pōtae mō Ngāi Tūhoe me Ngāti Maniapoto mō ō rāua rohe. Tērā ētehi iwi e mau nei i te pare kawakawa, he tohu nō te mate. Mō tērā, e mea ana te ngeri mate *Ripiripia* o Aotea waka e rangona ana i Whanganui puta rawa ake ki Taranaki whānui, “He aha te tohu o te ringaringa, he kawakawa”. Nā, ko ētehi anō iwi ka mau pū i te pōwhiri, he tohu iwitanga, he tohu mana motuhake.

Ka mutu, i te hautaka whare wānanga o Waikato ka āta tirohia e Ngahuia (Dixon, 2002: 102-107) he waiata nā Ngāi TeRangi¹⁰³. Ko tētehi o ngā kīpeha ka tirohia e ia, ko te tohu¹⁰⁴ hei rapu māramatanga mō tēnei waiata ā-iwi. Anei āna ake kupu whakamārama i roto i tāna atikara me ngā tohu o roto i te waiata o tana iwi.

- Te āhua nei kei te tohu mai tēnei ko te pou whare he tāne
- He tohu rangatira te korowai i roto i te ao Māori o mua
- Ko Kahukura he tohu nō te āniwaniwa, he tohu anō hoki nō te mate
- He maha ēnei momo tohu [mate, ora] kei ēnei kōrero-ā-waha o te ao Māori
- He tohu anō ki tā te iwi titiro, te waka kua pakaru - kua hinga te tangata, kua hē te iwi.

¹⁰¹ abstract world

¹⁰² He mea tiki atu <http://www.atiawa.com/raukura.htm> i te 20 o Maehe i te tau 2006.

¹⁰³ Ko tā Ngahuia tuhi pēnei hoki i tōna ingoa iwi, Ngāi TeRangi (Dixon, 2002).

¹⁰⁴ Ngahuia uses ‘tohu’ to mean both symbol and reference.

8.5.8 Te Tohutoro *Allusion, implicit reference*

Ko te painga o te tohutoro, he iti te kupu, he nui te kōrero¹⁰⁵. Ka toro atu ki tētehi mea hei tohu mō te katoa o taua mea rā. Anā, he tata te tikanga ki te tohu, ki te tairitenga, ki te kupu whakarite, koia rā he whānau kotahi ēnei kīpeha. Nā, ka huaina he kupu itiiti mō te katoa o te kaupapa. Arā, he ingoa tangata rānei, he ingoa wāhi rānei, he tauwhāinga rānei, he kupu kōrero rānei mō te whānuitanga o taua kaupapa kōrero. Ko tētehi mea nui o te tohutoro, ka waiho mā te kaiwhakarongo e rapu te whakamāramatanga i toro ai te kaikōrero ki reira. Nō reira, me mōhio te kaiwhakarongo ki te mātauranga ahurea o te tangata kei te kōrero. Ka whakataukītia tēnei āhuatanga e te kaiuru tuaono; ko tētehi rerenga kōrero mai i tētehi karakia hei tohu i te pakari mārika o te tinana:

Ā...ko te whakamārama o tōku koroua, anei te kōrero o tōna koroua, tohunga te koroua, te mea i whakapakeke i tōku koroua. I mua i te haerenga ki te pakanga, ka hoatu, ka karakia, ka kōhi ngā... he kōhatu. He pōhatu noa iho, ka karakia, ka hoatu ki te tangata, ka kai. Ka kai te kōhatu nei, hei whakakōhatu ake i tōna kiri, hei whakamārō i tōna kiri; ‘Tangaroa kiriuka, Tangaroa kirikōhatu’. Koirā te kōrero mōna; “A! Anei te toa Tangaroa kiriuka, Tangaroa kirikōhatu.” I mea mai; he pai tēnei mō te kōrero...ki te kōrero atu ki te tangata mārō. Ki te tangata uru atu ki roto ki te pakanga. Pērā i ngā hākinakina – pērā, i roto pea...koirā i tū au ki te mihi atu ki tētahi o wōku hoa, ā...tētahi tōku hoa i uru atu ki roto ki te police force. Tērā hoki tōna mārō, tangata mārō! Koirā taku...āe...ki te mihi atu ki te tangata nei; “Tangaroa kiriuka, Tangaroa kirikōhatu”. Ahakoa ko au anake te mea mōhio ki tērā tūmomo kōrero, i mea atu au ki tētahi o wōku pāpā rā, “Anei taku mea...” i mea mai ki a au; “Pai tērā kōrero! Ka pai rā. Whakamahia... Whakamahia ngā kōrero... whakaniko. Whakaniko i te kupu, whakanako i te kōrero. A! Whītiki te kī! Whītiki! Me whītiki ngā kōrero. Kia whakapiki ake te reo ki... te karamatamata o te reo. Te Panekiretanga. Hī! Ā!

¹⁰⁵ Ki te reo more, ka kīia, ‘he iti te kupu, he nui te tikanga’: pithy, but laden with meaning.

Nā, he wā tōna he mea uaua rawa atu te rapu i ngā tikanga o ētehi momo-kōrero. Hei tauira kei ngā mōteatea te tini o ngā tohutoro ki ngā tikanga o mua. Anei e whai nei ngā rerenga tuatahi o te waiata tuatahi o te kohinga mōteatea, *Ngā Mōteatea* (Ngata & Jones, 1959) he tohutoro tūpuna tēnei:

Kia tapu hoki koe nā Tuariki, ē!

Kia tapu hoki koe nā Porouhorea!

Heoi, ki te kore e mōhiotia te ingoa me te wāhi me uaua rawa atu ka aro ake ki te tikanga. Ko ētehi o ngā tohutoro, ko te iwi, ko te hapū, ko te whānau, ko te tangata anake rānei kei te mōhio he aha kei te tohua. Ki tēnei kaiuru, mō te reo kōrero i te kāinga ka whakamahia ētehi tohutoro pēnei, heoi me mōhio tonu ki te kōrero ā-iwi kia tau te māramatanga o te tohutoro nei:

... he pai tonu te kīwaha me ētahi whakataukī...ko tāku ki a ia [tana kōtiro e toru tau te pakeke], “E, nō Kāti Hinekato koe! Mōhio ia kei te rūpahu a ia, mōhio pai ia ka mōhio a Māmā kei te rūpahu a ia.

Kaiuru 11

Koia hoki tā Kohere mō tēnei whakataukī (Kohere, 1951: 9): ‘A ko Tupurupuru!’ Kāore i aro i a Reweti Kohere te tikanga o te tohutoro tangata i taua whakataukī i a ia e taiohi ana. Pakeke rawa ake, ka tau te māramatanga ki a ia. Inā, he rangatira a Tūpurupuru nō roto o Tūranganui-a-Kiwa. He rangatira atawhai, he rangatira manaaki tangata. Ā, ka noho ko Tūpurupuru hei tohu mō te kaha manaaki tangata (reira tonu).

Heoi anō rā, i ētehi wā ka wareware i tētehi whakatupuranga he aha te tikanga o te tohutoro. I ētehi anō wā ka kore mōhio rānei te tangata ki te tohutoro i te korenga whakapā ōna ki tērā momo kaupapa kōrero. Nā, kia whakahuatia he ingoa tupuna i roto i te whakataukī, ā, ka wareware he aha i hua ai taua tupuna, ka kīia e Kāretu kāore he tino take o tērā, kua rehurehu rawa (Brougham & Reed 2001:3). Ka mutu, anei tā Tremewan (Curnow mā, 2002:115) mō te tohutoro mō te kaupānui. He hāngai tonu ki tā te kaiwhakarongo:

E taea ai te whatumanawa te whātoro atu ki te ranginamu, ki te hōhonutanga o te mōteatea, me mārama ka tika te kaupānui ki ngā tohutoro katoa o roto: ki ngā pūrākau me te taiao, ki ngā mahi o mua, o tuāuriuri whāioio, ki ngā kawa, ki ngā tikanga i roto i ngā mahi o ia rā a te tangata^{vii}.

Kua kitea kētia te TOHUTORO AI¹⁰⁶ i te waiata haurangi i whakatauiratia e te koroua i Te Wāhanga Tuaono. Inā rā ngā kupu e kī ana:

‘Wahine kino koe, he whakatapu i tō paipera,
kore koe i homai kia wherawherahia e’.

Arā, ko tā te tohutoro he kupu raweke tonu i te tikanga tuarua o te kupu. Inā rā ko te whakaritea o te paipera tapu ki te tara, ā, e auē ana te kaitito o taua waiata haurangi, ‘kore koe i homai kia wherawherahia e’. I mua i te tutūnga puehu, anei ngā kupu i roto i te haka Tāne-Rore, ka huaina e Kāretu (1992: 21) hei whakaari i tā te Māori titiro ki tēnei āhuatanga, ki te tohutoro ai:

Kaitataki: Ki ō tātou tīpuna, kāore he huna o te kupu, e
Katoa: He tika rā! He tika ra!
I neherā, kāore he haka tatakimōri
Hou tonu atu ki ngā wāhi tapu o te tāne, o te wahine

Kei roto i ngā haka, kei ngā waiata haurangi, kei ngā ngeri, kei ngā whakataukī ngā tohutoro pēnei e takoto ana. Tirohia *Ruaumoko* o Ngāti Porou; me ngā kupu me ngā mahi ā-ringa a *Paikea*; me ngā kupu o roto o *Hei aha te Heihei* e rangona ana i te rohe o Taranaki, Wanganui. Kei tēnei hoki o ngā waiata ngahau e whakatairite ana i te rahi o te ure ki te rahi o te taiaha. E kitea ana hoki i ēnei kupu waiata nei he KUPU MINO¹⁰⁷, anā, pīki mō te rahi, whara mō te autaia. Heoi, ko te rēhita, he rēhita ōpaki rawa atu:

Pīki whara tō taiaha, he muramura e
Pīki whara tō taiaha, he muramura e...

I waiatatia e tētehi o ngā kaiuru ngā whiti o taua waiata ‘Pīki whara nei’, heoi anō, ka meatia kia tū te rikoata i tana whakamā. Heoi, pai ki a ia ngā kupu nei. Ki ētehi he kōrero ‘paruparu’ ēnei, heoi anō he mātāpono Karaitiana kē pea tērā. Ki tā te Māori titiro kei te hinengaro o te tangata te mā, te paru, ā, kāore ngā mātua tūpuna i whakamā ki te kōrero i ngā kōrero mō te tinana, mō te ai. Tērā te whakatauākī a tētehi rangatira o Waikato (Brougham & Reed, 2001: 62-63), a Matakore, e mea ana:

Kia whakaoho i taku moe, ko te whatutūrei a Rua.

¹⁰⁶ sexual reference, double entendre

¹⁰⁷ loan word

Arā ake, he tohutoro ai te ‘whaturei a Rua’. Kei te Whakaahua 8.31 te whakamārama ki te reo o nāianeī, ki te reo more.

Te Whakaahua 8.31: Tohutoro: He Kupu Ruarua mō Tētehi atu Kōrero

He Kupu Ruarua

Kei Wāhi Kē te Roanga atu o te Kōrero

‘Tangaroa kiriuka, Tangaroa kirikōhatu’

He rerenga karakia kia mārō te kiri o te toa mēnā he whawhai kei te haere. He kōrero mō te wā i horomia he kōhatu kia rite te kiri ki taua kōhatu.

‘A ko Tupurupuru!’

Ko Tupurupuru tētehi rangatira nō roto o Tūranganui-a-Kiwa e kaha manaaki ana i te tangata.

‘Kia whakaoho i taku moe,
ko te whatutūrei a Rua.’

He kupu nā Matakore. Ki te reo o nāianeī; mehemea koe ka whakaoho i a au, ko te ai anake te kai pai māku.

8.5.9 Te Whakatangata *Personification*

Ki tā te Pākehā titiro, he kīpeha anake te whakatangata. Inā rā ko te hoatu i ngā āhuatanga tangata ki ngā mea ehara i te tangata. Arā, ka āhei i te tēpu, i te tereina, i te aha atu te kōrero. Ka whakamahaia hoki te whakaaro kia korikori i tā te tangata korikori. Nā reira, ka whakatangatatia te ao kikokiko me te ao wairua. Hei tauira, kei roto i te akomanga he huarahi te whakatangata kia auaha te tuhinga o te ākongā:

Kei te whakamahia ko ngā kupu whakarite, huahuatau, whakatangata i roto i te tuhinga auaha, i tērā momo mahi. Pērā i te Harikoa, ka whakatangata koe i tērā kare-ā-roto, harikoa. Kua tuhia e ngā tamariki hei tangata kē. Nō hea a Harikoa? Mehemea he motukā tōna, ka taraiwa i te aha? He mahi pai tērā kia auaha ake, kia pohewa ake ngā whakaaro o ngā tamariki.

Kaiuru 30, kaiako kura kaupapa Māori

Heoi anō rā tā te Māori titiro. Kia hoki noa ake ki te whakaaro o Lakoff rāua ko Johnson, inā ko ngā huahuatau aroro te pūtaketanga o tā te iwi rongo, tā te iwi titiro, tā te iwi mahi hoki o ia rā (Lakoff rāua ko Jonson, 2003:3). Nā reira, ko te kīpeha nei ko te whakatangata, ehara rawa atu i te kīpeha anake, koia kē pea tā te Māori titiro ki te ao. Hei tauira, hei konei tiki atu ai i tētehi huahuatau aroro mō tō tātou hononga ki te taiao, inā:

HE WHANAUNGA TE TAIAO.

Kotahi anake te tūpuna, ko Ranginui e tū nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei.

Ko Papatūānuku te ūkaipō.

Ko Papatūānuku te matua o te tangata.

Ka moe a Tāne i a HineX ka puta ko X Y Z.

Ko Rongo te tuakana, nāna te kūmara.

Ko Tāwhirimātea te teina, nāna te ua, te hau, te marangai.

Arā atu anō ngā āhuatanga tangata ka utaina ki runga: he tupuna whare, he maunga, he taiaha, he waka, he aha atu anō. Kei roto i ngā karanga me ngā whaikōrero ka rangona te tupuna whare, te marae ātea e mihia ana ānō he tangata, “Tēnā koe, e te tupuna whare, e tū rā koe. Tēnā koe, e te marae ātea. Tēnā kōrua.” Nā, i roto i ngā

niupepa tawhito, ka tukuna e ngā tūpuna he reta hei pānuitanga mā te motu, ā, ka mihia pēneitia ngā niupepa ānō nei he tangata, hei tauira, “Nau mai, haere atu e taku reta ki te kawē mihi, ki te kawē kōrero”(Kāretu i Curnow mā, 2002: 2). Ka kī mai tētehi anō kaiako ka kaha tana aro ki a ‘Koro Wiremu’, arā, te papakupu nei *A Dictionary of Modern Māori*. Te āhua nei ka whakatangatatia ngā mea e whai tikanga ana ki a tātou anō, ā, ko ngā mea e kaingākau nuitia ana e te iwi.

He whakatangata... hei whakaora i tētahi mea, hei whakakararehe pea i tētahi mea. Kei te kōrero koe mō te kanohi o te waka. He tino kōrero Māori tērā. Ā, kei a mātau ngā kōrero mō ngā maunga! Ora tonu! Koirā tōku tīpuna. Ko maunga Hikurangi, ko maunga Maungapōhatu. Āe, tētahi wā, ka moe tērā maunga i te maunga, ka puta ko mea. Hei whakatangata i tētahi mea...ki te Pākehā, ā, he maunga; ki te Māori, ā, kei te ora tonu te maunga, pērā i ngā rākau. Ki te hoatu i tētahi āhuatanga tangata ki tētahi mea, ki te Pākehā, ā, he piringa noa iho. Koirā tētahi mea o te Māori, ki te whakamauri pea, ki te whakatō mauri i roto i tētahi mea. He tino Māori tērā. Pērā hoki te taiaha. Ka kōrero mō te taiaha, ā, he arero tō te taiaha, he kanohi ōna, he tinana, he makawe, he aweawe...ā, he waha. Hei whakatō mauri, koirā tō mahi; he whakatō mauri ki roto ki tō taiaha. Ki te haere koe ki te pakanga, ā, kei te ora tonu koe, kei te ora tō taiaha. He tangata tērā, he mauri tōna. He wairua tōna, he tapu, he noa tōna. Koirā.

Kaiuru tuaono

I ētehi wā he rangirua ake te tirohanga atu, mēnā he whakatangata rānei, kāore rānei. Hei tauira, i roto i te pukapuka wāhanga, *Te Tauhou Rere i te Pō* (Rangipunga, 2005: 8), ka kīia,

Te āhua nei i rongo taua pahi i te kōrero a Reihana – i tana kupu whakamutunga ka haruru te pūkaha o te pahi, anō nei he taika e ngunguru ana.

Kua whakatangatatia e te kaitito te pahi kia whai taringa, inā te āhei ki te whakarongo, ā, ka whakakapia te kōwae ki tētehi kupu whakarite. Heoi, he aha te kaituhi i whakatangata ai i te pahi? Ko te wairua o tēnei tuhinga, he whakawehi, ā, ka whai pānga te whakatangatanga ki te kaupapa, anā, ka eke a Reihana ki runga i te pahi, he mea ora, nō reira me tūpato ia. Anei anō tētehi atu tauira, heoi he mārama kē atu:

Ka whakatangatatia tētahi mea... ka utaina nga āhuatanga o te tangata ki runga ki taua mea.... hei tauira ‘E ai ki a māua ko taringa’. He whakatangata tērā... I te nuinga o te wā e kore e kīia māua ko taringa, māua ko taku taringa, ko taku taringa i te mea he wāhanga o te tinana engari nā ka kīia ko taringa, kua whakatangatatia te taringa.

Kaiuru 25

Nā, ki tā te Māori titiro o mua kua atua kē te ao mārama e noho nei te ira tangata, arā, ko Ranginui e tū iho nei, ko Papatūānuku e takoto nei. Inā rā, ko te kohu ko Hinepūkohurangi, ko te pūtorino ko Hineraukatauri, ko te moana ko Hinemoana, āe, ko Tangaroa. Ā, arā ake, arā ake anō ngā atua Māori. Tērā pea he whakaatua kē i te whenua te mahi a ngā tūpuna. Koia te kī a tētehi kaiuru mō te reo o Taranaki me te whakamārama koia te ngarohanga o te ‘a’ i mua o te tūpou, inā, “Ka mihi ki Ranginui, ki Papatūānuku”. He whakaatua kē te mahi; he whakanui i te taiao. Heoi, e ai rā ki te tatauranga i te tau 2001, torutoru noa iho ngā Māori e whakapono ana ki ngā atua Māori i tēnei wā, anā e 98 orau o te taupori Māori he Karaitiana. He take nui tērā mō tā te Māori tuturu whakapono, HE WHANAUNGA TE TAI AO.

Anei e whai nei te roanga atu o te kōrero a te kaiuru tuaono mō te whakatangata. Ka kitea nō te whānau kotahi te whakatangata, te huahuatau, te tairitenga me te kupu whakarite i tana whakatauiratanga. Inā rā he tirohanga Māori tēnei, he kōrero ngahau hoki, ka mutu, he tino whakaaro Māori mō ngā taputapu o ia rā:

Pērā hoki tēnei tangata, i roto i tāna whakamārama [i te talkback] i runga i te reo irirangi mō tōna waka kua pakaru, ka whakaaro ake tērā tangata: “He aha taku whakamārama kia tino mōhio koe...a! Ko ngā whēkau, kua mate te manawa o tōku waka.” Koirā te [pūkaha],” kātahi ka mea mai, “Kāo, ko te manawa hei whakatapuhia...a! Ā! Ko te gearbox tērā...” Koirā te whakamārama. Koirā mātau te Māori, he kino kē mātau mō te hoatu, te whakatō mauri ki roto ki ngā mea ahakoa he aha. Āe, pērā hoki te wharenui. Tēnei whare nei, ā, he whakatō mauri, te whakatō i te kawa o te whare, he whakatō mauri tērā. Hei whakaora, hei hoatu i tō wharenui, he upoko tōna, he ringaringa, he waha; kino kē mātau mō te mahi i wērā mahi.

Kaiuru tuaono

8.5.10 Te Whakataukī

Proverb, aphorism

Ki a Te Wharehuia, he momo rerenga kōrero te whakataukī e whakaatu ana i te āhuatanga taiao, i te āhuatanga tangata (Moorfield, 1996: 44). Koia nei tētehi o ngā momo-kōrero rangatira ki te Māori. He poto, he ātaahua te takoto. He mea whakaatu, he mea ako i te tika, i te pono, i te māramatanga. He pepeha ki ētehi iwi, he whakatauākī ki ētehi anō. Ki a Mead ko te pēpeha kē, ā, ki te whakapākehā ake i tā te papakupu *Wiremu*, koia rā ko te *charm, witticism, figures of speech, boasts, sayings* (Mead rāua ko Grove, 2001: 9). Ki tā Mead hoki, e mea ana mā te whakataukī e kitea ai te hinengaro Māori mō ētehi o ngā kaupapa nui o te ao Māori. Kāore e kore inā he kaupapa nui, kei reira ētehi whakataukī hei whakaatu i te matū o taua kaupapa.

Te Whakaahua 8.32: He Kaupapa Whakataukī

Some themes of proverbs, Mead & Grove, 2001: 9

ahurea	whanonga	moe tahi
kōrero o mua	tikanga	matenga
whakapono	pakanga	huarere

Ka tautokona tēnei whakamārama āna e McGrath i tana kohinga whakataukī, whakatauākī *Kōrero Hau Kura*. Ko tā Paora i tuhi ai (McGrath, 2003: 1):

Ko te nuinga o ngā kōrero pēnei i puta mai i ō tatou tūpuna e mahi ana ia rā, ia rā. He kitenga, he rongo, he mahi rānei i pā atu ki a rātou ā kua kitea te hua o tērā nā wai rā kua puta te whakataukī hei maumaharatanga, hei akoranga, hei ārahitanga i a Ngāi Tātou kia kore e warewaretia.

Ko tā te kaiuru tuaiwa he pai te whakataukī, heoi he pai kē atu te whakatauākī:

He pai te whakataukī ki a au, he nui ōna akoranga. Ko te painga o te whakataukī ko ngā tikanga, te whakaaro o ngā tūpuna...He pai ake te whakatauākī ki a au, i te mea mōhio au mēnā ka mōhio au nā wai i kī, he tohu anō tērā...

Kāore pea e mōhiotia whānuitia ana te rerekētanga o te whakataukī me te whakatauākī. Inā rā ki a Te Wharehuia, ko te mea tuatahi he kupu whānui, te mea

tuarua, kei te mōhiohia nā wai i whakahua, inahea, i hea hoki, ā, mō te aha te take (tirohia Moorfield ki *Te Kōhure*, 1996: 37-38). Hei tauira, ko te whakatauākī e mea ana, ‘He iti nā Mōtai’. Me mōhio te whakaminenga ki te whakapapa o taua Mōtai rā, me te kōrero ā-iwi kia tino tau te māramatanga i te wā e rangona ana taua huanga i te whaikōrero. He huanga whakatakoto koha. He KUPU RAWEKE tonu pea i te mea ehara rawa taua tupuna me ōna āhuetanga, me ōna rawa i te mea iti, ko ‘Mōtai tangata rau kē’, ā, he mea nui kē pea te koha. He kīanga whakaiti hei whakanui i te koha. Otirā, he whakatauākī, he whakarāpopoto taua kīanga ki tētehi anō kupu whakaari, nā Parekārau i whakahua ake i te hemonga o ētehi o ōna whanaunga i tētehi pakanga i waenganui i Ngāti Māniapoto me Ngāti Tama, inā ‘He iti nā Mōtai, he uri tama-wāhine, tēnā kei te rāwhiti e taka ana, māna e takahi te one i Hākerekere’(mō te roanga atu tirohia Biggs & Jones, 2004: 235-237; Mead rāua ko Grove, 2001: 76). Arā ake, ahakoa ruarua ngā kupu, ina noa atu ngā kōrero e mau ana.

Anei e whai nei ētehi whakatauākī, tērā pea ka tīmata mai ētehi o ngā kōrero nei hei whakatauākī, ā, ka taka te wā, ka wareware i te tokomaha tāngata nā wai te kīnga tuatahi, ka huri hei whakataukī.

Te Whakaahua 8.33: He Whakapapa tō te Whakataukāki

He whakataukāki

Nā wai, i hea, ināhea?

E kore e piri te uku ki te rino.

Nā Tohu Kakahi o Te Āti Awa, o Taranaki tēnei mō te uHINGA o te Pākehātanga ki runga i tō Māoritanga. Rangona ai i te rārangi haka i Mangumangu Taipo (Ihaka, *Te Ao Hou* nama 18, May 1957).

He ao te rangi ka uhia,
mā te huruhuru te manu ka rere ai.

Nā Tamaterangi o Wairoa tēnei huanga i te korenga o te kākahu tika ōna kāore i tū ki te kōrero. (Kohere, 1951:13).

He iti pou kapua ka ngaro,
Ka huna tini whetū i te rangi.

Nā Marangai-paroa tēnei huanga hei whakahokinga kōrero ki a Ngātokowaru o Ngāti Raukawa i te meatanga, he iti nō tana ope tauā hei tautoko i te pakanga (Ihaka, *Te Ao Hou* nama 18, May 1957).

He tata a runga, he roa a raro.

Nā Taharākau tēnei kōrero ki a Te Angiangi i tana pikaurangi kākahu mō te ara tūpono ka uaina. Nā wai rā, ka ua, ka mea ake rā, “Kī atu rā!” (Wikiriwhi, *Te Ao Hou* nama 13, December, 1955).

Toi te kupu, toi te mana, toi te whenua

Nā Tinirau o Whanganui tēnei kōrero. Kia toitū tō tātou nei Māoritanga, me mau tonu ki aua āhuatanga e toru: te reo Māori, te mana motuhake, te whenua o ngā mātua tūpuna. Ka ngaro tētehi, ka ngaro ērā atu (Ihaka, *Te Ao Hou* nama 20, November 1957).

Ki tā Williams i te papakupu i te tau 1892 (1892: 187) ka whakamāramatia he *saying*, he *proverb* te whakataukī, ā, i te tau 1917 ka tāpiritia te tikanga *aphorism* (Williams, 1917). Koia ki a Moorfield (2005: xvii) te wehewehenga o te whakataukī me te whakatauākī, inā he *proverb* te tuatahi, he *aphorism* te tuarua. Inā e ai rā ki tā Moorfield (1993: 12-13) ‘Ko ngā whakatauākī, ngā kōrero e akiaki i ngā tāngata’. Ko tāna i whakatauiria ai, ko te kōrero tuatahi kei te Whakaahua 8.34, ‘Moea te tangata ringaringa raupā’. He aki atu ki te wāhine ki te moe i te tāne e kaha ana ki te mahi (reira tonu). Kia whai i tēnei rerenga whakaaro, anei ētehi anō whakatauākī:

Te Whakaahua 8.34: He Kupu Akiaki te Whakatauākī

He whakatauākī

(Ryan, 2002: 18-20)

He aki kia mahi i tētehi mahi

Moea te tangata ringaringa raupā.

Waiho mā te tangata e mihi.

Kia mahara ki te hē o Rona.

Kia mau koe ki te kupu a tō matua.

Mā mahi ka ora.

Me moe i te tangata kaha ki te mahi.

Me tū whakaiti, kaua e whakahīhī.

Me kaua e whakahāwea i te mana o tētehi atu.

Me whai i te tikanga whakaaro a ngā tūpuna.

Me kori, me tama tū koe kia piki ai te ora.

Kei roto i ngā whakataukī kitea ai ērā anō momo kīpeha: te kupu whakarite, te tairitenga, te tohutoro, te tohu, me ngā momo kīpeha e pai ai te takoto, e reka ai te tangi. Koia tā tēnei kaiuru:

Ko ngā kupu whakaniko me kī, [hei whakaataahua i tētahi kōrero] ēhara i te mea he rite tonu te whakamahi i te kupu...nō reira he whakawhānui i te puna kupu, he tango pea, he whakahua anō ētahi kupu kua roa nei e moe ana. Ko te āhua o te kupu whakarite, engari kia Māori mai te whakarite ki te taiao. He tauira... kia mate ururoa, ā, mōhio katoa tātou ki te tikanga o taua whakataukī ko te ururoa he momo mangō, nō reira ko te whakarite te āhua o te tangata ki te mangō kia kaua e mate wheke noa. Engari ko te whakahāngai ki te taiao tērā. He ika, he mangō o te moana, ā, koinā tētahi, he mea rongonui tērā whakataukī anō hoki.

Huri noa i te ao, kei tēnā iwi, kei tēnā iwi tēnei mea te whakataukī e kitea ai ā rātou tirohanga ki te ao. I te whakamāoritanga o te Paipera Tapu kua hou mai tērā anō kohinga nui ki te ao Māori me ōna tirohanga Karaitiana. Inā, tā tētehi haurua whakataukī: ‘...kaua hoki e okioki ki tōu mātauranga ake.’ (Te Paipera Tapu, Ngā Whakataukī, Upoko 3, Nama 5: 651). Nā reira he whakataukī Pākehā kua roa e noho ana ki te reo Māori.

Nā, i roto i te pukapuka *Te Reo o Tuawhakarere* (Joseph, 2004f: 32) ka wetehia te takotoranga o ētehi whakataukī. Te tikanga, he huarahi tērā e huri ai te titiro a ngā ākonga ki te hanga i ā rātou ake whakataukī. Ko te whakaaro matua pea kia kaua rawa te reo Māori e maroke noa, e totoka noa, me kaha ake tēnei whakatipuranga ki te whakaatu i tā rātou nā titiro ki te ao e noho nei rātou. Ehara rawa tēnei i te huarahi i whāia e ngā tohunga o te reo ki te hanga whakataukī. Heoi, he huarahi hei āta aro ki te hanganga o te whakataukī. Ā, noho tangata whenua ana aua āhuetanga reo ki roto i ngā ākonga, ka tukuna rātou kia rere. Ko ētehi anō ākonga, korekore kau he take kia pēnei te whai, pērā i ērā o ngā tohunga reo, ka taka noa mai ngā whakataukī i te rangi i a rātou e wānanga ana i tētehi kaupapa.

Te Whakaahua 8.35: Te Hanga Whakataukī Hou
He mea āta raweke i tā Joseph, 2004f: 32

Te Whakataukī	Te Kaupapa	Te Takotoranga Te Kīpeha	He Whakataukī Hou i tā te Hanganga mō te Reo
E moe i te tangata ringa raupā	Te whakawhaiāipo	E + kupu mahi + i te + kupu ingoa + kupu āhua. He kīhau.	E moe i te papakupu kikī.
E kore e taka te parapara a ōna tūpuna: tukua iho ki a ia	Ngā taonga tuku iho	E kore e + kupu āhua mahi + te + kupu ingoa + a + tūpou rirohanga+ kupu ingoa: kupu mahi hāngu + ki a + tūpou. He whakakāore.	E kore e wareware te kupu a ō tātou tūpuna, tukua iho ki a tātou.
He ihu kurī, he tangata haere.	Te tupono noa atu	He + kupu ingoa + kupu āhua, he + kupu ingoa+ kupu āhua. He huahuatau. He tairitenga.	He kupu hou, he ua kōpatapata.
He tangata i akona ki te kāinga, tūnga ki te marae, tau ana.	Te ako tangata	He + kupu ingoa + i + kupu mahi hāngu + ki te + kupu ingoa + tūingoa hanga+ ki te + kupu wāhi, kupu mahi + ana. He kupu tārara.	He ākonga i poipoia ki te Whare Kura, tūnga ki hea, tau ana.
Ka mārō te kakī o te kawau	Te ngākaunui	Ka + tūāhua + te (wāhanga) o te + kupu ingoa. He whakamārama, he huahuatau.	Ka areare te taringa o te pīpī.
Ka mate kāinga tahi, ka ora kāinga rua.	Te kōwhiringa atu anō	Ka + kupu āhua + kupu ingoa + tahi, ka+ kupu āhua + kupu ingoa + rua He kupu tārara	Ka mate kupu tahi, ka ora kupu rua.
Kia mahara ki te hē o Rona	Te hara	Kia + kupu mahi + ki te + kupu āhua + o + ingoa. He whakatūpato, he whakahau.	Kia ū ki te tika o Tīmoti.
Mā pango, mā whero ka oti te mahi.	Te mahitahi	Mā + kupu āhua, mā+ kupu āhua, ka + kupu āhua mahi + te + kupu ingoa. He huahuatau, he kupu aki.	Mā paku, mā rahi ka ora te reo.
Me he korokoro tūī.	Te kaiwaiata reka	Me he + kupu ingoa (wāhanga) + kupu ingoa. He kupu whakarite.	Me he arero kākā.
E mua kai kai, e muri kai huare	Te wā tika	E + tūwāhi + kupu mahi, kupu ingoa, e + tūwāhi + kupu mahi/kupu ingoa	E mua kai mātauranga, e muri kaitoa.

Nā, kia kīa ai he kaikōrero wahapū, ki tā Kāretu me mārama ki hea uru ai te whakataukī hei whakarāpopoto i te whakaaro (Brougham & Reed, 2001: 3). He pērā anō mō te tuhituhi. He tino whakahirahira tēnei kīpeha, tēnei huinga kīpeha e kounga ai te kōrero me te tuhinga. Heoi, ko tētehi mate nui pea, kāore he nui ngā rauemi e whakamārama ana i tēnei huinga kīpeha.

Ki a au nei ko te tuhituhi, ko te mutunga iho o te kōrero, o te pānui, o te whakarongo. Nō reira me whai wāhi ngā tamariki ki te kōrerorero, ki te pānui i ētahi tauira o taua momo tuhituhi kei te akongia kia kitea mai e rātou me pēnei pea. Kei te kite whānuitia te paki, kei ngā kura te pakiwaitara, engari ki ōku whakaaro, ko te whakataukī, ko te kīwaha, ko te kīrehu rānei kāore i te tino kitea. Kāore pea e whakaakohia ana. Nā reira, kei te whakapono katoa ahau kei te mate tērā momo te kupu whakanikoniko. Engari aroha tonu au ki ngā kaiako i te mea he reo akomanga ō rātou, kāore anō pea kia whai wāhi ki te haramai ki ngā momo wānanga pērā i te kura reo kia kitea me pēhea te kīwaha e tuhi ai hei whakarākei i tētahi tuhinga, hei whakaako ake ki ngā tamariki. Nā reira, me pēhea tērā e whakatika? E aua. He paku noa iho ngā rauemi atu i āhau [Te Kōrari] e kaha āwhina ana ki te hunga kaiako. Me kī kei ngā kura ngā pukapuka, kei roto i ngā pukapuka ngā kīwaha, engari ki te kore te kaiako e mōhio pai ana ki te tikanga ka kore pea rātou e whakamahi i taua pukapuka hei rauemi i rō akomanga. Nā reira, ka noho ki te papa whai puehu ai.

Kaiuru 29

8.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Ko te kaupapa nui i tēnei Wāhanga, ko te āta tūhura i ngā nuka reo e kīia ana i nāiane i he kīpeha. Ko te tairitenga te pūtaketanga o tēnei whānau kīpeha, inā he huanga ka tau ki wāhi kē mō tōna whakamārama. Arā ake, ko te whakatairite i te kaupapa kāore e tino mōhio ana e te whakaminenga ki tētehi kaupapa ka tau mai pea he mōhioanga. Me kī, he waka te kīpeha e eke ai te kaitito me te whakaminenga ki runga kia hoe ai ki te whitinga mai o te rā, ki te māramatanga o tētehi kōrero.

Kua wetewete i te tikanga o ngā kīpeha huatau i ngā kupu tonu a ngā kaiuru. Ko te kohinga hoki o ngā kīpeha huatau te mahi nui. Ko te hanganga i tētehi anga kīpeha

huatau tētehi hua nui. Heoi, nei rā ētehi kupu pai a tētehi kaiako whare kura mō taua anga kīpeha. E kitea ana inā ka tika te ako, ka tika te mau o ēnei kīpeha:

E whakaaro ana ahau nā te āhua o te mahere, ka hopukia e te tamaiti ngā kounga reo ahakoa kāore mātou i te whakaako i ērā. Kāore ērā i te aroa nuitia i roto i ngā whakaakoranga. Ko te taiao ako he āwhinatanga nui kia mārama ake mātou, e whakaaro ana kei te whakawhitia te whānuitanga o nga kounga ki nga tamariki? Whakaaro ana ahau, āe. Mēnā kua hāpaitia te maha o ngā kawenga, ngā horopaki, kāore i te noho i te momo [kōrero] kotahi noa iho - te wawata. Engari he nui te āwhina kia whakawehewehea te āhua o te reo.

Kaiuru 23

He tika tāna, e tohea ana i tēnei Wāhanga, me nui atu te mōhiotanga o te kaiako ki tēnei mātauranga reo kia piki te māramatanga o te ākonga ki ngā kōrero, ki ngā tuhinga o tō rātou ao. E taea ai e te ākonga te ruku i te hōhonutanga o tētehi kaupapa, me mōhio ia ki te reo o taua kaupapa. Mā reira e tū kaha ai, e aro nui ai ki tō rātou nā ao (Emmitt mā, 2003:18). Heoi, me haere ngātahi tēnei whakahau i ngā whakatūpatoranga a taua kaiako whare kura. E tika ana tāna kia mahara ake tātou, āe, ka whai hua te anga kīpeha, engari me kaua pea e ‘karu tahi’ ki taua kaupapa:

Kei te kite au i te hua kia mārama ai te kaiako kia tino rukuna e te kaiako, i te tangata māna te reo hei tuku hei mea ako he aha te āhua o te reo. He pai tērā. Ko taku āwangawanga ka whakarōpūhia ēnei tūāhuatanga e meatia nei e koe ko ngā kounga, i runga i te āhua o te reo Pākehā, kāore e mau ko te āhua o te reo Māori. Kei kīia me pēnei te maha o te aha, te *alliteration*, te aha, kia puta he kounga te reo. Ka aroa nuitia ko tēra kāore tonu te whakatakotoranga i te reo e puta tika mai. Me haere ngātahi.

Kaiuru 23

Mōku ake, ki te ākona ēnei āhuatanga reo e tūmanakotia ana ka hikina te reo ki tētehi taumata kē atu. Ko rātou kāore e aro ki te reo peha, tērā ka noho ki te reo more, ko rātou ka noho ki te pīnakitanga o te maunga. Ko rātou ka piki tonu i te maunga, ka tae ki te whakatauākī nā te tokotoru a Paewhiti i hua ake mō te whāinga o *Te Panekiretanga*, tētehi rōpū whakangungu arero Māori o Te Wānanga o Aotearoa:

Ko te reo kia tika
Ko te reo kia rere,
Ko te reo kia Māori.

Mehemea ka kōrerotia ka tuhia rānei he momo-kōrero, mā te whakauru haere i ngā kīpeha o tēnei wāhanga e tutuki ai tētehi whāinga o te whakatauākī nei, kia tino Māori ai te momo-kōrero. Mā te anga kīpeha huatau e āwhina i a rātou e hiahia āwhina ana. Ka mutu, he āwhina hoki mā te kaiako. E tohea ana ko te kupu whakarite me ngā huinga huahuatau te pokapū o te reo (Ki tā Lewis i Carter mā, 2004: 47), nā reira e tika ana me whai wāhi ki roto i ngā akoranga reo.

Heoi, he tīmatanga noa iho tēnei Wāhanga. Ki tētehi kaiuru me kimi tētehi kupu mō tēnei huinga kupu: mokopuna, waiata, rangatira. I te mea ki te wewehea tēnei momo kupu tērā ka whakaahua i tōna tikanga. He KUPU TŪHONO¹⁰⁸ pea. Pēnei i te waiata: mēnā ka whakanoatia he kōrero tapu, te tikanga me whakaata te aronga o te kaupapa ki ngā kupu waiata, inā he wai-ata, he whaka-ata tikanga. Āpitingia atu ko te PEHA¹⁰⁹. He tino tērā ki waenganui i ngā kaikōrero reo Māori. He reo whakatoi o te pinati koi, me kī. Hei tauira, i tētehi hui reo ka kī atu au ki tētehi koroua mō ētehi kaumātua, 'kua hinahina ngā makawe'. Ko tā te koroua PEHA ki a au, 'Āe, engari kāore anō kia hingahinga.'¹¹⁰ He KUPU PEHA,¹¹¹ he KUPU HUARITE hoki. Nō reira pea, he nui noa atu ngā mahi hei kimi kupu whakamārama mō ngā kīpeha Māori.

Heoi anō, ko te painga mō tēnei tuhinga rangahau mā te anga kīpeha hoki rā e tātari i ngā āhuatanga reo, te reo peha, o tētehi momo-kōrero. Ki te tirohia ngā kīpeha o tētehi momo-kōrero tērā ka puta tētehi māramatanga mō te whakaaro i titoa ai taua momo-kōrero. Arā, he TĀTARI MĀTĀTUHI¹¹². Otirā, he rautaki wānanga te anga kīpeha hei arotake i te kounga o ngā titonga kia puta hoki ai te aroā mō te tikanga o te kaupapa o taua titonga. Me kī, he huarahi hei āwhina ki te whakaaroaro mārire i te kaupapa, i te aronga, i te painga, i te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero. Hei konei huri atu ai ki tētehi titonga a tētehi manukura kia tātariatia te reo peha, kātahi ka kite atu, āe rānei, kāore rānei, kua eke te titonga nā ki te taumata o te mātātuhi.

¹⁰⁸ compound word: mai i te kupu tohuhono - hyphen

¹⁰⁹ quip

¹¹⁰ Huirangi Waikerepuru, Pōneke, Hui Kāhui Kaiwhakamāori, 18/9/2004 I te mea he hui mā ngā tāngata matatau ki te reo Māori he nui ngā PEHA. Ko tētehi mea hātekehi, ka kīia mai te kīanga, 'Pēnei i te heihei me te hēki ko tēhea i mua,' kātahi ka karangahia e tētehi o te whakaminenga, 'Kainga ngā mea e rua'. Pakaru mai ana te kata. He nuka reo te peha hei whakatoi atu i tērā wā tonu.

¹¹¹ pun

¹¹² literary criticism

Ngā Whakataukītanga i te Reo Ingarihi

ⁱ One thing which many older Māori speakers have told us they do not want is a language cluttered up with the kind of jargon that has had about the same effect on the English language as a drift of ragwort seeds from a neighbour's place onto someone's carefully looked after paddocks. Those using Māori in schools or other educational settings should ask themselves whether or not being able to do this kind of thing in Māori, whether it is obtaining fluency in assessment speak or handling certain kinds of advanced literary criticism is necessary or desirable for the health and welfare of the language.

ⁱⁱ There are three main reasons for presenting literary elements to your students:

- increased appreciation and enjoyment of literature
- increased ability to critique and discuss a piece of literature
- increased ability to write stories that satisfy both writer and audience.

ⁱⁱⁱ The importance of metalinguistic knowledge has been stressed by a number of researchers...The metalinguistic knowledge that children in the primary years need to develop, and the various components are categorized as 'word', 'sentence' and 'text' levels"

Word level: phonological and alphabet knowledge; word recognition.

Sentence level: knowledge of spelling strings and patterns; punctuation.

Text level: knowledge of text structures, organization and literary devices.

^{iv} In catering for a Māori audience, Katarina follows Māori style for her use of hyperbole, alliteration, allusion and metaphor.

^v (Tame te Maro) ...used whakatauaki, onomatopoeia, Māori malapropisms – and a range of other figures of speech that he'd invent for the occasion.

^{vi} It is a great thing, indeed, to make a proper use of these poetical forms, as also of compounds and strange words. But the greatest thing by far is to be a master of metaphor. It is one thing that cannot be learnt from others; and it is also a sign of genius, since a good metaphor implies an intuitive perception of the similiarity in dissimilars.

^{vii} To be able to appreciate the beauty and complexity of these songs, the reader needs to understand all the allusions in them: to mythology and the world of nature, to events which happened in the recent and distant past, and to the religious rituals which structured people's daily lives.

TE WĀHANGA TUAIWA

Ngā Āhuatanga Reo o Tētehi Waiata Rerehua

He aha te painga ki ngā mātua,
Ki te kore rawa tohutohungia
Ki te reo Māori?

Tuīni Ngāwai¹, *Ngā Rangatahi*

Tōku Reo, Tōku ohoooho
Tōku Reo, Tōku mapihi maurea
Tōku Reo, Tōku whakakai mārihi
Tīmoti Kāretu²

9.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

9.2 Tīmoti Kāretu

9.3 Ko te Tātaringa i tētehi Waiata-ā-ringa: *Te Aumangea*

9.4 He Taunga Whakaaro mō *Te Aumangea*

9.5 He Ine-kounga

9.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

9.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Hei tēnei wāhanga ka tātarīhia tētehi o ngā titonga a tētehi tohunga reo e mōhiotia ana e te motu. He tangata rongonui, he rongonui mō te whawhai kia ora tō tātou reo Māori, inā rā ko Tīmoti Kāretu o Ngāi Tūhoe. Ka āta tirohia tētehi o āna titonga, heoi, ehara rawa i te mea he pāpaku kau te tirohanga. Ka tīkina atu te anga kīpeha me te anga mātāpono ka whārikihia atu ki runga i ngā KUPU WAIATA³ o tēnei manukura. Mā te āta tātari i tēnei momo-kōrero tērā ka kitea te hua o te titiro pēnei kia puta mai ai he

¹ Folksong.org.nz

² Ihimaera, W. (1994:226)

³ lyrics

whakamāramatanga mō te titonga a Tīmoti. Ko te tūmanako, he whakatairanga tēnei mahi tātari kia kitea te rerehutatanga o te reo, te hōhonutanga o te whakaaro o āna kupu ātaahua.

Kia tutuki pai ai te tātāritanga ka tāpirihia he KUPU WHAKAMĀRAMA⁴ ki te waiata ā-ringa ka tirohia. Me kī, he mahere whakarāpopoto i ngā āhuatanga reo, kātahi ka whakamārama haere i te aronga o te momo-kōrero i runga i ngā kīpeha, i ngā nuka reo ka kitea. He tūhura reo te mahi. Arā, he whakatauirā, he whakaingoa hoki i ngā āhuatanga reo e pai ai te titonga a te manu taiko nei. Ka mutu, ka matapakina te PĀNGA⁵ ki te whakaminenga i te wā ka whakamahia aua āhuatanga reo. Mā reira pea e whakaaturia ai te huarahi hei whakamahi i ngā anga nei. Mā reira hoki pea e āwhina ētehi atu ki te wetewete reo pēnei. Inā rā, ki te wetewetea te waiata, tērā pea ka kitea ko te reo mōteatea, he reo peha tonu. Mā reira anō hoki e hanga he ‘REO’⁶ hou, he rēhita hei wānanga i tētehi momo-kōrero me te kimi whakaaro mēnā e kounga ana taua momo-kōrero.

9.2 Tīmoti Kāretu

Nō roto a Tīmoti i te rohe pōtae o Tūhoe. I whānau mai ia i Heretaunga, ā, ka kuraina ki ngā kura Māori nei ki Waimarama, ki Kōkako, ki Huiarau (Ihimaera, ed., 1993: 222). I tōna putanga mai i Te Whare Wānanga o Wikitoria ka mahi ki Te New Zealand High Commission ki Rānana rā anō (reira tonu). Kua hia ngahuru tau a Tīmoti e whawhai ana kia ora rawa atu tō tātou reo Māori. He tangata rongonui ia ki roto i te hāpori Māori mō ana whakahau kia kaha tātou ki te kōrero Māori. Heoi, ehara i te ngutu kau te mahi, nāna anō i hoe te waka o te reo Māori. I ngā tau atu i ngā tau 1970 tērā ka whakaakona e Tīmoti te reo Māori ki Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato. Ki ētehi pea o tērā wā, he momo ‘waimarie’ i te mea ko tā Tīmoti he tohutohu me eke te reo ki te taumata e tika ana. Ki te kore, ā, ko te arero o Tīmoti te karawhiu. Ko ia te tumuaki o te Tari Māori i Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato i tērā wā. I te tau 1987 i whakatūria ai Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, ā, ko Tīmoti te ahorangi tuatahi. Ko

⁴ annotate

⁵ affect

⁶ register

tāna he whakatairanga i te reo Māori puta noa i te motu. I a ia i reira ka tuhi hoki mō te niureta, mō *He Muka*, ā, he tini ngā poroporoaki i titoa mō ōna hoa kōrero Māori. Ka tino tau ia ki te reo poroporoaki.

Ko ētehi atu o āna tuhinga, ko *Te Reo Rangatira* (Kāretu, 1974), he pukapuka ako i te reo o Tūhoe mā ngā tauira e whai ana i te reo Māori i ngā kura tuarua. Ko *Ngā Waiata me ngā Haka a te Kapahaka o Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato* (Kāretu, 1992) he kohinga nāna me ngā whakamārama āna mō te kapa o Waikato; Ko *Haka: The Dance of a Noble People* (Kāretu, 1994) he pukapuka e matapakina ana te tū o Tāne Rore; Ko *Te Whare Kōrero*, he whakaaturanga mō te pouaka whakaata mō te reo Māori. Ehara rawa i te mea koia anake, heoi koia ētehi o āna tino mahinga. Nei rā te whakarāpopotanga:

Te Whakaahua 9.1: He Tuhinga, he Kōrero nā Tīmoti Kāretu

Tapanga	Wā	Whakamārama
<i>Te Reo Rangatira</i>	1974	He pukapuka kura mō te reo Māori
<i>Ngā Waiata me ngā Haka a Tāua a te Māori</i>	1978	He pitopito whakaaro mō ngā mea rongonui
<i>Concise Māori Dictionary</i>	1984	He mea whakatikatika, he mea whakahou
<i>Māori Proverbs</i>	1987	He mea whakatikatika, he mea whakahou
<i>He Hinatore</i>	1987	He kohinga mā ngā ākonga Whare Wānanga
<i>Ngā Waiata me ngā Haka o Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato</i>	1987	He kupu whakamārama mō ngā mea a te kapahaka, nā Tīmoti hoki ētehi i titoa
<i>Situations vacant in Māori : a guide</i>	1989	Nāna te reo Māori, he puka Taura Whiri
<i>Haka: The Dance of a Noble People</i>	1993	He pou tuhinga mō te haka
<i>Te Kaieke Tohorā</i>	1995	He mea whakamāori i tā Witi pukapuka rongonui
<i>Whare Kōrero</i>	2003	He whakaaturanga mō te reo rangatira

I tōna wā ko Tīmoti te upoko o Te Kōhanga Reo National Trust. Ko Tīmoti hoki te angaanga o te rōpū whakahaere i ngā taumāhekeheke toi rēhia, arā, te whakataetae kapahaka matua o te motu e tū ana ia rua tau. E tika ana pea ia ki reira i runga anō i te

tini haka, i te nui o ngā waiata kua oti i a ia te waihanga. Ko *Tāne Rore* mō te āhua o te haka ki tā te Māori titiro; ko te haka nei *He Aha Rā Kei te Tau o Taku Ate?* koia te mamae ki te ngarotanga atu o te reo Māori i te korenga o te kōrerotia; Ko *E Noho Ana Rā i Tōku Taumata* he haka whakautu taunu mō ngā ākonga i te whare wānanga; Ko *Te Kauaunuanu* kia mutu rā te tāmitanga ā-tangata me whakahoki mai te mana kia whakatairanga ake ko te tangata (tirohia Kāretu, 1987).

Nā, i te tau 1992 ka whakanuia ia ki te Queens Service Order (QSO) mō ngā mahi nui i oti i a ia, ā, he ngahuru mā tahi tau o muri mai, i te tau 2003 ka whakawhiwhia ia ki Te Tohu Aroha mō Ngoi Kumeroa Pewhairangi e Te Waka Toi⁷ i runga i tāna whakapeto ngoi kia toitū te reo Māori. Me kī, ko ia te taumata.

I tēnei wā kei te mahi tahi ‘te tokotoru a Paewhiti’, ko Tīmoti, ko Wharehuia Milroy, ko Pou Temara ki Te Wānanga o Aotearoa ki te kōkiri i Te Panekiretanga. He wānanga reo mō rātou kua pakari te reo Māori, heoi ko tā ngā tohunga nei he tohutohu ki hea whakamāori ake ai ō rātou reo Māori, ā rātou tikanga Māori.

9.3 Ko te Tātaringa i Tētehi Waiata-ā-ringa: *Te Aumangea*

I te wā e mahi ana a Tīmoti hei ahorangi mō Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori ki Pōneke ka torotoro tonu ia ki ngā whakataetae kapa haka me ngā whakawai kapa. Ka āwhinatia hoki e ia ētehi o ngā kapa haka pērā i Tū-te-maunga-roa o te rohe o Te Whanganui-a-Tara. I tētehi toronga āna ki taua kapa i te whakarite rātou kia haere atu ki te whakataetae ā-motu ki Te Hāwera i te tau 1994. I te kaha hiahia rātou kia tito a Tīmoti i tētehi waiata-ā-ringa mā rātou. I tērā wā, i roto i ngā rā tata kua hingahinga ētehi tōtara haemata o te ao Māori. Nā reira, ka titoa he waiata, ‘he tangi mō ngā kaiwhakanakonako i te kupu kua ngaro i roto i te rā nei (kaiuru tuaono). Hei te kōrero, ka ea tēnei waiata i roto i te hauwhā haora i a Tīmoti e tū tonu ana ki mua i te papa tuhituhi. He mea tangotango ētehi o ngā kīanga kia whai tonu i te rere o te rangi nā John Temara Te Rangi (reira tonu).

⁷ He mea tiki atu i <http://www.creativenz.govt.nz/node/2884> i te tuangahuru o Mahuru, 2007.

Nā, ki te tirohia te waiata tangi a Tīmoti Kāretu, *Te Aumangea* tērā e pōhēhētia he waiata ā-ringa tēnei mō ngā rākau me ngā manu. Engari katoa tēnei waiata he TAIRITENGA⁸ e whakarite ana i ngā kaikōrero matatau o te reo Māori ki ngā manu me ngā rākau rangatira o te waonui a Tāne. Ko aua mea e toru - he tāngata whai mana me ngā manu rangatira tae atu ki ngā rākau rangatira o te waonui – kei te hingahinga haere. Nā reira, he waiata tangi tonu ki te taiao, ki te tangata. He kaupapa nui ēnei ki te Māori, ki Aotearoa whānui. Ko te āhua o te taiao me te heke haere o te urutaputanga o te ngahere. Ko te āhua o te reo Māori me te heke haere o te orange tonutanga o te reo. I te mea hoki ko Tīmoti te kaitito kua roa rawa e upoko pakaru ana kia toitū te reo taketake o Aotearoa. Otirā, ko te TOITOI MANAWA⁹ o te kaitito, ko te hinganga o ngā rangatira. Ki āna ake kupu mō *Te Aumangea*, inā rā:

Me kī, he waiata tangi tēnei mō ngā kaikōrero whai mana o te ao Māori, arā, a Tā Kīngi, a Mōnita Delamere, a Māori Marsden, a Pumi Taituha, a Hamu Mitchell, a Hōhua Tūtengāehe, a wai ake, a wai ake. Ko ēnei i mōhio nei ki te rāwekeweke, ki te huri, ki te whiu, ki te whakatakoto i te kupu, kua kore haere i kitea tērā momo i roto i te ao Māori o ēnei rā nā reira ka haku noa te ngākau ki tērā āhua...

Pukapuka Kura Reo, te Rangīāniwaniwa, 10-13
o Paengawhāwhā, 2002: 8

Ki konei ka āta wetewetehia ia rerenga kōrero o *Te Aumangea* kia kitea mai ai te hononga o ngā āhuatanga reo ki te kaupapa matua o te waiata. He tikanga kei tua o ia kupu, o ia kīanga, o ia rerenga kōrero, ā, ka whakamahia ngā anga KĪPEHA me te titiro ki ngā NUKA REO hei kukume mai i tētehi aronga hōhonu kē atu i te pānui noa, i te whakarongo noa. Mā te wetewete hoki ka kitea te tohungatanga o tā Tīmoti ki te whakairo i te kupu. Inā rā, he nui ngā kīpeha āna hei whao i te kupu, he KUPU RAWEKE, he HUAHUATAU, he TOHUTORO, he UIMAKIHOI, he KUPU TĀRARA, he aha atu, he aha atu. Tērā ka kitea he nui ngā āhuatanga reo me mau i te KETE KŌRERO¹⁰ o te tangata kia eke rā anō ki tēnei o ngā taumata reo. Hei whakaatu i ētehi anō o ngā kīpeha e whakamahia ana e Tīmoti kei Te Whakaahua e whai ake nei (tirohia hoki te Whakaahua 9.3) tētehi whakarāpopototanga.

⁸ analogy

⁹ motivation

¹⁰ repertoire

Te Whakaahua 9.2: He Kupu Waiata, He Kīpeha nō *Te Aumangea*

He waiata-ā-ringa nā Tīmoti Kāretu, 1998: iv

1.	E koutou, e te aumangea Kei hea koutou hei āki i ngā hau kino o te wā? I te wao tapu nui a Tāne,	tohutoro tāngata rangatira, kupu hautanga aumangea ui makihoi kei hea, tohutoro āki huahuatau hau kino-raruraru tohutoro Tāne-te tupuna o ngā manu
5.	Urutapu ana, ururua ana, matomato ana, Te tipu mai o te kahikatoa, o te tōtara haemata Nō te hinganga,	kupu raweke urutapu – tapu-nui-a-Tāne/urutapu – waonui kupu tātoru ana huahuatau kahikatoa, rākau teitei-tangata teitei, rangatira tāruarua, kupu tauaro ka ora te ngahere, kātahi ka hinga kupu tauaro tipu/hinganga, hinganga/tū kupu mahi ingoa
10.	tūpapahū ana te whenua Ka kore koutou kei hea he taunga mō te manu kaewa?	kupu ororite tūpapahū ana ui makihoi ka kore...mō te manu kaewa? huahuatau manu kaewa-tangata akoako i te reo Māori
	Kurupākara ana tērā te mārā a Tāne I te pekī, i te tīhau a ngā manu	kupu ororite, kupu hākiki, tāruarua, huahuatau kupu tārara 'i te'
15.	Kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa Kia pātai noa ahau, kei hea aku manu tīoriori, Aku manu taki, aku manu taiko i te kāhui e pōkaikaha nei?	kupu tārara 'kua i', kupu ātete engari kāore e taea te rere ui makihoi he kīanga ui makihoi kupu tātoru aku-kei hea ngā tāngata whai mana kupu tārara aku, kupu huarite taiko/pōkaikaha tairitenga kāhui manu, kāhui tangata
20.	Auē! Kia tīoriori noa mai ko te manu Kia kōkī, kia ketekete mai anō ko te kākā Kia korihi mai anō ko te kōparapara	kupu ororite tioriori-kia reka anō te kōrero kupu tārara kia + ko te kupu ororite ketekete orokati tārua 'k' huahuatau, tohutoro 'he kākā waha nui'
25.	i te pūaotanga o te rā Te tangi kau nei te mapu.	kupu tārara 'kia', huahuatau kōparapara - kōrerorero rangatira tohutoro ki te wā e hoihoi rawa nei ngā manu me te tāngata kupu raweke tangi a te manu me te tangi a te kaitito
	Tērā pea me kapo ko te mahara, me kapo ko te kupu Mā reira e tū mai anō ai he māhuri	kupu tārara 'me + ka', he huarahi whakaora reo reo more hei whakaata i te karere o te waiata huahuatau māhuri-he tangata ka tupu ake hei rangatira
30.	E tiu anō ai, e korihi anō ai Ngā manu o te wao.	kupu tārara 'e +ai', ka takatū ake, ka eke anō te kōrero huahuatau manu o te wao-ngā tini kaikōrero o te ao

1. E koutou, e te aumangea
Kei hea koutou hei āki
i ngā hau kino o te wā?

He kīanga tino Māori i te tīmatanga o tēnei waiata ā-ringa. He tuku mihi tonu ki a rātou kua huri atu ki te pō, heoi kei te anga tonu te titiro ki a rātou, 'E koutou', ā, ka hāngai tonu te kōrero ki a rātou. Ka whakawhānuihia¹¹ te tikanga o te kīanga tuatahi ki te kīanga tuarua hei tohu ko wai mā kei te kōrerohia. He KUPU HAUTANGA¹² pea tēnei 'e te aumangea'. Inā ko te whakamahi i te kupu āhua hei kupu ingoa tonu, hei ingoa karanga mō taua momo kāhui tangata kua ngaweki ki te pō. He TOHUTORO¹³ anō hoki kia hoki wairua mai rātou, ngā manukura i te ao wairua ki te āwhina i te kaupapa, ki te whakaora i tō tātou nei reo Māori. Koia ko te rārangi tuatahi.

I te rārangi tuarua, tuatoru ka tukuna te UI MAKIHOI¹⁴ e te kaitito hei whakaatu i te KAUPAPA¹⁵, i te KARERE¹⁶ o te waiata. Arā, kia kimihia rātou hei aukati i ngā āhuetanga kino kei te pā ki a tātou. Ka mutu, i te mea ko te kaupapa o tēnei waiata, ko te momo tangata matatau ki te reo Māori, tērā e kitea he hiahia hoki nō te kaitito ki te aukati i ngā āhuetanga e tukituki ana ki te reo Māori. Ko te 'āki' tērā, he TOHUTORO pea ki te āhuetanga kei roto i tēnei whakataukī, 'He tokatū moana ākina ā-tai'. Inā rā, ko te whakaritenga, he toka te rangatira hei kaupare atu i te whatinga o te ngaru, me kī, o te raru. Heoi i te mea ko te wao, ko te ngahere te WĀHI¹⁷ mō tēnei waiata, ko te āki ā-hau kē. Inā he HUAHUATAU te 'hau kino' mō ngā raruraru ka pā ki te kaupapa, ki te orange tonutanga o te reo Māori.

¹¹ amplification

¹² metonymy

¹³ allusion

¹⁴ rhetorical question

¹⁵ theme

¹⁶ message

¹⁷ setting

5. I te wao tapu nui a Tāne,
 Urutapu ana, ururua ana,
 matomato ana,
 Te tipu mai o te kahikatoa,
 o te tōtara haemata

I te rārangi tuawhā, he KĪANGA TAWHITO¹⁸ taua kōrero mō te ngahere, mō tō tātou nei tupuna mō Tāne. He ōkawa pea te HĀ¹⁹ i te whakahuanga i te tapu i ngā wā e rua; te ‘waotapu’ me te ‘urutapu’. Ko te urutapu nui o Tāne koia tonu pea ko te TOHUTORO ki tā Tāne i tiki atu ai i ngā kete o te wānanga, ā, ko ētehi ingoa mōna ko Tāne te wānanga, ko Tāne te pūkenga, ko Tāne te tokorangi. Tērā pea, ko te mana o te wao tapu me ōna nui o reira i taea ai e ia te whakatutuki i tāna i whakamātautau ai. Nā, he KUPU RAWEKE tonu tā te kaitito kei te kupu ‘urutapu’, he tākarokaro i te tikanga o ngā kupu nei, te ‘tapu’, me te ‘uru’. Ka tāruatia hoki aua kupu hei whakahaukaha ake pea i te whakaaro. Nā, ko Tāne hoki te tupuna o ngā manu. Katoa ēnei āhuatanga kei taua tohutoro iti, me te aha, he rapu pea i te mātauranga hei whakautu i tā te kaitito i pātai mai ai. Anā, kua ea hoki te WHAKAPUAKINGA²⁰ i te rārangi tuawhā hei tūwheratanga kaupapa mā te WHAKAMINENGA²¹.

Waihoki, he KUPU TAURITE²² pea ngā kupu e toru nei i te whiti tuatahi; te ‘urutapu’, te ‘ururua’, te ‘matomato’ mō te kore pā o te hunga tangata ki taua wao. Ka tū motuhake taua wao me ōna ‘tipu’ katoa. Otirā, he momo KUPU WHAKAWHERE²³ te whakamahia o te KUPU TAURITE i ngā wā e toru. He KUPU TAURITE TĀTORU²⁴ (Lanham, 1991: 191) me kī, hei whakangoi i te kaupapa o taua huinga kupu. Arā, he wāhi kua nui te ranea o te hua. Ko ngā tohunga reo kei te whakatairitea, nā reira, ko te wāhi kua nui kē te ranea o te wahakī. Ka mutu, me tohunga rā anō kia whakamahia ko taua momo KĪPEHA²⁵, ko te KUPU TAURITE TĀTORU. Heoi anō koia tētehi āhuatanga reo hei tohu i te TAERA²⁶ o

¹⁸ archaic phrase

¹⁹ tone

²⁰ orientation

²¹ audience

²² synonym

²³ rhetorical figure

²⁴ scesis onomaton: ‘a string of synonymous expressions’ (Quin, 1993:135).

²⁵ figure of speech

²⁶ style

ngā titonga a Tīmoti ki te āta tirohia āna titonga pērā i ngā kupu haka (tirohia Kāretu, 1992).

Ko te kahikatoa, ko te tōtara ētehi rākau rangatira o te wao. He teitei te kahikatoa, ā, ko te tōtara haemata he mea kaha nei te tupu. Ko aua rākau e rua hei kāinga ngāngara, hei kāinga manu, inā hei kāinga whakamarumarū. Nā whai anō pea i whakatairitea ai ngā rangatira ki aua rākau, inā tā te Māori titiro - HE RĀKAU TE RANGATIRA. I te mea hoki ka tāruatia te rerenga kōrero mō aua rākau, ka whakakahangia ake te whakaaro mō te kāhui rangatira. He REO PEHA²⁷ pea mai i te rārangi tuawhā ki te rārangi tuawaru ki te wā o te tōnuitanga o ngā tūpuna, arā, ki te wā he tokomaha ngā wahapū.

10. Nō te hinganga,
tūpapahū ana te whenua
Ka kore koutou kei hea
he taunga mō te manu kaewa?

He tohutoro anō hoki pea te kīanga i te rārangi 9 ki te reo poroporoaki, inā rā ‘kua hinga tētehi tōtara o te wao nui o Tāne’. Ko taua momo reo e kaingākaunui ana te ao Māori hei mihi ake ki te hunga kua tīraha kia haere (tirohia McFarland, 2003). Ka mutu, he kīanga tino Māori tēnei, ‘nō te hinganga’, he KUPU MAHI INGOA²⁸. Mā reira e huri ai te HĀ manahau ki te HĀ pōuri, arā, mai i te ‘tipu’ ki te ‘hinganga’. Whakamahia ai ngā KUPU TAUARO²⁹ nei hei whakaatu i te āhua taukumekume o te ngākau o te kaitito (Schill, 2006: 203), he piki, he heke, he pai, he kino. Inā kei te taupatupatungia ngā kare-ā-roto, ko te tikanga, me pērā anō te whakaminenga, arā, me rongo ā-ngākau i tēnei taupatupatu – ka mate rānei, ka ora rānei te reo Māori? Heoi, mā te KUPU TAUARO e whakakarekare ai i te ngākau o te whakaminenga, ā, ka nui te hiahia o te whakaminenga kia tau ai tēnei raruraru. He RAUTAKI WHAKAWHERE³⁰ pea tērā e kukume mai ai i te aronga o te whakaminenga.

²⁷ figurative language

²⁸ gerund

²⁹ antonym

³⁰ persuasive technique

Ko te āhua o te whenua hei TOHU pea mō te ngākau o te kaitito. Kei te oioi tonu i te ngarotanga atu o te hunga aumangea. Ko te āhua nei oioi ai te whenua, arā, a Papatūānuku, te whaea o te tangata, i te hinganga o ngā rangatira. Inā te whakataukī poroporoaki e mea ana, ‘He oioi kākaho e kitea, engari ia te oioi o te ngākau e kore’(Kāretu, He Kupu Whakamārama, 1992). Heoi, he tangi nō te kupu ‘tūpapahū’, he KUPU ORORITE tonu. Ki tā Wiremu whakamārama, ‘tūpapahū ana te whenua i te takahanga a te tangata’(Williams, 2002: 456). Hei āpiti atu pea te ARONGA ANŌ³¹ ki tā te reo poroporoaki tonu, inā te kīanga o te reo poroporoaki, ‘...ka haruru te tapuae ki te marae, ka ea, ka ea, ka ea’(Te Kete ‘Ō’omu, 1998). He tangi haku tonu kei te kupu ‘tūpapahū’, ā, he KUPU RAWEKE pea ki te kupu ‘tūpāpaku’. He whakaaro noa i runga i te mea he tairitenga hoki tā te waiata nei ki te tikanga o te HUINGA KUPU³² o te tangihanga. Ā, kua kōrerotia kētia, he tohunga a Tīmoti ki te tito poroporoaki i te moheni *He Muka*.

Ka pātai anō ake te kaitito i tētehi atu UI MAKIHOI hei kukume mai i te aronga o te whakaminenga. Arā, mēnā ka korekore te hunga matatau ki te reo me ōna tikanga, ka ngaro tērā taumata, ka ngaro hoki tērā taunga. Ki te ngaro tērā taunga, ka kore e taea te kī, ‘Ā, tū ana, tau ana’, i te mea ka tau atu te hunga e ngākau nui ana ki te ako i te reo Māori ki hea, mēnā ka kore he ‘taunga’ mō rātou. He pai taua KUPU MAHI INGOA, he nui ōna aronga. He pai hoki te rārangi, ‘he taunga mō te manu kaewa’. He HUAHUATAU tonu mō te momo tangata e hāereere nei i te motu tē tau atu ai. He wehewehenga tino Māori te tūāpapa o tēnei whakaaro; inā ka haere te mātātahi, ka noho te mātāpuputu. Kia pakeke ake te hunga taiohi, te tikanga, ko te hunga kua hina, ko te ‘aumangea’ ka noho hei whakaruruhau. Ki te kore, ka pēwhea? He tino pātai, ā, koia pea te take he UI MAKIHOI tonu.

Kurupākara ana tērā te māra a Tāne
I te pekī, i te tīhau a ngā manu
15. Kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa

Haere tonu ana te HUAHUATAU mō te wao, heoi tērā hoki e pōhēhētia ka piki anō ko te HĀ o te waiata. I te mea he hoihoi rawa te tikanga o te kupu ‘kurupākara’, ā, ko te wā

³¹ connotation

³² semantic domain/field: ko ngā kupu ka rangona, ka kitea i tētehi kaupapa.

hoihei rawa i te wao ko te wā ka mihi atu te kāhui manu ki a Tama-nui-te-rā, ki tōna huranga ake, ki te tōnga iho. Koia hoki te aronga o te KĪPEHA³³ nei, ‘te māra a Tāne’ (‘o Tāne’ ki tā Williams, 2002: 180). He mihi i te ata, i te ahiahi nā te kāhui manu. Ka tāruatia te ingoa o Tāne, ā, ko ngā kīanga e rua, ‘te wao-tapu-nui-a-Tāne’, me ‘te māra a Tāne’ hei whakakaha ake i te KAUPAPA³⁴ mō Tāne. Ka tahi mō te wāhi, ka rua mō te wā. Oti ana hoki te WĀHI ME TE WĀ³⁵ i aua kīpeha e rua.

Heoi, ko tētehi anō kaupapa kei aua rārangi, ko te tiaki i taua wao, ko te maimoa i aua manu, ko te manaaki i taua reo. Kua ruarua haere ngā uri o Tāne i te waotapu, ā, kua kore te hoihei rawa o ‘te māra a Tāne’ e rangona pērā i te wā o ngā mātua tūpuna. Ko te kupu ‘tērā’ e tohu ana i te wā, ‘tērā te wā’ o te REO PAKI. Heoi, ka kitea he pōuri kē te HĀ o te waiata. He tangi aroha tonu ki te wā i ātaahua ai te tangi o te kāhui manu. He KUPU TĀRARA te tāruatia o te rerenga kōrero ‘i te’ me te ‘kua kore nei i’. Ā, i te noho tautika ngā rerenga kōrero nei, ‘I te pekī, i te tīhau a ngā manu, kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa’. He ranginamu te takoto. Mā te KUPU TĀRARA e whakahaukaha ake i tēnei KARERE mō te hunga kua ngaro i te kitenga tangata tē hoki taiao mai. Koia hoki mā te KUPU TAUARO e whakakaha ake i taua whakaaro e karekare ana i roto i te ngākau o te kaitito. Inā ka whai i te KAUPAPA me te HUAHUATAU mō te reo Māori, kei te tangi te kaitito ki te hunga kāore i te ‘rere’, ki te hunga matatau rawa hoki rā ki te reo Māori kua rere ki tua. ‘Auē!’

16. Kia pātai noa ahau,
 kei hea aku manu tīriori,
 Aku manu taki, aku manu taiko
 i te kāhui e pōkaikaha nei?

Tērā ka tukuna tētehi anō UIMAKIHOI, ‘kia pātai noa ahau...’. He KUPU TĀTORU³⁶ tonu te tātorutia o te tūpou ‘aku’, heoi ko te KĪPEHA tuatahi o aua momo manu, ko te ‘manu tīriori’. He HUAHUATAU mō te tangata rawe ki te waiata. Mō te kaupapa o tēnei waiata, ko te tangata rawe kē pea ki te kōrero Māori. Ka whai mai ko ngā manu e rua, ko te ‘manu taki’ hei arataki i te hunga reo ngoikore; ko te ‘manu taiko’ he manu

³³ figure of speech

³⁴ theme

³⁵ setting

³⁶ triplication

mataara e titiro ana ki ngā āhuatanga kei pā kino ki te kāhui. Otirā, ko te HUAHUATAU ARORO³⁷ ki tō te Māori whakaaro e pēnei ana, HE MOMO MANU TE RANGATIRA. Koia te tūāpapa o ngā rārangi 17-18. Ki te REOMORE e mea ana te UIMAKIHOI kei whea ngā tāngata 'reka nei' te kōrero; ngā tāngata hei arataki i a tātou kia pai ai te reo; ā, ngā tāngata hei tohutohu me pēhea kia kounga tonu ai te reo. Ka hoki ki te REO PEHA nei i te rārangi 19 'pōkaikaha' hei tohu i ngā āhuatanga e ngoikore ana i te ao Māori. He KUPURAWEKE te kupu 'kāhui' i te mea ko te hunga manu ko te hunga tangata kei te pōkea e te raruraru.

Whakamahia ai pea te TŪPOU 'aku' kia kukume mai ai i te wairua pouri ki roto i ā te kaitito kupu. He TAERA TAKETAKE³⁸ tērā. Inā rā te waiata *E Pā Tō Hau*, 'kei whea rā aku hoa i mua rā'. Ko tā Tīmoti he kī, kei hea rawa aku hoa aumangea o tēnei reanga hei tautoko i te whawhai kia ora rawa atu tō tātou nei reo Māori? Otirā, kei whea rawa aku hoa kōrero hei tautoko i tāku? He mokemoke pea mō te hunga matatau, etia nei he kāhu e kē takitahi ana i te waru.

Mutu ai te WHAKAAHUA³⁹ o te whiti tuarua ki te taunga mai o te pō, inā te 'pōkaikaha', ā, kua huri anō pea ki 'te māra a Tāne'. Nā reira, i mua rā he hoihoi te tangi i te wā huihui ai te 'kāhui' tāngata e tiwaha ake ana i te reo Māori. Heoi anō rā, tērā ko te mānukanuka e ngau whakaroto ana i taua kupu 'pōkaikaha'. Ka whakakahangia te WHAKAAHUA ki te KUPU TŪHONO⁴⁰ ko te pō-kai-kaha, arā ake, ko te pō e kaikai nei i te kaha o roto o te hunga e ako ana i te reo Māori. Ka mutu, koia te UIMAKIHOI o ēnei mea e toru e tuku nei i te pātai mō ērā āhuatanga kino ka pā ki te reo. Ko te UIMAKIHOI tuatahi mō te 'hau kino', te mea tuarua mō te kore 'taunga', ā, ko te mea tuatoru mō 'te kāhui e pōkaikaha nei'. He MANATŌ TE TĀTORU⁴¹, he whakakaha ake i te whakaaro mā te whakaminenga, ā, kei te UIMAKIHOI tuatoru te TEITEITANGA⁴² o aua āwangawanga o te kaitito. E pēnei ana te wairua o taua momo pātai i te rārangi 17- 'e tātou mā, kei whea rawa ngā mana, ngā reo hei whakakīkī i ngā whāwhārua?' Ko te KARERE pea o roto o taua TEITEITANGA, mehemea kei te ao nei ngā momo manu hei arataki i a tātou, me maranga ake. Me kī, ko tēnei te wā.

³⁷ conceptual metaphor

³⁸ traditional style

³⁹ imagery

⁴⁰ compound word: whai-kōrero, ranga-tira, moko-puna

⁴¹ power of threes

⁴² climax

20. Auē! Kia tioriori noa mai
ko te manu

Ā, ko te whiti tuatoru, he wawata kau o te kaitito. Tērā e pōhēhētia i te takoto o ngā kupu, he tohu pai te hoihoi o ngā manu. Arā, ka māmā ake te HĀ i te mea hoki ko tēnei whiti te ‘NGARINGARI’⁴³. Ko te mea rerekē, ko te tikanga kē o te NGARINGARI. He waiata tonu te ngaringari kia mahi tahi te iwi (Williams, 2002: 230). Ā, koia tonu pea te PŪTAKETANGA⁴⁴ o tēnei whiti, he hokinga mahara ki te wā i tokonui ai te kāhui rangatira. Tīmata mai ai i te KĪHAU⁴⁵ ‘Auē!’ hei whakakaha i te ĀHEINGA REO⁴⁶ he tangi. Ā, he REO IHIIHI⁴⁷ hoki rā. Mōku ake, ko te kīhau ‘Aue!’, me taku mōhio ki te rangi o te waiata, koia hei tohu i te TEITEITANGA o te waiata-ā-ringa nei. Kei taua whiti hoki te whakaaro matua i haku ai te kaitito, arā, ko te ngarotanga o tērā āhua o te reo, ko te kaha o te kōrerotia.

25. Kia kōkī, kia ketekete mai anō
ko te kākā
Kia korihi mai anō ko te kōparapara
i te pūaotanga o te rā
Te tangi kau nei te mapu.

Tērā hoki ka kitea te take e tangi nei te kaitito i te KUPU TĀRARA - i te TĀWHĀTIA o te rerenga nei ‘kia’ i te whiti tuatoru. Inā kia huri te titiro ki tētehi wā e rōreka rawa atu nei te reo. Me pēnei hoki ngā tāngata kōrero Māori, ngā manu rangatira: ‘kia tioriori noa mai’, ‘kia kōkī’, ‘kia ketekete mai anō’, ‘kia korihi mai anō’. He whakaihiihi te mahi o ēnei kīanga i te tangi raka o ngā kupu. He KUPU ORORITE, he OROKATI TĀRUA, he OROPUARE TĀRUA aua kīpeha whakatangi kia kukume mai ai te RONGO Ā-NGĀKAU o te whakaminenga. Ko te KARERE o ēnei kīanga kōrero e whā, he whakanui tonu i ngā

⁴³ chorus (Ryan, 2001: 430)

⁴⁴ purpose

⁴⁵ exclamation

⁴⁶ language function

⁴⁷ expressive language. Whakamahia ai ngā kupu ihiihi kia kukume mai ai te aronga ā-ngākau o te whakaminenga.

āhuatanga mō te reo o taua hunga kei te mōteateatia. He KUPU TĀRARA tonu hei whakaū i taua karere a te kaitito.

He whakautu atu hoki pea te KUPU TĀRUARUA nā te kaitito ki tāna i pātai mai ai mō ‘aku manu tioriori’. Ka wehea te huahuatau mō ‘te manu tioriori’, ka hurihia ai te takoto hei whakautu ake i te wāhanga, ‘kia tioriori noa mai ko te manu’. Anā, mā te kōrero ka ora te reo, ā, e whakahau ake ana te kaitito i tana kīhau, ‘aue!’ kia hoki mai tērā āhuatanga o te kaha o te kōrerohia o te reo ki nāianeī. Waihoki, ka kitea i ngā rārangi 20-21 ko te kaitito tētehi anō o rātou i mōhio rā ki te huri, ki te whakatakoto i te kupu.

He ātaahua ngā kīanga e whā i ngā rārangi 20-24, i te mea he KĪPEHA WHAKATANGI ērā kia pai ai te oro mā te taringa. Ka mutu, he hononga o te tangi ki te tikanga. He whiti tēnei e kawē ana i te KARERE, arā, e tangi ana te ngākau kua riro tērā āhuatanga. Heoi anō pea, tērā te wawata kia hoki ora mai te reo me tōna rahi anō. Mā te tangi tonu e whakaata taua tikanga. Ko tā tēnei ORORITE, he tangi tonu nō te taiao, he tangi manu, he tangi tangata, he reka tonu. Ka tāruatia te orokati ‘k’ hei whakaū i taua whakaaro. Inā ngā āhuatanga reo me eke, he tangi reka pērā me te ‘kākā’. Ki te rangona te reo pērā i te OROKATI TĀRUA e ‘kōkī’ ana, e ‘ketekete’ ana, e ‘kōrihi’ ana, ka ora rawa atu te kōrerotia o te reo. Nā, ko te KUPU WHAKARITE mō te pūkōrero e pēnei ana, ‘me he kākā wahanui’.⁴⁸ Koia hoki tā te kōparapara, he kupu mō te tūi ātaahua ki te kōrerorero. Ā, mehemea he hokinga mahara te tikanga, he mōteatea tonu ki aua āhuatanga kua wehe ki tua. Ā, mehemea he titiro ki te wā kei te tū mai, he āhua kupu whakaari pea. Tērā te wā ka whiti mai te rā, ā, ka ‘ketekete mai anō ko te kākā’, ka ‘kōrihi mai anō ko te kōparapara’. Arā, he wā tōna ka ora anō te mauri o te reo i te kōrerotanga a te iti, a te rahi.

26. Te tangi kau nei te mapu.

Tērā ka ‘mapu’ te kaitito ki aua āhuatanga mō tēnei taonga te reo Māori me tērā momo tangata kua riro ki te pō. He whakatakotoranga tawhito tērā, ‘Te + nei’, he

⁴⁸ I tētehi hui ‘Kaupapa Māori’ (Waipapa marae, Nov. 11-12, 2004) ka whakaritea e Kaa Williams ko ngā kaikaranga hei manu tioriori, ko ngā kaikōrero hei kākā tarahae.

TAERA TAKETAKE⁴⁹ tonu. Ko te ĀHEINGA REO o tēnei kīanga, ‘Te tangi kau nei te mapu’, he haku. Heoi me huri kē pea ki ngā kupu whakamārama a Tīmoti kia kitea mai ai te aronga, ko tāna ‘ka haku noa te ngākau’ ki te ngarotanga o ngā kaikōrero whai mana o te ao Māori, ā, ‘I roto anō hoki i te haku, ko te tūmanako me kore noa pea e tūpono ka tū mai anō taua rite i roto i ēnei reanga e kaha nei te whai mai’ (Kāretu, 2002: v). Nō reira pea e rua kē ngā aronga o taua kīanga i te rārangi 26. Ko te aronga matua, he mōteatea ki te reanga kua riro atu. Heoi, he tangi auē hoki ki tētehi anō reanga ka ara ake i te korenga o ērā momo hei tautoko ake.

I tēnei waiata he nui ngā TOHUTORO ki te reo poroporoaki o te tangihanga hei tautoko i te WAIRUA o te kōrero. Ko te UI MAKIHOI tētehi āhuatanga reo kei te reo poroporoaki (tirohia Brooke-White, 1981: 17,18). Kei reira hoki te KUPU TĀRARA. I te rārangi 15 tētehi tauira kōrero o taua KĪPEHA, ‘Kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei e topa’. Ānō nei ko te reo poroporoaki tonu, arā, hei whakatauiria i taua reo ka hurihia te rerenga, ‘nō te rā nei kua wahangū te manukura e takoto nei; kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa’. Kei te kīanga pea, ‘Te tangi kau nei te mapu’ te TEITEITANGA o tēnei whakaritenga a te kaitito ki te HUINGA KUPU⁵⁰ o te tangihanga. I ngā whiti e toru, me kī, kua whārikihia te ‘kahu ongaonga’ ki runga i te whakaminenga.

27. Tērā pea me kapo ko te mahara,
me kapo ko te kupu

Nā, i te rārangi 27 i te whiti tuawhā ko tā te kaitito he tango mai i te ‘kahu taratara’ kia mahea ake ai te ‘pōkaikaha’. Koia pea te RAUPAPATANGA⁵¹ o ngā whakaaro. I ngā whiti e toru ka kōrerohia ngā ‘mate’, i te whiti tuawhā ka whakahokia ki te ‘ao ora’. He tino Māori taua HANGANGA⁵².

I te whiti tuawhā ka huri te āhua o te reo. O ngā rārangi me ngā whiti katoa ko te rārangi 27-28 anake kei te kōrero hāngai ki te whakaminenga. Arā, kei te REO MORE⁵³

⁴⁹ traditional style

⁵⁰ semantic domain

⁵¹ sequence

⁵² structure

⁵³ literal language

tonu. Atu i tērā, katoa tēnei waiata he HUAHUATAU ROA⁵⁴. Tērā pea ko te rārangi 27-28 te TAUNGA⁵⁵ o tēnei waiata. I ngā whiti e toru kua tukuna kia rere ngā whakaaro o Tīmoti mō ngā rangatira, arā: ka mokemoke te ao i te korenga o ngā tētē kura; ka kore te reo e tika i te korenga o ngā manukura; ka tangi te ngākau i te korenga o tērā rongonga o ngā tākupu. He titiro ki ngā wā o mua. Heoi, anō nei he PAKI tonu, hei whakakapi ake i tēnei whiti ka meatia mai he huarahi hei whakatau i ngā raruraru o roto. Nā reira, ahakoa he pouri te HĀ⁵⁶ o tēnei waiata, i te mutunga iho kei reira tētehi paku hinatore e pīataata mai ana. Arā, he titiro ki te wā kei te tū mai. Āe pea, he paku tūmanako tonu kei reira kia ‘tiu’ kia ‘korihi’ anō ngā ‘manu’.

Ka tūmanakotia tētehi huarahi e hoki mai anō ai ngā āhuatanga hei whakaaraara ake anō i te reo Māori. Inā, ‘Me kapo ko te mahara, me kapo ko te kupu’. Ki te mau tonu te mahara, ka mau tonu tā mua mā i kī ai, ō rātou wawata, ā rātou tohutohu, ō rātou whakaaro, ā rātou kōrero. Me maumahara tonu pea tātou ki ngā kōrero o nehe, arā, me pupuri tonu i ā rātou kupu. Ehara rawa i te kupu noa. Ko taua huinga ōkawa hoki o te momo-kōrero, inā ko ngā waihotanga kupu i roto i te mōteatea, i te poroporoaki, i te karakia, i te aha atu. Mā te KUPU TĀRARA e whakahaukaha ōna whakaaro, arā, ka tāruatia te rerenga kōrero ‘me + ko te’.

30. Mā reira e tū mai anō ai he māhuri
E tiu anō ai, e korihi anō ai
Ngā manu o te wao.

Koia te tikanga o te kīanga, ‘mā reira’. Ko te nuinga o te wā ka meatia, ‘nā reira’, heoi anō pea, e huri kē ana te aro o te kaitito ki te wā kei te tū mai, ā, kāore anō kia tatū i tā Tīmoti i kōingo ai. Engari, ki te pērā ā tōna wā, ki tā Tīmoti, ki te tūturu te mau o aua mea e rua, te mahara me te kupu, kātahi ka ara ake te reo.

Mā te HĀ manahau anō rā hei whakakapi te waiata nei. Ka tātorutia te rerenga kōrero ‘e + ai’ me te kupu ‘anō’ hei whakaū i te whakaaro ki te kōkirihia ake e tātou, nei rā ngā āhuatanga e toru ka puta. E toru ngā momo HUAHUATAU o tēnei TAIRITENGA.

⁵⁴ extended metaphor

⁵⁵ resolution, denouement

⁵⁶ tone

Tuatahi, ‘e tū mai anō ai he māhuri’. He HUAHUATAU tēnei mō te tupu o te tangata matatau. Ki tā te Māori titiro pea, HE TEITEI TE MEA WHAI MANA. Nā, ehara rawa te māhuri i te rākau teitei rawa atu, kāore i nui te mana, heoi kei te pērā te tupu. Ahakoa me tupu tonu kia rākau rā anō, kei te tupu. He mea nui tērā, pērā i a rātou kei te whakangungu i a rātou anō kia ora rawa atu te reo Māori me ōna tikanga. He kupu whakaari kei tēnei whiti whakamutunga i te tūmanako, i te whakapono o te kaitito; kei te ao Māori ētehi anō ‘māhuri’, ētehi tāngata tau e pihi ake ana. He TOHUTORO anō pea te kupu ‘māhuri’ ki te tapanga o te huinga pukapuka nā John Moorfield i a Tīmoti ki Waikato. Mai i *Te Kākanō*, ki *Te Pihinga*, ki *Te Māhuri*, ki *Te Kōhure*. Inā rā, he tupuranga rākau, he tupuranga reo.

Nā, ki te tatū tērā, te tupuranga o te māhuri, kātahi ka puta ēnei āhuatanga e rua, ‘e tiu anō ai, e korihi anō ai ngā manu o te wao’. Ko te HUAHUATAU o te ‘tiu’ ko te koringa e tika ana. He tino Māori taua whakaaro, inā te whakataukī, ‘tama tū, tama ora’. Me takatū ake kia ora ai te tangata, kia ora ai te kaupapa. Ā, ki te tupu ake, ki te takatū ake, kātahi ka korihi ake.

Ka tāruatia te kupu ‘korihi’ i tēnei waiata. Ko te KUPU TAUTATA⁵⁷ o te kupu ‘korihi’, ko te ata. Inā rā kua taupokina te pōuriuri, ‘takiri mai te ata, korihi te manu’ (Williams, 2002: 142), ā, ka awatea. Ko te ARONGA ANŌ⁵⁸ pea o te kupu ‘korihi’, kua puta mai i te pouri i te rongonga o te tangi a te manu. Ka tāruatia ngā kupu ‘tiu’, ‘korihi’ hei whakaū pea i te KARERE e tūmanakotia ana kia pēnei te reo Māori. Kia hoki mai anō ki te ao mārama aua āhuatanga reo, kia rōreka te hoki mai o te kaikōrero me te kōrero ki te ao awatea. Mā reira e tahuri atu ai ko ngā raruraru reo ki te pō. Kei te HUAHUATAU whakamutunga ‘ngā manu o te wao’ e kī ana tērā pea ki te whāia tāna ka tini anō ngā manu o te wao, inā, ka tini anō ngā kaikōrero o te ao. Mā te aha i tēnā.

⁵⁷ collocation

⁵⁸ connotation

Te Whakaahua 9.3: Ngā Tūmomo Kīpeha kei *Te Aumangea*

He Kīpeha <i>Figures of Speech</i>	Whakapākehā <i>Translation</i>	Tauira <i>Examples</i>
Kīpeha Whakatangi	<i>Figures of Sound</i>	
Kupu huarite	<i>rhyme</i>	‘urutapu/ururua ⁵⁹ , tīhau/ahau, taiko/pōkaikaha’
Kupu ororite	<i>onomatopoeia</i>	‘Tūpapahū, kurupākara, pekī, tīhau, ketekete’
Orokati tārua	<i>alliteration</i>	‘kia korihi mai anō ko te kōparapara’
Oropuare tārua	<i>assonance</i>	te ‘a’, ‘kurupākara ana tērā te māra a Tāne’; te ‘o’, ‘korihi-anō-ko-kōparapara’
Orokati tārua kē Tāruarua	<i>consonance</i> <i>repetition</i>	‘kia kōkī kia ketekete mai anō ko te kākā’ ‘koutou, Tāne, kore, kei hea? manu, tiu, korihi’
Kīpeha Whakawhere	<i>Rhetorical Figures</i>	
Ui makihoi	<i>rhetorical question</i>	Kei hea?
Kupu tārara	<i>parallelism</i>	‘o te’ + momo rākau, ‘i te’ + momo tangi, ‘kua kore nei’ + momo rere, ‘me kapo’ + ko te
Kupu tātoru	<i>triplication</i>	kupu āhua + ‘ana’; ‘aku’ + momo manu; ‘kia’ + momo tangi + mai anō + momo manu; e + momo mahi + anō ai
Kupu tauaro	<i>antithesis</i>	‘tipu/hinganga, manu kaewa/manu tīriori, pōkaikaha/pūaotanga, hinganga/tū, tōtara/māhuri’
Kupu hākiki Kupu raweke	<i>irony</i> <i>pun</i>	‘kurupākara ana... i te pekī, i te tīhau.. kua kore’ ‘urutapu’
Kīpeha Huatau	<i>Figures of Thought</i>	
Huahuatau	<i>metaphor</i>	‘aumangea, hau kino, manu, rākau’
Huahuatau roa	<i>extended metaphor</i>	<i>manu</i> : ‘manu tīriori, manu taki, manu taiko, kāhui, manu kaewa, kākā, kōparapara, manu o te wao, me ngā tangi, me ngā koringa a ngā manu; <i>rākau</i> : ‘te wao tapu nui a Tāne, kahikatoa, tōtara haemata, te māra a Tāne, tū, māhuri.’
Kīwaha	<i>idiom</i>	‘tērā pea’
Kupu hautanga	<i>metonymy</i>	‘aumangea’
Tairitenga	<i>analogy</i>	ko te ngarotanga o ngā manu, o ngā rākau, ko te hekenga o te reo Māori; he tairitenga ki te tangihanga
Tohutoro	<i>allusion</i>	‘te māra a Tāne mō te tangi a te manu takitini i te ata; āki mō te ārai raru; urutapu mō Tāne’
Tohu	<i>symbol</i>	ko ngā manu tīriori, ko ngā whītiki o te kī; ko ngā manu kaewa, ko ngā pipī paopao i te kī; ko te whenua tūpāpahu, ko te koringa ngākau pea

⁵⁹ He huarite haurua: half rhyme.

9.4 He Taunga Whakaaro mō *Te Aumangea*

Ki te wetewetea *Te Aumangea*, tērā ka kitea kua eke taumata tiketike te āhua o tēnei waiata. Mai i te Aronga ā-iwi, ki te kaupapa, ā, tae noa ki te whakatakoto i te kupu kei reira te mahi a te whakaaro Māori, te hanga a te tikanga Māori, te maha a te reo peha.

He tirohanga tino Māori i *Te Aumangea* i te mea he tairitenga tonu ki te taiao. Ko Tūhoe tētehi iwi kei te mōhio ki te mātauranga o te ngahere, ā, kei ngā kupu waiata aua whakaaro e mau ana. Āe pea, he tika te tirohanga ā-iwi, ā, he nui ngā kōrero kei tēnei waiata. I te mea he kaupapa mō te reo Māori ka tino whai pānga ki te ngākau Māori. He kaupapa nui rawa atu kia noho mai te poureo hei whakaruruhau mā te tangata e ako ana i te reo Māori. Koia hoki te tikanga o te tapanga, *Te Aumangea*. Kia tokomaha kē atu ērā o ngā tāngata matatau rawa atu ki te reo me ōna tikanga.

I te mea hoki ka taunga a Tīmoti ki te reo poroporoaki, e kīkī ana *Te Aumangea* i taua momo reo. He hokinga mahara tonu ki tērā wā, he tokomaha ngā rangatira. Ka rangona e te kaipānui, e te kaiwhakarongo te tangi a Tīmoti i a ia e mōteatea ana mō aua momo tāngata kua riro ki te pō. Ā, ko aua pūkenga reo ka ngaro whakaoti atu. Heoi, kia kua noa e waiho te whakaminenga ki te pōuriuri, ka kīia e Tīmoti i roto i āna kupu waiata, tērā pea he wā ka tū mai ētehi anō rangatira ki te whakakōkiri i te reo.

E whai nei ētehi whakataunga whakaaro mō te waiata tino rerehua nei. He rerenga kōrero hei whakarāpopoto i ngā whakaaro o tēnei Wāhanga. He mea hāngai tonu ki ngā mātāpono i matapakina i te Wāhanga Tuawhitu, ā, koia hei arataki whakaaro i kounga ai tēnei o ngā momo-kōrero. Āe rā, he tohunga reo a Tīmoti Kāretu nāna nei i whakahī ake tēnei o ngā waiata ātaahua hei whakarongo, hei pānui mā tātou e kōingo nei ki te reo Māori. Ko āna kupu e mau ana te wehi.

Te Whakaahua 9.4: He Take ka Whaihua Tēnei Waiata Tangi

He Mātāpono

He taukītanga⁶⁰ mō *Te Aumangea*

Te Aronga ā-iwi	He aroro tino Māori i runga i ngā HUAHUATAU ARORO. inā, HE MANU TE RANGATIRA, HE MANU TE KAIKŌRERO, HE RĀKAU TE RANGATIRA. Heoi, HE MOMO MANU TE TANGATA MATATAU KI TE REO MĀORI, HE MOMO MANU ANŌ TE TANGATA AKO I TE REO MĀORI.
Te Kaupapa Māori	He kaupapa nui ngā kaikōrero matatau - ko rātou te taumata. Ka whai kiko te kaupapa i ngā tauira a Tīmoti; ka kore te kaikōrero matatau, ka kore take ngā kaikōrero e ako tonu ana i te reo. Ki te kore e aroa tauakaupapa, ka memeha te mauri ora o te reo Māori.
Te Pūtaketanga	Tā te waiata tangi he tuku i te mātetea, ka ea tērā i <i>Te Aumangea</i> . He reo poroporoaki tonu. Ko te horopaki, ko tētehi māngai e haku haku ana ki ngā manukura kua moe hei arataki i ngā pīpī heihei. Ko te pūtaketanga pea ko te mōteatea ki te āhua o te reo kua moe hoki me rātou.
Te Rongo ā-ngākau	Ahakoia ka rongo te ngākau i te ihi o Tīmoti, ā, mau ana ko te wehi ki āna kupu, me mōhio hoki pea ki te rangi, ki te tangi tonu, ki te piki, ki te heke, ki te rere kia tino wana ai. Mā reira e tino uru te rongo o te ngākau ki te wairua o tēnei waiata.
Te Reo ā-iwi, ā-kaupapa	He nui ngā kupu mō te waonui, he kupu ā-iwi pea nō roto i a Tūhoe. I te mea ka huaina ngā tangi o ngā manu, he whakatairanga hoki tērā i te kaupapa reo. He reo rāpopoto, he reo peha, he reo whakatairite.
Te Reo Peha Māori	He nui te whakamahia o tēnei mea te kīpeha. Ko ētehi kīpeha whakawhere a Tīmoti ko te kupu taurite tātoru, ko te kupu tārara, ko te tātoru. I te mea he huahuatau roa, āe rā, ko te huahuatau te mea matua o te huinga kīpeha huatau. Mō te kīpeha whakatangi, tērā ko te tāruarua, ko te kupu orokati tārua, ko te kupu ororite hei whakaū i tā Tīmoti i tangi ai.
Te Takotoranga Māori	He tino Māori ngā rerenga kōrero. He kupu mahi ingoa, he <i>relative clauses</i> . He tau te takoto o te kupu. He kīanga rāwekeweke.
Te Momo-Kōrero	E kore pea te whakaminenga e nui te rongo i tēnei momo waiata me ōna tairitenga roa rawa. He rawe te ngako o tēnei waiata, ka tino whai kiko i ngā whakaaro mō ngā rangatira.
Te Tikanga Māori	Ko te hanganga o te waiata nei, he āhua rite ki ngā rā o te tangihanga. E toru ngā whiti tangi, he mea pouri hei te tuawhā ka puta ki te ao mārama. He rawe te raupapatanga o ngā whakaaro Kei te whai pea te taera o tēnei waiata i te reo poroporoaki.
Te Momo-Kōrero Whaihua	I whai hua rawa atu tēnei waiata; i toa i te whakataetae kapa ā-motu o te tau 1994. Ehara kau mō te hunga matatau anake tēnei waiata, mō te hunga hoki e kaingākau ana ki te reo. Inā kē te taumata reo o tēnei waiata. He reo mōteatea tonu, he iti te kupu, he nui te kōrero, heoi ki te mōhiohia he tairitenga, ka mārama ake pea te whai i te aronga.

⁶⁰ statements

9.5 He Ine-kounga

Inā noa atu ngā tikanga rau o tō tātou nei reo Māori mēnā ka aroā te tikanga o ngā kupu o ngā momo-kōrero. He aroā hōhonu nei. Koia ngā anga kīpeha. He ara aroā. Ki te pānuihia aua nuka o te reo, ā, ka mau ki te ngākau, kua rerekē rawa atu tō tirohanga atu ki ngā huanga ka rangona, ki ngā tuhinga ka pānuitia. I te mea he reo peha te reo Māori, mā te mōhio ki ngā kīpeha, ko te whakapae, ka tino nui kē atu tō aroā ki te kaupapa kōrero. Me kī, mai i aua anga kīpeha kua whakaaturia ki tēnei rangahau ka tau te mōhiotanga, arā noa atu, arā noa atu te hōhonutanga o tō tātou nei reo Māori. Ā, he hōhonutanga e mau ana i ētehi kupu itiiti. Me te whakamihi ki aua tohunga reo e mau tonu nei ki taua āheinga ki te whiu i te kupu, ki te takoto i te kupu, ki te whakatau i te kupu, ki te whakairo i te kupu.

Kua kitea i tēnei wāhanga ko Tīmoti Kāretu tērā. Ko *Te Aumangea* tētehi tauiratanga o tā te tohunga reo whakatakoto i te kupu. Te nui hoki o te reo peha kei roto i te waiata-ā-ringa nā Tīmoti. Engari rā, e hia kē te rahinga o ngā kupu peha i taua waiata? Kua whāia tētehi huarahi hei whakautu i taua pātai, ka mutu, ka whakairia atu *Te Aumangea* ki runga i tētehi ine-kounga, tērā ka kite he aha tētehi anō take he tau kē taua waiata.

Nā, e rua ngā wehewehenga o te reo Māori: He TUMU⁶¹, he PUNGA⁶² (Biggs, 1990: 2). E meatia ana e Biggs ‘E rua ngā wāhanga o te kīanga Māori: he tūrīto, he pūrohe. Ko te tūrīto e meinga ana hei pou kīanga, kei a ia te tikanga nui o te whakaaro’(reira tonu: 2) Kei ngā tumu te nui o te tikanga. E tohea ana mēnā he reo peha, he reo kounga; ā, he reo more, he reo maroke. Mai i aua pūtaketanga whakaaro, nei rā ētehi taukītanga kōrero:

- Ka taea te kaute ngā tumu i roto i tētehi momo-kōrero (x).
- Me te wehewehe mēnā he kupu peha rānei, he kupu more rānei i roto i te horopaki o te momo-kōrero.
- Nā, ki te tangohia ngā kupu more (y) mai i te huinga tumu (x), koia ko te huinga kupu peha (z).

⁶¹ bases

⁶² particles

- $\bar{A}$, ka wehea te kupu peha (z) ki te huinga tumu(x) koia te wāhanga (w) o te katoa (1) o ngā tumu e whai reo peha ana.
- $\bar{A}$, ki te whakareatia te wāhanga ki te 100, ka puta te ōrau o te reo peha (K) o te momo-kōrero.

E pēnei kē ana aua taukītanga kōrero ki te reo pāngarau, arā, he whārite ine-kounga.

Te Whakaahua 9.5: He Whārite Ine-kounga

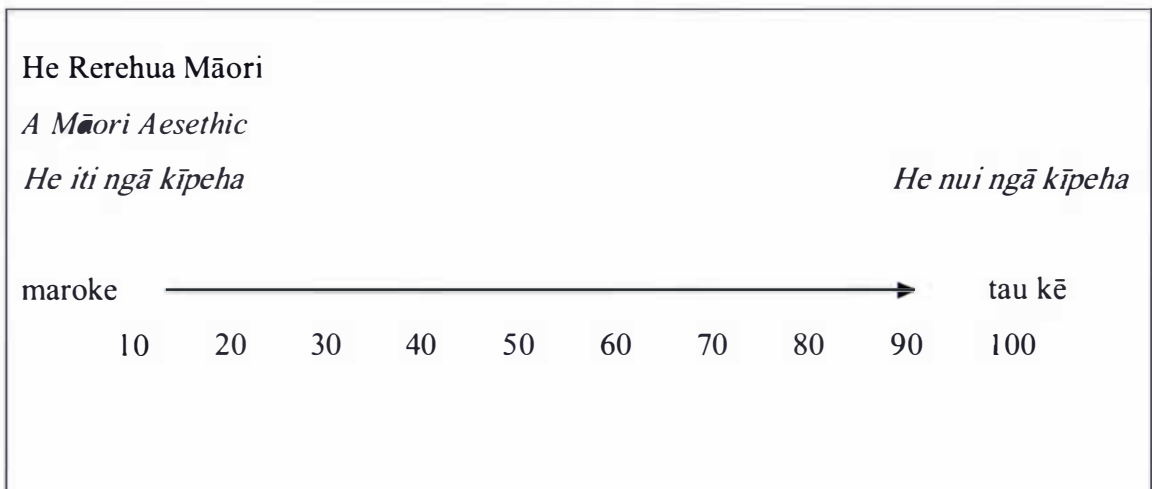
An equation to measure the percentage of figurative language of a text type

$$\begin{aligned}x - y &= z \\z \div x &= w \\w \times 100 &= K\end{aligned}$$

Nā, i runga i te whakaaro, he reo peha, he reo kounga, ka taea taua ōrau te whakairi ake ki runga i tētehi ine-kounga. Koia hei whakaatu i te rerehua o tētehi momo-kōrero ihiihi.⁶³ Tērā ka kitea mēnā he maroke te momo-kōrero, he tau kē rānei.

Te Whakaahua 9.6: He Ine-Kounga

A measure of quality



Ki te whai i taua whārite ine-kounga mō *Te Aumangea*, e pēnei ana te ōrau o te reo peha i taua waiata ā-ringa - kia tāpirihia, kia tangohia rānei te rima ōrau. Kei te Whakaahua 9.8 ngā mahinga wānanga mō ngā tumu:

⁶³ expressive text types

Te Whārite Ine-Kounga

$$\begin{aligned}x - y &= z \\z \div x &= w \\w \times 100 &= K\end{aligned}$$

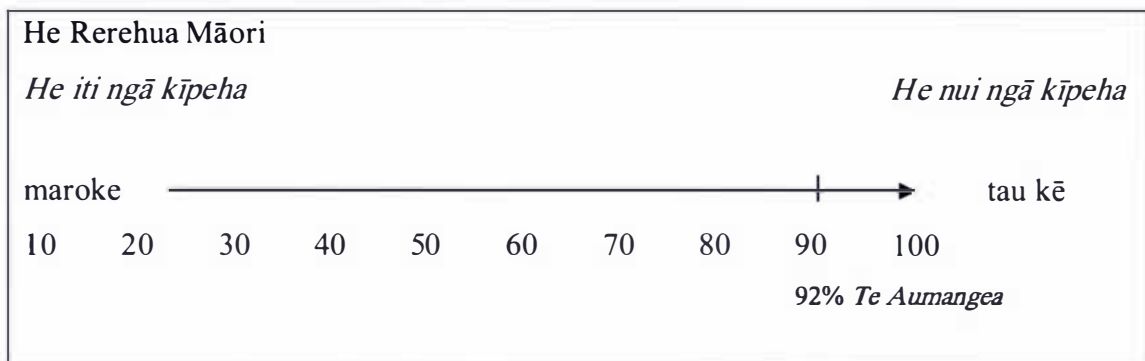
Te Ōrau o ngā Kupu Peha o *Te Aumangea*

$$\begin{aligned}74 - 6 &= 68 \\68 \div 74 &= .92 \\\cdot 92 \times 100 &= 92\%\end{aligned}$$

Arā, x = te rahinga o ngā tumu;
y = te rahinga o ngā kupu more;
z = te rahinga o ngā kupu peha;
w = te wāhanga o te katoa e whai reo peha ana;
K = te ōrau o te reo peha o te momo-kōrero.

Nō reira, kia whakairia taua ōrau ki runga i te ine-kounga, tērā ka kite i tētehi āhuatanga mīharo rawa atu mō *Te Aumangea*.

Te Whakaahua 9.7: He Kounga Rawa Atu *Te Aumangea*



Heoi anō rā, e meatia ana he more ēnei kupu i ēnei kīanga⁶⁴:

Rārangi 16 Kia pātai noa ahau
Rārangi 27 me kapo ko te mahara
Rārangi 28 me kapo ko te kupu

Engari pea kāore e taea te kapo i te mahara, i te kupu rānei! Ka mutu, he kupu tārara te takoto o te kupu. Mēnā he kupu peha kē aua kupu, e pēnei kē ana te ine i te kounga:

$$74 - 2 = 72 \div 74 = .97 \times 100 = 97\%$$

Arā ake, e 97% o taua waiata he kupu whakarite tonu! Āe rā, he waiata huahuatau roa rawa atu. Heoi ahakoa e 92 ōrau, e 97 ōrau rānei, he ekenga taumata kē tērā mā te hunga e whai ana kia whakatīmoti i ā rātou hīnga kōrero! Āe, kei runga noa atu tēnei waiata ā-ringa, he waiata e kikī rawa atu ana i te reo peha. Ka mutu, āe tūturu, he waiata mātātuhi tonu.

⁶⁴ He more hoki ngā tūpou o ngā rārangi 2-3, 'koutou'?

Te Whakaahua 9.8: Ngā Kupu Peha o *Te Aumangea*

	Kupu Waiata	Tumu	
	E koutou, e te aumangea	2	
	Kei hea koutou hei āki	3	
	i ngā hau kino o te wā?	3	
	I te wao tapu nui a Tāne,	4	
5.	Urutapu ana, ururua ana,	2	
	matomato ana,	1	
	Te tipu mai o te kahikatoa,	2	
	o te tōtara haemata	2	
	Nō te hinganga,	1	
10.	tūpapahū ana te whenua	2	
	Ka kore koutou kei hea	3	
	he taunga mō te manu kaewa?	3	
		28	
	Kurupākara ana tērā te māra a Tāne	4	
	I te pekī, i te tīhau a ngā manu	3	
15.	Kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa	4	
	Kia pātai noa ahau,	2	reo more (2)
	kei hea aku manu tīoriori,	3	
	Aku manu taki, aku manu taiko	4	
	i te kāhui e pōkaikaha nei?	2	
		22	
20.	Auē! Kia tīoriori noa mai	2	
	ko te manu	1	
	Kia kōkī, kia ketekete mai anō	2	
	ko te kākā	1	
	Kia korihi mai anō ko te kōparapara	2	
25.	i te pūaotanga o te rā	2	
	Te tangi kau nei te mapu.	2	
		12	
	Tērā pea me kapo ko te mahara,	3	reo more ⁶⁵ (2)
	me kapo ko te kupu	2	reo more (2)
	Mā reira e tū mai anō ai he māhuri	3	
30.	E tiu anō ai, e korihi anō ai	2	
	Ngā manu o te wao.	2	
		12	
		74 tumu (x)	
		6 kupu more (y)	

⁶⁵ He kīwaha: 'tērā pea'

9.6 Te Whakarāpopoto Kōrero

Kua rukua tētehi o ngā titonga a Tīmoti i tā te tuhituhi ruku. Ko tā tēnei wāhanga he whakaatu i tētehi huarahi mō te TĀTARI MĀTĀTUHI⁶⁶ me te arotake i te REREHUA⁶⁷ o tētehi momo-kōrero. Kua āta hikoia taua huarahi hei tūhura i te reo kia kitea mai ai ngā REHUREHUTANGA O TE REO⁶⁸ o tā te kaitito whakatakoto i te kupu⁶⁹. Inā rā pea he pāpaku pea te matapakina ā-wahatia a ētehi arero Māori i tēnei waiata, tērā ka kīia noatia, ‘Āe, he pai tērā waiata ki a au’ me te kore arotake he aha i pai ai. He āwhina tēnei tū titiro kei tēnei Wāhanga hei whakaruku i tō tātou mōhiotanga ki te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa. Mā te whakakupu tonu i ētehi āhuatanga reo e taunga ai ki ngā aroro me ngā WHAKANAKONAKOTANGA⁷⁰ o te reo. Heoi, mō te kaiako, mō te ākonga, mō te tangata ako reo rānei, tērā pea ki te kapo noa i tētehi o ngā kīpeha nei hei whakamārama i te rerenga kōrero kotahi o tētehi titonga, he hōhonu kē atu tērā i te whakaaro pāpaku, ‘Āe, he pai tērā’. Ka mutu, ehara rawa i te mea me horomi te ākonga i tēnei whatu mātauranga kei rāoa. Heoi, hei kaupapa wānanga hei rau atu ki roto i te kete aronui tiki atu ai i ētehi anō wā.

Tērā pea ka kitea he uaua te pānui i ētehi anō wā i te nui o ngā kupu hou, o ngā whakaaro hou. Kia ahatia. Koia tā te tuhinga whare wānanga TAERA⁷¹, REO⁷² hoki, ā, he hiahia nōku ki te ruku ki roto i ngā āhuatanga reo e kouna ai tētehi momo-kōrero. Kua ea tērā pātai rangahau i tēnei Wāhanga. Ā, kua whānau noa mai tētehi rēhita hou, he rēhita tātari momo-kōrero. Ki te whai mai tētehi anō kairangahau, tērā ka māmā ake te whai. Ki te kai mai rānei ētehi anō waha Māori i ngā kupu, kua whai hua pea te rangahau. Heoi anō rā, mā te hāpori tonu e whakaaro mēnā he pūtaketanga tō ngā KUPU Ā-KAUPAPA⁷³ nei, he KUPU TITOTITO⁷⁴ noa rānei.

Ka mutu, kua kitea i te wetewetenga te hōhonu hoki o ngā whakaaro kei ngā kupu itiiti o tēnei waiata ā-ringa. Ko te mea mīharo rawa atu mō *Te Aumangea*, kei reira

⁶⁶ literary criticism

⁶⁷ aesthetical

⁶⁸ language nuances

⁶⁹ poetic licence

⁷⁰ intricacies

⁷¹ style

⁷² register: ko te tuhinga whare wānanga te momo tuhinga kikī rawa i te kupu ā-kaupapa.

⁷³ technical words

⁷⁴ nonce words: mō tētehi kaupapa kotahi anake, kātahi ka makere atu.

tētehi tohungatanga reo me uaua ka kitea, ka rangona i ēnei rā. I te mutunga iho tērā ka kitea e tika ana pea kia tapaina ko Tīmoti tētehi o aua momo o taua huinga e mōteatea nei ia. He manu tioriori. He manu taki. He manu taiko. Āe, he manukura. Tērā pea he pērā rawa te ngau, te kuku o te ngākau o Tīmoti ki taua hunga e tino matatau nei ka riro ki tua o te pae i runga i te mea, āna ko rātou hei āhurutanga i te ao Māori, engari ia, ko rātou hoki hei hoa kōrerorero tonu mōna. Mehemea he pērā rawa te matatau i te tipua reo, ānō nei he kāhu kōrako e kē ana i te ātea; kātahi rawa atu te ao maroke inā he pārerā apu paru noa iho hei kōrerotanga māu. Āna, ‘Te tangi kau nei te mapu...’ Te ranginamu hoki o ngā kōrero o te waiata ā-ringa nei a Tīmoti, nā reira ka tika rā pea kia whakairia ake *Te Aumangea* ki te whare kōrero e kīia nei ko te MĀTĀTUHI MĀORI⁷⁵.

⁷⁵ canon of Māori written literature

TE WĀHANGA TUANGAHURU

He Whakakitenga, He Taunga Whakaaro

Kaua e tukua kia memeha noa ngā taonga kōrero.

Ngoi Pēwhairangi¹

Ko te reo Māori, ki tōku nei whakaaro, te pūtake o te Māoritanga.
Ka kore i a koutou te reo, ka awhi noa mai i waho, kāore e uru rewā
[rawa] ki roto.

Koro Dewes²

10.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

10.2 He Reo Hou: Me Aro Nui ki te Whānuitanga o te Momo-Kōrero.

10.3 He Reo Wānanga: Mā te Tātari Āhuatanga Reo e Kitea ai te Kōunga

10.4 He Reo Rerehua: Mā te Reo Peha e Kōunga ai te Reo Māori

10.5 He Reo nō te Horopaki: Mā te Wā, mā te Wāhi, mā te Tangata e Tohutohu

10.6 He Reo Rangatira: Ki te Ora te Reo, me Rangatira te Whakaora

10.7 He Reo ā-Hāpori: He Whakawhanaunga, he Whakamanene

10.8 Te Whakarāpopoto Tuhinga Kairangi

¹ Williams, H. (1995: 2)

² Mahuta, R.T.K. (1974: 94)

10.1 Te Kupu Whakataki

Tērā te wā ka rewa ko te kohu
Kitea te ataamai o te maunga,
Kei runga kei te Ngutu o te Manu. Ā-ha-hā!
Titoko ki te Waru e-e-e Riwaru
Ka tū ka riri, ka tū ka nguha! Ā-ha-hā!
Pākia e te hau! Karawhiua e te ua!
E kore rawa rā e hemo e mate!
Te Kākano i ruia mai i Rangiatea...

Koia nei te ngeri nā Huirangi Waikerepuru i whakahī mai hei whakaoti ake i te tīmatanga kōrero i tūwhera ai i te pukapuka a Ruka Broughton, *Ngā Mahi Whakaari a Titokowaru* (1993). Kia taea ai te ruku i te hōhonutanga o tēnei ngeri me mōhio te tangata ki ngā kōrero o mua mō Titokowaru. Waihoki, kei te rerenga tuatahi e mea ana he wā tōna ka hikina te kohu, ka kitea pea ko te māramatanga. Koia hoki tā tēnei tuhinga rangahau. E tohe ana kia tirohia ngā āhuatanga reo o tētehi momo-kōrero ‘tērā te wā ka rewa ko te kohu’ kātahi ka kitea te aronga nui o te momo-kōrero.

Ahakoa he momo-kōrero kē atu tēnei ngeri i te waiata-ā-ringa i tātaritia i Te Wāhanga Tuaiwa, he āhuatanga ōrite kei aua waiata e rua. He tairitenga tonu ki te taiao. Me te mea hoki he tini ngā tohutoro, ngā kupu tārara, ngā kupu tāruarua, ngā whakatauākī kei tēnei ngeri e takoto ana. Āe, he reo peha hoki tō tēnei ngeri. Nā, ko te kaupapa o tēnei ngeri, ahakoa rā ngā tukitukitanga ki te ao Māori, e kore rā e mate. He pērā pea me te reo Māori. Ahakoa ka pākia e te hau kino o te wā, ka ora tonu tēnei reo i ruia mai i Rāngiātea. Engari, he ora pēwhea nei? Kia hoki noa ake ki tā Miria Simpson i kī ai i te Wāhanga Tuatahi, inā ka ora te reo, me rangatira te whakaora mai. Ko tētehi tohenga nui o tēnei tuhinga mō te whakarangatira i tō tātou reo Māori, me aro nui ki ētehi āhuatanga reo kia tutuki ai i tā Miria i kī rā. E tika ana kia haere tonu te matapakinga o taua whakaaro ki konei.

Ko te kaupapa matua o tēnei tuhinga: kia rangatira tonu te reo Māori, me mātau te tangata ki ētehi tino āhuatanga reo. Ko ngā pātai rangahau i taka mai i ngā āhuatanga reo e pēnei ana:

1. He aha ngā momo-kōrero kei te reo Māori?
2. Me pēhea e whakamahere ai i ngā momo-kōrero?
3. Me pēhea e kouna ai te momo-kōrero Māori?

E ono ngā kaupapa ka matapakina ki tēnei whakakitenga, whakakapinga kōrero mō aua pātai.

1. He Reo Hou: Me aro nui ki te whānuitanga o te momo-kōrero.
2. He Reo Wānanga: Me aro nui ki ngā āhuatanga reo e kitea ai te kouna.
3. He Reo Rerehua: Mā te reo peha e kouna ai te reo Māori.
4. He Reo nō te Horopaki: Kei te tangata te whiriwhiri ko ēhea aroro reo hei whakarākei i te momo-kōrero.
5. He Reo Rangatira: Ki te ora te reo, me rangatira te whakaora.
6. He Reo ā-Hāpori: He Whakawhanaunga, he Whakamanene

Tērā ka rangona te whakahau a ngā ihumanea reo Māori e kī ana: Me whakangākau tō reo! Me whakawairua tō reo! Me Māori tō reo! Me te areare tonu atu o te ihupuku reo me te whakaaro nui, āe, āe, engari me pēwhea rā e Māori ai tōku nei reo? Kua ea tētehi wāhanga nui hei āwhina mā rātou e hiahia ana ki te whakapiki i tō rātou reo Māori ki tētehi anō taumata. Ko runga i te whakapae matua o tēnei rangahau, he āhuatanga reo me mōhio te arero Māori kia eke panuku ai tōna reo ki taumata kē. Ko te whāinga, kia hoatu hoki he rautaki reo kia tau tōna reo Māori ki te ngākau, ki te taringa, ki te hinengaro o te whakaminenga. Ka mutu, ka tohea ki tā te Māori titiro he mea nui rawa atu te reo peha hei whakakouna i te reo Māori, i te mea mā te mōhio ki te reo peha ka whakairo i te pikitia ki te hinengaro o te whakaminenga. Mā reira e pupuritia ai te mauri ora o te reo o ō tātou mātua tūpuna. Kia kīia tonutia he kuru pounamu te reo Māori.

E whakapono ana ko te mātauranga reo pēnei i te momo-kōrero, i ngā mātāpono mātātuhi, mātākōrero, i te kīpeha, me te tini o ngā aroro reo kei te tuhinga nei hei āwhina nui mā te hunga ako i te reo Māori. I mua rā pea i te wā he tokomaha kē atu ngā tāngata matatau kāore pea he take o tētehi tuhinga pēnei, inā mā te whakarongo,

mā te titiro, mā te kōrero ka mau. Heoi, i te korenga o te aumangea hei arataki i a tātou, nei rā tētehi atu huarahi hei takahanga waewae mā te hunga hiakai e hīkoi nei i te ara o te reo Māori. Ka mutu, e whai nei i te pae tawhiti-o-kounga-nui kia tata.

Ki te uia mai he pai aha tō tēnei rangahau mō te mātauranga Māori, ko te whakautu, he takoha nui hei whakatupu i tētehi peka o te reo kāore anō kia pakari te tupu. Arā, hei whakaara ake i tētehi anō huarahi mō te reo Māori. Tērā kua kaha te rangahaua o te hoputanga o te reo, ka tahī; ko ngā waiaro o te iwi ki te reo, ka rua; ko te mōhio ki te kōrero/te whakamahia o te reo Māori, ka toru. Heoi, he itiiti noa iho ngā rangahau mō ngā āhuatanga reo e kounga ai tētehi kōrero. Koia rā te houtanga o tēnei rangahau. He tuitui i aua aroro reo ki tētehi wāhi kotahi me te āta whakamārama haere i tēnā āhuatanga reo, i tēnā āhuatanga reo e whakarākeitia ai te reo Māori ki tētehi taumata kē. He rau aroha, me kī.

Ko tētehi āhuatanga nui o te rangahau ine i te kounga, kia mutu rā anō tāu nā pānuitanga o tētehi rangahau, kua rerekē tō titiro atu ki taua kaupapa haere ake nei, ā, mō ake tonu atu. He pēnei i tēnei tuhinga kairangi. Ki te mātai iho i ngā kupu kīpeha, i ngā whakaaro reo, i ngā mahere reo o roto i tēnei tuhinga, tērā ka kitea inā noa kē atu te whānuitanga, te hōhonutanga, te tiketiketanga o te reo Māori. Nā, koia hoki pea tētehi o ngā whāinga nui o tēnei tuhinga. He whakaikeike i te reo Māori.

10.2. He Reo Hou: Me Aro Nui ki te Whānuitanga o te Momo-Kōrero

Ko tētehi take nui o tēnei rangahau; i te noho wehewehe te rangahaua, te tāia, te whakarārangihia, ā, tērā pea te whakaakona hoki o ngā momo-kōrero Māori i roto tonu i te reo Māori. Nā whai anō tēnei i whakahau ai, me hanga he pūnaha momo-kōrero e whakatōpūtia ai ngā momo-kōrero Māori whānui rawa kia kore ai e ngaro ngā taonga kōrero nei. Koia hei āwhina mā ngā kairangahau, mā ngā kaiwhakaputa pukapuka, mā ngā pouako, mā wai atu, mā wai atu. He whakamaumahara, he whakatō whakaaro.

I te Wāhanga Tuarua ka whakaaturia ētehi o ngā mea uaua mō te whakarārangi momo-kōrero Māori i ngā kaupapa mātauranga. I te Wāhanga Tuatoru ka kitea he whānui kē atu ngā momo-kōrero atu i te horopaki mātauranga. Ā, he nui hoki ngā uauatanga inā ka whakamahia taua whakarārangi hei tātai momo-kōrero e whakatōpū nei i ngā momo-kōrero maha a te Māori. Ko ngā tauira o mua rā anō, ko ngā tauira o tata ake nei. Heoi anō rā, anei e whakarāpopoto nei ētehi o ngā take matua mō te tātai momo-kōrero Māori.

Nā, kua ea i te whakatinanatanga mai o ngā mahere reo ētehi o ngā pātai rangahau mai i te Wāhanga Tuatoru ki te Wāhanga Tuarima. Ko te whakahuinga o ngā momo-kōrero me te whakatakoto ki ngā mahere momo-kōrero. Heoi anō rā, he nui kē atu ngā mahere momo-kōrero i tāku i whakaaro ai i te tīmatanga o tēnei rangahau. He nui kē atu hoki ngā tū momo-kōrero. He mea nui ngā mahere rā hei kaupapa whakamaharatanga mā te haporī reo Māori. Otirā, he āwhina tēnei wāhanga o te rangahau: mā rātou e mahi ana i ngā kaupapa here mō te reo; mā rātou e tuku ana i te ratonga; mā te kiritahi rānei.

Ko tā te tātai momo-kōrero he whakaatu i te whānuitanga o ngā momo kōrero o te reo Māori o ēnei rā. He whānui ngā kaupapa i ēnei rā, he whānui hoki ngā momo-kōrero Māori ka puta. Hei tauira, ko te pāpāho, ko te kura, ko te whare wānanga me ngā momo-kōrero maha e putaputa ana i tēnā kaupapa, i tēnā kaupapa hei āpiti atu ki ngā momo-kōrero Māori taketake nei. Ko te mea nui, kia haere tonu te whakamōmona i te whakarārangi i te Āpitianga 1 kia riro mā tēnā kura wānanga hei hanga i tētehi

tātai momo-kōrero e mau ai te huhua o ngā momo-kōrero Māori e hāngai pū ana ki a rātou.

Inā rā, ko rātou kei te hanga kaupapa mō te marautanga mō te reo Māori e tika ana pea kia aro nui ki te whānuitanga o ngā momo-kōrero me te whakahāngai i aua momo-kōrero ki tēnā taumata, ki tēnā taumata. Kua kī kē mai ētehi e mahi ana i te tānga rauemi he āwhina aua mahere momo-kōrero i a rātou e whakarite mahi ana. Waihoki, he āwhina pea mā te kaiako ki te kukume mai i ētehi anō momo-kōrero ki roto i te akomanga. Arā, he whānui rawa atu pea ngā momo-kōrero e taea ana te nanao atu mō roto i ngā kura reo. Ki te ako noa i ngā mea e mōhio pū ana te kaiwhāngai i te reo, kātahi pea ka maroke ngā akomanga. Kei te Whakaahua 10.1 e whai nei ētehi pātai hei whakamahi i ngā momo-kōrero ki rō akomanga. Hei tauira noa i tā Bloom whakatakoto i ngā tukanga whakaaro. I pēnei ai kia whai i tā Christensen (2004: 426-439) i tana papakupu mō te whakamahi i te reo Pāngarau, heoi, koia hei whakamahi i te reo Māori mō te kaupapa nei, te reo Māori. Hei whakaarotanga noa mō te marautanga reo Māori, mō tētehi papakupu reo Māori rānei. Inā noa atu te whānuitanga o te reo Māori.

Ko tētehi tohe nui mō tēnei aroro reo, mō te momo-kōrero, he tino whai wāhi ki te kaupapa reo matatini, ā, ka tautoko mai ngā kaiako i torona atu. Ka kitea e tika ana kia nui tonu ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te akomanga kia pai ai te ako i ngā pūkenga o te tuhituhi, o te pānui, o te kōrero, o te whakarongo. Waihoki, ehara i te mea kei tētehi kaupapa kotahi ngā momo-kōrero e takoto ana, e tuia ana ki roto i te marau reo Māori, i te pūtaiao, i te hangarau, i te toi, i hea atu anō rānei. Mā te tātai momo-kōrero e huri ai te aro o ngāi pouako kia hāro te titiro, kia kaua rawa e rite te titiro ki tā te kiwi. He whāiti rawa, he kāpō. Otirā, mutu ana te ākonga i te kura, he momo-kōrero atu anō pea me mau i a ia ki te whakaputa i tana ihu ki te kimi mahi. He āwhina anō hoki pea te tātai momo-kōrero kia whakaarohia te hononga o tētehi wāhi ki tētehi atu wāhi; hei tauira, mai i te kura ki te mahi.

He whai wāhi hoki te huinga momo-kōrero ki te arero Māori taipakeke nei e whakapakari ana i tōna ake reo Māori. E meatia ana ki te Wāhanga Tuawhitu he pūtaketaanga mō ia momo-kōrero. Ki te mōhiotia aua pūtaketaanga, tērā ka whai tūranga atu te kiritahi ki roto i te haporī reo Māori. Inā, mā te tangata i a ia e

whakapakari haere ana i tōna ake reo e whiriwhiri ko ēhea ngā momo-kōrero e hāngai pū ana ki a ia hei rau atu ki roto i tāna kete. He kete momo-kōrero e mau ana i reira ngā mea tawhito me ngā mea o nāianeī hei kawenga atu māna ki tēnā horopaki, ki tēnā horopaki o te haporī hei whakarangatira i te kaupapa. Ka mutu, kia tū rangatira ko ia i roto i ngā mahi a te iwi. Me kī, he mana tō ngā kōrero ōkawa.

Nā, e tika ana pea kia ōrite te whakaingoa o ngā momo-kōrero ki ngā kaupapa ā-motu. Ko ētehi o ngā ingoa, ahakoa he rite tonu te momo, he rerekē te ingoa, ina te pepe takimanawa me te takawiri arero. Kei rangirua ngā ākongā. Ko te take pea, he ingoa kē atu anō ā te iwi, ā te kaupapa, āe rā, ā te tangata mō ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero. Mō ngā momo-kōrero ā-iwi, mā te hapū, mā te iwi tōna ake whare e hanga me te whiriwhiri i te āhua o ngā pou kōrero o roto. Mō ngā momo-kōrero ā-motu, me rapu te ingoa o te momo-kōrero e kaha nei te whakamahia. Waihoki, i runga i te whakaingoa i ngā momo-kōrero hou, me āta titiro ki te whakamāori o ētehi o ngā ingoa me te matapaki anō i te takenga mai o ngā kupu whakamāori, āe rānei, kāore rānei e tika ana te ingoa.

Nā, mō te rārangi momo-kōrero, he whakaingoa noa te mahi o tēnei rangahau hei whakaea i te pātai rangahau. Mēnā kua whakakaohia he tauira taketake o ia momo-kōrero me te whakamārama haere i ia tauira, kua tārautia te mōmona o te kaupapa. Arā noa atu ngā momo-kōrero e korikori mai ana ki te haporī reo Māori – heoi anō mō tēnei rangahau, kua takoto te tāhuhu whakaaro ki runga i ngā pou tāhuhu o te whare. Kua oti tērā wāhanga o tōna hanganga. Hei tōna wā mā rangahau kē e tuhi he whakamārama mō ia momo-kōrero. Ko te nuinga o ngā rauemi me ngā kaupapa i tirohia i roto i te rangahau nei, kua kore he kupu whakamārama mō ia momo-kōrero, kua kore hoki he tauira. He rārangi anake. Ko te mate pea o tēnei, mai i tōna ingoa, tē aro i ētehi tāngata he momo aha taua momo. Nā, ehara kau i te mea, he whakapākehā noa te mahi, me whakamārama tonu pea te āhua, te tikanga, te takoto, te whakamahi o ngā momo-kōrero Māori. Kua tīmata te rangahaua o ēnei āhuatanga (Crombie & Houia-Roberts, 2001; August, 2001), ā, me haere tonu.

Me rangahau hoki pea te whanaungatanga o ngā momo-kōrero. Arā, te whakaatu i ētehi o ngā pānga o ngā momo-kōrero, tētehi ki tētehi. Mehemea he pono, he paki rānei; mehemea he tauira nō nehe rā, he tauira nō nā tata nei rānei, he tauira rānei nō

iwi kē; mehemea he kōrero iti te kupu, he kōrero nui rānei te kupu; mehemea he mea tuhi, he mea kōrero rānei; mehemea he momo-kōrero nui tōna mana, he momo-kōrero iti tōna mana; mehemea he momo-kōrero nui te whakamahia, he momo-kōrero iti te whakamahia rānei; he aha atu anō rānei te whanaungatanga e whai hua ai ki te kaupānui. Kua whakarōpūtia ngā momo-kōrero ki te tātai momo-kōrero, ā, mā aua rōpū pea e whakaatu ētehi o aua pānga. Me haere tonu te matapakinga.

Nā, ehara i te mea kua oti rawa te tātai momo-kōrero. E tika ana kia kaha te whakahou i taua pūnaha momo kōrero. Kua kōrerohia ka rerekē ngā momo-kōrero i te takanga o te wā, mate atu he momo kōrero, ara mai rā he momo kōrero, ara ake anō rānei he momo-kōrero. Me kī, he mea ora te pūnaha momo-kōrero, mēnā ka whānau mai he momo-kōrero hou, kia kaha te āpiti atu ki te whakarārangi o te pūnaha momo-kōrero mēnā e hāngai ana ki te whakamahia o te reo.

Ki te āta whāia ngā taunga whakaaro o runga nei mō te āta whakahou haere i te tātai momo-kōrero, he nui ngā painga ka puta. Ka tae atu ngā painga ki ngā kaupapa nei i kōrerohia i te Wāhanga Tuarua, ki Te Marautanga Reo Māori, ki Toi Te Kupu, ki Te Puna, ki te Māori Subject Headings, arā, ko te tōtika o te whakarārangi i ngā momo-kōrero Māori. He oti anō rā, ko te painga nui, ko te whakamahia o te tātai momo-kōrero hei rauemi whakaora reo e hikina ai te momo-kōrero Māori ki te taumata e tika ana. He mutunga kore tō te wāwāhia o tēnei kaupapa mō te momo-kōrero, heoi he whakaaro nui kei ngā mahere momo-kōrero me te rārangi momo-kōrero mā te hapori reo Māori - e tā, inā te mana o tō tātou reo Māori o nāianei.

Te Whakaahua 10.1: He Rārangi Pātai mō ngā Momo-Kōrero

Whakamahinga Hinengaro	Tauira mō ngā Momo-Kōrero
Te whakaputa maharatanga <i>recalling</i>	Whakarārangihia mai ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero ka rangona i te hui. Whakamāramatia te takoto o te taupatupatu. He momo aha te pokeka? He aha te ingoa o tēnei momo-kōrero? Ko tēhea ngā momo-kōrero ka rangona i roto i tēnei horopaki? Kōrerotia mai ētehi momo kīpeha hei whakairo i tētehi momo kōrero.
Te whakaputa mōhiotanga <i>understanding</i>	Whakamāramatia te tāhu whakaaro e tino eke ai tēnei momo-kōrero. Whakarāpopotohia tēnei mōteatea ki āu ake kupu. Whiriwhirihia tētehi momo-kōrero hei whakakapi ake i tētehi kauwhau. He aha te rerekētanga o te paki ki te tohutohu? He aha te ōritenga o te reta ki te ī-mēra? He aha ngā āhuetanga reo e ōrite ana i te whaikōrero me te karanga? He aha ngā momo-kōrero kei roto i tēnei pakiwaitara?
Te whakamahi mōhiotanga <i>applying knowledge</i>	Hangaia he ture reo mō tētehi kēmu nāu i hanga. Hangaia he kīwaha hou hei whakaihiihi i tō reo kōrerorero. Whakamutua tētehi mahi kāinga ki tētehi whakataukī hou hei whakarāpopoto ake. Ka mutu te kura, he aha ngā momo-kōrero me mōhio koe mō tō mahi? Whakarōpūtia ngā momo-kōrero o te mahi mai i te tino ki te noa. Ki ō whakaaro, he aha ngā momo-kōrero rangatira o te ao Māori?
Te tātari mōhiotanga <i>analysing</i>	He aha ngā momo-kōrero ka rangona ki runga i te marae? He aha te pūtaketanga o ia momo-kōrero? Āta tirohia ngā kupu o tēnei mihi. He aha te hanganga? He aha i pērā ai? Whakamāramatia mai te take ka karakia tātou? Kōrerotia mai tētehi ara hei tātari i tētehi waiata. Whakarerekētia te mutunga o tētehi pakiwaitara. He aha tāu i pai ake ai? Ki ō whakaaro, he aha te take he nui te mana o te whakapapa ki te Māori? Hei aha tēnei momo kōrero i roto i ngā noho tahitanga o ngā iwi Māori? He ōrite te tīmatanga o te reta ki te whaikōrero? He aha ai? He aha i kore ai?
Te arotake mōhiotanga <i>evaluating</i>	Aromatawaia te painga o ngā whakaaro o tēnei momo-kōrero. Matapakina takirōpūtia te kounga o ngā momo-kōrero ka rangona, ka kitea ki tētehi hui reo. He aha te hua o aua momo-kōrero? He aha i tīmata ai tēnei momo-kōrero ki ngā kupu waiata? He whai hua ki a koe? He aha ai? He kaiarotake pikitia koe. He aha tētehi ara hei wetewete i te painga o tētehi pikitia? He rite tonu taua ara ki te arotake pukapuka? He aha ngā rerekētanga? He aha te rerekētanga o ngā momo-kōrero ōkawa ki ngā momo-kōrero ōpaki? He pai aha tā te kawenga kōrero?
Te waihanga mōhiotanga <i>creating</i>	Hangaia he hōtaka mā te pouaka whakaata. Kuhuna ngā momo-kōrero ki roto: ā-ringa, ā-waha, ā-mata. Hangaia he whakataukī hei whakaoti i tāu nā pūrongo. Titoa he waiata e mau ana ngā kīpeha e mōhio nā koe. Hangaia he momo-kōrero hou hei whakamahi ki roto i tētehi hui. Waihangatia he kēmu reo mō ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero. Atu i te waiata, he aha ētehi atu momo-kōrero hei whakakapi ake i te mihi? Ki tō mōhio he aha ngā mahi hou a te Māori ka kitea a te tau 2030. He aha ngā momo-kōrero hou a tērā wā?

10.3. He Reo Wānanga: Mā te Tātari Āhuratanga Reo e Kitea ai te Kounga

Kua tupu te reo Māori hei kaupapa wānanga i roto i ngā tau rua ngahuru nei. Heoi, kāore i tupu tahi ngā kupu o te mātauranga reo hei tautoko i te āta wānanga i te reo Māori. Arā, ko te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako. Nā, i roto i te ono tau e hia kē nei ngā tuatahitanga kei te reo Māori kua puta. Ko te papakupu nei *Te Reo Pāngarau* (Christensen, 2004) mō taua rehita e rangona ana ināianei i ngā kura reo Māori. Ko *Te Kete Kupu: Ngā Kupu Waiwai o Tōku Reo* (Ministry of Education, 2006) he ‘rārangi kupu’ mā ngā tamariki nohinohi me ētehi tauira reo Māori i roto. Ka mutu, ko *Tirohia Kimihia: A Māori Learner Dictionary* (Ministry of Education, 2006) e kīia ana ko te papakupu tuatahi i te reo Māori, ā, e 3500 ngā kupu mā ngā tamariki³ i reira. Nā, i tēnei wā tonu kei te hangaia he papakupu pūtaiao (I. Christensen, whakawhitinga whaiaro, Mahuru, 2006). Tērā hoki ko tā te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori papakupu kua hia tau ināianei e rangahaua ana, e tuhia ana. Heoi mō runga i te reo Māori hei kaupapa ako i uia te pātai e tētehi kaiuru:

Kei hea rā te papakupu reo Māori mō te reo Māori?

He pātai nui tērā hei whakakapi ake i tēnei tuhinga kairangi. Inā he kaiako koe nō te raki tērā pea he rerekē anō ngā kupu AHUREO⁴ i tō te kaiako nō te tonga, nō te uru, nō te rāwhiti rānei. I te wā e pakari haere ana ērā anō momo reo o ia kaupapa o te pāngarau, o te pūtaiao, o ia marautanga kāore anō kia aroha tātou ki te kaupapa reo Māori. Ahakoa he kaupapa ako te reo Māori i te kura reo Māori. He kaupapa nui te hangatanga i tētehi papakupu reo Māori e whakamārama ana i ngā āhuratanga reo Māori i roto i te reo Māori. Nō reira ki te tahuri te whakaaro ki te hanga i tētehi papakupu reo Māori mō te reo Māori te take, e manako ana he tūāpapa te rangahau nei hei kaupapa whakawhitiwhiti kōrero. Kua hipa kē pea te wā kia tuhia he papakupu reo Māori e mau ana ki ngā kupu reo mō te reo Māori kia kore ai e rangirua rawa ngā ākonga me ngā tāngata kōrero Māori.

³ New Zealand Education Gazette, 10 April, 2006 85 (5) 13.

⁴ metalanguage

Koia tētehi hua nui o tēnei tuinga kairangi, he whakakupu i ētehi tino āhuatanga reo e taea ai te āta wānanga i te reo Māori mā te reo Māori tonu. Ko ngā nuka reo ērā, heoi, ko tētehi wāhi nui, ko ngā kīpeha. Tērā ka kitea ngā kīpeha i roto i te katoa o ngā momo-kōrero (kei te Whakaahua 10.2). Heoi, kei te momo-kōrero te tikanga mēnā he nui, he iti ngā momo kīpeha (tirohia 10.3, kei te Āpitihanga 3 hoki te roanga atu o ēnei kōrero). Nā reira, he huinga rangatira te kīpeha me mau i te tangata i a ia e ako ana i te reo Māori. Ā, me nui ake ngā rauemi hei tautoko i ngā kaiako ki te whakaako i ēnei āhuatanga reo.

Te Whakaahua 10.2: Te Hononga o ngā Momo-Kōrero me ngā Kīpeha

Relationships between text types and figures of speech

	Momo-Kōrero Text types		
Aroro Mātātuhi, Aroro Mātākōrero <i>Literary Concepts, Oral and Written</i>	Momo-Kōrero ā-waha <i>Oral Text types</i>	Momo-Kōrero ā-tuhi <i>Written Text types</i>	Momo-Kōrero ā-mata <i>Visual Text types</i>
Mātauranga Reo <i>Language knowledge</i> Nuka Reo <i>Literary devices</i> Kīpeha <i>Figures of Speech</i>			
He Kīpeha Huatau <i>Figures of Thought</i>			
He Kīpeha Whakawhere <i>Rhetorical Figures</i>			
He Kīpeha Whakatangi <i>Figures of Sound</i>			

Te Whakaahua 10.3: He Kīpeha, he Nuka Reo i rō Momo-Kōrero o te Kura

Figures of speech and literary devices in selected school text types

Momo-Kōrero Text type	Whakapākehā Translation	Kīpeha, Nuka Reo Figures of speech, literary devices
Takawiri arero	tongue twister	orokati tārua <i>alliteration</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> huarite <i>rhyme</i>
Ruri	poem	kupu whakarite <i>simile</i> orokati tārua <i>alliteration</i> oropuare tārua <i>assonance</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> huarite <i>rhyme</i>
Waiata	waiata	orokati tārua <i>alliteration</i> oropuare tārua <i>assonance</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> huarite <i>rhyme</i> kupu tārara <i>parallelism</i>
Haka	haka	ui makihoi <i>rhetorical question</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> kupu tārara <i>parallelism</i> tohu <i>symbol</i> tohutoro <i>allusion</i> kupu ōrite <i>synonym</i>
Waiata ā-ringa	action song	tohutoro <i>allusion</i> ui makihoi <i>rhetorical question</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> huahuatau <i>metaphor</i> kupu tārara <i>parallelism</i>
Pakikīrehe	fable	kupu raweke <i>pun</i> whakataukī <i>proverb</i> kīwaha <i>idiom</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> huahuatau <i>metaphor</i> tairitenga <i>analogy</i>
Pukapuka Mārō	board book	ui makihoi <i>rhetorical question</i> huarite <i>rhyme</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> orokatia tārua <i>alliteration</i> kupu tātoru <i>triplication</i>
Paki waituhi	comic	ui makihoi <i>rhetorical question</i> kīwaha <i>idiom</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> whakatangata <i>personification</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> huahuatau <i>metaphor</i> kupu raweke <i>pun</i> kupu hākiki <i>irony</i>
Paenga Kōrero	anthology	whakataukī <i>specific proverb</i> kupu tārara <i>parallelism</i> tāruarua <i>repetition</i> ororite <i>onomatopoeia</i> kupu whakarite <i>simile</i> ui makihoi <i>rhetorical question</i>

Ko tētehi kōrero hei tautoko i tēnei reo wānanga ko tā Cummins (1981) mō te whakamahi i te reo wānanga⁵ kia pai ai te whakaaro ki te whakaminenga. He reo mō ia rā, he reo kē mō te wānanga, mō te whakaaroaro i tētehi kaupapa. Hei hono atu ki tērā ko tā Bloom whakamahere i ngā pātaitai, inā “E ono ngā rōpū o ngā momo pātai e pā ana ki te āhua o te whakamahinga o te hinengaro...” (Christensen, 2004: 426). Inā ko tā Christensen whakamāori⁶ i tā Bloom e whai mai ana me ngā pātai e hāngai ana ki ngā āhuatanga reo o tētehi momo-kōrero. He pērā hoki kei te Whakaahua 10.4 hei whakahāngai ki te reo o te akomanga. He mea whakaatu noa i ētehi kōrero kaiako e taea ana me ngā aroro reo o tēnei tuhinga kairangi. He whakakōrero i ngā āhuatanga reo.

Ko te Wāhanga Tuaiwa te whakatinanatanga o te āta tātari, o te āta arotake i te kounga o tētehi momo-kōrero. Tērā ka whakaaturia tētehi huarahi tātari i te reo o tētehi waiata-ā ringa e kitea ai ētehi take he reo ranginamu tōna. He tīpako nuka reo te mahi. He akiaki hoki kia kaua noa e noho ki te tukanga whakaaro a Bloom e kīia nei ko te whakaputa maharatanga, inā, ko te waiata noa i ngā kupu waiata me te kī noa, he waiata-ā ringa tērā. Arā, ka tika kia eke kē ki te tātari mōhiotanga, ki te arotake mōhiotanga, mā reira pea e taea ai te waihanga mōhiotanga ā tōna wā. Arā, mā te āta ruku i ngā āhuatanga reo e taea ai e te arero Māori te kōtuitui i aua āhuatanga reo ki roto anō i ā rātou ake hīnga momo-kōrero.

He āwhina nui hoki te mōhio ki ngā āhuatanga reo, pērā i ngā kīpeha, mā ngā ākonga reo Māori e kimi māramatanga ana mō ngā titonga a ngā tohunga reo. E tohea ana mā te aro ki te reo peha e whakaaturia ai te reherehuta o te reo. He aronga atu anō kei ngā kupu kāore pea i whakaarohia i te aro mātai noa. Waihoki, mā te aro nui ki te reo peha ka nui ake te māramatanga o te ākonga ki ngā tikanga whakaaro o roto i ngā momo-kōrero. He ara whakapiki i te aroā.

⁵ CALP: cognitive academic language proficiency

⁶ Ko tā Katerina Edmonds whakamāori (i te noho tauira tonu) e pēnei kē ana: mōhiotanga, māramatanga, mahinga, tātaritanga, arotakenga, kōtuitanga (whakawhitinga whaiaro, Bartoch, Hereturi-kōkā, 2005).

Te Whakaahua 10.4: He Rārangi Pātai mō ngā Āhuatanga Reo

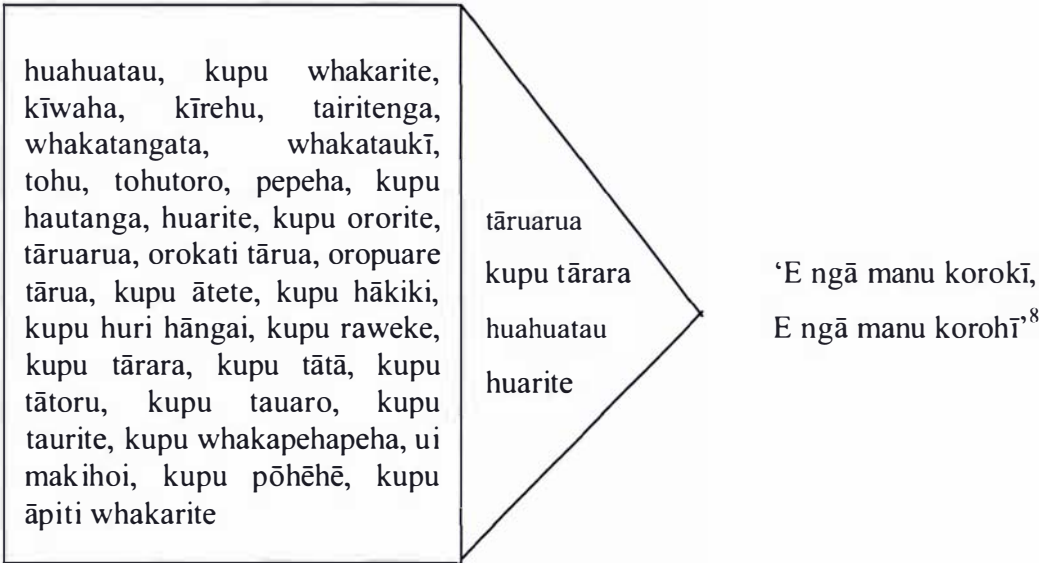
Whakamahinga Hinengaro	Tauira mō ngā Āhuatanga Reo
Te whakaputa maharatanga <i>recalling</i>	Whakarārangihia mai ētehi o ngā kīpeha o tēnei mōteatea. Tohua ngā huahuatau o roto i tēnei waiata. Tuhia te roanga atu o te whakataukī kei tēnei haka. He aha te tikanga o te huahuatau? Ko tēhea o ēnei kīpeha te kupu whakarite? Kōrerotia mai ngā momo kīpeha hei whakanikoniko i tētehi kōrero.
Te whakaputa mōhiotanga <i>understanding</i>	Whakamāramatia ngā āhuatanga reo e tino eke ai tēnei momo-kōrero. Whakamahia te anga kīpeha hei whakamārama i te ranginamu o te reo. Whiriwhirihia tētehi kīpeha hei whakapai ake i tētehi tuhinga kua oti kē i a koe te whakatauiria. He aha ētehi kīpeha e kaha whakamahia ana e Hirini Melbourne? I aha koe ki te whakanikoniko i tāu nā titonga? He aha te rerekētanga o te kupu whakarite me te huahuatau?
Te whakamahi mōhiotanga <i>applying knowledge</i>	Kimihia tētehi huahuatau, tētehi kupu whakarite hoki hei tautoko i te kaupapa o tō kōrero. Whakamahia ngā kiwaha hei whakawairua i tō reo kōrerorero. Whakamutua tō kauhau ki tētehi tairitenga hei whakarāpopoto ake. He aha ētehi āhuatanga reo hei hanga i te rotarota? Mehemea ko koe te kaitito waiata, he aha ngā āhuatanga reo ka whakarerekētia? Ki ō whakaaro, he aha ngā āhuatanga reo e ranginamu nei i tēnei manu kōrero?
Te tātari mōhiotanga <i>analysing</i>	Āta tirohia ngā kupu o tēnei mihi, kei te whakatairitea te manuhiri ki te aha? He aha ai? Whakamāramatia mai te take i whakatangata ai te kaitito i te motuka? Kōrerotia mai te ara hei tātari i te kōunga o ngā kupu o tētehi waiata. Ki ō whakaro, he aha te take he nui ngā kupu ororite, me ngā kupu huarite i tēnei paki? He aha i pēnei ai te raupapatanga o ngā huahuatau i tēnei karakia? He aha te pānga o te wairua o ngā kiwaha ki te kaupapa o tēnei pakiwaitara? Ki te tirohia ngā āhuatanga reo o ēnei poroporoaki e rua, he aha ngā rerekētanga me ngā ritenga?
Te arotake mōhiotanga <i>evaluating</i>	Aromatawaia te painga o te reo o tēnei momo-kōrero. Matapakina takirōpūtia te kōunga o te reo o ētehi kaupāho reo Māori. He kaiwhakawā kapahaka koe. He aha ētehi paearu mō ngā āhuatanga reo hei arotake i te waiata-ā-ringa mō ngā whakataetae ā-rohe? Pēhea ōu whakaaro mō ngā kīpeha o tēnei momo-kōrero? He kīpeha pai kē atu? He aha i pai ai te whakataukī i te tapanga o tēnei pānuitanga hei whakaatu i te kaupapa matua? He aha ngā painga mā te whakaminenga mēnā ka whakamahia ngā kīpeha whakawhere pērā i te kupu tāruarua?
Te waihanga mōhiotanga <i>creating</i>	Hangaia he whakataukī hei whakaoti i tāu nā pūrongo. Titoa he waiata huahuatau roa nei e āta whakatairite ana i tō kaupapa ki tētehi atu kaupapa. Waihangatia he ruri mō tētehi āhuatanga o te taiao e mau ana i ētehi tangi tūturu. Rangahaua tāu ake kīpeha hei whakanui i tētehi momo-kōrero. He aha ngā huarahi hei whakapai ake i tētehi momo-kōrero tino maroke?

10.4. He Reo Rerehua: Mā te Reo Peha e Kouna ai te Reo Māori

Tērā ka tohea he reo peha, he reo ranginamu, arā, he reo rerehua te reo peha. Āe, kei te tika, āe, kei te hē. Mō ngā wāhi e tika ana kia ihiihi ngā momo-kōrero, ka tika rawa atu ki te nanao atu i ngā kīpeha hei whakakāhahu i te kīnga. Mā reira pea ka kīia ake he kīnga kouna (tirohia Te Whakaahua 10.5). Ko te whāinga matua pea kia whakatau ake i tā Apirana i āwanangawanga ai, i tā Miria i haku ai, i tā Tīmoti i māharahara ai i te tīmatanga o tēnei tuhinga. I te ngarotanga atu o te aumangea kei a rātou mō te rāwekeweke, mō te huri, i te kupu, me kaha tātou ki te aro i ngā rautaki kia rangatira tonu te ora o te reo Māori. Ko tētehi peka nui, ko te kīpeha. Ā, ki te ora a Kīpeha, ka rangatira tonu te ora o tō tātou nei reo Māori. Ka tautokona e Te Wharehuia Milroy (1995) taua whakaaro me tāna whakahau he wāhanga nui te reo peha hei whakaata i te rehurehutanga o te reo⁷. Me te aha, kua whārikihia ētehi tino kīpeha i tēnei tuhinga kia taea ai te huri i te kupu. He maha ngā whiriwhiringa kīpeha kia huri i te kīanga ki tā Kāretu i haku ai. He ara, me kī, hei whakakouna i te whakapuakinga.

Te Whakaahua 10.5: He Kīnga Kouna: Te Huri i te Kupu

Whirihia he Kīpeha Hei Huri i te Kīanga He Whakapuaki Kīanga



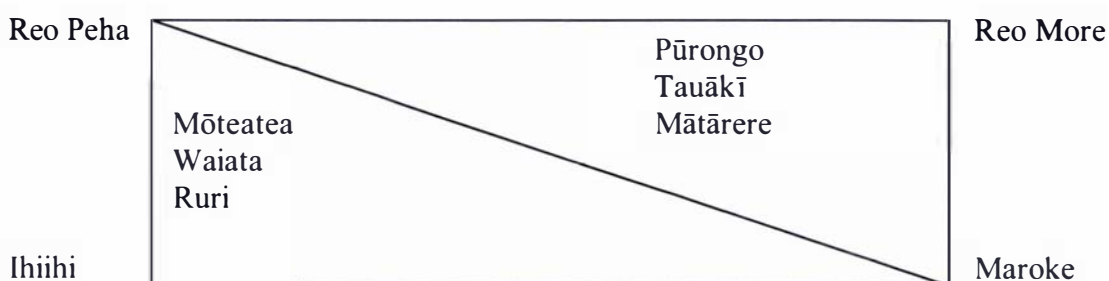
⁷ Ki tā Te Wharehuia i tana mahi kaiwhakawā (bursary examiner) e rima ngā paearu kia eke panuku ai te reo Māori mō te bursary, arā, ‘extent of colloquialisms, idioms, metaphors and similes used which reflect the subtleties and shades of the language’.

⁸ He huanga whakamihi nā Scotty Morrison, Television Broadcast, Te Karere, TVOne. 20/9/2007 (vocative and metaphor)

Heoi anō rā, he rangahau atu anō kia kitea ai mēnā he rahi ngā kīpeha i roto i ngā momo-kōrero taketake a te Māori pēnei i te mōteatea, i te whaikorero, i te karanga, me ērā atu (tirohia te Whakaahua 10.6). Tae atu hoki ki ngā momo-kōrero pēnei i te kawenga kōrero, i te pukapuka pikitia, i te haurongo. Tērā pea, me uaua ka kite i taua huinga kīpeha i te tauākī, i te pūrongo, i te pānui whakamārama. Nā reira tēnei taukītanga kōrero, mā te reo peha e kounga ai ngā momo-kōrero ihiihi.

Te Whakaahua 10.6: He Reo Peha, he Reo More: He Whakaaro noa

The mix of figurative language and literal language



Koia pea tētehi rerenga kētanga o te reo o ngā wāhi kōrero Māori, o te marae, o te pāho, o te wharetā me te tari kāwanatanga. He nui kē atu te whakaputa o te reo peha i ngā waha o te marae i tō ngā ringa e tuhi ana i te pūrongo. E kore pea te pūrongo kiki rawa i te reo peha e whai hua, ka mutu, he maroke pea i te mea kei te reo more tonu kia tutuki ai te whāinga me te kaupapa o taua momo tuhinga. Ka mutu, me kaua rawa pea e kitea te kīpeha i te reo tohutohu, pērā i te ture kēmu, i te tohutaka, i te mea e tika ana kia tuhia tonu ki te reo hāngai. Kia kaua rā e rangirua te whakaaro i te tangata e whai ana i ngā tohutohu. Nā reira, kāore e taea te whakataui, mā te reo peha te momo-kōrero e kounga ai i ngā wā katoa. E kāo. Engari, kua kitea mā te reo peha e kounga ai tētehi momo-kōrero ihiihi, pērā i *Te Aumangea*. Ka mutu, he wāhanga nui te reo peha ki te maha o ngā horopaki nui o te ao Māori.

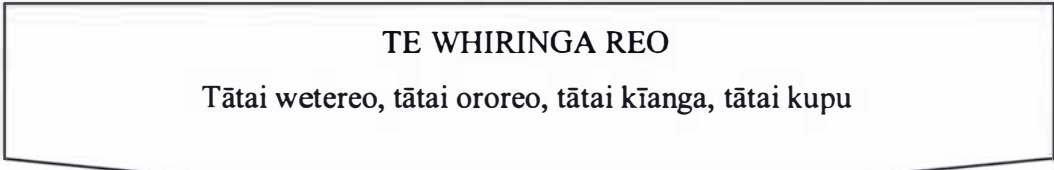
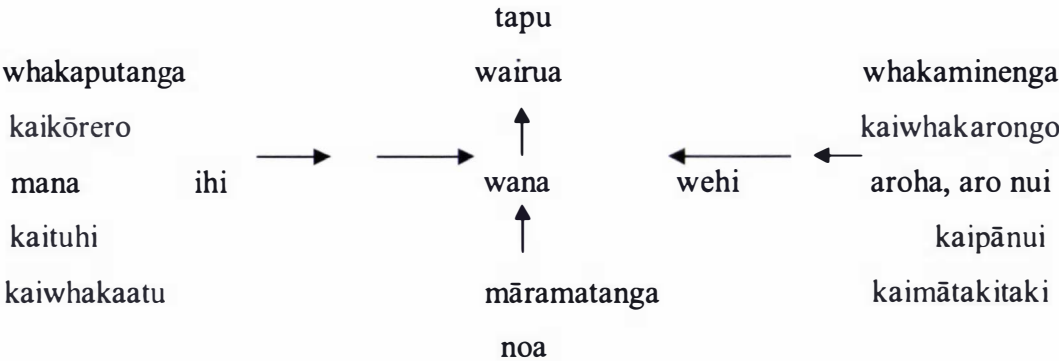
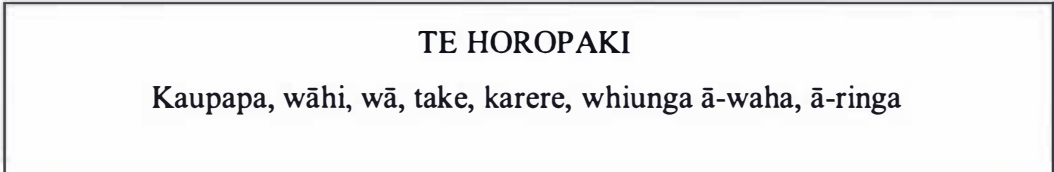
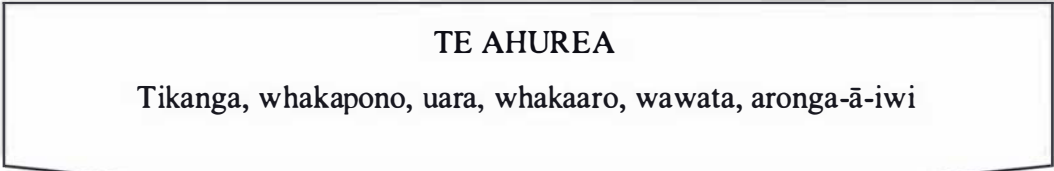
10.5. He Reo nō te Horopaki: Mā te Wā, mā te Wāhi, mā te Tangata e Tohutohu

I te Wāhanga Tuaono ka matapakina te kounga o te momo-kōrero e ai ki ētehi kaumātua. Nā, ko tētehi take nui hei whakakapi ake i aua kōrerorero, ko te kī pēnei a te koroua mō te whakarākei kōrero, ‘Ko te mea e kounga ana ki a koe, kāore pea e kounga ki tētahi atu’. Auē taukiri e! Arā, kei tēnā, kei tēnā ngā whakaaro mō tēnei mea te kounga. Me te aha kei te taupatupatu pea tērā i te taukītanga o mua tata mai, me reo peha kia kounga ai. Nā reira e whakaponu tonu ana te kairangahau he huarahi te kīpeha hei whakanikoniko i te kōrero, heoi he wā tōna me aro kē ki te horopaki, ki te tangata kia pai ake ai te kōrero. He wā, he wāhi kia māmā te whiu; he wā, he wāhi kia hōhonu rānei te karawhiu. Arā, kei te āhua tonu o te huihuinga me pēhea e kounga ai te momo-kōrero.

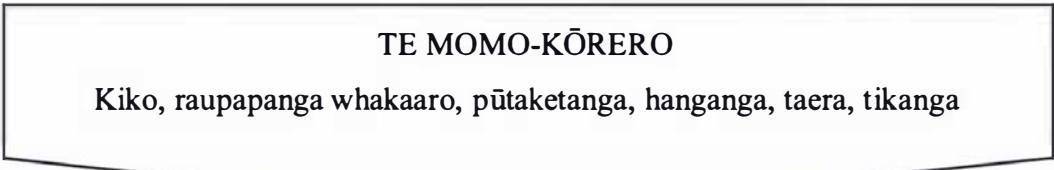
Nā reira, i hangā ai tētehi mahere reo hei whakarāpopoto, hei tūhonohono i ngā mahere reo mai i ngā Wāhanga Tuarua tae noa mai ki tēnei Wāhanga. Mai i te ahurea, ki te horopaki, ki te whiringa reo ki te momo-kōrero. Katoa aua whakaaro he mea nui hei whakaaro inā ka hiahia anō te tangata ki te whakaranginamu i tōna reo. Kia tatū katoa mai, kātahi rā ka whai hua, me kī, ka eke Tangaroa te kōrero. E kitea ana hoki kua āpitingia he whakaaro Māori, ko ētehi tikanga Māori: te mana, te ihi, te wehi, te wana, te aroha, te māramatanga, te tapu, te noa. He pitopito whakaaro noa, heoi, mehemea he nui te mana o te kaikōrero, tērā pea ka nui hoki te ihi. Heoi, ki te kore te whakaminenga e aro atu, inā e aroha ki te kōrero, ka kore e wehi, e wana. Nā reira, he whai pānga nui tonu te whakaminenga ki roto i te horopaki. Ka mutu, he wā ka tapu te kōrero, ka rāhuitia ētehi āhuatanga kia aro nui mai te iwi, ngā atua rānei. He wā ka noa, ka wātea kau kia mahi i ngā mahi o ia rā. Mā te horopaki anō tērā e tohutohu.

Te Whakaahua 10.7: Kia Oti a Runga, kia Oti a Raro, ka Kounga te Momo-Kōrero

He mea hanga i runga i tā Carter, 2005: 253; Murphy & Keegan, 2003; Barlow, 1996: 113



rerekētanga reo
ā-kaupapa, ā-wā, ā-iwi, ā-rohe, ā-tangata



rerekētanga momo-kōrero
pori-ohaoha, tāne/wahine, rōpū, mahi, hāhi, iwi, whānau, pakeke, hōkakatanga

Engari, he āhuatanga reo atu anō hei rau atu ki tēnei mahere. He whiringa reo. Kei te tangata te whiriwhiri he pēhea rā te āhua o tōna reo i runga i te horopaki, ā, tērā pea ka rerekē i te ahurea o te tangata kei te kōrerotia. I runga i tērā ka whakarāpopotohia ngā kōrero o te Wāhanga Tuaono me ngā āhuatanga reo o tēnei tuinga ki tētehi whakaaturanga (tirohia te Whakaahua 10.8 o tua atu nei). Kua whakairia ētehi aroro reo e rerehua ai te momo-kōrero ki runga i ētehi rārangi pitopito⁹. I hangaia i runga tonu i ngā whakahoki mai a ngā kaiuru kāore e taea te kī anei te huarahi tika kia kounga te reo Māori. Ka mutu, mā te tangata anō e whiriwhiri ko ēhea ngā āhuatanga e tika ana mō tēnā horopaki, mō tēnā horopaki hei whakakounga i te reo. Otirā, ko ēhea ngā āhuatanga e tika ana mōna me te whakaminenga.

Ehara i te mea he tika kē atu tētehi pito i tētehi pito, mā te horopaki e tohutohu me aha kē te tangata. He wā pea kia whakahuatia tētehi kīwaha ‘hāwhekaihe’, ‘Kei te wakuwaku i te tou o te kōhua’, he wā kē atu me Māori tonu te kīwaha, ‘Hoea tō waka’. Arā, he wā, he wāhi, he huinga tāngata hei tohutohu me pēhea te āhua o te reo. Me māmā noa iho te karawhiu o te kupu, ā, me ruku rānei i te ruku o te kawau. Arā ake, kei te horopaki te mana me pēhea rā te wairua o te momo-kōrero. Ā, me areare tonu atu ngā taringa tāngata o te whakaminenga ki te whai i te aronga o ngā kupu a te kaituku i te kupu. Hei tauira, mehemea he matatau ake tō reo i tō tētehi atu, pēnei i te reo matua ki te tamaiti, tērā pea ka whakahakahaka, ka whakapāpakutia te reo, kupu mai, rerenga kōrero mai, whakaaro mai kia hāngai ki tā te whakaminenga āheinga. Engari, he wā anō kia kaua e aro ki te taumata o te reo o te katoa, pērā i te reo o te marae, me tuku kia tae rā anō ki ngā matapihi o te rangi.

Ahakoia rā kei te tangata aua whiriwhiringa, mehemea he rerekē rawa atu, he hou rawa, he uaua rawa, tērā ka kore te whakaminenga e aro ki ngā kupu, ā, he whakamā te kai. Nā reira, anei anō tētehi mahere e whakarāpopoto ana i te Wāhanga Tuawhitu (te Whakaahua 10.9). Ko te karere matua, ki te kore e tika, e kore e whai take; ki te kore e whaitake, ka koretake; ā, ka koretake ka kore e whaihua te momo-kōrero ki te whakaminenga. Arā, kei te tūhonotia te ahurea, te horopaki, ngā whiringa reo, ki te momo-kōrero. Ki te tutuki i te kaituku kōrero ngā mātāpono nei, kātahi rā ka ātaahua rawa atu te momo-kōrero Māori ki te whakaminenga.

⁹ continua

Te Whakaahua 10.8: He Rārangi Aroro Reo hei Whakarākei i te Momo-Kōrero: He Pitopito Whakaaro

Continua of language concepts to embellish text-types

whakaaro	Pākehā (kīwaha Ingarihi)	Māori (kīwaha ā-iwi)
horopaki	noa (kōrerorero o ia rā)	tapu (karakia tomo whare)
kaupapa	kotiti (paki)	hāngai (poroporoaki)
wā	āta whakarite (manu kōrero)	tene (pao)
rongo ā- ngākau	maroke (pūrongo ā-tau)	ihiihi (mōteatea)
auahatanga	maninohea (mihi)	hou (whakakata)
ngahau	kore kata (ōhākī)	pakaru mai te kata (paki)
reo	ā-motu (tānga ā-motu)	ā-iwi (kōrero ā-iwi)
rēhita	kaiparaoa (kōrero kauta)	hōhonu (reo mōteatea)
kīpeha	more (tohutaka)	peha (mōteatea)
takotoranga	whakapuaki noa (pepeha)	huri (kīanga hou)
tangi	waitī (karanga)	ngunguru (kōrero pāpara)
kupu	ngāwari (reta)	ruku (karakia)
momo-kōrero	rangatira (whakapapa)	tūtūā (nōti)
kiko	nui (taupatupatu)	iti (rārangi kai)
raupapatanga	whai mai (haurongo)	māwhitiwhiti (ohia manomano)
hanganga	iti (rārangi)	nui (tākutatanga)
pūtaketanga	mārama (poroporoaki)	huna (kōrero muna)
taera	kupu itiiti (whakataukī)	kupu maha (whakamārama)
tikanga	āta whai (pepeha)	kei a koe (pakiwaitara)
māramatanga	whakahakahaka (tohutohu)	whakatiketike (whaikōrero)

Te Whakaahua 10.9: He Rerehua rānei, he Rerekē rānei

Agreeable or disagreeable

WHAITAKE

Mātāpono

Kei reira

KORETAKE

Kei wāhi kē

AHUREA

Whakaaro	tino Māori	<i>correct Māori thought</i>	Manene	<i>foreign notions</i>
Uara	tino Māori	<i>correct Māori values</i>	Tauhou	<i>unfamiliar values</i>

HOROPAKI

Horopaki	Hāngai	<i>contextual</i>	Whānui rawa	<i>generic</i>
Kaupapa	Hāngai	<i>relevant theme</i>	Pāmamao	<i>irrelevant themes</i>
Rongo	Ā-ngākau	<i>connected</i>	Tē Rongo	<i>disconnected</i>

WHIRINGA REO

Reo	Tika	<i>correct register</i>	Hē	<i>incorrect register</i>
Reo Peha	Tau kē	<i>correct fig. language</i>	More rawa	<i>too literal</i>
Takotoranga	Tika tonu	<i>correct phrasing</i>	Rere kētanga	<i>questionable phrasing</i>
Tangi	Reka	<i>melodious</i>	Tiotio	<i>cacophonous</i>
Kupu	Hāngai	<i>pertinent</i>	Kōtiti	<i>odd</i>

MOMO-KŌRERO

Momo-kōrero	Tika	<i>correct text type</i>	Hē	<i>incorrect text type</i>
Kiko	Whai	<i>appropriate content</i>	Kore	<i>inappropriate content</i>
Raupapa	Rerenga pai	<i>clear flow of ideas</i>	Pekepeke kē	<i>random</i>
Pūtakenga	Mārama	<i>clarity of purpose</i>	Tē aro	<i>obscure purpose</i>
Hanganga	Kaha	<i>strong structure</i>	Ngoikore	<i>weak structure</i>
Taera	Māmā	<i>simple style</i>	Uaua	<i>convoluted style</i>
Tikanga	Hanga pai	<i>correct conventions</i>	Hanga kē	<i>strange conventions</i>

Kāore e kore ka huri te reo, ka rerekē te reo, ka mate atu ētehi āhuatanga o te reo, ka ara ake ētehi anō, heoi kei ō tātou ringa ki hea huri ai, me pēhea e rerekē ai. E kīia ana ‘Ko te reo Māori te mauri o te mana Māori.’ Kia pupuritia te mauri ora o te reo, ka pupuritia te mauri ora o te mana o te iwi Māori.

Ngā āhuatanga reo matua

te hopu reo i te kāinga
ngā hanga whakamahi i te reo
Māori i te hāpori
ngā taumata matatau o ngā kaikōrero
te kōunga o te reo
te whakamahi i te reo Māori i roto i
ngā kaupapa mātauranga
te tautoko a te hāpori whānui
ngā waiaro o te hāpori whānui ki te reo

ngoikore

pakari

Ki tā Miria (Simpson, 1995: 105) ‘mā te matatau mārire ki te reo, ka ātaahua te whakatakoto i te kupu ā-waha, ā-tuhi’. Ki te ora tonu tō tātou nei reo Māori ā ngā rautau kei te heke mai, me manaaki tonu mai te āheinga ki te whakatakoto kupu pērā.

Ahakoia ka rerekē ia reo puta noa i te ao i te hekenga mai o te wā, mā te pupuri i ētehi āhuetanga motuhake o te reo ka tū rangatira, ka mauri tū tonu te reo tūāuriuri whāioio. Ki te ngaro te āheinga ki te whakairo i te kupu ki te hinengaro o te tangata, ka tino memeha te mauri ora o te reo Māori. Ko te tūmanako mā te āta whakaatu ki te hunga kōingo ki te reo me pēwhea rā e ‘hanga whakaahua’ mā te whakaminenga ki ngā kīpeha, tērā ka pupuritia te kounga o te reo. Otirā, ka kōkiri whakamua te whakatupu i te reo Māori. Ka ngaro te kīpeha, ka ngaro te kounga ki te pō. Nā reira te tauākītanga kōrero mō tēnei tuinga kairangi:

Mā te reo peha e kounga ai te momo-kōrero tino Māori.

Nā, ko tētehi tohu o te ora o tētehi reo, koia tonu ko te whānuitanga, ko te hōhonutanga o te pūtea kupu. Ko tētehi whakaaro tītaha¹⁰ pea ōku e whakapono ana au me kua pea tātou e wehi ki te whakakupu i ngā whakaaro e tika ana me whakakupu mō ēnei rā, mēnā he whai pānga kia kōkiri whakamua te ao kōrero Māori, ka mutu, te ao Māori. He rerekē te ahureo o tēnā, o tēnā. Ehara i te mea me whai mai i tāku, engari, me whai kupu tātou kia whakaaturia ēnei ariā reo. Ki te kore, he uaua pea te ako i te tuhituhi mā te reo Māori kia rerehua rawa atu.

He nui ngā āhuetanga reo hei whakahou ki roto i te akomanga hei whakapakari ake i te reo o ngā ākonga, ahakoa taumata reo. He pērā anō i ngā anga kīpeha e whakarākei ai i tētehi momo-kōrero. Heoi, i te tuatahi me whakapakari kē i te reo o te kaiwhāngai i te kupu. Koia pea tētehi wero nui, ko te tītokona o te reo o ngā kaiwhāngai i te reo. E tika ana ko rātou ngā taumata mō ā rātou ākonga. Kua tauiratia kētia ngā kupu tohunga reo, arā, me matatau ngā kaiwhāngai i te reo ki ngā kīpeha. Me whakangungu ka tika kia pai kē atu ai ngā kaiwhāngai i te reo. Me nui kē atu hoki ngā rauemi, me te whakahāngai ki te marautanga reo Māori hei āwhina mā te hunga pouako, mā te hunga ākonga hoki. Mā reira e noho tangata whenua mai ai ngā kīpeha ki te ngākau, ā, ki te arero hei kupu whakawhitiwhiti.

¹⁰ bias

10.7. He Reo ā-Hāpori: He Whakawhanaunga, he Whakamanene

Ko tētehi take nui o te whakaora i te reo, ko te reo hei kōrero whakawhitiwhiti. Heoi, he reo kē tā tēnā, he reo kē tā tēnā. Waihoki, ko ētehi tāngata e kaha ana ki te rāwekeweke i te kupu, ki te whakamahi i te reo peha. Mēnā he hiahia tōu ki te aro atu ki te tikanga o ngā kupu o tangata kē, he kaupapa nui tonu ngā kīpeha. Hei tauira, mehemea ka rangona he kupu whakarite, me te mōhio ki taua kīpeha, e rua ngā mea kei te whakatairitea, tērā pea ka taka te kapa. Arā, ko tāu mahi he kimi i te aroā o taua whakatairitenga me ngā rehurehutanga o te reo.

He huarahi te anga kīpeha kia mōhio ai ki te aronga o ngā kōrero a ngā hoa kōrerorero mēnā he matatau ake rātou. Otirā, ki te kore koe e aro ki te tikanga o te kōrerorero o tētehi huinga tāngata, he rāwaho koe. Hei tauira, ko te kore hoki e mōhio ki te aronga o tētehi kōrero paki. Nā reira, he wāhanga nui te reo mō te tuakiri, ā, he wāhanga nui te kīpeha i te reo. Mā te mārama ki te reo peha e āwhina te tūhonotanga o te tangata ki te uru ki roto i tēnā rōpū. Arā, he āwhina kia tū Māori ia i roto i ngā huihuinga. Pērā i tā Koro Dewes i whakataukī ai i te tīmatanga o tēnei Wāhanga. Inā tāna ki te momo-kōrero ā-mata i te Whakaahua 10.10 e whai nei.

Ehara rawa i te mea mā te mōhio ki te reo peha ka whakawhanaungatia koe ki tangata kē. Heoi, e kōrerotia ana me matatau te tangata ki ētehi āhuatanga reo kia whai pānga ki roto i taua nohotahitanga a te iwi. E ai ki a Hirsch, Kett & Trefil (2002) i tā rātou papakupu he nui ngā take me mōhio ki ngā āhuatanga reo pēnei i te whakataukī, i te kīwaha, i ngā tikanga o te tuhituhi. Mō te whakataukī tērā ka huihui te tangata ka huaina tētehi haurua o te whakataukī ki roto i te kōrerorero, ā, mā te kaiwhakarongo e whakaoti ake. Ki te kore e mōhio, e kore e tutuki te whakawhitinga kōrero. Ka noho koe hei rāwaho (reira tonu: 47). Mō te kīwaha, ko te whakaaro matua pea kia rite te āhua o te reo ki tā te tangata i tupu ake ki te reo (reira tonu: 59). Mō ngā tikanga o te tuhituhi o te reo Pākehā, ko tētehi take nui kia whakaōrite i ngā kupu mō te reo e pā ana ki te whakaako i te reo (reira tonu: 147). Tūturu, mā te mōhio ki ngā kīpeha o te iwi, o te hapū, tērā ka tū koe ki roto i te pā tūwatawata o te reo ā-iwi.

Te Whakaahua 10.10: Ki te Kore e Mārama ki te Reo o Te Hunga, he Rāwaho Koe¹¹



¹¹ rāwaho, rāroto; outsider, insider

10.8 Te Whakarāpopoto Tuhinga Kairangi

Ia tau, ia tau i ngā kaumātua e hingahinga ana puta noa i Aotearoa, tērā ka ngaro ētehi kura reo e kore nei e hokia. Me pēhea rā tātou e pupuri ai i te kounga o te reo i ngā pātaka kōrero e hingahinga atu ana? Ka mutu, me pēhea hoki e whakaora mai i te rāwekeweke, i te huri, i te whiu, i te whakatakoto i te kupu, arā ake, i ngā rehurehutanga o te reo Māori? Ko te wawata kua whai hua tēnei rangahau ki te whakautu i aua pātai. Arā, mā te kīpeha. I te mutunga o ngā rau whārangi nei ka kīia ake:

Ka mau ngā kīpeha, ka mau te wehi o te reo Māori.

He whai hua te rangahau nei ki te kaupapa o te wetewete reo mā te reo Māori. Otirā, nā te āta tiro tiro, nā te āta whakahiato, nā te āta whakamahere i ngā momo-kōrero me ngā kīpeha kua huakina te tatau o tēnei pātaka iringa kōrero mā te kairangahau kē. Ā, tērā e kitea e whai hua ana te tuhinga nei ki te whakawhanake i tō tātou mōhiotanga ki te reo Māori, ki ngā whakaaro hoki o ngā mātua tūpuna kei te reo Māori e mau ana. Tērā hoki ka kitea e ngā kairangahau reo Māori e whai mai ana, me aha ki te whakakī i ngā whāwhārua mō ia āhuatanga reo kāore anō kia āta whakamāramatia. Āna, he whai pānga tēnei rangahau ki te ora o te reo, heoi anō rā, he tīmatanga kau mō ēnei peka o te reo, mō te momo-kōrero, mō te kīpeha.

Ka mutu, kei ō tātou ringaringa te oranga, te rangatiratanga o tō tātou nei reo Māori:

Kua toro mai ō ringa ki ngā hua
O tēnei pātaka momo-kōrero,
Whakamaua kia tina ngā kīnga peha
ki tāu ake kete o te wānanga.

Toitū te kīpeha, toitū te kounga;
Toitū te kounga, toitū te reo.

NGĀ ĀPITIHANGA

ĀPITIHANGA 1: He Rārangi, he Kupu Momo-Kōrero: Te Tuhituhi me te Kōrero
A list and lexicon of text types: written and spoken

Kua tīkina atu he tauira o ngā momo-kōrero ā-tuhi hei whakaatu noa. Mēnā he tohutoro, he paewhakaata i runga ipurangi kua tohua i hea kitea ai taua tauira. Kua waiho te whakatauiratia o ngā momo-kōrero ā-waha. He whakaaturanga noa iho tēnei. Ko te wawata kia haere tonu tēnei momo whakatakoto i ngā momo-kōrero hei āwhina mā ngā pouako ki te kimi i ngā tauira tūturu mō roto i te akomanga.

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
1. Arotakenga	review or response: book, music, movie, website, play	kōrero tātari pukapuka book review	Arotakenga pukapuka Tirohia <i>Tipiwhenua</i> Arotakenga pikitia Tirohia Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori <i>He Muka</i> putanga 15 (2) Arotakenga paetukutuku Tirohia Te Kete Ipurangi
2. Atikara	article: magazine, newsletter,		Atikara moheni Tirohia <i>Te Ao Hou</i>

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	journal		http://teaohou.natlib.govt.nz/teaohou/index.html Atikara niureta Tirohia <i>He Muka</i> http://www.tetaurawhiri.govt.nz/maori/pub_m/hemuka/index.shtml Atikara hautaka Tirohia <i>He Pūkenga Kōrero, He Puna Kōrero</i>
3. Haka	recited dance song		
4. Haka pōhiri	welcome haka		
5. Haka taparahi	ceremonial haka		
6. Harikai	food bearing waiata		
7. Haukiri	autobiography		Tirohia <i>He Hokinga Mahara</i> <i>Te Tīmatanga - Tātau Tātau,</i> <i>Kaumatua - anō te Ātaahua</i>
8. Haurongo	biography	kōrero tangata	Tirohia <i>Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau</i> http://www.dnzb.govt.nz/dnzb/ Tirohia <i>Ngā Mahi Whakaari a Titokowaru</i>

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
9. Hautaka	journal, periodical: academic personal, school		Hautaka Kura Tirohia <i>Te Wharekura</i> http://www.tki.org.nz/r/maori/wharekura/index_m.php <i>He Kohikohinga, Tautoko</i> Hautaka Whare Wānanga Tirohia <i>He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori and Pacific Development, He Pūkenga Kōrero</i>
10. Hoahoa	diagram, graphic		
11. Hokinga mahara	recollection, memoir, autobiography		Tirohia <i>He Hokinga Mahara</i>
12. Hōtaka	programme		
13. Huarite	rap, waiata	rapi, manawataki (R&B)	
14. I-mēra	email	īmēra, emēra, e- mera, karere rorohiko	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
15. Inoi	karakia. Inoi is sometimes used for Christian prayer. Other religious texts include: kauhau (sermons), iriiringa (baptism), hīmene (hymns), whakamoemiti (thanks), tāpae (dedication)		
16. Kaioraora	venting haka, derision song		
17. Karakia	intoned incantation/invocation		Intoned incantation: <i>Whakataka te hau</i> Intoned invocation: He karakia mō Tūmatauenga.
18. Karanga	formal call, invitation, pōhiri (call of welcome by the women of the tangata whenua, manuhiri), karanga koha, tangi whakahuahua call	reo karanga	
19. Karere	1. news	rongonga kōrero	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taurira
	2. text message karere (ā-waea)		
20. Karere ā-tari	memo		
21. Karere ā-waea	phone message		
22. Kāri	cards 1. kāri Kirihimete, kāri huritau 2. kāri pakihi		
23. Kauhau	speech, seminar, sermon, presentation kauhau hāhi sermon		Tirohia <i>Ko ngā Tamariki kāore anō kia rima ngā tau</i> nā Merimeri Penfold <i>Te Mahi Ahuwhenua</i> nā Apirana Ngata in Biggs, Hohepa and Mead (eds) <i>Selected Readings in Māori</i>
24. Kawenga kōrero	news story		Tirohia <i>Te Karere, Te Kaea</i>
25. Kēmu patapatai	quiz		
26. Kīanga	phrase		‘Nō reira, heoi anō...’
27. Kīanga kōrero	cliche		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
28. Kīanga teremau	catch phrase		Kei te pouaka whakaata ēnei: “1 2 3 4 Pūkana.” “Nā te Māngai Pāho te pūtea tautoko.” “Ā tātou waiata, ā tātou kōrero koinā tātou.”
29. Kīrehu	idiom		Hoea tō waka [mahia atu].
30. Kirimana	contract		
31. Kīwaha	colloquialism, idiom		Tirohia <i>He Kohinga Kīwaha</i>
32. Kopikopi	an imusing impromptu dance performed by women in which the belly is thrust forward		
33. Komekome	back biting gossip		
34. Kōrero	1. iwi history, Māori narrative 2. quotation 3. news 4. text	kōrero ā-iwi, kōrero tawhito, kōrero tuku iho	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
35. Kōrerorero	conversation, dialogue	whakawhitinga kōrero, kōrero	
36. Kōrero ahiahi	light hearted story		
37. Kōrero-ā-iwi	narrative/history from an iwi		Tirohia <i>Ngā Iwi o Tainui</i>
38. Kōrero hākinakina	sports commentary		
39. Kōrero huna	code		
40. Kōrero nehe	historical text, ancient history	kōrero o mua, hitori, hitoria	
41. Kōrero o mua	history	hitori, hitoria	
42. Kōrero paipera	biblical writing		
43. Kōrero paki	fiction, joke		
44. Kōrero parau	fable	pakikīrehe pakiwaitara kararehe	Tirohia <i>Te Waeroa rāua ko te Namu i rō Selected Readings; He Momo Pakiwaitara, Te Kōrari Series</i>
45. Kōrero pono	factual text, non-fiction	kōrero whai meka	Te Pūao Series nā Huia Publishers

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
46. Kōrero tāpiri	epilogue		
47. Kōrero takurua	winters tale, romance		
48. Kōrero tatu iho	Māori narrative, oral legacy	kōrero, kōrero Māori	
49. Kōrero tohutohu	instructional text		
50. Kōrero waea	phone message	karere waea	
51. Kōrero whakakata	joke	whakakata, paki, hangarau, kōrero whakatangatanga pāpāringa	
52. Kōrero Whakakī	continuity announcing, broadcasting		
53. Kupu	message		
54. Kupu ā-waea	telegram		
55. Kupu waiata	lyrics kupu mōteatea, kupu haka...		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taurira
56. Kupu whakaaraara	attention catch phrases		He kīanga ōpaki, he kīanga ōkawa hoki: Kia ora tātou, kei konei, kei a au, kia hiwa rā, kei au te rākau kōrero, tihei mauri ora...
57. Kupu whakaari/tongi	prophetic saying		Tirohia <i>Te Kohure</i>
58. Kupu whakaari	play script		<i>Te Tangata Whai Rawa a Weneti</i>
59. Kupu whakataki	foreword in a pūrongo	wāhinga kōrero	
60. Maheni	magazine	moheni	<i>Toi te Kupu</i>
61. Mahere	map		
62. Maioha mate nūpepa	published newspaper obituaries	Poroporoaki tūpāpaku, poroporoaki	Tirohia paetukutuku mō <i>Te Ao Hou</i> , (rapu/poroporoaki) inā: He poroporoaki mō Kingi Koroki http://teaohou.natlib.govt.nz/teaohou/issue/Mao56TeA/c2.html
63. Manawawera	a type of haka		
64. Manu kōrero	prepared speech for Manu Kōrero. Types of speeches	whaikōrero, whakataetae	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	include: kōrero takatu (prepared speech), and kōrero ohore / tene (impromptu speech).	kōrero	
65. Matapae Huarere	weather forecast		
66. Maramataka	calendar		
67. Mātāpunenga	encyclopedia		Tirohia <i>Te Ara</i> http://www.teara.govt.nz/
68. Mātārere	leaflet	mātārere whakamōhio	
69. Meneti	minutes including, meneti hui, meneti kōti, court minutes	meneti hui	
70. Mihi	1. introduction 2. greeting	pepeha	He mihi ōpaki, he mihi ōkawa.
71. Mihimihi	formal exchange of speeches		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taurira
72. Mōteatea	traditional song	waiata koroua, waiata tawhito	
73. Mōteatea	in-depth poem	mōteatea-ā-kōrero	
74. Motuhenga	documentary	pakipūmeka	
75. Muna	gossip, code		
76. Niupepa	paper, broadsheet <i>niupepa o mua</i> old Māori newspapers from 1842- 1920		Tirohia ngā <i>Niupepa o Mua</i> http://www.nzdl.org/cgi- bin/niupepalibrary?a=p&p=about&c=niupepa
77. Niureta	newsletter	pānui	Tirohia <i>He Muka</i> www.tetaurawhiri.govt.nz/ ; <i>Kokiri Paetae</i> http://www.tpk.govt.nz/publications/paetae/default. asp
78. Nōti	note	kāri karere, tuhinga poto, pitopito kōrero	
79. Ngeri	haka, or waiata, recited		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	song of exhortation; haka without uniform actions		
80. Ōhākī	parting gift of words		
81. Oriori	waiata		
82. Pae whakaata	webpage	whārangi rorohiko	
83. Paipera	Bible kōrero paipera biblical texts such as whakataukī, himene		Tirohia te <i>Paipera</i> http://www.biblekeeper.com/maori/index.php
84. Paenga kōrero	anthology		Tirohia <i>Te Ao Mārama, Mātāwai, Tipiwhenua</i>
85. Paki	narrative (asTTle mentions 6 written genre – paki, taki, tohutohu, whakaatu, whakamārama, tautohe)		
86. Pakimaero	novel	pukapuka pūrākau	Tirohia <i>Makorea, Kaieke Tohorā</i>

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
87. Pakiwaitara	narrative, traditional story		
88. Pakiwaituhi	comic	kōmeke	Tirohia <i>Eke Panuku, Tāiki e, Tai ki Tai</i>
89. Paki waituhi	cartoon		
90. Panga	riddle	pere	
91. Panga kupu	crossword		
92. Pānui	announcement, message, notice, placard pānui tūmatanui - public announcement pānui tūranga wātea – job vacancy	pānuitanga	Tirohia ngā niupepa o ēnei rā.
93. Pānui pātū	wall chart		
94. Pānui tari	office memorandum	pānui, manatu, whakaaturanga	
95. Pānuitanga	advertisement pānuitanga pāpāho: reo irirangi, pouaka whakaata,	pānui	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
	niupepa, ipurangi		
96. Pānui whakaahua	poster	pānui pikitia, pikitia rahi pānui pātū	
97. Papaki ringaringa	hand clapping games		
98. Papakupu	dictionary	matatiki	
99. Pao	short spontaneous waiata		
100. Pao whaiāipo	love pao		
101. Pātere	abusive waiata of retort		
102. Peha	quip	kōrero whakakata	
103. Pepa	academic paper		
104. Pepa uiui	questionnaire		
105. Pepeha	1. Tribal maxim 2. Tribal mihi 3. Whakataukī	mihi	1. Ko Aotea utanga nui mō te kai, mō te kōrero. 2. Ko Hikurangi te maunga, ko Waiapu te awa, ko Ngāti Porou te iwi. 3. Ā, āu mahi, e Ware! (Mead & Grove, 2001:11)

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taurira
106. Pepe takimanawa	tongue twister	takawiri arero, whakararu arero, kupu whakawhīwhiwhi	
107. Pereti raihana	license plate		
108. Peruperu	leaping haka with weapons		
109. Pitopito kōrero	newspaper article, editorial, musings, current events		
110. Poi	types of waiata poi include: poi karakia, poi karaipiture (based on scriptures), poi atua (divine poi?), poipoi whakapapa.		
111. Pōkeka	haka		
112. Poroporoaki	farewell, eulogy poroporoaki/maioha mate		Maioha mate Kei roto i <i>He Muka</i> me ngā <i>nupepa o mua</i>

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	nupepa published farewells, obituaries		Tirohia NZETC online http://www.nzetc.org/ for Ngā Kōrero a Reweti Kohere mā (search/poroporoaki)
113. Pōpō	waiata for a young person		
114. Poukāri	postcards	pānui tuku, kāri	Tirohia <i>Te Pihinga</i> (1989: 122-126)
115. Pōwhiri	Invite: mārena, huritau, tūwheratanga, pō whakangahau, whakarewatanga launch	pōhiri tuhi, pānui, tono	
116. Puha	a type of haka similiar to a peruperu but used to call kinsmen to arms		
117. Puka	forms: puka karere ā-waea fax sheet		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taurira
	puka rēhita registration, puka tono application, puka hoko order form, puka whakamārama fact sheet		
118. Puka kōhi kōrero	scrapbook		
119. Puka whakamōhio	brochure	mātārere, pānui whakamārama	
120. Pukapuka	Book Ki Toi Te Kupu, anei anō ētehi momo pukapuka: Pukapuka mahi, work book Pukapuka matua, text book Pukapuka tamariki, childrens book Pukapuka waiata, song		Tirohia <i>The Reed Dictionary of Modern Māori</i> (2002:225) mō ngā momo pukapuka.

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	book Pukapuka whakamārama explanation book		
121. Pukapuka māro	board book		Tirohia <i>Tōku Kōhanga</i> Series, Huia Publishers
122. Pukapuka rahi	blown-up book		
123. Pukapuka whakaahua	picture book	pukapuka pikitia	Tirohia <i>Kiteora Kei Hea ō Hū?</i>
124. Pukapuka wāhanga	chapter book	pukapuka ūpoko	Tirohia <i>Te Mere</i>
125. Pūmahara	memories and recollections of Māori Elders		
126. Pūrākau	origin narrative, traditional story, legend		
127. Pure	karakia		
128. Pūrongo	report / document purongo putaiao <i>science</i>	ripoata	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	<i>report</i> , pūrongo hauata <i>accident report</i> , pūrongo moheni <i>magazine report</i> Pūrongo moheni, <i>magazine</i> <i>report</i>		
129. Pūrongo Hansard	Hansard report		Tirohia <i>Hansard</i> http://www.clerk.parliament.govt.nz/hansard/Hansard.aspx
130. Rārangi	list, directory Rārangi taonga <i>inventory</i>		
131. Rārangi kai	menu	rārangi kai kupu, pānui kai	
132. Rārangi take	agenda		
133. Rārangi wā	timeline		
134. Rātaka	diary		
135. Rerenga	social commentary or		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
Kōrero	criticism		
136. Reta	letter: reta ōkawa formal: reta ki te ētita, reta pakihi reta ōpaki personal: aroha, hoa, whanau		
137. Rīri	family arguments		
138. Rotarota	poem	mōteatea, ruri	Tirohia te pae tukutuku <i>Te Wharekura</i> http://www.tki.org.nz/r/maori/wharekura/whare07_st4_e.php Te Wharekura 7: Pakō, he ruri tatau, Raruraru, Te Kaititiro o te Pō, Te Taniwha, <i>Te Pāoro, Ara Pānui</i> 1-7 Tirohia <i>He Kohikohinga</i> : 2, 3, 23, 36 Tirohia <i>He Rotarota</i> Tirohia <i>Ko te Wā Kaukau a Pepi</i>
139. Ruri	short spontaneous waiata,	rotarota	Tirohia te pae tukutuku <i>Te Ao Hou</i> , (rapu/poem)

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	nursery rhyme, ditty, poem		
140. Ruruku	karakia		
141. Tāhuhu tangata	curriculum vitae	tātai oranga, tātai pūmanawa	
142. Takawiri arero	tongue twister	pepe takimanawa, kupu whīwhiwhi, whakapiki (Kai Tahu)	Tirohia <i>He Kohinga Tuatahi</i> : Mango Pango, he takawiri arero huarite Tirohia <i>He Kohinga</i> 12-16, 23, 24, 27 Tirohia <i>Nga Kōrero</i> 4
143. Taki	recount	hokinga whakaaro	
144. Takinga kōrero	commentary		
145. Tangi whakahuahua	momo karanga		
146. Tāpaetanga	submission to a government body		
147. Taukī	statement	Tāuākī	

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
		Whakamaunga atu statement of intent	
148. Taukītanga kōrero	Using a proverb or a pithy phrase as a statement.		‘Ko te koura anake ka hoki whakamuri’
149. Taunaha	bespeak the land	taunahanaha	Tirohia <i>He Kōrero Pūrākau mō ngā Taunahanahatanga a ngā Tūpuna</i>
150. Tauparapara	karakia		
151. Tautohe	persuade	tohe, whakawhere	
152. Taupatupatu	debate	taukumekume tautohe, tautohetohe	
153. Taurangi	promise		
154. Tīkiti	ticket		
155. Tiriti	treaty		
156. Tiwhikete	certificate		
157. Tohi	baptism karakia		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
158. Tohu	signs tohu huarahi road sign tohu auahi kore symbols ngā tohu a te Hāhi Ratana, a Te Kooti, a Te Paimārire		
159. Tohutaka	recipe	tohutao, tohutohu tao kai, rārangi kai, tikanga tunu kai	
160. Tohutohu	directions, instructions ārahi whakamahi mihini manual	kōrero tohutohu	
161. Tongi	Prophetic sayings He kōrero poropiti a Tawhiao, a wai rā.		
162. Tuhinga	captions, subtitles		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
hauraro			
163. Tuhinga poto	short story	kōrero poto, pakiwaitara	Tirohia <i>Huia Short Stories, Ngā Pakiwaitara a Huia</i>
164. Tuhinga paerua	masterate thesis	tuhinga whakapae	
165. Tuhinga paetoru	doctoral thesis	tuhinga kairangi, tākutatanga	Tirohia <i>Kāore te Aroha: te hua o te wānanga</i>
166. Tuhinga rangahau	research writing such as proposal, ethics		
167. Tuhinga roa	Essay Tuhinga tohe expository text	tuhituhi kōrero, kaurangi, kauhanga	
168. Tuhituhinga- ā-rōpū	archives of Māori organisations		
169. Tuhinga tawhito	manuscript		
170. Tuhinga	draft		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
tuatahi			
171. Tuhinga whakaahua	photographic essay		
172. Tukupū	text message	tuku kupu, karere ā-waea, tēke, <i>text</i>	
173. Tukunga pāpāho	press release	pānui pāpāho	Tirohia te pae whakaata a Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
174. Tūtohunga kura	School charter		
175. Ture	laws, rules: games		
176. Tutu ngārahu	haka with weapons		
177. Uiuinga	interview	patapatai	
178. Uruurua	karakia		
179. Uruuru whenua	karakia		
180. Waerea	karakia		
181. Waea	fax		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
whakaahua			
182. Waiata	song		Tirohia NZETC online http://www.nzetc.org/ Ko Ngā Mōteatea me nga Hakirara o ngā Māori
183. Waiata aroha	love song	waiata whaiāipo	
184. Waiata hahani	disparaging song		
185. Waiata haurangi	intoxication waiata		
186. Waiata karakia	karakia song		
187. Waiata kori	action waiata		
188. Waiata mataara	alarm waiata		
189. Waiata matakite	prophetic waiata		
190. Waiata mihi	acknowledgement waiata		
191. Waiata	fairy waiata		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
patupaiarehe			
Waiata poi	a type of waiata that adds nuance through the use of dance and poi		
193. Waiata-ā- ringa	action waiata		
194. Waiata tangi	lament waiata		
195. Waiata tira	choral song		
196. Waiata tohutohu	song of instruction		
197. Waiata whakapapa	waiata		
198. Waituhi whakakata	comic strip		
199. Wero	challenge		
200. Whaikōrero	oratory, speech, debate There are other kōrero		

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Tauira
	within the pōhiri including te kōrero a te kaitiki koha.		
201. Whakaaraara	opening chant, watch song	whakaaraara pā	
202. Whakaari	play/drama he kupu nā Te Kooti	whakatautau	
203. Whakaeke	entrance song		
204. Whakamārama	explanation		
205. Whakamōhio	explanation/description	whakaahua	
206. Whakapapa	genealogy		
207. Whakapiripiri	sticker bumper sticker		
208. Whakaputanga Whakaaro	editorial in a niureta or moheni		
209. Whakarāpopoto kōrero	summary or abstract in a pūrongo or hautaka	kupu ārahi <i>abstract</i>	
210. Whakariterite	sorting poem		Ko tā te kaiuru tuaono 'Tītoi, tiko, tata e/Pona, pona, tūtae poaka'

Momo Kōrero Text-type/genre	Kupu Pākehā translation	Kupu Taurite synonym	Hei Taura
211. Whakataetae kōrero	Māori oratory at contests	manu kōrero, whaikōrero	
212. Whakataetae manawawera	breath-holding game		
213. Whakatauākī	specific proverb		<i>Tirohia Kōrero Hau Kura</i>
214. Whakataukī	general proverb		
215. Whakatautau	drama, role-play		
216. Whakatū waewae	haka		
217. Whakawātea	exit song		
218. Whakawhiti	in terms of kapahaka, an interchange		
219. Whiti	light verse or poem	ruri, rotarota, mōteatea, mōteatea-ā-kōrero	
220. Wīra	will	wira	

ĀPITIHANGA 2: He Rārangi Kupu mō te Mātātuhi
A Lexicon of Conventions and Literary Terms of Written Māori

He mea hanga tēnei rārangi kupu i ngā kōrero a Cuddon (1999), a Derewianka (1990), a Hough (2002a), a Joseph (2004b), a Brougham mā (2001), a McCarthy (1996), a Murphy & Keegan (2002) me Ryan (2002). Nā te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga (MOE) ngā marautanga e kōrerotia ana i tēnei rārangi.

Kupu	Whakamāori	Whakamārama, Whakatauirā	Tohutoro
Accent	mita, reo ā-iwi, reo ā-tangata	Kei ia tangata tōna ake mita e tohua ana nō hea taua iwi. Kei te <i>Marautanga Reo Māori</i> ko te mita ko te <i>intonation</i> . Arā, ko te piki, ko te heke o te reo.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Acknowledgement	mihi	He momo-kōrero ā-waha, he momo-kōrero ā-mata hoki. Ko te kupu mihi (kupu whakataki rānei) ko te tīmatanga kōrero o tētehi pūrongo.	
Acronym	kupu rāpoto	He whakarāpopotonga i tētehi kōrero āhua roroa ki tētehi kupu kotahi. Ko āna pū he kupu motuhake, hei tauira: TPK (Te Puni Kokiri); TKI (Te Kete Ipurangi).	nāku
Aesthetic	rerehua	Ko tā te tangata whakatau ki te ātaahua o tētehi mea: he	Marautanga Toi

Allegory	kōrero tairitenga	kōrero, he tuhituhi, he atatata rānei. Kei tua te māramatanga o tēnei momo-kōrero i te tikanga ā-kupu. Hei tauira, i whakamāoritia te <i>Pilgrims Progress</i> i te tau 1854, ā, ko te tairitenga o tēnei tuhinga ko te ao karaitiana, ko te whawhai kia ū ki te pono.	nāku
Alliteration	tārua orokati, kupu pū tuatahi ōrite	He kīpeha whakatangi. He tāruarua i ngā orokati tuatahi o te kupu. Pērā i te ‘r’ i tēnei rerenga kōrero ‘Rurururu rererere rururu e’. Nō te waiata <i>Pūrerehua</i> nā Hirini Melbourne.	Te Kōrari, Te Ohu Whakamaru
Allusion	tohutoro	He kīpeha huatau. Ka huaina t/ētehi kupu, engari ka pā ki wāhi kē mō ōna whakamārama.	Te Kōrari
Alphabet (Māori)	arapū Māori A, e, h, i, k, m, n, ng, o, p, r, t, u, w, wh	Anei ngā kupu me ngā tangi mō te arapū Māori ki tā Maraea Hunia mā o Huia Publishers: /a/, /e/, /ha/, /i/, /kei/, /eme/, /ene/, /nga/, /o/, /pi/, /ara/, /ti/, /u/, /wa/, /wha/	Huia Publishers
Ambiguity	rangirua	He tikanga atu anō o tētehi kupu, o tētehi kīanga, o tētehi kōrero. He tikanga e kaha kitea ana i te mōteatea.	Ryan, Ngata
Analogy	tairitenga	He whakarite whānui i ētehi kaupapa e rua. Hei tauira, mō te ako i te reo Māori, ka hangaia he whare kōrero: ko ngā kupu te papa, ko ngā rerenga kōrero te pātū, ko ngā momo-kōrero te tāhuhu, ko nga kīpeha ngā whakairo.	kaiuru

Anecdote	paki	He momo-kōrero ā-waha te paki. He poto, he ngahau, e hāngai ana pea ki te kaupapa kei te kōrerohia.	kaiuru
Antagonist	toariri	Ko te kiripuaki i roto i tētehi paki kei te whawhai ki te toa.	nāku
Analyse	tātari, arohaehae, wetewete	Ko te wetewete i tētehi kaupapa. Kitea ai te tātaritanga i ngā momo- kōrero ā-waha nei, te taupatupatu, te whaikōrero, me ngā momo- kōrero ā-tuhi nei, te arotakenga, te reta ki te ētita. He nui ngā ara wetewete. Ko tētehi āhuatanga o te tātari mātātuhi ko te āta wetewete i ngā nuka reo kia kitea te hohonutanga o te kōrero.	Ryan
Anthology	paenga kōrero	He kāhui pukapuka e mau ana ngā kōrero mō tētehi kaupapa, mō ngā tuhinga rānei a tētehi tangata. Inā, ko <i>Ngā Pakiwaitara a Huia 1-4</i> , Ko <i>Te Ao Mārama</i> .	Ryan
Antimetabole	kupu huri hāngai	He kīpeha whakawhere, inā he tārua i te kupu, heoi, he mea huri kōaro. Pērā i te pepeha e kī ana: Ko au ko te awa, ko te awa ko au; pērā hoki i te kīanga wā e mea ana: i te ao i te pō, i te pō i te ao.	
Antonym, antithesis	kupu tauaro	1. He momo kupu kei te noho ātete ki tētehi anō kupu. Ko te kupu kawa te kupu tauaro mō te reka.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori

		2. He kīpeha whakawhere, he tūhono i ngā whakaaro rerekē e kitea ai te hononga o tētehi ki tētehi. Inā, Ki uta, ki tai.	
Argument	tautohe	He ‘momo tuhinga’ (<i>genre</i>) e tohe ana i tētehi kaupapa. Kitea ai i ngā momo-kōrero ā-waha nei, te taupatupatu, i te momo-kōrero ā-tuhi rānei, te tuhinga roa.	asTTle
Assonance	oropuare tārua	He kīpeha e pai ai te tangi o te reo. He tāruarua i ngā oropuare ōrite i ngā kupu e noho tata ana. Ko tōna tuakana ko te orokati tārua.	nāku
Audience	whakaminenga	Ko te hunga whakarongo, te hunga pānui, te hunga mātakitaki rānei i tētehi momo-kōrero.	Marautanga Toi
Autobiography	haukiri	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, he tuhinga pono e taki haere ana i te oranga o tētehi tangata, heoi, nāna tonu i tuhi. He haukiri te pukapuka <i>He Hokinga Mahara</i> nā Hēmi Potatau.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Beat	manawataki, taki, patu	Ko te taki i roto i tētehi kōrero. He tere te patu, he pōturi rānei te patu, he pēwhea rānei. Ki te Marautanga Toi ko te manawataki te patunga matua.	Te Kōrari, Ryan, Marautanga Toi
Bias	whakaaro tītaha	Ko te whakaputa whakaaro, heoi ko aua whakaaro e pā ana anake ki tētehi wāhanga o te kaupapa whānui. Mō te	nāku

Bibliography	rārangi kōrero	matapakinga, ka whakaaturia ngā taha katoa o te kaupapa, heoi anō, mō te tautohe, ka tītaha kē ngā whakaaro ki te whakaāetanga, ki te whakahētanga rānei. He rārangi o ngā tuhinga o tētehi kaupapa kei te mutunga o tētehi tuhinga. Ko te rārangi kōrero ka mahia hei taunaki i te tuhinga, he rārangi rānei hei āwhina mā te kaipānui.	
Biography	kōrero tangata, haurongo	He kōrero mō te orange o tētehi tangata nā kaituhi kē i tuhi. He haurongo te pukapuka <i>Eruera Manuera</i> nā Te Onehou Phillis.	Marautanga Reo Māori, Taura Whiri
Blurb	tuhinga uhi o muri	Ko te tuhinga whakarāpopoto kei te uhi o muri me te <i>dust jacket</i> hei patipati atu i te kaipānui kia pānui i te pukapuka.	
Body language	reo ā-tinana	Ko te whakaatu, ko te whakawairua i te tikanga mā te tinana. Ko te tāpiri rānei i te tikanga kē mā te koringa tinana anake.	Marautanga reo Māori
Brainstorming	ohia manomano, whakangakongako whakaaro, tātā whakaaro	He rautaki, he whakatakotoranga whakaaro mō tētehi kaupapa. I te wā ka whakangakongako whakaaro mai kāore e wherawherahia ana mēnā he pai, he kino, he hāngai, he kōtiti rānei aua whakaaro. Ka whakawhāriki	ERO, Te Kōhure, MOE

Chapter book	pukapuka wāhanga	kau atu, ka whakatakoto kau i te whakaaro. He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, he momo pukapuka. I te kura, he whakawhitinga mā te tamariki mai i te pukapuka pikitia ki te pakimaero. Ko <i>RT3:Ki Tua o Rangiātea</i> te pukapuka wāhanga tuatahi o te puka takitoru.	
Character	kiripuaki, kaiwhakauru, kaitū, tangata	Ko ngā kiri o roto i tētehi kōrero. He tāngata, he kararehe, he mea rānei. Hei tauira, ko Rangi rāua ko Hinewai ētehi o ngā kiripuaki matua o <i>RT3:Ki Tua o Rangiātea</i> .	Marautanga Toi, kaiuru
Cliche	kupu maninohea, kīanga kōrero	He kōrero e auau nei te rangona, ā, hoki atu hoki atu ko taua kōrero anō rā. Nō reira pea, kua waimeha tōna wana ki te whakaminenga. Ki te reo whaikōrero, ki ētehi tāngata, he kupu maninohea ēnei kīanga, “e ngā mate o te tau, o te marama, o te wiki, o te rā...” o te haora, o te meneti, o te kimonga.	kaiuru, kaiuru
Climax	teiteitanga, wā whakaharahara	He tikanga tēnei i roto i te paki. Ka neke whakamua ngā mahi o te kōrero tae noa ki te teiteitanga. Me kī, ka tutū te puehu i te kōrero.	Te Kōrari, Ngata
Collocation	kupu tautata	1. He momo kupu e haere ngātahi ana i te nuinga o te wā, inā: Ko Rangi, ko Papa; ko te hū me te tōkena; ko te	nāku

		naihi me te paoka.	
		2. He huīnga kupu rānei o tētehi kaupapa, inā mō te pōwhiri: wero, karanga, mihimihi, whaikōrero, rūrū.	
Colloquial language	reo kīwaha	Ko te momo reo o te kōrerorero, hei tauira, he wetereo kē tā te whakawhiti kōrero: “Pīrangi koe ki te haere ki ngā toa?” “Āe marika.”	
Colloquialism	kīwaha	Ko ngā kīanga o tētehi reo e whakaatu ana i tētehi āhuatanga kē atu i te aronga o ngā kupu.	
Compare	whakataurite	Ko te kimi ōritenga me ngā rerekētanga o ētehi kaupapa.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Complication	uauatanga, raruraru	He āhuatanga tēnei i roto i te paki. Mā te uauatanga ka kitea ngā tuakiri o ngā kiripuaki.	Ngā Tauaromahi
Compound word	kupu tūhono	Ko te moetanga o ngā kupu e rua hei kupu kotahi: whaikōrero, rangatira, mokopuna. Tērā ka honoa ngā kupu e rua ki te tohuhono i ētehi wā: Tāne-te-wānanga, Hui-tanguru, Te Awa-mutu, pia-rēmana.	
Concept	aroro	Ko te pūtake o tētehi whakaaro.	
Connotation	tikanga kē, aronga kē	He tikanga kē atu i tā te tikanga ā-kupu. Hei tauira, ko te rourou, he konae iti, heoi he aronga kē tōna, ko te manaakitanga. He tohu anō hoki te rourou mō te manaakitanga.	nāku

Consonance	orokati tārua kē	He tāruarua i ngā orokati ōrite i ngā kupu e noho tata mai ana, heoi, he rerekē ngā oropuare, arā, te ‘k’ i te whakataukī nei, ‘He kōtuku kai whakaata’.	
Content	kiko	Mēnā ka whaihua ētehi momo-kōrero me whai take hoki, me whai kiko.	
Contents	rārangi kōrero, ihirangi, kiko o roto	Ko te whakarōpū i ngā kaupapa. Kia mātaihia te rārangi kōrero ka tere mōhiotia he aha te kiko o roto o tētehi tuhinga.	kaiuru
Context	horopaki	I te tīmatanga o tētehi kōrero kitea ai: te wā, ko wai, te wāhi, te mahi, te aha atu.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Contrast	whakatairite, whakataurite rerekē	Ko te kimi rerekētanga o ētehi kaupapa.	Marautanga Reo Māori, Marautanga Toi
Consonant	orokati	Ko nga pū o te reo ehara i te oropuare. Ka āhua kati te waha i te huanga ake o te orokati. Mō te reo Māori ko te H K M N (Ng) P R T W (Wh). He pūrua (<i>digraph</i>) te Ng me te Wh.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Convention	tikanga tuhi, tikanga kōrero, tikanga Māori	Ko ngā āhuatanga e tika ana me rongo, me kite i roto i tētehi kōrero. Ko tētehi tikanga ka tika me rongo i te whaikōrero ki tā Mahuta (1974:40) ko te: whakaaraara, tau, mihi, mihi mate, mihi whakahuihui, mihi ora, waiata,	

Correct usage	reo tika	kōrero whakamutunga, pōwhiri whakamutunga. Mā ngā kaikōrero o tētehi reo e kī mēnā e tika ana te huanga kōrero: kupu mai, weteoro mai, wetereo mai. Ka rerekē te reo tika i te whakaaetanga o ia reanga kia rerekē haere taua reo.	nāku
Cover (book)	uhi	Ko te mata o te pukapuka. He mārō ētehi, he ngohe ētehi atu. Ko te tapanga kei te uhi.	kaiuru
Critical literacy	wetewete i te kōrero	Ko te āta titiro ki ngā momo kōrero me te kimi i ngā take huna. Ko ngā take ahurea: ko te mana, ko te taha tāne, taha wahine, ko te momo whakaaro ā-rōpū, ka mutu, ko ngā aroro me ngā kaupapa matua.	nāku
Culture	ahurea	Ko ngā āhuatanga o tētehi iwi i tētehi wā, wāhi hoki, hei tauira: te hāhi, te tōrangapū, te reo, te tikanga, te whakaaro, te whanonga, te kōrero o mua, te aha atu e tohua ai he iwi te iwi.	
Denouement	taunga, whakakapinga o te paki	I roto i te paki, ko te taunga tētehi tikanga nui. Ina mutu ana te teiteitanga, ka whakakapia ngā wāhanga o te kōrero e noho tārewa tonu ana hei whakautu pea i te pātai; ka aha ngā kiripuaki ā muri i tērā mahi nui?	Ngā Tauaromahi
Denotation	tikanga ā-kupu	Ko te tikanga kei te mata o ngā kupu. Ko te tikanga peha	nāku

		(<i>figurative meaning</i>) te kupu tauaro mō te tikanga ā-kupu (<i>literal meaning</i>).	
Detail	taipitopito, mokamoka	Ka whakawhāitihia te titiro o te whakaminenga ki ētehi āhuatanga mokamoka. Ko ētehi o ngā taipitopito i roto i te mihi, ko te ingoa tangata pea, ko te ingoa wāhi pea, ko te ingoa tupuna pea.	Marautanga Toi
Dialect	reo ā-iwi, mita	Ko te rerekētanga o te reo o te iwi: he kupu, he whakahua, he wetereo, he momo-kōrero. Ki ētehi mā te reo-ā-iwi e pupuri ai i te mana motuhake o te iwi.	kaiuru
Dialogue	Kōrerorero, whakawhitinga kōrero	He momo-kōrero, he whakawhitinga whakaaro nā te tokorua, nā te tokohia rānei. I roto i te momo-kōrero ā-tuhi pēnei i te pakiwaiata a Huia ka tohua te kōrerorero ki ngā pikotahi (‘’).	
Diction	Mita o te reo	1. Ko te whiriwhiri i ngā kupu e tika ana mō tētehi whakaminenga. He ōkawa, he ōpaki rānei. He tikanga ā-kupu, he tikanga peha rānei. Inā, ki te mihia he koroua kāore e tika ana kia kī tētehi taiohi, “Tēnā koe, bro.” 2. Nā, he rerekē rānei te tikanga i te wā ka whakahuaina te kupu, hei tauira, ‘Kuuuaaa roa te wā’.	Ryan

Direct/indirect speech	Tā te kaikōrero ake kupu <i>direct speech</i> Tā te kaikōrero kē kupu <i>indirect speech</i>	Ko te <i>direct speech</i> , ko te kōrero a tētehi kiripuaki e kī pēnei ana me ngā pikorua. ‘ <i>Ka kī mai a Tana, “Haere tahi tāua ki te pāti.”</i> ’ Ko te <i>indirect speech</i> ko te kī pēnei, ‘Ka kī mai a Tana me haere tahi tāua ki te pāti.’	
Discourse analysis	tātari whakatakotoranga reo	Ko te wetewete i te tikanga o te kōrero mā te titiro ki te pānga o te kōrero ki te horopaki me te ahurea.	Marautanga Toi
Documentary	motuhenga, pakipūmeka	He tāhu ataata, he kōrero pono kei te āta aronui ki tētehi kaupapa.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, Whakaata Māori
Double entendre, sexual innuendo	tohutoro ai	He kīpeha huatau, he kōrero ka tau ki wāhi kē mō te tikanga o ngā kupu. Arā ko te waiata, <i>pīki whara he taiaha he muramura e</i> . Ki te reo more, ko te taiaha kei te kōrerotia, engari, ki te reo peha ko te ure kē kei te kōrerotia.	nāku
Drama	whakatautau	He momo-kōrero ā-mata, he paki mā ngā kaitapere i runga atamira.	
Editorial	pitopito whakaaro	He tuhinga whakaaro nā te ētita o tētehi moheni, niupepa rānei.	
Effective	whaihua	Kia tutuki, kia whaihua tētehi momo-kōrero me rōreka ki te whakaminenga.	

Embellish	whakanikoniko, whakanakonako	Ko te whakapaitia o te momo-kōrero ki te kīpeha.	
Emotion	rongo, kare-ā-roto	Ko ngā hīnga ake o te ngākau, o te ate.	kaiuru
Emotional connection	rongo ā-ngākau	Tērā ka arohaina atu ngā kare-ā-roto o tētehi atu. Me kī, ko te taunga o hā kē ki roto i tō whataumanawa.	
Empathy	aroha	Ko te aro ki te hā o tētehi atu. He mea nui kia arohaina ngā kiripuaki e te whakaminenga. Piki, heke, ka uru, ka whai haere te whakaminenga ānō nei kei roto rā i taua kōrero.	
Event, incident	tauwhāinga, heipū, mea, mahi	Ko te mea nui o tētehi wā, o tētehi wāhi.	kaiuru, Ngata
Exposition	whakamārama	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi e āta whakatakoto ana i ngā mōhiotanga o tētehi kaupapa.	
Extended metaphor	huahuatau roa	He whakaū i te huahuatau aroro kotahi i roto i tētehi kōrero, heoi, ka kawea haeretia taua whakaaro, taua whakaritenga. Hei tauira, ko te huahuatau aroro, HE KAUPAPA TE WAKA: “Tōia te waka o te reo Māori, mā wai e tō, māku a tō...”	
Fable	pakikīrehe, pakiwaitara	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, ka whakatangatatia ngā kīrehe nā reira ka āhei i a rātou te kōrero. He paki, he poto, he	Nāku, Ryan

		kaupapa i te mutunga iho.	
Fiction	paki, pakimaero, pakiwaitara	He kōrero i hua mai i te hinengaro, i te ngākau tangata. He auaha te takoto.	
Figurative language	reo peha	He momo reo kei tua kē te aronga i ngā kupu. Ka taka mai ko te kupu whakarite, ko te whakataukī i tēnei kārangarangatanga. Ko tā te reo nei he whakairo whakaahua ki te hinengaro.	Kaiuru, (ko te ‘ariā pohewa’ i rō Te Kōrari.)
Figurative meaning	tikanga peha	Kei tua te aronga o tētehi kōrero i tō te tikanga ā-kupu. Hei tauira, ko te pou o te whare hei toko ake i te whare. Ki te kīa he pou te tangata, ko te tikanga peha, he tangata e hāpai ana i te kaupapa.	
Figures of rhetoric, rhetorical figures, schemes	kīpeha whakawhere	Ko te huinga kīpeha kei te raweke i te takoto o te kupu kia kukume mai i te aro o te whakaminenga. Ko te ui makihoi, te kupu tārara, te kupu tātā ētehi.	nāku
Figure of sound, schemes	kīpeha whakatangi	Ko te huinga kīpeha kei te raweke i te takoto o te kupu kia pai ai te tangi hei patipati mā ngā taringa. Ko te ororite, te orokati tārua, te tāruarua, te huarite ētehi.	
Figure of speech, figurative expression, tropes	kīpeha	He kupu metareo, he whakamahinga kupu mō ngā huinga kupu e toru nei, te kīpeha huatau (<i>figures of thought</i>), te kīpeha whakawhere (<i>rhetorical figures</i>), te kīpeha	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori

		whakatangi (<i>figures of sound</i>). Ko tā te kīpeha huatau, he tau ki wāhi kē mō tōna tikanga. Ko tā nga kīpeha whakawhere, whakatangi, he raweke i te āhua o te kupu hei whakapakepake i te tangata.	
Figurative chains	whakatairite haere	Ko ngā kīanga peha i tētehi kōwae, i tētehi whiti e hono haere ana tētehi ki tētehi, pēnei i te huahuatau roa.	
Figure of thought, trope	kīpeha huatau	Ko te huīnga kīpeha kei wāhi kē te tikanga o te kōrero. Ko te kīwaha, te whakataukī, te kupu whakarite, te huahuatau ētehi.	nāku
Form, structure	hanganga	Ko te takotoranga o tētehi momo-kōrero. Ko ētehi hanganga kei te āta tohua, pēnei i te haiku. Kia toru ngā rerenga kōrero, ā, kia iti hoki ngā kūoro.	
Genre	momo tuhinga (<i>linguistic genre</i> : paki, tautohe, tohutohu; (<i>literary genre</i> : paki, mōteatea...), tūmomo mahi	He whakahuinga i tētehi momo. Mō te momo tuhinga (<i>linguistic genre</i>) he tūmomo whakatakotoranga, he take haporī tōna. Ko ngā momo tuhinga ki tā asTTle: te tuhi paki (<i>narrate</i>), te taki (<i>recount</i>), te tohutohu (<i>instruct</i>), te tautohe (<i>persuade</i>), te whakaatu (<i>describe</i>), te whakamārama (<i>explain</i>). Mō te momo tuhinga (<i>literary genre</i>) o te mātātuhi, ko te mōteatea, ko te poroporoaki, ko te pakimaero ētehi.	Marautanga reo Māori, Marautanga Toi

Glossary	rārangi kupu, rārangi whakamārama, papakupu	He rerenga kupu ka whakamāramatia. He mea nui te rārangi kupu mēnā he reo ā-kaupapa (<i>technical language</i>) kei te kōrerotia.	Ryan. Kaiuru, Ryan
Grammar	wetereo	He ture reo e pai ai te takoto o te kōrero ki te nuinga o ngā kaikōrero.	
Homonym	kupu huarite	He momo kupu; he rite te whakahua, he rerekē te tikanga. Ki te reo Māori, he kupu ingoa tētehi, he kupu mahi tētehi atu. Arā, patu- <i>cleaver</i> ; patu (-a) <i>to strike</i> .	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Hyperbole	kupu whakapehapeha	He kīpeha, he whakanui, he whakamōmona i tētehi kaupapa kōrero. He kupu whakapehapeha te kōrero, “E hoa, manomano ngā tāngata i tae atu ki te pō whakangahau.”	Ryan
Hyperlink	Hononga ki wāhi kē	He kaupapa rorohiko hei tūhono i tētehi kōrero ki tētehi atu.	
Idiom	kīrehu	He kīpeha huatau, he kīanga taketake o tētehi reo. I te nuinga o te wā, e kore e whai i te aronga i te tikanga ā-kupu. Inā, “ka kino kē koe”. Ki te kore te tangata e taunga ki ngā kīwaha Māori, e kore e mōhiotia te tikanga kē o te kīrehu nei, “Ka kino kē koe”, arā, he tino pai koe, he tino kino te pai.	

Illustration	pikitia	He mea tā ki te ringa. Kei roto i ngā pukapuka pikitia, me haere ngātahi ngā kupu me ngā pikitia; me tautoko tētehi i tētehi.	
Image	whakaahua, whakaata	He momo pikitia. Mehemea he kupu whakarite, ka hangā te whakaahua i te hinengaro.	
Imagery	reo whakaahua	Ko te reo reka ki ngā rongo: ā-taringa, ā-karu, ā-aha atu. Ko tētehi huarahi hei whakaatu i tēnei reo, mā te kupu whakarite, mā te huahuatau, mā te ororite, mā te aha rānei.	nāku
Impromptu speech	kōrero tene	He momo-kōrero ā-waha e kore e āta whakaritea, ka kōrerotia ohoreretia.	Manu Kōrero
Intonation	mita, tangi, mīpiki, mīheke (rising and falling)	Ko te piki, ko te heke o te reo; ko te tangi rānei o te reo, inā, he reo marū, he reo tōiri.	
Interjection	kupu whakapāha	He momo kīhau. He kupu hei whakaari atu i ngā kare-ā-roto. Pēnei i ngā kupu haka nei, I A! Ha! Ha!	
Intertextuality	Hononga ā-kōrero	Ko te ariā nei: ko ngā momo-kōrero o mua hei tūāpapa mō ngā momo-kōrero o naiānei. Me kī, he whakapapa tā ngā kōrero katoa.	
Irony, satire	hākiki, kupu hākiki	He kīpeha huatau kei te noho kōaro te tikanga o te kōrero	Ryan

		ki te tikanga ā-kupu. Inā te kīwaha, “Ka pai, hoea tō waka!” Tērā ka pōhēhētia he mihi te kīanga tuatahi, heoi he whakatoi kē te kīanga tuarua kia mahi te tangata i āna mahi kāore pea i te pai.	
Jargon	kupu ā-kaupapa (technical language)	Ko te reo ake o tētehi rōpū, o tētehi kaupapa rānei. He nui ngā kupu, ngā kīwaha kāore pea e mōhiohia whānuitia ana i waho atu o taua rōpū.	nāku
Lead sentence	rerenga kōrero tuatahi	Ko te whakatakotoranga i te kaupapa matua o tētehi momo-kōrero, pēnei i te tuhinga roa. Mā te rerenga kōrero e tuwhera te kaupapa.	Ohu Whakamaru
Literal language	reo more, reo ā-kupu	Ko te momo reo e tino hāngai pū ana. Kāore he aronga tua atu pēnei i te reo peha. Me kī, he reo more tā te pūrongo, he reo peha tā te mōteatea.	kaiuru
Literature	Mātātuhi, kōrero rongonui	Ko te huinga tuhinga kei te kīa e te iwi he tuhinga rerehua. Tērā pea he Mātākōrero, he Mātātuhi.	Kaiuru, Cormack
Literary criticism	tātari mātātuhi	Ko te wetenga i tētehi kōrero, i tētehi tuhinga kia kimihia mai ai te hōhonutanga o te kaupapa o tā te kaitito mahi.	
Literary device	nuka reo, nukanuka kōrero	He kupu whānui tēnei mō te whakamahi i tētehi āhuatanga reo mō tētehi take. He rautaki ngā nuka reo mā te kaikōrero, mā te kaituhi hei whakanikoniko i te kōrero,	Kaiuru, NZQA

		pēnei i ngā kīpeha: te whakataukī, te kīwaha, te kupu whakarite.	
Literary quality	nuka Mātātuhi, kounga o te tuhi	He huinga kupu hei tātari i te ao kōrero, i te ao tuhituhi, i te ao ataata.	Kaiuru, Marautanga Reo Māori
Litotes	kupu ātete	He kīpeha kei te whakakāore i te kupu tauaro mō te tikanga o te kōrero, hei tauira, “Kaore e ārikarika.” Ko te tikanga o te ārikarika, he iti, engari, kāore he iti – he nui. E kore e tino kaha nei te kitea tēnei kīpeha.	nāku
Loan word ¹	kupu mino, kupu whakawhiti	He kupu i takea mai i reo kē. Ko ngā kupu Māori nō te reo Ingarihi kei te whai i ngā oro o taua reo, hei tauira ngā kupu nei: tēpu, ngeru, pahi. Kei te āpitihanga o te papakupu o Williams te rahinga.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Malapropism	kupu pōhēhē	He kīpeha, ko te kuhu i tētehi kupu e tata ana te whakahua engari e hē ana mā reira, ko te orokati kotahi pea tōna rerekētanga, inā “Ka nui te mimi ki a koutou”(mihi) [he tauira pono tēnei].	nāku
Māori expression	takotoranga Māori	Ko tā te Māori huri i te kupu, i te kīanga.	
Māori perspective	aronga Māori, aronga ā-iwi	Ko te kaupapa e Māori ai tētehi whakaaro.	kaiuru

¹ a borrowed word; mistakenly referred to as a transliteration

Māori theme	kaupapa Māori	Ko ngā āhuatanga e whai kiko ana ki te iwi, ki te Māori ki te reanga o tētehi wā.	kaiuru
Message	karere, kaupapa	Ko te kaupapa, ko te matū o tētehi kōrero. Ko ngā whakaaro matua kei tētehi momo-kōrero mā te whakaminenga.	Whakapiki i te reo, kaiuru
Meta language	ahureo, metareo, nomenclature of language	Ko te reo e whakamārama ana i tētehi reo: ko te wetereo, ko te weteoro.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, kaiuru
Metaphor	huahuatau, kupu whakarite	He kīpeha e whakarite ana i ētehi kaupapa e rua. Arā, he rite tētehi āhuatanga o A ki tētehi āhuatanga o E. Arā, ko Māui tinihanga koe.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, Marautanga Reo Māori
Mindmap	mahere hinengaro	He rautaki tuhituhi hei whakakao whakaaro ki runga pepa.	
Mood	wairua, hā	He momo wairua kei ia momo-kōrero. Kei te pukapuka pikitia, <i>Raiha Rō Roa</i> nā C. Rangipunga te wairua ngahau. Nā taua kaitito anō te pukapuka wāhanga <i>Te Tauhou Rere i te Pō</i> engari he wairua whakamataku kē tōna.	
Motivation	toitōi manawa	Ko te pūtake i mahia tētehi mahi e te kaitito: He hiringa nō te mahara, he hīnga nō te ngākau.	

Narrative	paki	Ko te paki te tino rangatira o ngā momo tuhinga. I te nuinga o te wā e pēnei ana te tikanga o te paki: tīmata ai i te whakapuakinga (<i>orientation</i>), ka rārangihia ngā tauwhāinga (<i>events/incidents</i>), ka piki ki tētehi teiteitanga (<i>climax</i>), ā, ka tau iho ki tōna taunga (<i>resolution/denouement</i>).	
Neologism	kupu hou	Ka tau ana tētehi whakaaro hou ki roto i te pāpori ka hangā he kupu, he kīanga hou. He nui ngā kupu hou inā ruku ana i te hōhonutanga o tētehi kaupapa.	
Non-fiction	kōrero pono, kōrero whai meka	He momo-kōrero e whai meka ana i runga i tētehi kaupapa, pēnei i te tuhinga roa, i te kōrero tangata, i te motuhenga.	Marautanga Reo Māori, nāku
Nom de plume	ingoa huna, ingoa pene	He ingoa kē nō te kaituhi. Ko Tākuta Hōhepa te ingoa pene a Darryn Joseph.	nāku
Novel	pakimaero, pukapuka pūrākau	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, he paki roa kua pukapukatia. Ko te pakimaero whaiaipo tuatahi i te reo Māori, ko <i>Makorea</i> nā Kāterina Mataira.	Kāterina Mataira, Ryan
Nuance	rehurehutanga, ngā rehu o te reo	Ko ngā rerekētanga e paku neke ai te tikanga. Inā, ko te rerekētanga o te 'kia ora' me te 'kia ora rawa atu'. He mihi te taurua tuatahi, ā, he mihi nui ake te mea tuarua.	kaiuru

Onomatopoeia	kupu ororite, kupu whakaritenga ā-tangi	He kīpeha whakatangi. Ko ngā kupu he rite te tangi ki te tikanga. Pēnei i ngā tangi manu me ngā ingoa manu: kākā, ruru, riroriro, kea. He nui ngā kupu ororite i ngā waiata a Hirini Melbourne.	Te Kōrari, Ohu Whakamaru
Orientation	whakapuakinga	Ko te tīmatanga o tētehi kōrero, pēnei i te kōrero paki, kitea ai: te kiripuaki, te wāhi me te wā, me te take pea o te kōrero.	
Oxymoron	kupu tātā	He kīpeha whakawhere. E rua ngā kupu kei te taupatupatu i roto i te kīanga kotahi: he ahi mātao, tino kino te pai.	nāku
Paragraph	kōwae	He kāhui rerenga kōrero e tūhono ana i te whakaaro kotahi. Tīmata mai ai pea i te rerenga kōrero tuatahi e mau ai te kaupapa matua, ā, ka whakawhānuihia rānei, ka whakamāramatia rānei, ka whakatauiratia rānei, ka whakataunakitia rānei, ka mutu, ka whakakapia.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Parallelism	kupu tārara, kupu tautika	He kīpeha whakawhere. Ko te tāruatia o te wetereo kia noho ōrite ai te mana o ngā whakaaro.	Kaiuru, kaiuru
Parody	whakatau pūhohe	He taera (<i>style</i>) nō tētehi momo-kōrero. Tērā e pōhēhētia he rite ki te taera o tētehi momo, engari he whakatoi kē. He waiata, he toi, he tuhinga mātātuhi. E kaha ana te	Ryan

		whakaaringa mai <i>Pūkana</i> ki te whakatau pūhohe i ngā tāngata rongonui, i ngā waiata rongonui o te wā.	
Personification	whakatangata	He kīpeha huatau. He hoatu i ngā āhuatanga tangata ki tētehi mea.	kaiuru
Parts of speech	momo tumu	Ko ngā momo kupu o tētehi reo: kupu ingoa (<i>nouns</i>), tūpou (<i>pronouns</i>), kupu mahi (<i>verbs</i>), kupu āhua (<i>adjectives</i>), kupumahi āhua, (<i>statives</i>) [Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori].	Ryan
Pause	okioki	He nuka reo nō te reo kōrero. Ka whakatūria te kōrero e te kaikōrero i tētehi wā kia tatari atu, kia aro mai te whakaminenga.	Ryan
Phonology	weteoro	Ko ngā ture whakahua o tētehi reo.	Ryan
Phrase	kīanga	He huinga kupu. Ko tētehi tino āhuatanga reo o te reo Māori. He kīanga tino Māori ēnei e whai nei, he kīhono: nō reira, kāti rā, heoi anō.	Cleve, kaiuru
Picture book	pukapuka pikitia	He momo pukapuka, ko te tuinga me ngā whakaahua kei te haere ngātahi. Kei te takiwā o te 30 whārangi.	kaiuru
Play	whakaari	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi mā nga kaitapere e whakaari i runga atamira. Tuhia ai te whakaari kia kōrero-ā-wahatia, ā, ko te reo kīwaha tētehi āhuatanga nui ōna.	Ryan

Plot	anga kōrero, kaupapa, ia o te kōrero	Ko te whakaraupapatanga o te kōrero, me kī, ko te mahere o tētehi paki.	Te Kōrari, Ohu Whakamaru, kaiuru
Poetic licence	tā te kaitito ake whakatakoto	Kei te kaitito te tikanga me pēhea e takoto ai, e whakahuatia ai te reo. He rerekē pea i tā te iwi titiro ki te tika o te reo.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Poetry	ruri, mōteatea, mōteatea-ā-kōrero	He momo-kōrero ihiihi. He hīnga nō te ngākau, he ātaahua te takoto.	Ryan
Point of view	tirohanga	Ko te momo tirohanga atu ki te ao ka tahi, ka rua, ko ngā whakaaro ka whakaputaina mai i taua tirohanga. Ko te tirohanga tūpou tuatahi (<i>First-person point of view</i>), te tirohanga tūpou tuarua (<i>Second-person point of view</i>), pēnei i ētehi o ngā tuhinga a Charisma Rangipunga; tirohanga a Tangaroa/tirohanga tūpou tuatoru (<i>All-knowing, Omniscient point of view, third-person</i>)	Te Kōrari
Prefix	arohe mauī	He tāpiritanga kei te taha mauī o te kupu hei whakarerekē i te tikanga. Whaka-, taki-, tua-, toko-, kai-, tau-.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Pronunciation	whakahua	Ko te huanga oro; ko te tika o te huanga oro me tōna rere anō.	Ryan

Prose	tuhinga whakahāngai	He taera tuhinga o ia rā, he reo more tōna. Ehara i te reo mōteatea, i te reo peha.	nāku
Protagonist	toa	Ko te kiripuaki matua o tētehi paki. Me he kōrero mō te tangata, ko te toa te tino tangata o te kōrero.	nāku
Proverb	whakataukī	He kīpeha tawhito tēnei. He kupu ruarua e whakaata ana i tētehi kōrero pono. He maha ngā whakataukī e whakamārama ana i ngā whakaaro tūpuna.	
Pun	kupu raweke	He kīpeha whakawhere. He rāwekeweke i te āhua o te kupu, ko te tangi rānei, ko te tikanga rānei. Inā, “Tuhi mauri ora!”	Ryan
Punctuation	kārawarawatanga	Ko ngā tikanga tuhi o te reo: ira kati (<i>full stop</i>) piko (<i>comma</i>) koropiko (<i>semi-colon</i>) kopirua (<i>colon</i>) pikorua (<i>speech marks</i>) pūmatua (<i>capital</i>) pūriki (<i>lower case</i>) tītaha (<i>italics</i>) touhono (<i>hyphen</i>)	Tirohia tā te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori

		tohu pātai (<i>question mark</i>)	
		miramira (<i>bold</i>)	
		momotuhi (<i>font</i>)	
Purpose	pūtaketanga	Ko te tūāpapa o tētehi kōrero. He whakamārama, he whakangahau, he tohutuhu, he puringa kōrero, he whakaatu tikanga, me ērā atu.	
Quality	kounga	Ko ngā āhuatanga e rerehua ai tētehi momo kōrero. Ko tētehi wāhanga mō ētehi momo-kōrero mā te mōhio ki ngā kīpeha ka āwhina kia piki ake ai te kounga.	Marautanga Reo Māori
Quote	whakahua, whakataukī	He tiki atu i ngā kupu a tangata kē. Pēnei i ngā momo rārangi nei hei tohu i te whakataukī: Ko tā Mea i kī ai, ki a Mea, e ai ki a Mea.	Ryan
Quotation marks	kokorukī (double “”), korukī (single ‘’)	He kārawarawatanga. Ki te kōrero te kiripuaki i roto i te paki me tohu ki te korukī: Ka kī atu a Mere, ‘Kei hea rā aku hipi?’	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Recount	taki	He momo tuhinga, he hokinga mahara. E toru ngā wāhanga o tēnei momo tuhinga o te taki: Te tīmatanga/whakapuakinga (<i>start/orientation</i>), te rārangi tauwhāinga (<i>list of events/incidents</i>) me te āpitinga whakaaro (<i>final comment</i>). He tūmomo taki hoki.	aSTTle

Reference	tohutoro	Ko ngā momo-kōrero i tirohia e te kaitito hei whakataunaki, hei tautoko i te kaupapa o taua momo-kōrero.	kaiuru, Te Kōrari
Register	rēhita, reo ā-kaupapa	Ko te āhua o te reo i tētehi horopaki e tika ana mā te whakaminenga. He nui ngā momo rēhita: he reo ā-iwi, he reo kura, he reo wānanga, he reo kāwanatanga. Hei tauira, ki ētehi kaumātua mō te rēhita o ngā reorua, ka kōrero ‘pukapuka’ rātou. Kāore anō kia mau i te ‘reo o te kāuta’, arā, he reo kiwaha.	kaiuru
Repetition, refrain	tārua, tāruarua	He nuka reo kei te auau te rangona, te kitea. Ko te tuaruatanga, ko te tuahiatanga o tētehi kīanga kōrero. I roto i te pukapuka pikitia, <i>Kiteora kei hea ō hū?</i> ka tāruaruatia te tapanga pukapuka i roto i te paki.	Te Kōrari
Report	pūrongo	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, he kōrero pono. He whakamārama, he nui ngā meka. He pūrongo tuhi, he pūrongo kōrero hoki.	Marautanga Toi
Rhetoric	reo whakawhere, reo whakapakepake	Ko te reo e tahuri mai ai te whakaminenga. Kei roto ngā kīpeha, otirā ngā kīpeha whakawhere i taua reo.	nāku
Rhetorical question	ui makihoi	He kīpeha whakawhere, he momo pātai e huri ai te aro o te whakaminenga ki tētehi kaupapa. Tērā ka waiho te	kaiuru

		whakautu kia tārewa, ka whakautua rānei te ui makihoi ā muri tata nei. Inā, ‘He aha te mea nui o te ao? Māku e kī atu he tangata’.	
Rhyme	huarite, kupu huarite	He kīpeha whakatangi. He kīnga e ōrite ana te tangi: tai, pai. Mehemea e āhua rite ana rānei te tangi, he huarite haurua: kae, pai; kaukau, koutou.	Te Kōrari, Ryan
Rhythm	mita, ūngeri, manawataki, rangirangi	Ko te paopaonga o ngā oro i te rerenga o te wā. He tere, he pōturi.	kaiuru, Te Kōrari, kaiuru, Ngata
Science fiction	paki pūtaiao	Ko te pūtaketao o te ia o te kōrero o tēnei momo paki, ko ngā hangarau pūtaiao; ko te hangarau o nāia tonu nei, ko te mea rānei kei te hinengaro o te kaituhi. He paki putaiao ngā pukapuka nei, <i>Waka Ātea, Rēhua</i> .	
Sequel	whaitanga mai	He kōrero motuhake e whai mai ana i tētehi anō kōrero. Ko te pukapuka <i>Rēhua: He Pakimaero Ātea</i> nā Kāterina Mataira te whaitanga mai o te pukapuka pikitia <i>Waka Ātea</i> i tāia i te tau 1975.	nāku
Sequence	raupapatanga	He kaupapa nui te raupapatanga mō ngā tikanga o tētehi momo-kōrero. Arā, e tika ana me whai mai tētehi āhuatanga i tētehi atu, inā e kore pea e waiatatia te	

		mōteatea i te tīmatanga o te whaikōrero.	
Sentence	rerenga kōrero, rārangi kōrero	He kohinga kupu i te rārangi e whakapuaki ana i tētehi whakaaro: Tīmata ai i te pūmatua, ka rere ai ngā kupu, mutu ana i te kopi.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Series	kohinga, kāhui pukapuka	He huinga pukapuka e tāia haeretia ana: ko te koroua, me kī, o te kohinga pukapuka i te kura ko <i>Wharekura</i> .	kaiuru, kaiuru
Setting	wāhi me te wā, wāhi	Kitea ai te wāhi me te wā i te tīmatanga o te paki.	nāku, kaiuru
Short story	tuhinga poto, pakiwaitara	He momo-kōrero ā-tuhi, he paki poto. Kāore e eke atu i te 5000 kupu ki tā Huia. Tirohia <i>Ngā Pakiwaitara a Huia</i> ..	Te Kōrari
Showing and telling	whakaatu me te whakamārama	He tikanga tuhi kia kaua e hoatu ngā korero katoa ki te whakaminenga. Arā, ka waiho mā te whakaminenga e kimi te tikanga mai i te kupu ruarua noa iho. He mea nui ngā ariā mātātuhi o te whakaatu me te kore whakamārama kia whaihua ai te paki.	nāku
Simile	kupu whakarite	He tino kīpeha kei te āta whakarite i ngā mea rerekē e rua. Ka whakairohia he whakaahua ki rō hinengaro. Hei tauira, he rite koe ki te manu ki te tīoriori.	Marautanga Toi
Sound	oro	Ko ngā rongonga tangi.	Marautanga Toi
Speech marks	pikorua, korukī	Ko te kārawarawatanga hei tohu i te kōrerorero a ngā kiripuaki.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori, kaiuru

Spoken language	reo kōrero	He rerekē te reo kōrero me te reo tuhi. I ētehi wā ka hapa i roto i te reo kōrero, kāore i te whai i te wetereo, ka kotiti rānei, ka hoki anō ki te kaupapa o mua rā anō, ka huaina rānei he kupu Pākehā, ka okioki hoki. He mea nui tēnei inā ka tuhia he whakaari i te mea, ko te tikanga, ka tuhia kia kōrerotia, ā, e ‘hē’ ana te reo i ētehi wā.	
Stanza	whiti	He huinga kupu e noho rārangi ana o te mōteatea. He āputa e whakawehewehe ana i tētehi whiti ki tētehi. He kōwae i te reo more.	
Stereotype	momo	He tūmomo kiripuaki e auau nei te kitea. He pūrotu te toa, he weriweri te āhua o te toariri.	
Structure	hanganga	Ko te takotoranga o te kōrero. He rerekē te hanganga o te paki me te tohutohu; o te whaikōrero me te tuhinga roa. Ki tā Wharehuia Milroy, me rite te hanganga o te whaikōrero ki tā te whare (Moorfield, 1996:260).	asTTle
Style	taera, tūmomo mahi	He taera tā ia kaituhi, tā ia kaikōrero. Ko te momo reo, ko te momo kupu, ko ngā momo rerenga kōrero, ko ngā rehurehutanga o te reo, ko ngā kīpeha hei tohu i te taera.	kaiuru, Marautanga Toi
Suffix	arohe matau	He tāpiritanga i te taha katau o te kupu. Pēnei i ngā kūmuri hāngū: -a, -kia, -mia, -ria, -tia, -ngia; me ēnei: -	Taura Whiri

		tanga, -hanga, -nga, -ranga-...	
Symbol	tohu	He kīpeha huatau. Ko tētehi mea kikokiko hei tohu mō tētehi whakaaro. Ko te kura hei tohu rangatira.	Ryan
Sympathy	aroha	Ko te rongo i te hā o te kare-a-roto o tangata kē.	
Synecdoche	kupu hautanga	He kīpeha whakawhere, he momo huahuatau ka whakahua i te wāhanga o tētehi mea mō te katoa o taua mea: te <i>ringa</i> wera mō te kuki, te <i>waha</i> kōrero mō te kaikōrero.	nāku me Te Ohu Whakamaru
Synonym	kupu taurite	Ko te momo kupu he āhua rite rānei te tikanga, inā: kaumātua, mātāputu; pūrotu, ātaahua. Ko tētehi āhuatanga reo o te taera o Tīmoti Kāretu, ko te whakamahia o ngā kupu taurite.	Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori
Synopsis	whakarāpopototanga	He whakamārama i te matū o tētehi kōrero. Hei tauira mō <i>Māui me te Ahi</i> : ka tineia e Māui te ahi, ka tīkina he ahi i tana kuia, a Mahuika, ka whakatētete atu a Māui, ka tata mate, nā wai rā, ka ora, ka noho te ahi ki rō rākau mō te ira tangata.	kaiuru
Syntax	takotoranga kupu	Ko te takotoranga o te kupu i te rerenga kōrero. He mea hāngai ki te ture wetereo. He rerekē te rārangi kupu o ētehi o ngā whakataukī, inā ko te kupu āhua i mua i te	nāku

		kupu ingoa. Arā, <i>He kino kai e kore e rere ki te pai tangata: he pai tangata ka rere ki te kino kai.</i>		
Text-type	Momo-kōrero	E toru ngā momo-kōrero, ko te momo-kōrero ā-waha (spoken text), ko te momo-kōrero ā-tuhi (written text), ko te momo-kōrero ā-mata (visual text).	kaiuru	
Theme	kaupapa	Ko te karere, ko te whakaaro matua o te kaitito o roto i te momo-kōrero. Ko te kimi mātua tētehi kaupapa nui i roto i ngā pūrākau. He rerekē ngā kaupapa hāngai tō ia reanga.	Ryan	
Time shift	huringa o te wā	Kei roto te taki (recount) i te paki, he huringa tēnā nō te wā hei whakamārama i tētehi āhuatanga o te kiripuaki. Hei tauira, ko te kaumātua e kōrero ana, kātahi ka hoki atu ki tōna tamarikitanga.	nāku	
Title	tapanga	Ko ngā kupu mō tētehi kōrero. Ko te taitara kei te uhi o te pukapuka e tohu ana i te tikanga o roto.	Ngā Tauaromahi	
Trilogy	takitoru	Ka tutuki te kaupapa kōrero mā roto i ngā momo-kōrero e toru.	nāku	
Triplication (parallelism)	tātoru	He kīpeha. He pai ki ngā taringa Māori ngā huanga e toru: Tēnā koutou, tēnā koutou, tēnā koutou; e ngā mana, e ngā reo, e ngā kārangarangatanga.	Te Kōrari	

Verse

1. whiti
2. reo mōteatea

1. He huinga kupu o te mōteatea; i te reo
whakahāngai he kōwae kē.
2. Ko te momo reo e kīkī ana i te reo peha.

ĀPITIHINGA 3: He Kīpeha, he Nuka Reo i rō Momo-Kōrero o te Kura *Figures of speech, literary devices in a selection of school text-types*

E whai ake nei ētehi momo-kōrero me ngā kīpeha. He mea whakaatu ngā āhuatanga reo hei tauiranga mō te hanga i tētehi rauemi reo Māori mō roto i ngā kura reo Māori e pā ana ki te kīpeha me te momo-kōrero. He whakaaro noa.

Takawiri Arero *Tongue twister*

Anei ētehi takawiri arero. Ki ētehi iwi he pepetakimanawa ēnei, ki a Kāi Tahu, he whakapiki. He rawe ēnei mā ngā tamariki nohinohi me ngā ākonga kei te ako tonu i te reo. He momo kōrero hei whakawhiwhiwhi i te arero, hei whakapakari hoki i te arero me te whakahua i te reo. Ka kitea, ka rangona ngā kīpeha whakatangi i roto i ētehi o ngā momo kōrero. Ko tētehi momo e kaha kitea ana ēnei kīpeha whakatangi, ko te takawiri arero. Ko te take pea, he kōrero ā-waha tēnei ko te tikanga he reka mā ngā taringa tamariki. Anei ētehi o ngā kīpeha whakatangi e whakamahia ana i te takawiri arero:

- orokati tārua *alliteration*
- tāruarua *repetition*
- huarite *rhyme*

Hanganga

Kotahi te whiti
E toru ngā rerenga

He kau tāku,
He kau pai taku kau,
He kau kai raurēkau.¹

Kīpeha, Nuka Reo

tāruarua 'kau'
paku huringa 'tāku, taku'
huarite 'kau, raurēkau'
orokati tārua 'k me te p'

Kotahi te whiti
E toru ngā rerenga

Ka ngau te kau i te rau.
Ka pau i ahau te taha kau.
Ko ahau ko te kau;
ko te kau ko ahau,
Hei kai ngātahi mā te rākau.²

huarite 'ngau, kau, rau'
huarite 'pau, ahau, kau'
tāruarua 'ahau, kau, rākau'
kupu huri hāngai a e, e a
whakakata

¹ He kōrero ā-waha nā Huirangi Waikerepuru, Te Kura Matatini o Taranaki, 1991.

² He mea hanga e Darryn Hōhepa, i te 25 o Akuhata, 2005.

Kotahi te rerenga

Pako peka,
Peka kato,
Poto pērā
i te peka poto!³

orokati tārua ‘p me te k’
tāruarua ‘peka me te poto’
huarite ‘
ororite

Ruri

Poem

Anei ētehi ruri i puta i te kohinga kōrero, *Tipiwhenua* (Raven, 2001). He tuhinga nā ngā tamariki tonu. Ki ētehi ko te mōteatea te ruri, te mōteatea-ā-kōrero rānei. Ko te tikanga o tēnei momo tuhinga me kounga ko te reo, ā, ko tētehi wāhanga e kounga ai ēnei ruri, ko ngā kīpeha whakatangi nei:

- orokati tārua *alliteration*
- oropuare tārua *assonance*
- ororite *onomatopoeia*
- tāruarua *repetition*
- huarite *rhyme*

Kererū

Whitiaua Ropitini, 12 Tau

Tipiwhenua 2 (Raven, 2002: 4)

Hanganga

Kotahi te whiti

Kererū, Kererū, Kererū e
He ātaahua ō huruhuru e
Rapu kai, rapu kai, rapu kai e
Mahi mai tō kōhanga
Whāngai i tō pīpī
Hei rangatira mō te ngahere e...

Kīpeha, Nuka Reo

tāruarua, orokati tārua k, r
orokati tārua ‘h’
tāruarua, orokati tārua r, k
huarite kai, mai, whāngai
ororite pīpī
reo waiata e

³ Kiwa Hammond (2001: 3) *Eke Panuku* 10. Wellington: Learning Media.

Me He Manu Rere Au

Nā Tiria Halbert, 7 tau

Tipiwhenua 2 (Raven, 2001: 71)

<i>Kotahi te whiti</i>	Me he manu rere au he piwaiwaka au. kupu whakarite
<i>E whā</i>	He ātaahua ahau. oropuare tārua a
<i>ngā rerenga kōrero</i>	Me he manu rere, ka tangi pēnei au, tāruarua me he manu rere
	“Tuwutuwu Tuwutuwu, ororite, tāruarua
	Ka ka ka ka.”...

Waiata

Song

Ki te whakarongo ki ngā waiata a Hirini Melbourne o *Te Wao Nui a Tāne* (2000), ka rangona ēnei kīpeha e takoto ana hei kai mā nga taringa. Ko tā Hirini pai, he iti te kupu he nui te tikanga.

○ orokati tārua	<i>alliteration</i>
○ oropuare tārua	<i>assonance</i>
○ ororite	<i>onomatopoeia</i>
○ tāruarua	<i>repetition</i>
○ huarite	<i>rhyme</i>
○ kupu tārara	<i>parallelism</i>

Ruru

Ruru ruru koukou koukou	tāruarua, ororite
Ruru kōkō koukou.	orokati tārua
Whakarongo ki te ruru koukou	
Kua tō nei te rā te rā	tāruarua te rā
Te tangi nei o te pōuri	oropuare tārua koukou, pōuri
Kua tō nei te ra te rā,	tāruarua te rerenga
Ruu-ru, ruu-ru, koukou, koukou,	orokati tārua, tāruarua
Ruru kōkō koukou.	tāruarua

Waiata Tātai

E tū ake nei he miro	whakapuakinga he miro e tū ana i te ngahere
i roto i te ngahere	
Ka rere mai ko miromiro	kupu tārara ka rere mai
Ka rere mai ko riroriro	huarite miromiro, riroriro
Ka tahi, ka rua ngā manu	tāruarua ka kautehia ngā manu
Kei runga i te miro.	tāruarua miro
Ka tahi, ka rua...	

Haka

Ko te ingoa o tēnei haka ko Tāne-rore. He haka nā Timoti Kāretu (Kāretu, 1994:22.) He haka e whakamārama ana i te takenga mai o te haka me ōna āhuatanga. Anei ētehi o ngā kīpeha e kitea ana i roto i tēnei haka, ā, tērā pea ko ngā kīpeha kei ngā titonga a Tīmoti:

- ui makihoi *rhetorical question*
- tāruarua *repetition*
- kupu tārara *parallelism*
- kupu taurite *synonym*

Kaitātaki:	Whakarongo rua <i>aku taringa</i> ki ngā kupu	kupu hautanga
	a te hunga mate e hākiri ake ana	
Katoa:	Ko te haka he tohu whenua rangatira	
	Ko te <i>whakatinanatanga o ngā ihi o te rā</i>	tohutoro
	I nga wā o te raumati	
	E tau ana ki runga i a Papa-tū-ā-nuku e takoto nei	
Kaitātaki:	E ai ki ngā kupu kōrero, tokorua ngā wāhine a Tama-nui-te-rā	
Katoa:	Auē! <i>Ko Hine-raumati, ko Hine-takurua</i>	tohutoro
	Ka puta ki waho ko tā Hine-raumati	whakapapa
	<i>Ko Tāne-rore, ko Tāne-rore e</i>	tāruarua
Kaitātaki:	<i>He aha te koha mai a Tāne-rore ki te ao Māori?</i>	ui makihoi
Katoa:	Ko te haka, e ko te haka	tāruarua
	I puta ai te kōrero	tohutoro

‘E tū i te tū a Tāne-rore, e haka i te haka a Tāne-rore kupu tārara
kaua i te tū, i te haka a te keretao’

Kaitataki: *Ko te taonga nui o te haka?* ui makihoi

Katoa: *Ko te whakaioio o te tinana* kupu tārara

Ko te pūkana o te karu

Ko te whētero o te arero kia tāpapa tonu ki waho, hā!

Koinei rā hoki te ara

E puta ai ngā whakaaro o te hinengaro

Ā, ha! Hā!

Kaitātaki: *Ki ō tātou tīpuna, kāore he huna o te kupu e* tohutoro

Katoa: *He tika rā! He tika rā!* tāruarua

I neherā, kāore he haka tatakimōri tohutoro

Hou tonu atu ki ngā wāhi tapu o te tāne, o te wahine

Ngā kupu *horetītī*, ngā kupu *nohunohu*, e kupu ōrite

Puritia te haka kia mau, kia ita

Ko te haka hoki he kupu kōrero

He mea whakairo e te ngākau kupu tārara

He mea whakapuaki e te māngai kupu tātoru

He mea whakatū e te tinana

Auē, auē, auē taukuri e!

Waiata-ā-ringa
Action Song

Nā, ki te tirohia te waiata tangi a Tīmoti Kāretū, *Te Aumangea* (Kāretu, 2002) tērā e pohēhētia he waiata ā-ringa tēnei mō ngā rākau me ngā manu. Engari katoa tēnei waiata he tairitenga e whakaritea ana ngā kaikōrero matatau o te reo Māori ki ngā manu me ngā rākau o te waonui a Tane. E rua, e rua te ngarotanga haere; he tāngata whai mana ki te kōrero Māori me ngā manu rangatira o te waonui. Mā konei hoki e kite i te taera o ā Tīmoti titonga.

Te Aumangea
Nā Tīmoti Kāretū

E koutou, e te aumangea
Kei hea koutou hei āki
I ngā hau kino o te wā?
I te wao tapu nui a Tāne,
Urutapu ana, ururua ana, matomato ana,
Te tipu mai o te kahikātoa,
o te tōtara haemata
Nō te hinganga, tūpapahū ana te whenua
Ka kore koutou kei hea
He taunga mō te manu kaewa?

Kurupākara ana tērā te māra a Tāne
I te pekī, i te tīhau a ngā manu
Kua kore nei i tiu, kua kore nei i topa
Kia pātai noa ahau, kei hea aku manu tīoriori,
Aku manu taki, aku manu tāiko
E pōkaikaha nei?

*Auē! Kia tīoriori noa mai ko te manu
Kia kōkī, kia ketekete mai anō ko te kākā
Kia korihi mai anō ko te kōparapara
i te pūaotanga o te rā.
Te tangi kau nei te mapu.*

Tērā pea me kapo ko te mahara,
me kapo ko te kupu
Mā reira e tū mai anō ai he mahuri
E tiu anō ai, e korihi anō ai
Ngā manu o te wao.

tohutoro tāngata rangatira, tāngata whai mana
ui makihoi kei hea rā hei arai mā te ao Māori
huahuatau hau kino mō ngā raruraru
tohutoro ki te atua o ngā manu
kupu tātoru hokinga mahara ki te wā he maha ngā kaikōrero
huahuatau he momo rākau teitei mō ngā momo rangatira
kupu tauaro ka ora te ngahere (tangata), kātahi ka hinga
ororite tūpapahū ana nō te matenga o ngā rangatira
ui makihoi ka haere ngā arero Māori ki hea noho ai?
huahuatau manu kaewa mō te tangata ako i te reo Māori

ororite, he hoihoi tiotio nei, tāruarua te ingoa o Tāne
kupu tārara 'i te', tokomaha ngā tāngata kei te ako tonu
kupu tārara 'kua i', kupu ātete engari kāore e taea te rere
ui makihoi, kōrero tātoru kei hea ngā tāngata whai mana
kupu tārara aku, tairitenga kāhui manu, kāhui tangata

ororite kia reka anō te kōrero a ngā tāngata kōrero Māori
ororite, orokati tārua 'k', kia pārekareka anō te kōrerorero
kupu tārara 'kia', kia tokomaha ngā tāngata kōrero Māori
tohutoro ki te wā i hoihoi rawa ngā manu me tāngata

kupu tārara 'me + ka', he huarahi whakaora reo
Ko te tikanga ā-kupu nei hei whakaata i te aronga o te waiata
huahuatau ka ara mai anō he tangata ka tupu ake hei rangatira
kupu tārara 'e + ai', ka hīrawerawe anō te kōrero
huahuatau ngā tini kaikōrero

Pakikīrehe i rō Tuhinga Poto
Fable in a Short Story

I te tau 2003 i riro atu te paraihe a Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori mō te tuhinga poto nei, Tama Tāhae, Tama Ora i roto i te pukapuka *Huia Short Stories 4* (Huia Publishers, 2001). Ko te hanganga o te kōrero, kua kuhuna ngā pakikīrehe e rima hei wehewehe i te paki matua. Ko ētehi o ngā kīpeha o roto i tēnei pakikīrehe kei te rārangi atu.

- kupu raweke: ora ā-moa, mate ā moa
- whakataukī: waewae kai pakiaka
- kīwaha: kai hamuti, kei a ia, kōtore huia, ka pakaru kē te tero o te tīkaokao nā;
- ororite: kekoeko, tuitui, kō kō
- huahuatau: kareparaoa hei whakakai
- kupu tārara: ko Moa ki te whenua, ko au ki te rangi, He wae pai, he tou tau, he mati hae

Ka Ora ā Moa

Tērā ētehi rōpū manu, Ko Moa, ko Huia, ko Pouākai e whakatoi ana ki a Pūkeko, ki a Tūi, ki a Kāhu. Ki a Moa kei a ia mō te omaoma, ka whakaatu atu i ōna waewae ki ōna hoa, 'E hoa mā, titiro mai ki ēnei waewae kai pakiaka. Kāore ōna ritenga! Engari ia titiro atu ki ā Pūkeko. Hā! Kātahi ngā waewae heihei ko ērā. E te manu kai hamuti, e hoki ki tō repo ki reira kekoeko ai.' Kāore he aha ki a Pūkeko ka totitoti haere ki tōna repo. Ki a Huia kei a ia ngā huruhuru mutunga ātaahua, ka whakaatu atu i tōna tou, 'E hoa mā, titiro mai ki te kōtore huia. Kāore he tua atu! Engari titiro atu ki a Tūi. Hē! Kei te mau kareparāoa ia hei whakakai. E te manu tangi koretake, e hoki ki tō pā harakeke ki reira tuitui ai.' Kāore a Tūi i aro atu, ka kō, kō i tāna nei kōrero, ka hanatu haere. Ki a Pouākai kei a ia mō te patu kīrehe, ka whakaatu atu i tōna hoa, 'E ōku hoa, titiro mai ki tōku hanga. E toru mita te whānui o ōku parirau, ko Moa i te whenua, ko au i te rangi. Ko ōku matihao, he kōi ake i ō te taika. Engari ia titiro ki a Kāhu. Hō! Kāore he whakataetae, ka pakaru kē te tero o te tīkaokao nā. E te kātuarehe, e hoki ki tō kōhanga ki reira pikari ai tatari ai mō Māmā.' Hei aha rā, te whakaaro o Kāhu ka rere i tāna nei rere. 'Kei ōku manukura tēnei tātou. He wae pai, he tou tau, he mati hae,' te kī a Moa i te ngaronga o ērā atu manu. 'Nā, kia whakataukī ake au, ka ora ā moa te iwi nei, ake ake ake.'

Pukapuka Mārō
board book

He pukapuka te pukapuka mārō mā ngā tamariki nohinohi, iti iho i te 3 tau te pakeke. He iti ngā kupu, he poto ngā rerenga kōrero, he kaupapa e tino hāngai ana ki ngā tamariki pakupaku.

Ko tētehi tino huinga i puta i te tau 2000, ko Tōku Kōhanga. He mea tā e te wharetā e Huia – Te Manu Tuku Kōrero. Anei ētehi o ngā kīpeha i roto i taua kohinga, ahakoa mō te hunga piripoho ngā pukapuka nei: ko te tāruarua te mea e tino auau te kitea; ko te ui makihoi, ko te ororite hoki ētehi anō kounga o te reo.

Ngā Kīpeha i Tōku Kōhanga

Ingoa Pukapuka	Kaupapa	Kīpeha
<i>He Kākahu</i>	Ko te whakamau kākahu mō te tākaro i te hukapapa.	ui makihoi He putu. Hei aha? tāruarua He + momo kākahu.
<i>Ko Tōku Whānau Tēnei</i>	Ko te mahi kāinga me te whānau.	huarite Māmā, pāpā, karanipā, karanimā tāruarua Ko tēnei.
<i>Ngā Tangi</i>	He tangi kararehe i te pouaka whakaata.	ororite Au, miāo huarite mē, mā, pī, wī, wā orokati tārua Wī, wā kupu tātoru au, au, au tāruarua Au, au, au te tangi a te + kararehe E toru ngā tangi a ia kararehe
<i>He Pai ki Ahau</i>	Ko nga tākaro pai ki tētehi tamaiti i te Kōhanga Reo.	tāruarua He pai ki ahau te orokati tārua Peke, piki
<i>He Tina</i>	He rārangi kai mō tētehi pikiniki.	tāruarua He + tūingoa.
<i>He Pōtae</i>	He momo pōtae.	tāruarua He pōtae + tūāhua. ui makihoi He pōtae mō wai?

<i>Te Wāhi Pai</i>	Ko ngā wāhi i te Kōhanga Reo.	tāruarua Ko te wāhi...tēnei.
<i>Ōku Tūpuna Arohanui</i>	He toro ki te kāinga o ngā tūpuna	tāruarua He + tūingoa + tae.
<i>Tā Mātou Pēpi</i>	Ngā āhuatanga o te pēpi	tāruarua He + tūahua + tā mātou pēpi.
<i>Tōku Moenga</i>	Ngā taonga moe o tētehi kōtiro	tāruarua Nōku tēnei + tūingoa.

Pakiwaituhi

Comic

I ngā tau nei kua puta a *Eke Panuku* (Learning Media, 2001) me *Tāiki e* (Huia Publishers, 2000). Ko *Eke Panuku* te mea e whai ana i te āhua o te kōmeke, inā, he pakiwaitara me nga āhuatanga paki: he kiripuaki e whai ana i tētehi kaupapa, he wā, he wāhi kei ao kē. Heoi, kei roto i ngā pukapuka e rua ko ngā ngohe atu anō hei akoako i ngā tamariki ki te kupu. Koinā tā *Tāiki e* whakataukī e kī ana, ‘he puka takapiupiu-kupu mā ngā tamariki.’

Mō nga momo-kōrero i te ripanga e whai nei koinā ētehi o ngā momo-kōrero i roto i te kōmeke Māori mō te horopaki mātauranga. Ko ētehi o ngā kōrero ehara i te ‘kōrero paki’ engari he kōrero whai meka kē. Arā ake anō ngā kōrero i te uhi, i te uhi o-muri pēnei i te kōrero manatā.

Mō ngā kīpeha, he nui noa atu ngā kīwaha kei ia putanga, me ngā whakataukī, ā, kāore e kore he nui kē atu ngā kīpeha kei ia putanga. Heoi anō, anei ētehi i puta i te āta pānuitanga atu.

Eke Panuku: Ngā Momo Kōrero kei roto me ētehi Nuka Reo

Putanga Edition	Momo Kōrero Text types	Kīpeha me ngā Nuka Reo Figures of Speech and Literary Devices
1	Mihi, hoahoa, kīwaha, waiata, kōmeke whakaahua, papakupu pikitia, whakarapopoto whakamārama kiripuaki(ingoa, momo, pakeke, matareka, pene, kore matareka, kai rawe, hākinakina, āhua), pakiwaituhi,	ingoa tāpiri ko tōku ingoa tapiri ko... kupu hākiki nā te mea e piri ana ia ki te tarau o te heihei...kua hē au nē? mekā e ai ki ngā kōrero...

	pakiwaituhi kararehe, pūrākau	kīwaha E kī! E kī! ui makihoi He aha te tikanga o te kimokimo? whakatauākī /tohutoro Tahi, rua, toru, whā... Pūkana tāruarua/whakatangata Kāo! Kāo! Manu pai! Manu pai! kupu whakarite he rite ia ki te iro whakatangata ka nui te katakata a Kākā.
2	Pakiwaituhi kararehe (whakawhiti kōrero, kīwaha, kōrero matakite, waiata, karakia), aratuhi pikitia	ororite KKSSS!! KARIHI PAKE! reo kararehe Katipai Wairangi
3	Pakiwaituhi kararehe, pānui pakitara, pakiwaituhi	ororite HIHII! KARAWHIUA! HORU! HORU! PAKĒ! PAKŌ! KeKeeee huahuatau He ueue koe whakatangata Ko Ue! Ngāueue. kupu raweke Tuhi, tuhi, tuhia! Tuhi mauri ora! wh.uhi o muri
4	Pakiwaituhi, rotarota, kōmeke whakaahua, pakiwaitara kararehe, pānui pakitara ā ngā ākonga	ororite PAKI! PAKI! PAKI! huahuatau He nekeneke, he ngārara te ara! tāruarua Te rotarota e whai nei ka huaina kia whā ngā wā tāruarua orokati + huarite Ara nekeneke, nukunuku, tukutuku, kia tū!/kia neke! huarite Matarau, tikotarau. whakatangata Ko Hine-kapua tōku ingoa.
5	Pakiwaituhi kararehe, pānui pakitara (hoahoa, whakatauākī), pakiwaituhi	ororite MAMAEeee!!! PARATEEE!!!

		PIITIOOO!!! PAKO! HUHUU! PAKIA! kīanga tere-mau 1, 2, 3, 4, PŪKANA! kupu hākiki Tō mōhio hoki, Rori huahuatau He tangata poto noa iho ngā tangata (kei te whakahaere i ngā rama). kupu hākiki Ki te tīrama te mea karaka, me tino tere te haere o te waka
6	Pakiwaituhi kararehe, ruri, whakakata	whakatangata a Tuatara, Kui Katipo kupu tātoru Te pō uriuri, te pō nakonako, te pō kerekere eee Te ihi, te wehi, te wana kupu tārara Kua hohou..., kua whai kiko..., kua puta..., kua mutu...
7	Pakiwaituhi, whakakata, pānui pakitara, aratuhi pikitia (tohutohu)	kupu whakatoi Tēnā kōrua, Ngāti Tūreiti kupu whakarite Anō nei kua pangia e te hiko!
8	Mihi, poroporoaki, hoahoa, kīwaha, whakakata, pānui pakitara, kōrero tipuna, pikitia whakakarakara, aratuhi pikitia	ororite AUUU! AU AU ARRRRRGH meka E ai ki ngā kōrero... kupu hākiki Ko Jonah tōku tuakana.
9	Hoahoa, pakiwaituhi (he mea whai meka, ehara i te kōrero paki), pānui pakitara, pūrākau, pikitia whakakarakara, aratuhi pikitia,	meka E ai ki ngā tipuna... ororite TIHE!!! whakarārangi Mā te ihu e taea ai te rongo kakara, rongo haunga, tihe, hī me te hā.
10	Ruri, tūtohi, rārangi, kupu whiwhiwhi(takawiri arero), panga, haka pōwhiri, whakamārama, pākiki, whakakata, whakataukī, kīwaha, pakiwaitara kararehe, ingoa- wāhi roa, pānui pakitara, paki waituhi	tāruarua/huarite/orokati tārua Hihihi! Pōrori tī! Uru tī, uru tē, uruuru kuru whē! Māku ō taonga, maku āu kai! Whānakonako, tāhaehae! orokati tārua/huarite pako peka, peka pato, poto pera i te peka poto orokati tārua, oropuare tārua Ōrite ō raruraru ki ngā raruraru ririri i roto i a Rikirangi.

		ui makihoi He aha ngā tūmomo moko o Aotearoa? meka E ai ki ngā kōrero kupu whakarite me he pipi taiari o niho takataka huarite Weka Tū-tekata whakatangata/kupu whakarite He perā koe i a Ngata, he pōrorirori ororite KORO! PAKĒ! PAKEE! PAKO! PAKOO! NGAHEHE
11	Hoahoa, pakiwaituhi (he mea whai meka, ehara i te kōrero paki), pakiwaitara kararehe, pūrākau	kupu whakarite He ōrite te upoko o te mangopare ki te upoko o te...hamahama. Ano nei kua patua te upoko ki te kotiate! ui makihoi He aha i tapaina ai tēnei ngāngara he pōpokorua? whakatangata Kōkā Kutu huarite Tutu Kutu! kupu raweke E kutu mā... Nō reira, tēna kutu, tēnā kutu, tēnā kutu katoa. kupu tātoru ka ū ki tai! Ka ū ki uta! Ka ū mai...
12	Hoahoa, pakiwaituhi (he mea whai meka, ehara i te kōrero paki), kōrero tipuna, pānui pakitara, kōrero tīpuna	tohutoro Ko te aua te ika i raōa ai a Tama-rereti kupu whakarite Pokohiwi - Anō nei kei te noho te upoko i runga i ētahi hiwi kupu hākiki kua rangatira mātou i a koe whakatangata E te korokoro o te Parata
13	Hoahoa, pakiwaituhi (he mea whai meka, ehara i te kōrero paki), kīwaha, whakataukī, pūrākau	kupu whakarite He ōrite ki te tinana o te tangata Te tāhuhu - He ōrite tērā ki te tuarā... He ope tauā anō tō te kai kīwaha Kua hawa a Tama-roto E te tau o taku ate
14	Hoahoa, pakiwaituhi (he mea	huahuatau

	whai meka, ehara i te kōrero paki), pānui pakitara,	Ka kitea ngā ringa o te wharenui whakatangata Ko Kaokao Kitea te ingoa o tēnei tauira tukutuku. He tohu tēnei mō te toa o te tangata ki te whawhai.

Paenga Kōrero *Anthology*

He tino kohinga tēnei paenga pukapuka *Te Mātāwai* (Young, 1991-1994). E rima ngā pukapuka e kohikohi ana i ngā tāhu tuhinga nei, te pakiwaitara, te hokinga whakaaro, te mōteatea kia nui ake ai ngā tuhinga i roto i te reo Māori mō ngā kura wānanga e ako ana mā te reo Māori. Kei wareware i ngā pouako te titiro whakamuri ki ngā rauemi hīrawerawe o mua kua oti kē te tā.

Te Mātāwai Tuatahi: Momo Tuhinga, Momo-Kōrero me ētehi Kīpeha *Mātāwai Tuatahi: Genre, text type and figures of speech*

Tapanga <i>Title</i>	Momo Tuhinga/Kōrero <i>Genre/Text-type</i>	He Kīpeha, he Nuka Reo <i>Selected Figures of Speech and Literary Devices</i>
<i>Te kupu a te Tumuaki Matua</i>	mihi	whakatauākī He tohutoro ki Tā Kīngi Ihaka kōrero i te mōheni i <i>Te Ao Hou</i> kupu tārara Mā te ngākau hihiri, mā te pukumahi, mā te whai... Kia manawanui, kia māia, kia kaha
<i>He whakamārama i te kaupapa kōrero</i>	mihi, whakamārama	kupu tārara E te iwi, e ngā kaiwhakaako, e nga ākonga tārurua I te tini, i te tini o te pukapuka
<i>Te Takenga Mai o Te Tai</i>	rārangi wā	
<i>Ngā Kōrero hītōria</i>	taki/ kōrero o mua	reo whakahāngai
Taku tino hoa a Mōkai	paki/taki	whakapuakinga, ororite ngawī kūao kurī whakatauākī Pākehā Ko te kurī te tino hoa o te tangata
He taonga mahue	paki kupu whakaari	whakapuakinga Mā te kaiwhakamārama e wāwāhi kōrerorero
He pao	taki	kupu whakarite

	pao	“Ko te rere i Oarero ko te rite i aku kamo e maringi nei” tāruarua e te tae ko wai ra ui makihoi Ma wai ra e kaute nga mahara i taku puku
He pakiwaitara hauika	paki	kōrerorero
A Ruatēpūpuke me ngā poupou o Huiteananui	paki/pūrākau/ruri Ahakoā he pūrākau tēnei kua tuhia e Hepora Young pēnei i te ballad, he ngeri te ritenga o tēnei pūrākau.	tāruara E tipu e rito, e tipu e rito kupu tārara Ka piki te tai, ka heke te tai
He paki kohuku	paki He paki whakawehi tēnei.	kupu whakarite Anō kua pō kē i te kaha o te pōuri



Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero: Ā tātou kōrero, ā tātou mōteatea Puka Whakamōhiohio

Ko te kairangahau matua, ko Darryn Joseph o Ngāti Maniapoto, e mahi ana ki te Pūtahi-ā-Toi, ki te Whare Wānanga o Massey, inā D.H.Joseph@massey.ac.nz Ko Ian Christensen rāua ko Tai Black ōna kaitautoko.

Darryn Joseph	Massey University	Poutāpetā 11-222	Papaioea 06 356 9099 7695
Ian Christensen	He Kupenga Hao i te Reo	Poutāpetā 5301	Papaioea 06 354 2030
Taiarahia Black	Massey University	Poutāpetā 11-222	Papaioea 06 356 9099 7458

Nā te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga me te Whare Wānanga o Massey i whai huruhuru ai tēnei rangahau. He kaupapa e tutuki ai te tohu kairangi. Ka āhei i a koe te whakapā mai ki te kairangahau ki te pātaitai mai he aha te tikanga o te rangahau, arā, tuhi mai rānei ki te wāhi noho o runga ake nei, waea mai rānei.

Hei aha tēnei rangahau?

Ko te tikanga o tēnei rangahau ko te rapu māramatanga mō ā tātou momo kōrero maha. Nā, ka puta pēnei mai ngā pātai i te rangahau: He aha ngā momo kōrero e rangona ana, e tuhia ana i roto i te reo Māori? He aha ngā tino kōrero ki a ngāi tāua? He aha tēhei mahere hei whakaata i ēnei kōrero? He aha ngā āhuatanga reo e tohutohu ai he momo te momo, inā, he whaikōrero te whaikōrero, he karakia te karakia, he reta te reta?

Hei aha rā?

He mea nui tēnei mā ngā kura rumaki, te mōhio ki te whānuitanga o ngā momo kōrero e whakaakona ana ki roto i ngā kura, otirā, he aha ngā momo kōrero o te hāpori kōrero Māori whānui tonu. Kei te tupu hoki te hiahia o te hunga e whakarato ana i ngā kaupapa reo Māori kia whakahāngai ngā rauemi ki tā te hāpori wawata nō reira he mea nui kia mōhio he pēhea te whānuitanga o ā tātou momo kōrero.

Hei aha mā te kaiuru?

E tonoa ana ngā pouako me ngā pūkenga kia whai pānga mai ki ngā uiuitanga i roto i te reo Māori. Kua rangona tō ingoa i te aka kumara, ā, iti iho i te rima tekau ngā tāngata ka kōrerohia. Nā, ka noho tahi koe me te kairangahau ki te whakawhiti kōrero, kanohi ki te kanohi, ā, kotahi hāora pea te roa, ki te wāhi e pai ana ki a koe. Tērā tēhei rārangi pātai hei arataki i te whakawhitinga kōrero. Māku te paramanawa e hora. Mehemea e pai ana ki a koe, ka hopukina tō korero ki te mīhini hopu reo, ā, ka tiakina ō kōrero ki Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi ki tēhei wāhi haumaruru. Mehemea e pai ana ka tukuna nga kōrero ki tēhei pūranga atoatoa(official archive).

Hei aha ngā whakamōhiohanga uiuitanga?

Ko ngā kōrero o roto i ngā whakawhitinga kōrero ka hopukina hei whakautu i ngā tino pātai. Ka riro i ia kaiuru he whakarāpopototanga o ēnei hua i te mutunga o te rangahau (hei te 2005 rā anō). Ka puta hoki ngā hua ki roto i ngā hautaka whai mana, i ngā hui. Ko ngā hua nei hei pūtake mō te tākutatanga, ā, ka kuhuna ētehi wāhanga ki roto i tētehi pūrongo mā Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. E kore e whākina ngā kōrero whaiaro, arā, ko ngā kōrero whakapā ka tae mai ki a au (te wāhi noho) ka noho rāhui tonu ki ngā kairangahau, me te mea hoki e *kore* e tūhono atu ki ngā whakamōhiohanga uiuitanga *ahakoa* pēhea. Ka pau te rima tau ka tukuna ngā puka whakaae ki te ahi.

Ko ōu mana motika

Mehemea koe ka whiriwhiri kia uru mai ki tēnei rangahau me pēnei ka tika:

- Kia āhei te whakapā mai ki ngā kairangahau i te wā o te rangahau.
- Kia hou mai ki te rangahau i runga i te mōhio e noho matatapu ana tō ingoa me ō kōrero whaiaro katoa.
- Kei te tangata te whiriwhiri kia hou mai ki tēnei rangahau.
- Kei a koe te tikanga kia tango i tō whakaaetanga ahakoa āhea.
- Kia tukuna he pātai mō te kaupapa nei.
- Kia tangohia he kōrero kua whakatakotoria kētia e koe.
- Kia kaua rānei e whakautua tētehi pātai.
- Kia tukuna atu ki a koe ngā kōrero whakamōhio o ngā hua i te mutunga mai o te rangahau.
- E mōhio hoki ana au kei a au te mana kia whakawetongia te mīhini hopu reo i te wā o te uiuitanga.

Kua arotakengia, kua whakaaetia tēnei kaupapa e Massey University Human Ethics Committee, PN Application 04/121. Mehemea he raruraru nōu mō te whakahaere o tēnei kaupapa rangahau, whakapā mai koa ki Professor Sylvia V Rumball, Chair, Massey University Campus Human Ethics Committee: Papaioea, waea 06 350 5249, imēra humanethicspn@massey.ac.nz.



ĀPITIHINGA 5: Te Reta Whakamōhio

Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero

1 Here-turi-koka 2004

Tēnā koe,

Tēnā rā koe e noho mai rā i tēnā pito me te hāpai ake i tō tātou reo nō tuawhakarere. E kī ana, toitū te reo, toitū te tikanga, toitū te mana.

Tēnei a Darryn Joseph o Ngāti Maniapoto e mihi ake nei ki a koe. He kairangahau ahau nō te Whare Wānanga o Massey. I tēnei wā kei te rangahaua te whānuitanga o ā tātou kōrero kia whakakao mai i ngā momo kōrero katoa ki tētehi wāhi kotahi me ngā āhuatanga reo o roto i ā tātou kōrero. Koia taku rangahau mō taku tākutatanga.

Kua rangona tōu ingoa mai i te aka kumara, ā, kei te tuhi au ki a koe kia pātai atu mēnā ka whai wāhi mai ki te uiuitanga, ko koe me tō kotahi, ko koe rānei me tētehi rōpū. Ko ā tātou kōrero te take, arā, reo kōrero mai, reo tuhituhi mai.

Kei a koe te whiriwhiri mēnā ka whai pānga mai ki tēnei rangahautanga. Ki te ngākau nui mai ki te whai wāhi mai tēnā koa pānuihia te puka whakamōhiohia kātahi ka whakahokia mai te puka whakautu e āpiti nei ki tēnei reta. Whiriwhirihia ngā kōwhiringa e pai ana ki tō ngākau ka whakahoki mai ai mā te kōpaki kore-utu. Māku koe e whakapā atu kia whakariterite i ngā whakahaeretanga o tō uiuitanga me te hoatu i ngā kōrero whakamōhio atu anō.

Mehemea āe ka whakautu mai koe ki tēnei reta me te whai wāhi mai ki tāku rangahau, kia mōhio mai kei a koe tonu te mana ki te hiahia koe ki te tango i tō whakaaetanga. Ahakoa ka whakahokia mai te puka whakautu, ehara i te mea ka herea koe kia haere tonu ki te uiuitanga mēnā ka tīni kē ō whakaaro. Ki te pīrangi kōrero whakamōhio atu anō, ki te puta rānei he pātai mō te rangahau i tēnei wā tonu, kaua e wehi ki te whakapā mai ki te wāhi o raro iho nei ki te nama waea o Darryn Joseph ā ngā haora mahi: 06 356 9099 pekanga waea 7695.

Heoi anō rā,
Noho ora ake i roto i ngā mihi,

Darryn Joseph
D.H.Joseph@massey.ac.nz



Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero

Puka whakaae a te Kaiuru

Ka purutia tēnei puka whakaae mō ngā tau e rima (5).

Kua oti i a au te pānui te puka whakamōhiohio, ā, kua oti hoki te whakamārama mai ngā wāhanga o te rangahau ki a au. Kua whakautua aku pātai ki tāku i pai ai i runga tonu i te mōhio tērā ka puta ētehi anō pātai ā tōna nei wā.

Kei te mōhio pū kei a au te tikanga mēnā ka puta atu i tēnei rangahau ahakoa āhea, me te whiriwhiri inā kāore e whakaae ana kia whakautu i ētehi o ngā pātai.

Kei te whakaae kia mau ā-rīpenetia te uiuitanga/matapakitanga. E mōhio ana au i te wā o te uiuitanga kei a au te tikanga ki te pātai atu kia whakawetongia te mīhini hopu reo.

Kei te hiahia/kāore i te hiahia kia whakahokia mai ngā rīpene ki a au.

Kei te hiahia/Kāore i te hiahia kia kuhuna ngā kōrero ki roto i tētehi pūranga atoato (official archive).

Ka whakaae au kia kore e whāki atu i tētehi kōrero e matapakina ana ki roto i ngā Kōrero ā-Rōpū.

Whakaae ana au kia uru atu ki roto i tēnei rangahau i raro tonu i ngā tikanga e takoto mai rā i te puka whakamōhiohio.

Waitohu:

Rā:

Ingoa: kia āta tuhi



ĀPITI HANGA 7: Te Rārangi Pātai

Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero: Ā tātou kōrero, ā tātou mōteatea He rārangi pātai

Momo kōrero	<i>reo Māori!</i> momo tuhinga, kōrero, kaupapa, aheinga, āhuatanga reo
Whānuitanga	ngā tino, ā-waha, ā-tuhi, mōteatea, kupu ōrite
Whakamahere	reo tuhi/reo kōrero, kaupapa, take, tikanga - hei aha? āhua o te momo kōrero, kaiwhakarongo/kaipānui/kaikōrero, taera o te kōrero, taumata, whakarōpū
Kounga	āhuatanga reo, kupu whakarite, huahuata, kounga o te reo, eke panuku, tino Māori, wairua Māori, hanganga, tauira pai
Tōrangapū	noho mōrearea, noho itiiti, mā wai e pupuri/ako/whakaako, whakawhanake, he āwangawanga?

Hei tuwhera i te whakawhiti kōrero

Tēnā, whakamārama mai koa he aha tāu mahi?

I aha koe i te wiki kua taha ake nei? Kia āta kōrero mai.

He aha ngā tino momo kōrero Māori i roto i tāu mahi ināianei?

He aha ngā momo kōrero e tino kaingākau nei koe?

Te whānuitanga o ngā momo kōrero

1. He aha ngā momo kōrero i roto i te ao Māori?
2. He kupu taurite (synonym) mō ētehi o ngā kupu i te rārangi momo kōrero?
3. Kua rerekē ngā momo kōrero i te takanga o te wā?
4. He aha ngā tino momo kōrero i roto i tō mahi i mua? Ngā kura rumaki? Te Kōhanga Reo? Te Kura Kaupapa Māori? Te Wharekura? Te Whare Wānanga? Ki hea rānei?

Te whakaaturanga o ngā momo kōrero

1. Me pēhea e whakaatu ai i te whānuitanga o ngā momo kōrero kia whai hua ai mā tātou?
2. Me pēhea e whakarōpū ai i ngā kōrero nei?
3. Ko ēhea ngā momo kōrero e noho mōrearea ana?
4. Kua rerekē te mana o ngā momo kōrero o mua? O nāianei?

Te kounga o te reo

1. He aha ētehi tauira pai kua rongu, kua kite nei koe?
2. Me pēhea e ātaahua ai tētehi momo kōrero?
3. He aha ngā āhuatanga reo o ngā tino momo kōrero Māori nei?
4. Me pēhea te tangata e matatau ai ki ngā momo kōrero?

Tēnā koa, kōrero mai anō mō te āhua o te... Kōrero mai anō mō te...

He kōrero atu anō mō te... He tauira atu anō... He aha tētehi atu tauira mō te...

Nē! Nērā! Kia ora!

Atu i ērā...he mea atu anō? Ki tō mōhio/titiro/ōu whakaaro

I a koe e tupu ana/e kura ana/i te whare wānanga/i te kāinga... Kei te kī mai koe/e mea ana koe



He Pepa

1. Puka whakamōhiohio
2. Puka whakaae
3. Rārangi pātai
4. Rārangi momo-kōrero
5. Mahere momo-kōrero

Taputapu

- pukapuka rangahau
- pūrere hopureo (Digital Olympis Recorder)

I mua i te Kōrerorero

Tohaina/tukuna he reta whakamōhio, he puka whakamōhio.

Te Kōrerorero

He tīmatanga, he whakarāpopoto rangahau (45 sec sound bite)

- He taukītanga mō te rangahau
- He whakahaere kōrero
- He take mō te rangahau
- Tokohia ngā kaiuru
- Ka ahatia ngā kōrero
- He aha te take he mea nui te kaupapa ki a au.
- Pātaia mēnā kei te pai kia mau-ā-ripenetia tā tāua kōrero?

Whakakapinga tīmatanga

- He pātai āu mō te kaupapa?
- He pātai rānei āu mō ngā matatika?

Hainatia te puka whakaae

- Pēhea rā te pupuri kōrero? (Note official archive)
- Hainatia mai koa kia rua ngā kape. Ko tētehi māu, ko tētehi māku.
- Turn tape on then!

Kōrerorero

45 min-kei te kaiuru te tikanga

Mō muri ake i te kōrerorero

- Me mihi ka tika: Tēnā rā koe e whai wā nei ki te tautoko i taku kaupapa...
- He whakarāpopoto o ngā kitenga rangahau i tēnei wā (45 second summary)
- He kōrero āu, he whakaaro atu anō ōu?
- He kaiuru, he rauemi atu anō?

Kapu tī

He whakaratarata te mahi.

Tuhia te kōrerorero ASAP

Tuhia kia 80 ōrau o te kōrerorero.



ĀPITI HANGA 9: Te Puka Rāhui Kōrero mā te Kaipato Kupu

Te Pātaka Iringa Kōrero: Ā tātou kōrero, ā tātou mōteatea

TRANSCRIBER'S CONFIDENTIALITY AGREEMENT

He mana tō te kupu.

Māku, _____, e tuhi ngā kōrero i runga i ngā rīpene ka homai ki a au.

I (Full Name - printed) agree to transcribe the tapes provided to me.

E whakaae ana au kia noho rāhui ngā kōrero katoa e homai ana ki a au.

I agree to keep confidential all the information provided to me.

E kore au e whakaahua i ngā tuhinga kōrero, e kore rānei e pupuri i ngā kōrero, atu i ngā kōrero hei whakatutuki i te mahi i te kaupapa.

I will not make any copies of the transcripts or keep any record of them, other than those required for the project.

Waitohu:

Rā:

ĀPITIHINGA 10: He Tuhinga Māhorahora

He tuhinga ēnei i tuhia ki te hautaka rangahau. He huarahi rangahau te whakatuhituhi i ngā whakaaro mō te ruku i te hōhonutanga o tētehi kaupapa i te rangahau e wānangahia ana.

He tuhinga Hautaka: He Rā Whakangungu Pouako

He haurua i te waru te tāima. He Paraire. Ka hipa te waka i te tohu reo rua o tēnei wānanga. Te nuinga o te wā ka tae wawe mai a ‘Mārama’, te pouako o tēnei wānanga whakangungu kaiako, ki tēnei karaehe ia rā. Heoi, ko tētehi manuhiri hei ako i te rā nei. Ka kōrero Māori māua i a māua e piki ana i te arapiki. Rua tekau wiki te roa o tēnei wānanga. Ka huihui atu i te 9 ki te 3 mai i te Mane ki te Paraire. Te whāinga he hoatu ki ngā ākonga i ngā pūkenga reo hei akoako i roto i tētehi kura rūmaki. Ko ētehi o ngā ākonga kei te ako i te Kōhanga Reo i te Kura Kaupapa Māori rānei. He rerekē ngā taumata reo o tēnā, o tēnā, engari ki te meinga ki tētehi ‘bell curve’ ka takoto pērā, tokoiti kei te matatau rawa, tokoiti kei te ako tonu, ko te nuinga kei waenganui.

He nui ngā pānui pakitara e iri ana i te hōro e tata ana ki te rūma ako. Ko ngā kupu tuatahi o tētehi pānui e kī ana, “Nau mai, tau mai rā.” Ko tētehi anō e mau ana i te whakaahua o tētehi arero Māori rongonui, ko ia kei te tohutohu ā-ringa, ko ngā kupu kei te kī, “I ahatia e koe mō te reo Māori?” Ka mahi kaputī a Mārama, ka rongu atu i ngā ākonga e waiata ana, e katakata ana. Ka hipa anō i te rūma rauemi. Katoa ngā pukapuka mā ngā ākonga i te kura rumaki e whakapouakatia ana: he Purapura, he Wharekura, he Tautoko. Kei te kapi tētehi pakitara i ngā pukapuka marautanga e whakataumaha ana i te paenga. Kei te hōro e whakairihia ana ētehi anō kōrero: he whakataukī, he pānui pātū nā Te Taura Whiri me ētehi anō tari kāwanatanga, he mahere whenua nā ngā ākonga e whakaata ana i ngā taunahanaha o ngā tūpuna ki tēnei takiwā, he kōwhaiwhai kei te tūhonohono i ēnei kōrero pātū .

Ka kōrero tonu māua, he taumahi tā te karaehe, ko tētehi pakiwaitara e 3000 kupu te roa. Koia rā te kaupapa i te rā nei, he āwhina mā rātou ki te tuhituhi. He whakaatu i ētehi kitenga rangahau pērā i te momo-kōrero, i te momo kīpeha. He whakahau hoki

kia kaha rātou i a rātou e whakaako ana ki te tuhi. Tekau mā whā rātou. Ka paku tū te pouako i tana kūaha, ka neke te ringa o tētehi karaka mahi mai i te wāhanga, ‘kāore au i konei’ ki te ‘kei te ako au’. Ka uru ki roto i te karaehe.

Ka hoihoi ngā ākonga i te reo Māori tonu, kei te whakato i tētehi taha ki tētehi taha ko wai ka toa i te whutuporo i te pō nei. He manu aute e whakairihia ana ki te tuanui. Kei raro iho ko ētehi tauaromahi mō ngā ākonga. Kei roto rā tētehi anō pouako, ka mene ki te manuhiri, ko māua māua i te whare wānanga. He nui ngā pānui kei tēnei kokonga. He pānui e kitea ana ngā kare-ā-roto: riri, koa, pōuri. Kei te noho ngā ākonga anō he hū hōiho. Ka tū tētehi o ngā karaehe ki te mihi. Ka tū te whānau. Ka hikina e tētehi o ngā ākonga te rakuraku, ka waiatatia he hīmene, ā, ka karakia, ka noho. Ka tū tētehi o ngā pakeke ki te whakatau mai i ahau. Ka mihia tuatahitia te ‘minita’ nāna i tuku mihi ki te wāhi ngaro, ka tuku mihi mai ki te manuhiri, ā, ki te pouako hoki. Ka waiatatia anō. Ka tū atu ahau, ka meatia he tauparapara, ka meatia te pepeha o tōku iwi, ā, ka kōrerohia te kaupapa. Ka tukuna tētehi rotarota hei waiata. Ka tūtū haere ngā ākonga ki te whakamōhio mai nō hea, ko wai. Ka whakahuatia te maunga, te awa, te marae, te hapū. Ka rapirapi te manuhiri i ngā ingoa ki tētehi pepa. Ka kōrero paki anō hoki ētehi o ngā mea pakeke. Ka whakato i te ngā mea rangatahi. Ka mutu te whakatau, ka tīmata te karaehe.

Ka tae mai ētehi anō wāhine, tokorua, ki te whakarongo. He kaitito kōrero rāua tahi, he kaiako hoki. He kaituhi pukapuka mā ngā tamariki tētehi, he katito waiata mā te iwi tērā atu. Ka tū ake tērā atu o ngā pouako ki te whakatau i a rāua. Ko rātou rātou he hāpori tata e whakaora ana i te reo Māori, nō reira he mihi ōpaki te āhua. Hei whakarāpopoto i te mahi o te ata, ka whakaakona ngā ruri hou ki a rātou: he ruri rārangi, he ruri rārangipū, he ruri taimana. Heoi, he mea e mau tonu ana i ngā kīpeha.

Ka paku kōrero mai tētehi kaiako kei roto i te Kura Kaupapa Māori i te kitenga atu o ngā pukapuka i mauria mai mā te karaehe. Ka pai ngā kōmeke ki ngā tamariki, Eke Panuku me Tāiki e. Ko tētehi o āna mahi he mahi ngohe hei tautoko, hei whakahāngai i ngā kōmeke ki ngā tamariki. Ka mihi mai hoki i runga i ngā hua o tēnei mahi. Tāna, āe ka kitea he ngohe tērā mō roto i tana karaehe, ka tangohia. Ka pērātia i te ata. Ka mutu te karaehe, ka mihi mai tētehi o ngā koroheke o te karaehe, kātahi ka tū te karaehe ki te waiata. Ka hongī mai ētehi o ngā ākonga me te mihi anō i te pai o

ngāmahi. He uaua, engari he whai hua. Ka komotia āku rauemi ki roto i tētehi pēke, ka haere. Kei waho tētehi ākonga hapanihi e pānui ana i tētehi mahere whenua mō Aotearoa. Kei te reo Māori te katoa o ngā wāhi.

He Tuhinga Hautaka: Mate atu he Momo-Kōrero, Ara mai anō he Momo-Kōrero

Anei tētehi kōrero pono mō te whakaora i tētehi momo-kōrero, i tētehi kīpeha hoki. Tērā ka pānuihia a *Māori Mementos*, ā, ka taka mai he whakataukī i te whārangi ka hou ki roto i taku whatumanawa. Ko te whakataukī e kī ana,

Ka hou ki te whenua he tūngoungou;
Ka puta ki te rangi he pūrerehua.

Tika tonu mai ki taku ngākau i te mea koia tonu te wā e hemo ana te tinana o taku māmā. Kihai i roa, ka hinga. Nā te ātaahua o te whakataukī ka mahia e au hei pikitia me tētehi pūrerehua e rere ana ki te rangi ki taku hautaka tuhituhi. Nā reira i pūmau ki te hinengaro.

Ka taka ngā tau e ono, ka riro nāku i tuku atu ngā kupu whakatau ki tētehi hoa mahi. I mate tōna māmā i roto i ngā wiki rā. Nā reira i whakahua ai i taua whakataukī me te whakamārama, me te whakahāngai ki a ia. Inā, he whakatairite i te ora o te tangata ki te anuhe. Ka huri ia hei tūngoungou, he waka tūpāpaku tōna rite, engari kāore anō kia mate. He kupu raweke te pūrerehua, he kupu anō mō te wairua. Arā ake, ahakoa hou te tangata ki rō whenua, tērā ka puta te wairua ki te rangi rā anō.

Ka mutu, ka tangi te waea i ngā rā e rua o muri mai, ko tētehi atu hoa mahi e rapu ana i taua whakataukī. I roto i ngā marama kua moe hoki tōna whaea, ā, ko taua whakataukī hei kupu mō runga i te kōhatu i te urupā.

Nō reira, i whakaorangia taua whakataukī mai i te pukapuka, ki te hautaka, ki te pikitia, ki te mihi whakatau, ki te kōrero ā-waea, tau ana ki tētehi kōhatu whakamaharatanga. Koia tētehi āhuetanga o te reo e kouna ana. Ka ara ake anō.

Toitū te kouna, toitū te kupu, toitū te reo.

ĀPITIHINGA 11: He Whakahokinga Kōrero Nō Taku Hāpori

Anei ngā whakahokinga kōrero a ngā tāngata e rua ki taku ī-mēra. He toronga ōpaki noa nāku ki te hāpori mēnā he momo-kōrero e ngaro ana i te rārangi momo-kōrero i Te ĀpitiHanga 1. He nui kē atu i ēnei tokorua, engari, he rawe ā rāua whakahokinga kōrero mai. He kaiako reo Māori rāua. Ko te tangata tuarua, he kaiako hitori hoki.

He Whakahokinga Kōrero 1

- Blown-up books
- Kaupapa Haahi
 - kauhau
 - iriiringa
 - hīmene
 - whakamoemiti
 - tāpae – ripenetā
- Kōrero a te kaitiki koha
- Kōrero tene (impromptu speeches)
- Meneti
 - hui
 - kōti
- Mottoes / slogans / catch-phrases
 - “Mo rātou, mo mātou, mo koutou, mo tātou.”
 - “Nā te Māngai Pāho te pūtea tautoko.”
- Overhead transparency
- Data show
- Icons and symbols e.g.
 - ngā tohu wāhi
 - tohu auahi kore (no smoking signs)
 - tohu wharepaku mo ngā tāne
 - tohu wharepaku mo ngā wahine
 - tohu whakapono
 - ngā tohu a te Hāhi Ratana
 - ngā tohu a Te Kooti
 - ngā tohu a Te Paimārire...
- Haki
 - Tino Rangatiratanga
 - Te Kooti
 - Kingitanga
 - Ā-iwi, ā-hapū
- Wero

HeWhakahokinga Kōrero 2

He rawe to rangahau. Te huhua hoki o nga momo korero. E mohiotia ana e au nga kupu tawhito, no reira, tera pea kei roto i to rarangi, engari he kupu ke.

He maha nga momo rarangi. Hei tauira "**rarangi utu**". Ko tona ingoa tawhito ko te "**kaute**". I whakamahitia hoki te kupu "**nama**" i nga wa o mua. Kei a koe te kupu "**ture**" engari, mehemea kaore ano kia oti te whakaae, he "**pire**" ke. Ki etahi, he "pira". Ko te "pire" hoki tetahi ingoa ke mo te "kaute". I nga wa o mua, ka taia nga mea o te kawanatanga i roto i te "**Kahiti**". He kupu tawhito ano, ko te "**kanataraki**", ko te "**kirimana**" hoki. He maha nga momo kirimana pea, ko te "**kirimana rongotaima**" [hire purchase agreement]. I kitea hoki e au, te "**kirihipi**" i tukua whanuitia ki nga iwi Maori hei **petihana** - (aha! he kupu ano, ko "petihana") - na te mea, i te wa o nga Hurai, ka tuhia a ratou kupu ki runga i te kiri o te hipi. Kei roto i nga pukapuka, kua kitea e au he "**tepara**" hei whakaatu i nga whika.

He kupu tawhito ano...ko te "**riihi**" - ko te kirimana hei rihi i te whenua. Ka hokona te whenua, ka riro he "**tiiti**"; he "karauna karaati" (crown grant) ranei. He maha pea nga pukapuka e pa ana ki te mahi roia. He kupu ano mo te "tiriti" ko te "**kawenata**". E rua nga "kawenata" hoki no te Paipera. Kei te wehea etahi pukapuka ki roto i nga "upoko", "wahanga" ranei. He kupu ano mo te CV, ko te "**tatai pumanawa**". He "**terekarawhe**", "he **terekaramu**" ranei. Kaore e mahia ana inaianei, engari he "**korero waea**" tonu a te tangata.

Kua apititia hoki nga wahanga o te "**pohiri**", engari, kaore taua kupu ano. "**Kupu whakarite**" [metaphor?]

Ko etahi atu...

he moni, ara, he "**nooti peke**".

He "**parani**", ara ko te tohu e maakatia ai te kau (te aha ranei) kia mohiotia ai no wai.

I nga wa o mua, ka tukuna he "**oota**" ki te kaimahi toa, he "**puka tono taonga**" pea inaianei? Kua kitea hoki e au te kupu "**whooma**".

He maha pea nga "**puka**" (pukapuka) ranei, hei tauira, ko te "**puka tuku rongoa**" he mea homai e te takuta; he "**pukapuka ture**" mo nga nga momo takaro.

He maha hoki nga momo "**kari**". Ko nga kari e pureitia ana; ko te "**kari kirihimete / huritau / whanau pepi / ...**"; "**kari umanga**" hoki.

He maha pea nga "**tiwhikete**" - "**tikiwhete marena**", te mea te mea.

He "**tohu whakatupato**" me nga "**rama whakatupato**" kei tutukia koe e te tereina.

He "**tohu ingoa**" kia tapiritia ki to uma kia mohiotia e te mano ko wai koe.

Ka uru pai te "**moemoea**" ki roto i to rarangi?

Ko te "**hei**", ahakoa ko te "**hei tiki**", ko te "hei" mo te kaki kia mohiotia kei te tautoko koe i nga Pango Katoa.

He aha nga kupu mo te "**website**", te "**chat-room**", "**number plate**" hoki?

Āpitianga 12: Te Whakatupua o te Tātai Momo Kōrero

He Tātai Momo Kōrero nā te Māori [Kei te noho tauira rawa.]

Reo Kōrero

Tikanga/kawa o te marae

karakia

karanga

mihi

mihimihi

poroporoaki

whaikōrero

whakapapa

kōrero

kōrero ā-iwi/ā-hapū/ā-whānau

kōrero tuku iho

kōrero paki

kōrero whakakata

pūrākau

pakiwaitara

kauhau

whare karakia

whare wānanga

whakawhiti kōrero

kōrero kāuta

kōrero mahi

uiui

kōrero kura

panga

pepe taki manawa

rotarota

rurī

takawiri arero

manu kōrero

kōrero whakanikoniko

kīrehu

kīwaha

kupu whakaari/tongi

kupu whakarite

pepeha

whakataukī

whakatauākī

mōteatea

haka

waiata

waiata-ā-ringa

Reo Tuhituhi

kōrero whare wānanga

atikara

hautaka

pepa

tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi

hokinga mahara

haukiri

haurongo/kōrero tangata

pūmahara

kōrero tohutohu

tohutaka

kōrero paipera

tuhinga mahi

niureta

pānui whakamārama

pōhiri

pūrongo

kupu whakataki

tuhituhinga-ā-rōpū

tukunga pāpāho

tuhinga tuku

reta

ī-mēra

kāri

tuku kupu (ā-waea pūkoro)

tuhinga whakanakonako

mōteatea

pakiwaitara

tuhinga poto

whakaari

whiti

niupepa

niupepa o mua (1842-1920)

pānuitanga

poroporoaki tā

pakiwaituhi

waituhi whakaata

He Tātai Momo Kōrero a te Māori 1.1

[Kei te noho taura rawa.]

kawa o te marae

karanga

mihi

mihimihi

poroporoaki

whaikōrero

whakaaraara

tauparapara

whakapapa

kōrero

kōrero ā-iwi

kōrero Māori

pūrākau

kōrero paipera

kōrero pono

haukiri

haurongo/kōrero tangata

hokinga mahara

kōrero tohutohu

niureta

patapatai

pūmahara

pūrongo

kupu whakataki

reta

tohutaka

tuhituhinga- ā-rōpū (archives of Māori

organisations?)

whakawhiti kōrero

kōrero tamariki

panga

pepe taki manawa

rotarota

ruri

takawiri arero

kōrero whare wānanga

hautaka

arotakenga pukapuka

atikara

mōteatea

ōhākī

poroporoaki tā

whakaaro

whakarāpopoto kōrero

kauhau

pepa

tuhinga roa/ whakapae/kairangi

kōrero whakanikoniko

kīrehu

kīwaha

kupu whakaari/tongi

kupu whakarite

pepeha

whakataukī

whakataukākī

mōteatea

haka

manawa wera

ngeri

haka pōhiri

karakia

waiata

waiata-ā-ringa

niupepa

niupepa o mua (1842-1920)

pānuitanga

pānui whakamarama

poroporoaki tā

pitopito kōrero

rerenga kōrero (social commentary or criticism)

whakaputanga whakaaro (editorial)

paki

kōrero ahiahi

kōrero paki

kōrero whakakata

mōteatea

pakiwaitara

pakiwaituhi

tuhinga poto

waituhi whakakata

whiti

whakaari/whakatautau

whakataetae kōrero (Māori oratory contest(?))

Pāpāho? Reo irirangi, pouaka whakaata?

He Tātai Momo Kōrero a te Māori 1.2

[Kei te noho taura rawa.]

Reo Kōrero

Tikanga/kawa o te marae

karakia
karanga
mihi
mihimihi
poroporoaki
whaikōrero
whakapapa

kōrero

kōrero ā-iwi/ā-hapū/ā-whānau
kōrero tuku iho
kōrero paki
kōrero whakakata
pūrākau
pakiwaitara

kauhau

whare karakia
whare wānanga

whakawhiti kōrero

kōrero kāuta

kōrero mahi

patapatai

kōrero kura

panga
pepe taki manawa
rotarota
ruri
takawiri arero
manu kōrero

kōrero whakanikoniko

kīrehu
kiwaha
kupu whakaari/tongi
kupu whakarite
pepeha
whakataukī
whakataukāi

mōteatea

haka
waiata
waiata-ā-rīnga

Reo Tuhituhi

kōrero whare wānanga

atikara
hautaka
pepa
tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi

hokinga mahara

haukiri
haurongo/kōrero tangata
pūmahara

kōrero tohutohu

tohutaka

kōrero paipera

tuhinga mahi

niureta
pānui whakamārama
pōhiri
pūrongo
kupu whakataki
tuhituhinga-ā-rōpū
tukunga pāpāho

tuhinga tuku

reta
ī-mēra
kāri
tuku kupu (ā-waea pūkoro)

tuhinga whakanakonako

mōteatea
pakiwaitara
tuhinga poto
whakaari
whiti

niupepa

niupepa o mua (1842-1920)
pānuitanga
poroporoaki tā

pakiwaituhi

waituhi whakaata

He Tātai Momo Kōrero nā te Māori

[Kei te noho taura tonu, Hakihea, 2005]

Reo Kōrero

kawa

karakia	<i>incantation</i>
karanga	<i>welcome call</i>
mihi	<i>acknowledgement</i>
mihihihi	<i>greetings</i>
poroporoaki	<i>eulogy</i>
whaikōrero	<i>oratory</i>
whakapapa	<i>recite lineage</i>

kōrero

kauhau	<i>seminar</i>
kawenga kōrero	<i>news story</i>
kōrero ā-iwi, ā-hapū,	<i>tribal, clan,</i>
ā-whānau	<i>family oral history</i>
kōrero tuku iho	<i>oral legacy</i>
kōrero paki	<i>entertainment</i>
kōrero whakakata	<i>joke</i>
kōrerorero	<i>conversation</i>
pūrākau	<i>narrative</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>narrative</i>
taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>

kōrero auaha

pepe takimanawa	<i>breath game</i>
rotarota	<i>action poem</i>
ruri	<i>ditty</i>
takawiri arero	<i>tongue twister</i>
manu kōrero	<i>prepared speech</i>

kupu whakanikoniko

kīrehu	<i>colloquial saying</i>
kīwaha	<i>idiom</i>
kupu whakaari/tongi	<i>prophetic saying</i>
kupu whakarite	<i>metaphoric saying</i>
pepeha	<i>tribal maxim</i>
whakataukī	<i>proverb</i>
whakatauākī	<i>specific proverb</i>

mōteatea

haka	<i>haka</i>
waiata	<i>song</i>
waiata-ā-ringa	<i>action song</i>

Reo Tuhituhi

tuhinga whaiaro, karere	<i>personal, messages</i>
haukiri	<i>autobiography</i>
haurongo	<i>biography</i>
hautaka	<i>journal</i>

i-mēra

karere ā-waea	<i>text message</i>
kāri	<i>card</i>
nōti	<i>note</i>
poukāri	<i>postcard</i>
pōwhiri	<i>invite</i>
rārangi take	<i>agenda</i>
rātaka	<i>diary</i>
reta	<i>letter</i>

tuhinga auaha

kupu waiata	<i>lyric</i>
mōteatea	<i>poetry</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>narrative</i>
pakiwaituhi	<i>comic</i>
pukapuka pikitia	<i>picture book</i>
panga	<i>puzzle</i>
ruri	<i>light poem</i>
tuhinga poto	<i>short story</i>
whakaari	<i>play</i>

tuhinga whakamōhio, pūrongo

atikara	<i>article</i>
kōrero pono	<i>non-fiction</i>
niupcpa	<i>writing</i>
pepa	<i>newspaper</i>
pūrongo	<i>academic paper</i>
rārangi wā	<i>report</i>
tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi	<i>information, reportage</i>
	<i>essay, thesis</i>

tuhinga tohutohu, whakamārama

hoahoa	<i>instruction, explanation</i>
pae whakaata	<i>design</i>
rārangi kai	<i>web page</i>
tohutao	<i>menu</i>
tohutohu	<i>recipe</i>
ture	<i>instruction</i>
	<i>rules</i>

tuhinga whakawherenga, whai whakaaro

arotakenga	<i>persuasion and</i>
pānuitanga	<i>opinion</i>
pānui	<i>review</i>
pānui whakaahua	<i>advertisement</i>
puka whakamōhio	<i>message</i>
tukunga pāpāho	<i>poster</i>
	<i>brochure</i>
	<i>press release</i>

He Tātai Momo Kōrero: A Taxonomy of Maori Texts

[Kohitātea, 2006]

Reo Kōrero

Kōrero Ōkawa

karakia	<i>incantation</i>
karanga	<i>welcome call</i>
mihi	<i>acknowledgement</i>
mihimihi	<i>greetings</i>
poroporoaki	<i>eulogy</i>
whaikōrero	<i>oratory</i>
whakapapa	<i>recite lineage</i>

Kōrero Ōpaki

kauhau	<i>seminar</i>
kawenga kōrero	<i>news story</i>
kōrero ā-iwi, ā-hapū,	<i>tribal, clan,</i>
ā-whānau	<i>family oral history</i>
kōrero tuku iho	<i>oral legacy</i>
kōrero paki	<i>entertainment</i>
kōrero whakakata	<i>joke</i>
kōrerorero	<i>conversation</i>
manu kōrero	<i>prepared speech</i>
pepe takimanawa	<i>breath game</i>
pūrākau	<i>ancient narrative</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>legend</i>
paki	<i>narrative</i>
rotarota	<i>action poem</i>
ruri	<i>ditty</i>
takawiri arero	<i>tongue twister</i>
taupatupatu	<i>debate</i>

Kīpeha

kīrehu	<i>local idiom</i>
kīwaha	<i>idiom, colloquialism</i>
kupu whakaari/tongi	<i>prophetic saying</i>
kupu whakarite	<i>metaphoric saying</i>
pepeha	<i>tribal maxim</i>
whakataukī	<i>proverb</i>
whakatauākī	<i>specific proverb</i>

Mōteatea

haka	<i>haka</i>
mōteatea	<i>lament</i>
waiata	<i>song</i>
waiata-ā-ringa	<i>action song</i>

Reo Tuhituhi

Tuhinga Whaiaro, Karere

haukiri	<i>autobiography</i>
haurongo	<i>biography</i>
hautaka	<i>journal</i>
i-mēra	<i>e-mail</i>
karere	<i>text message</i>

kāri	<i>card</i>
nōti	<i>note</i>
poukāri	<i>postcard</i>
pōwhiri	<i>invite</i>
rārangi take	<i>agenda</i>
rātaka	<i>diary</i>
reta	<i>letter</i>

Tuhinga Auaha

kupu waiata	<i>lyric</i>
mōteatea	<i>poetry</i>
pakiwaitara	<i>narrative</i>
pakiwaituhi	<i>comic</i>
pukapuka pikitia	<i>picture book</i>
panga	<i>puzzle</i>
ruri	<i>light poem</i>
tuhinga poto	<i>short story</i>
whakaari	<i>play</i>

Tuhinga Whakamōhio, Pūrongo

atikara	<i>article</i>
kōrero pono	<i>non-fiction</i>
	<i>writing</i>
niupepa	<i>newspaper</i>
pūrongo	<i>report</i>
rārangi wā	<i>timeline</i>
tuhinga roa/whakapae/kairangi	<i>essay, thesis</i>

Tuhinga Tohutohu, Whakamārama

hoahoa	<i>design</i>
pae whakaata	<i>web page</i>
rārangi kai	<i>menu</i>
tohutao	<i>recipe</i>
tohutohu	<i>instruction</i>
ture	<i>rules</i>

Tuhinga Whakawherenga, Whai Whakaaro

arotakenga	<i>review</i>
pānuitanga	<i>advertisement</i>
pānui	<i>message</i>
pānui whakaahua	<i>poster</i>
puka whakamōhio	<i>brochure</i>
tukunga pāpāho	<i>press release</i>

Creative Writing

Information, & Reportage

Instruction, & Explanation

Persuasion, & Opinion

NGĀ KŌRERO I TIROHIA

Rārangi Pukapuka

Aatea Consultants. (2004). *Teacher evaluation of Māori medium materials*. Māori report to the Language Education Team. Wellington: Ministry of Education.

Abrams, M.H. (2005). *A glossary of literary terms*. Boston: Wadsworth.

Anderson, M., & Anderson, K. (1997). *Text types in English 1*. South Yarra: Macmillan.

Anderson, K. (2001). *Motivating the reluctant writer*. Wellington: Learning Media.

Ashton, L. (2005). He Maimai Aroha, Tame Te Maro. In *Mana* (pp.6-11), 63: 9. Wellington: Derek Tini Fox.

Atkinson, M. (2004). *Lend me your ears*. London: Random House.

August, T. (2001). A literary and linguistic critique of a Māori lullaby. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori and Pacific Development*, 2 (1), 4-20.

Baldick, C. (2001). *Concise dictionary of literary terms*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.

Barlow, C. (1996). *Tikanga whakaaro: Key concepts in Māori culture*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.

Bauer, W. (1997). *The Reed reference grammar of Māori*. Auckland: Reed.

Bauer, L., & Trudgill, P. (1998). *Language myths*. London: Penguin Books.

- Beazley, M., & Marr, G. (1992). *The Writers Handbook*. Auckland: Hodder & Stoughton.
- Benton, N.B.E., & Benton, R.A. (1999). *Revitalizing the Māori language*. Ngāruawāhia: Alta Vista Pacifica Tāpui.
- Best, E. (1995). *Dominion Museum Bulletin No. 10*. Wellington: Te Papa Tongarewa.
- Bevan-Brown, J. (1999). By Māori, For Māori, About Māori – Is That Enough? In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research and Development Proceedings* (pp. 231-245). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-a-Toi.
- Biber, D. (1989). A typology of English texts. *Linguistics*, 27, 20-22
- Biggs, B. (1973). *Lets learn Māori: A guide to the study of the Māori language*. Wellington: Reed Education.
- Biggs, B. (1990). *Me ako tātou i te reo Māori. Translated into Māori by Cleve Barlow*. Orakei: Uniprint.
- Biggs, B. & Jones, P. (2004). *Ngā Iwi o Tainui*. Auckland: Auckland University Press.
- Bishop, R. (1994). Initiating Empowering Research: *New Zealand Journal of Educational Studies*, 29(1), 175-188.
- Bishop, R., Berryman, M., & Richardson, C. (2001). *Te Toi Huarewa: Effective teaching and learning strategies, and effective teaching materials for improving the reading and writing in te reo Maori of students aged five to nine in Maori-medium education. Final report to the Ministry of Education*. Wellington: Ministry of Education, Research Division.
- Black, T. (1999). Kia pakeke ake tō tātou reo rangatira ki roto i ngā tirohanga whakamua. In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research*

- and Development Proceedings* (pp. 406-407). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-a-Toi.
- Black, T. (2000). *Kāore te aroha: Te hua o te wānanga*. Unpublished doctoral thesis, Massey University, Palmerston North.
- Bouma, G. (2000). *The research process* (4th ed.). Melbourne: Oxford University Press.
- Boyce, M.T. (1996). Compiling a corpus of contemporary broadcast Māori. *New Zealand Studies in Applied Linguistics*, 2, 79-92.
- Boyce, M.T. (1998). A pilot analysis of selected documentary samples from the Māori broadcast corpus in New Zealand studies. *Applied Linguistics*, 4, 77-89.
- Brooke-White, V. (Ed.). (1981). *Whaikōrero: Ceremonial farewells to the dead*. Wellington: Continuing Education Unit, Radio New Zealand.
- Broughton, R. (1979). *Ko ngā paiaka a Ngā Rauru Kītahi: The Origins of Rauru Kītahi*. Unpublished master's thesis, Victoria University, Wellington.
- Broughton, R. (1984). *Ko ngā tuhituhi a Te Kāhui Kararehe o Taranaki ki a Te Mete, 1893-1906*. Wellington: Victoria University Press.
- Broughton, R. (1993). *Ngā mahi whakaari a Titokowaru*. Wellington: Victoria University Press.
- Brougham, A.E., & Reed, A.W. (1987). *Māori proverbs*. Auckland: Heinemann Reed.
- Brougham, A.E., & Reed, A.W. (2001). *The Reed book of Maori proverbs*. Auckland: Reed.
- Buck, P. (1949). *The coming of the Māori*. Wellington: Whitcombe & Tombs.

- Calvert, P. (1994). A fine achievement. *New Librarian*, 1 (8), 19.
- Campbell, H. (1996). *Ngā Mana-kura-nui kei Te Ao Wahine Māori*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Campbell, H. (1997). Ngā whakakitenga nui kei Te Ao Māori mō te waiora, te Hauora me te mauriora. *He Pukenga Kōrero*, 2 (2), 31.
- Carter, M. (1990-1991). The preservation of the Māori oral tradition. *Oral History in New Zealand*, 3, 5-6.
- Carter, R. (2005). Knowledge about language in the curriculum. In S. Brindley (Ed.), *Teaching English* (pp. 246-258). Oxon: Routledge.
- Carter, R., & Nunan, D. (Eds.). (2004). *The Cambridge guide to teaching English to speakers of other languages*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Celce-Murcia, M. & Larsen-Freeman, D. (1999). *The Grammar Book*. (2nd ed.) Rowley: Newbury House.
- Chalker, S., & Weiner, E. (1998). *The Oxford Dictionary of English Grammar*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Christensen, I. (2001). *Ko te whare whakamana: Māori language revitalisation*. Unpublished doctoral thesis, Massey University, Palmerston North.
- Christensen, I. (2004). *Te reo pāngarau: A Māori language dictionary of mathematics*. Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi.
- Cleave, P. (Ed.) (2000). *The nurturing shield: A collection of essays on the Māori language*. Napier: Campus Press.
- Cordon, R. (2000). *Literacy and learning through talk: Strategies for the primary classroom*. Buckingham: St Edmundsbury Press.

- Cormack, I., & Cormack, S. (2004). *Te Pūkaki: He pukapuka mahi*. Auckland: New House Publishers.
- Cowley, S. (2002). *Getting the buggers to write*. London: Continuum.
- Cram, F. (2001) Rangahau Māori: Tōna tika, tōna pono – The validity and integrity of Māori research. In M. Tolich, (Ed.), *Research ethics in Aotearoa New Zealand* (pp. 35-52). Auckland: Pearson Education.
- Crombie, W., & Houia-Roberts, N. (2001). The rhetorical organisation of discourse: Language revitalisation and the question of authenticity. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori and Pacific Development*, 2(2), 57-73.
- Crombie, W., & Roberts, W. (2001). The rhetorical organization of Māori discourse: An illustration. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori and Pacific Development*, 2(1), 32-49
- Crystal, D. (2003). *The Cambridge encyclopedia of the English language* (2nd ed.). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Crystal, D. (2005). *How languages work*. London: Penguin Books.
- Cuddon, J.A. (1999). *The Penguin dictionary of literary terms and literary theory*. London: Penguin Books.
- Curnow, J. (1995). *Ngā pou ārahi. A tribal inventory of manuscripts relating to Māori treasures, language, genealogy, songs, history, customs and proverbs*. Auckland: Auckland Institute and Museum.
- Curnow, J., Hopa, N., & McRae, J. (Eds.). (2002). *Rere atu, taku manu!* Auckland: Auckland University Press.

- Cummins, J. (1981). The role of primary language development in promoting educational success for language minority students. In California State Department of Education Office of Bilingual Education (Ed.), *Schooling and language minority students: A theoretical framework* (pp. 3-49). Evaluation, Dissemination and Assessment Center, California State University, Los Angeles.
- Dadey, D., & Jones, M.T. (2000). *Story Sparklers: A Creativity Guide fo Children's Writers*. Ohio: Writers Digest Books.
- Davidson, C., & Tolich, M. (2003). *Social Science Research in New Zealand*. (2nd ed.) Auckland: Pearson.
- Day, A. (1996). *How to get research published in journals*. England: Gower Publishing.
- Denscombe, M. (2003). *The good research guide: For small-scale social research projects*. Buckingham: Open University Press.
- Denzin, N.K., & Lincoln, Y.S. (Eds.) (2002). *Handbook of Qualitative Research*. (2nd ed.). Thousand Oaks California: Sage Publications.
- Derewianka, B. (1993). *Exploring how texts work*. Newtown: Primary English Teaching Association.
- Deutscher, G. (2005). *The Unfolding of Language*. New York: Metropolitan Books.
- Dewes, T.K. (1974). *Ngā waiata haka a Henare Waitoa*. Unpublished master's thesis, Massey University, Palmerston North.
- Dewes, T.K. (1977). The case for oral arts. In M. King. (Ed.), *Te Ao Hurihuri: The world moves on* (pp. 55-85). Wellington: Hicks Smith.
- Dixon, N.M. (1995). *Ngā poupou o Ngāi Te Rangi*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

- Dixon, N. (2002). Ngā tai e rere nei i waho o Mauao. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Maori & Pacific Development*, 3(2), 97-110.
- Duff, D. (Ed.). (2000). *Modern genre theory*. United Kingdom: Pearson Education.
- Durie, A. (1999). Me tipu ake te pono: Māori research, ethicality and development. In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research and Development Proceedings* (2nd ed., pp. 257-263). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-a-Toi.
- Durie, M. (1995). *Whaiora: Māori health development*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.
- Durie, M. (1998). *Te mana te kāwanatanga: The politics of Māori self determination*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.
- Durie, M. (2005). *Ngā tai matatū: Tides of Māori endurance*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Emmitt, E., Pollock, J., & Komesaroff, L. (Eds.). (2003). *Language and learning*. Victoria: Oxford University Press.
- Eyre, M. (2003). *Speak Easy*. Auckland: Harper Collins.
- Fine, M., Weis, L., Weseen, S., & Wong, L. (2000). FOR WHOM? Qualitative research, representations, and social responsibilities. In N.K. Denzin & Y.S. Lincoln (Eds.), *Handbook of Qualitative Research*. (2nd ed., pp. 107-131). Thousand Oaks California: Sage Publications.
- Fishman, J.A. (1991). *Reversing Language Shift*. Clevedon: Multilingual Matters.
- Flavell, J.W.B. (1986). *Nā Tarimano i whakaari, ko Rangiwehewhi te iwi*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

- Fogiel, M. (1996). *REA'S quick and easy guide to writing your A + thesis*. Piscataway, USA: REA.
- Fowler, A. (1982). *Kinds of literature: An introduction to the theory of genre and modes*. Oxford: Clarendon Press.
- Foster, J. (1997). *Ngā kupu whakamārama: Māori grammar*. Auckland: Reed.
- Gabel, N. (1998). *Te Aurere Whenua, Te Aurere Waka, Te Aurere Kāinga*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Gardiner, W. (2001). *Haka: A living tradition*. Auckland: Hodder Moa Beckett.
- Garlick, J. (1998). *Māori language publishing: Some issues*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Glover, M. (1997, December). Kaupapa Māori health research: A developing discipline. Paper presented at Hui Whakatipu, Whaiora Marae, Otara.
- Grey, G. (1857a). *Ko ngā waiata Māori: He mea kohikohi mai*. Cape of Good Hope: Pike's Machine Printing Office.
- Grey, G. (1857b). *Ko ngā whakapepeha me ngā whakaahuareka a ngā tipuna o Aotearoa: Proverbial and popular sayings of the ancestors of the New Zealand race*. Capetown: Saul Solomon & Co.
- Haami, B. (2004). *Pūtea whakairo: Māori and the written word*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Haenga, M. (2004). *Whio*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.

- Hammond, J., & Derewianka, B. (2001). Genre. In D. Nunan & R. Carter (Eds.), *The Cambridge guide to teaching English to speakers of other language* (pp. 186-193). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Hammond, K. (2004). *Pitiera*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Harlow, R. (2000). He aha tēnei mea te 'reo tūturu'? *He Pūna Kōrero*, 1 (1), 47-71.
- Harlow, R. (2001). *A Māori reference grammar*. Auckland: Longman.
- Harlow, R. (2003). Issues in Maori language planning and revitalisation. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori & Pacific Development*, 4 (1), 32-43.
- Hawea, C.L. (1995). *He kohikohinga kōrero nō Ngāti Kuia*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Head, L. (1989). *Making Māori sentences*. Auckland: Longman Paul.
- Hemara, W. (2000). *Māori pedagogies: A view from the literature*. Wellington: New Zealand Council for Educational Research.
- He Reo e Kōrerotia ana, he Reo ka Ora*. (2003). Wellington: Te Puni Kōkiri.
- He waka eke noa: Māori information resources*. (1991). Wellington: Quest Rapuara.
- Hirsch, E.D., Kett, F.J., & Trefil, J. (Eds.). (2002). *Cultural literacy: What every American needs to know*. New York: Houghton Mifflin Company.
- Hōhepa, P. (2004). Foreword. In P. Parkinson, & P. Griffith (Eds.), *Books in Māori 1815-1900: Ngā tānga reo Māori*. Auckland: Reed Publishers.
- Hond, R. (1995). *He pūranga ā kupu a Taranaki: Draft Taranaki word list*. New Plymouth: Taranaki Polytechnic.

- Houia-Roberts, N. (2003). Genre and authentic written discourse in Māori and their relevance to the education of students in upper secondary and tertiary Māori-medium educational settings. *He Puna Kōrero: Journal of Māori & Pacific Development*. 4(2), 65-99
- Houia, Roberts, N. (2004). *An examination of genres and text types in written Māori discourse*. Unpublished Doctoral Thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Hough, L. (2002a). *English A to Z: The essential handbook*. Victoria: Heinemann.
- Hough, L. (2002b). *Language, context and meaning. Book 1*. Victoria: Heinemann.
- Ihaka, K. (c.1960) Proverbial and popular sayings of the Māori: Ngā whakataukī me ngā pepeha Māori. *Te Ao Hou*, 15, 53-54; 17, 45-46; 18, 41-42; 19, 41-42; 20, 42-43; 21, 42; 22, 42-43; 26, 54-55.
- Ihimaera, W. (Ed). (1993) *Te Ao Mārama 1*. Auckland: Reed Books.
- Ihimaera, W. (Ed.). (1994a). *Te Ao Mārama 2*. Auckland: Reed Books.
- Ihimaera, W. (Ed). (1994b) *Te Ao Mārama 4*. Auckland: Reed Books.
- Irwin, K. (1994). Māori research methods and processes. An exploration. *Sites*, 28, 25-43 (Autumn).
- Jahnke, H., & Taiapa, J. (2003). Māori research. In C. Davidson & M. Tolich (Eds.), *Social science research in New Zealand* (pp. 39-50). Auckland: Pearson Education New Zealand.
- Janesick, V.J. (2000). The choreography of qualitative research design. In N. Denzin & Y. Lincoln (Eds.), *Handbook of qualitative research* (2nd ed., pp 379-399). Thousand Oaks California: Sage Publications.

- Johnston, E.L. (1991). *Te utu me te whakaaurakitanga: He tirohanga ki te mahi whakaauraki i te maherehere Māori*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Johnston, P.H. (1997). *Knowing literacy: Constructive literacy assessment*. New York: Stenhouse Publishers.
- Jones, P.T.H. (1959). *King Potatau*. Wairarapa: Polynesian Society.
- Jones, P.T.H., & Biggs, B. (1995). *Ngā iwi o Tainui: The traditional history of the Tainui people*. Auckland: Auckland University Press.
- Joseph, D.J. (2003a, May). *Ā tātou kōrero Māori: Te whakarārangi i ngā momo kōrero o mua, o nāianei*. Presentation to Māori Language Monitoring Team and Māori language community, Te Puni Kōkiri, Te Puni Kōkiri House, Wellington.
- Joseph, D. J. (2003b). *Ā tātou kōrero: Te whakamahere i ngā momo kōrero*. *He Pukenga Kōrero*, 7(2) 44.
- Joseph, D.J. (2003c). Tama tāhae tama ora. In *Huia Short Stories 5*, 137-146). Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Joseph, D.J. (2004a). Māori language week awards: Me ā tātou kōrero rangatira. *He Muka*.
- Joseph, D.J. (2004b). *RT3: Ki tua o Rangiaātea*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Joseph, D. (2004c). *Te tuhinga auaha*. Pōneke: H.A.N.A.
- Joseph, D.J. (2004d, April). *Te whakaako i te reo Māori*. Presentation to Ataarangi, Te Tohu Paetahi, Whakaako Rumaki (Taipakeke), Bachelor of Māori Immersion Teaching (Adult Education), Parikino marae.

Joseph, D.J. (2004e). (Ed.) *Kōrerorero*, 1, Palmerston North, Tīwaha Māori Language Club.

Joseph, D. (2004f). *Te Reo o Tuawhakarere*. Pōneke: H.A.N.A.

Joseph, D.J. (2005a). *RT3: Ki tua o K-t Pae*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.

Joseph D.J. (2005b, May). *Te tuhinga auaha*. Presentation to Te Hōaka Punamu, Christchurch College of Education, School of Professional Development, Ilam Campus, Ōtautahi.

Joseph, D.J. (2005c). Tīwaha: He karapu reo Māori. *Kōkiri Paetae*, 63, 12 (Mahuru-Whiringa-a-nuku).

Joseph, D.J. (2006). *RT3: Ki Tua o Tāwauwau*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.

Joseph, D.J. (2007a). *Kaitoa*. Wellington: H.A.N.A.

Joseph, D.J. (2007b). *Tinirau rāua ko Kae*. Wellington: H.A.N.A.

Kaa, W., & Kaa, O. (1994). *Ngā kōrero a Reweti Kohere mā*. Wellington: Victoria Press.

Kaa, W., & Kaa, O. (1996a). *Apirana Turupa Ngata: Āna tuhinga i roto i te reo Māori*. Wellington: Victoria Press.

Kaa, W., & Kaa, O. (1996b). *Mohi Turei: Āna tuhinga i roto i te reo Māori*. Wellington: Victoria Press.

Kārena-Holmes, D.M. (1993). *Grammar basics: English-Māori*. Dunedin: D.M. Kārena-Holmes.

Kāretu, T. (1974). *Te reo rangatira*. Wellington: GP Publications.

- Kāretu, T. (1977). Language and protocol of the marae. In M. King (Ed.), *Te Ao Hurihuri: The world moves on* (pp. 35-54). Wellington: Hicks Smith.
- Kāretu, T. (1987). *Ngā waiata me ngā haka a tāua, a te iwi Māori*. Hamilton: University of Waikato.
- Kāretu, T. (1992). *Ngā waiata me ngā haka a te kapahaka o Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato*. Hamilton: University of Waikato.
- Kāretu, T. (1993, Ngahuru). He Poroporoaki: Tā Kīngi Matutaera Ihaka 1921-1993. *He Muka*. 6 (2), 1.
- Kāretu, T. (1994). *Haka: The dance of a noble people*. Auckland: Reed.
- Kāretu, T. (1998). Te Aumangea. In *Tā ngā ākonga: Te kura whakapakari reo ki Hīrangī*. Pōneke: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Kāretu, T. (1999). *Tā ngā ākonga: Te kura whakapakari reo ki Ngahutoitoi*. Pōneke: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Kāretu, T. (2002). *Tā ngā ākonga: Te kura whakapakari reo ki Waimārama*. Pōneke: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Kāretu, T. (2008). He Kupu Whakahau. *Te Kōrako*, 1, 1. He mea tiki atu i te marama o Paengawhāwhā i te 30 o ngā rā, i te tau 2008, mai i <http://www.tekorako.maori.nz/>
- Keegan, T.T. (1997). Mā te Ao Tawhito ka puta ki te Ao Hōu. *He Pukenga Kōrero*, 2 (2), 16-23.
- Keegan, T.T. (1998). Te reo Māori ki te ipurangi. In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research and Development Proceedings* (pp. 333-340). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi.

- Keegan, P. (2005). The development of Māori vocabulary In A. Bell, R. Harlow & D. Starks (Eds.), *Languages of New Zealand* (pp. 131-148). Wellington: Victoria University Press.
- Kerr, W. (1983). *Te tahaaroa a Ruaputahanga*. Unpublished master's thesis, Auckland University, Auckland.
- Kinchekoe, J.L., & Weil, D. (Eds.). (2004). *Critical thinking and learning: An encyclopaedia for parents and teachers*. Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press.
- Kipfer, B.A. (2001). *The order of things: How everything in the world is organized into hierarchies, structures, and pecking orders*. New York: Random House.
- Kirby, D.R. (1992). *Te taiao: Te titiro a te Māori*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Knapp, P., & Watkins, M. (2005). *Genre, text, grammar*. Sydney: University of New South Wales Press.
- Kohere, R.T. (1951). *He konae aronui: Māori proverbs and sayings*. Wellington: Reed.
- Kucer, S. B. (2005). *Dimensions of literacy: A conceptual base for teaching reading and writing in school settings*. New Jersey: Laurence Erlbaum Associates.
- Lakoff, G., & Johnston, M. (Eds.). (2003). *Metaphors we live by*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Lamerton, J. (2004). *Complete Guide Public Speaking: Speak in Public with Confidence*. St Ives: Collins.
- Lanham, R.A. (1991). *A handlist of rhetorical terms* (2nd ed.). Berkeley: University of California Press.

Learning Media. (1996). *Exploring language: A handbook for teachers*. Wellington: Learning Media.

Learning Media. (2003). *Effective literary practice in years 1 to 4*. Wellington: Learning Media.

Leeds, L. (2003). *Power Speak*. Franklin Lakes: Career Press.

Locke, T. (2001). *Close-up on literary text*. Auckland: Longman.

A Look Back and a Glimpse Ahead. (2000, September). *Library Life: Te Rau Ora: The magazine for Library and Information Professionals Library and Information Association of NZ Aotearoa*, 249, 20-21.

Macalister, J. (Ed.). (2005). *A dictionary of Maori words in New Zealand English*. Victoria: Oxford University Press.

Mahuika, A (1975). Leadership: Inherited and achieved. In M. King (Ed.), *Te Ao Hurihuri: The world moves on* (pp. 86-113). Wellington: Hicks Smith.

Mahuta, R.T. (1974). *Whaikōrero: A study of formal Māori speech*. Unpublished master's Thesis, University of Auckland, Auckland.

Mahuta, R.T. (1984). *A whaikōrero reader: Occasional paper no. 21*. Hamilton: University of Waikato.

Manaia, W.W.L. (1995). *Tuteao: Ngā Uri o ngā Maihi*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

Manuirirangi, H. (1998). *He whakaemi kōrero mō ngā Ruahine*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

- Mason, T.H., Jacob, H., & Milroy, T.W. (1999). *He kohinga kīwaha*. Tāmaki-makaurau: Reed.
- Mataira, K. (1993, Mahuru). Whakaaro kōrero. *Toi Te Kupu* 5, 2. Wellington: Ministry of Education.
- Mataira, K. (2004, 18 September). Keynote address at Hui Kāhui Kaiwhakamāori, Te Whanganui-a-Tara.
- Matariki. Maramataka Pipiri 2007 – Haratua 2008*. (2007-2008). Wellington: Te Papa Press.
- Maxwell, T.K. (1998). *Te Kōpura*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- McCarthy, M., & Carter, R. (1994) *Language as discourse: Perspectives for language teaching*. Essex: Longman.
- McCarthy, M., & Dell, F. (2006). *English idiom in use*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- McCarthy, T. (1996). *Teaching genre: Exploring 9 types of literature to develop lifelong readers and writers*. New York: Scholastic.
- McCarthy, T. (1997). *Teaching literary elements: Easy strategies and activities to help kids explore and enrich their experiences with literature*. New York: Scholastic.
- McClean, M. (1965). *Māori chant*. Unpublished doctoral thesis, University of Otago, Otago.
- McFarland, A. (2002). *Te āhua o te poroporoaki ki a Ngāi Tūhoe*. Unpublished master's thesis. Massey University, Palmerston North.

- McGrath, P.S. (1997). *Te Tūranga o te rangatahi*. Unpublished master's thesis. University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- McGrath, P. (2003). *Kōrero hau kura*. Hamilton: Kaitoro Publishers.
- McKenzie, D.F. (1985). *Oral culture, literacy & print in early New Zealand: The Treaty of Waitangi*. Wellington: Victoria University Press.
- McKinley, S., Black, T.E., Christensen, I.S., & Richardson, A.P. (1996). Toi te Kupu: a framework for Māori language resource materials. *He Pukenga Korero*, 2 (1), 26-33.
- McKinley, S., Black, T.T., Christensen, I.S., Durie, M.H., & Richardson, A.P. (1997). Toi te Kupu: Māori language resource materials. *He Pukenga Korero*, 3(1), 46-53.
- McRae, J. (1987) *He pepeha, he whakataukī nō Taitokerau*. Whangarei: Department of Māori Affairs.
- McRae, J. (1998). Māori literature: A survey. In T. Sturm (Ed.), *NZ Literature* (pp. 1-30). Auckland: Penguin.
- McRae, J. (2001). E manu, tēnā koe: O bird, greetings to you: The oral tradition in Māori-language newspapers. *Turnbull Library Record*, 34, 45-58.
- McRae, J. (2004). Ngā tuhituhinga reo Māori: Literature in Māori. In T. Ka'ai, J.C. Moorfield, M.P.J. Reilly, & S. Mosley (Eds.), *Ki te whaiao: An introduction to Māori culture and society* (pp. 133-138). Auckland: Pearson.
- Mead, H.M. (1990). Foreword. In *Ngā tāngata taumata rau 1769-1869*. Auckland: Auckland University Press; Te Tari Taiwhenua.
- Mead, H. M., & Grove, N. (2001). *Ngā pepeha a ngā tīpuna: The sayings of the ancestors*. Wellington: Victoria Press.

- Meha, R.M. (1995). *Kia hiwa rā! Kia hiwa rā! Ko te rōpū o te ora*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Meha, R. (1996). Te Reo Māori i Ngā Tari Kāwanatanga. In *He Hui Taumata Reo Māori. Hakihea Conference Proceedings*. (pp. 125-131). Wellington: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Melbourne, S. (1987). *Te manemanerau a te kāwanatanga: A history of the confiscation of Tuhoe lands in the Bay of Plenty*. Unpublished master's thesis, Auckland University, Auckland.
- Melbourne, H. (2000). *Te Waonui a Tāne*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Miles, B.M., & Huberman, A.M. (1984). *Qualitative data analysis: A sourcebook of new methods*. Beverly Hills: Sage Publications.
- Milroy, T.W. (1995). *1995 Examiner's Report, Māori*. Wellington: Ministry of Education.
- Ministry of Education. (1992). *Dancing with the pen: The learner as a writer*. Wellington: Learning Media.
- Ministry of Education. (1997). *He rauemi āwhina: Index of Māori language learning materials 1991-96*. Wellington: Learning Media.
- Ministry of Education. (1997). *Te Reo Māori in the New Zealand Curriculum Draft*. Wellington: Ministry of Education
- Ministry of Education. (2006). *Tirohia Kimihia: A Māori Learner Dictionary*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Ministry of Education. (2006). *Te Kete Kupu: 300 essential words in Māori*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.

- Ministry of Justice. (2001). *He Hīnātore ki te Ao Māori: A glimpse into the Māori world*. Wellington: Ministry of Justice.
- Mitcalfe, B. (1974). *Māori poetry: The singing word*. Wellington: Price Milburn for Victoria University Press.
- Moorfield, J.C. (1988). *Te Kākano*. Auckland: Longman Paul.
- Moorfield, J.C. (1989). *Te Pihinga*. Auckland: Longman Paul.
- Moorfield, J.C. (1992). *Te Māhuri*. Auckland: Longman Paul.
- Moorfield, J.C. (1996). *Te Kōhure*. Kirikiriroa: Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato.
- Moorfield, J.C. (2005). *Te Aka: Māori-English, English-Māori dictionary and index*. Auckland: Longman.
- Morrison, S.J.T. (1999). *Ngā kīrehu o Te Arawa*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Moseley, L. (1995). *The language of language*. Melbourne: Longman.
- Murphy, H., & Keegan, P. (2002). *Technical report #23 assessment tools for teaching and learning*. Auckland: Auckland UniServices.
- Murphy, H., & Keegan, P. (2003). *Technical report #39 assessment tools for teaching and learning*. Auckland: Auckland UniServices.
- Murray, R. (2002). *How to write a thesis*. Philadelphia: Open University Press.
- Mutu, M. (2001). Ko Puwheke Te Maunga -Puwheke is the Mountain: Maori Language and Maori Ethnic Identity -Reaffirming Identity Through Language Revitalisation. *He Pukenga Kōrero*, Ngāhuru, 6(2), 1-8.

- Myers-Shaffer, C. (2000). *The principals of literature: A guide for readers and writers*. New York: Barrons.
- Neal, R. (1992). *The Common Writer: Theory and Practice for Writers and Teachers*. Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Nikora, M. (2006). Mōteatea: Pātaka whakairinga kōrero. *MAI Review 1*, Intern Research report 10.
- Ngata, A.T., & Jones, P.T.H. (1959). *Ngā mōteatea: Part I*. Wellington: Polynesian Society.
- Ngata, A.T., & Jones, P.T.H. (1961). *Ngā mōteatea: Part II*. Wellington: Polynesian Society.
- Ngata, A.T., & Jones, P.T.H. (1970). *Ngā mōteatea: Part III*. Wellington: Polynesian Society.
- Ngata, A.T., & Jones, P.T.H. (2004). *Ngā mōteatea: The songs*. Auckland: Auckland University.
- Ngata, W. (1958, October). Ko te whakaako o te reo Māori. *Te Ao Hou*, 24, 24 (Summer).
- Ngata, W. (1993a). *English-Māori dictionary*. Wellington: Learning Media.
- Ngata, W. (1993b). *Te waiata tangi a Rangiuia*. Unpublished master's thesis, Massey University, Palmerston North.
- Ngaropo, P. (1995, November). Waiata mōteatea origins. *Pū Kaea*, 17-18.
- Nohotima, P. (2001). *He rotarota: Ngā aratohu pouako*. Wellington: Te Tāhuhu o Te Mātauranga.

- Nohotima, P., & Nohotima-Afemusi, A. (2003a). *He rotarota: Ngā aratohu pouako*. Wellington: Te Tāhuhu o Te Mātauranga.
- Nohotima, P., & Nohotima, A. (2003b). *He rotarota*. Wellington: Ministry of Education.
- Nohotima, P., & Nohotima, A. (2003c, June 1). *Te rotarota*. Lecture presented at Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi, Massey University, Palmerston North.
- Nohotima, P. (2007). *Taku Ohoooho: Te Pukapuka Aratohu a te Kaiako*. He Kupenga Hao i te Reo: Palmerston North.
- Nuku, H. (1997). *Whatitiri ki te rangi, pūkeko ki te whenua*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Oglan, G.R. (2003). *Write, right, rite*. Boston: Pearson.
- Opai, K. (2006). *E'ara te Reo Māori i te Reo Tāmi i'o i te Mana Wa'ine*. Unpublished master's thesis, Te Wānanga-o-Raukawa, Otaki.
- Orange, C. (Ed.). (1996). *Ngā tāngata taumata rau*. Wellington: Auckland University Press; Bridget Williams Books; Department of Internal Affairs.
- Orbell, M. (1985) *The natural world of the Māori*. Auckland: Reed.
- Orbell, M. (1991). *Waiata: Māori songs in history*. Auckland: Reed.
- Orbell, M. (1992). *Traditonal Māori stories: He kōrero Māori*. Auckland: Reed.
- Orbell, M. (1996, 14 Hune). B. Biggs, (Ed.), Poutaapeta, *Te Paanui a Waipapa*.. Online journal. Auckland.
- Orbell, M. (2002). *He reta ki te maunga*. Auckland: Reed.

- O'Regan, H. (2001). *Ko Tahu, ko au: Kāi Tahu tribal identity*. Christchurch: Horomaka Publishing.
- Paipera Tapu*. (1991). Wellington: Bible Society.
- Palmer, F.R. (1976). *Semantics a new outline*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Parata, P.H. (1983). *Te kiri ka tōkia e te anu: Ko ētehi āhuatanga ki ngā kāinga o Hiruhārama me Te Horo*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Parkinson, P., & Griffith, P. (2004). *Books in Māori 1815-1900: Ngā tānga reo Māori*. Auckland: Reed Publishers.
- Papesch, T.R.B. (1990). *Pupuritia ngā purapura i mahue mai rā: Te waiata-ā-ringa*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Paterson, L. (2006). *Colonial discourses: Niupepa Māori 1855 – 1863*. Dunedin: Otago University Press.
- Patton, M. (1990). *Qualitative evaluation and research methods* (2nd ed.). Newbury Park, California: Sage Publications.
- Phillis, T.O. (2002). *Eruera Manuera*. Te Whanganui a Tara: Huia Publishers.
- Phillis, T.O. (2005). Ngā Tuhituhinga o te Ao Māori. *Pū Kāea*. September 9.
- Phillips, E.S., & Pugh, D.S. (2003). *How to get a PhD*. Berkshire: Open University Press.
- Pikia, A. (2002, Ngahuru). Te Tangata Whai Rawa o Weneiti. *He Muka*. 14 (3), 5.

Pipīwharau (1903, December). Nama 70: 2-3.

Potatau, H. (1991). *He hokinga mahara*. Tāmaki-makau-rau: Longman Paul.

Quin, A. (1993). *60 ways to turn a phrase*. Davis: Hermagoras Press.

Rangipunga, C. (2004). *Raiha rō roa*. Wellington: Huia.

Rangipunga, C. (2005). *Te tauhou rere i te pō*. Wellington: Huia.

Rangipunga, C. (2007). Harore Parore. In *Ngā Pakiwaitara a Huia 4* (pp. 45-48).
Wellington: Huia.

Raerino, H. R. (2000). *Te kū o te kupu*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of
Waikato, Hamilton.

Raven, H. (Ed.). (2001). *Tipiwhenua*. Te Whanganui-a-tara: Tōtiki Publications.

Reed, A.W. (1963). *An illustrated encyclopaedia of Māori life*. Wellington: Reed.

Reedy, A. (1993). *Ngā kōrero a Mohi Ruatapu: Tohunga rongonui o Ngāti Porou*.
Christchurch: Canterbury University Press.

Reedy, A. (1997). *Ngā kōrero a Pita Kāpiti: The teachings of Pita Kāpiti*.
Christchurch: Canterbury University Press.

Reedy, M. (1999). *Te mere*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.

Reedy, T.M. (2000). *Ko te hīringa i te mahara*. Paper presented at Toi te Kupu, Toi te
Mana, Toi te Whenua, Massey University Conference, Massey University.

Rewi, P. (1994). *Ko painoiho mana, ko mana painoiho*. Unpublished master's
thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

- Rewi, P. (2004) Ko te waihanga me nga wehewehenga o te whaikorero: The structural system of whaikorero and its components. *Junctures: The Journal for Thematic Dialogue* (2) 16-32.
- Rewi, P. (2005). *Te Ao Whaikōrero*. Unpublished doctoral thesis, The University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Riley, M. (1990). *Māori sayings and proverbs*. Paraparaumu: Viking Sevenses.
- Riley, M. (2001). *Maori bird lore: An introduction*. Paraparaumu: Viking Sevenses.
- Royal, T.A. (1991). *Hua noa nei te ua i aku nei kamo*. Unpublished master's thesis, Massey University: Palmerston North.
- Royal, T.A.C. (1994). *Kati au i konei: A collection of songs from Ngāti Toa Rangatira and Ngāti Raukawa*. Wellington: Huia.
- Royal, T.A.C. (1998). Te Ao Mārama – A Research Paradigm. In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research and Development Proceedings* (pp. 78-86). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi.
- Ryan, P.M. (1978). *Modern Māori: Book 1*. Auckland: Heinemann Education.
- Ryan, P.M. (1980). *Modern Māori: Book 2*. Auckland: Heinemann Education.
- Ryan, P.M. (1995). *The Reed dictionary of modern Māori*. Auckland: Reed.
- Ryan, P.M. (2002). *The Reed dictionary of modern Māori*. Auckland: Reed Books.
- Said, E. (1994). *Culture and imperialism*. London: Vintage.
- Salmond, A. (1985) *Eruera: The teachings of a Māori elder*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.

- Salmond, A. (1975). *Hui: A study of Māori ceremonial gatherings*. Auckland: Reed.
- Schill, J. (2006). *On Target: Creating a Text for a Purpose*. Port Melbourne: Heinemann.
- School Publications Branch. (1960) *Te Whare Kura I*. Wellington: Department of Education.
- Selby, R. (1999). *Still being published*. Wellington: Huia Publishers.
- Shirres, M. P. (1997). *Te tangata: The human person*. Auckland: Accent Publications.
- Simon, M. (1991). *He whakaaro kōrero*. Wanganui: Polytechnic Training Branch.
- Simpson, M., & Rogers, A. (Eds.). (1993). *Early stories from founding members of the Māori women's welfare league: Te tīmatanga, tātau, tātau*. Wellington: Bridget Williams Books.
- Simpson, M. (1995). Ngā tuhituhi, ngā pānui, ngā pukapuka: Te kupu i tuhia. *He Hui Taumata Reo Māori Hakihea Conference Proceedings* (pp. 105-110). Wellington: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Smith, A. (1993). *Songs and stories of Taranaki: From the writings of Te Kahui Kararehe*. Christchurch: Macmillan Brown Centre.
- Smith, C. (2006). Na takoto ana a Papatuanuku: The state of biotechnologies and Māori. In M. Mulholland (Ed.), *State of the Māori nation* (pp. 199-208). Auckland: Reed.
- Smith, L. (2004). *Te toi reo Māori: Interpreters and translators. Candidate's handbook*. Wellington: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Smith, S., & Elley, W. (1997). *How children learn to write*. Auckland: Longman.

- Snook, Z.H. (1998). *Ko ngā tikanga me ngā whakamahinga o te Ā me te Ō o te reo Māori*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Sprague, J., & Stuart, D. (2003). *The speakers handbook*. Belmont, U.S.A: Wadsworth.
- Stekely, C. (1997). *Te ara tika: Guiding voices. Māori opinion on libraries and information needs*. Wellington: NZ Library and Information Association; Te Rau Herenga o Aotearoa; Māori Library Information Workers Association; Te Rōpū Whakahau.
- Stevenson, B. (2004). Te Hoe Nuku Roa: A measure of cultural identity. *He Pukenga Kōrero*, 8(1) 37-46.
- Stokes, E. (1985). Maori research and development: A discussion paper prepared for the Social Sciences Committee of the National Research Advisory Council. Wellington: National Research and Advisory Council.
- Stringer, E. (2004). *Action research in education*. Upper Saddle River, N.J.: Pearson.
- Taitoko, G. (2001, Oct). Māori subject headings. *Library Life: Te Rau Ora: The Magazine for Library and Information Professionals. Library and Information Association of NZ Aotearoa*, 261, 28-29.
- Tanetīnoraui Memorial Booklet: 1835-1905*. (2005). N.p: Tokikapu marac.
- Tangaere, A.R. (1997). *Learning Māori together: Kōhanga reo and home*. Wellington: New Zealand Council for Educational Research.
- Tate, P.H. (1991). Foreword. In C. Barlow, *Tikanga whakaaro: Key concepts in Māori*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.
- Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori. (1997). *Te Matatiki: Contemporary Māori words*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.

Tauroa, P. (1990). *The Collins Māori Phrase Book*. Auckland: Collins New Zealand.

Te Aika, L.H. (1996). *Ko te rōpū reo rua ki Waikato, 1986-1995: He hōtaka whakapakari kaiako e whakaako ana i te reo Māori, mā te reo Māori hoki*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

Te Hoe Nuku Roa Research Team. (1999). *Te Hoe Nuku Roa Source Document: Baseline History*. Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-ā-Toi.

Te Kete 'Ō'onu: Taumata tuaw'ā o te to'u Mō'iotanga. (c1998). New Plymouth: Taranaki Polytechnic.

Te Puni Kōkiri. (2001). *Māori language resourcing*. Wellington: Te Puni Kōkiri.

Te Puni Kōkiri. (2003, July). Ka Aha te Kohanga Reo Inaianei? *Kōkiri Paetae*. 48, 11.

Te Rangi, T. (1995). He aha te wāhi ki ngā hāhi tino Māori nei? *He Hui Taumata Reo Māori. Hakihea Conference Proceedings*. (pp. 75-77). Wellington: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.

Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. (1996). *Te reo Māori i roto i te marautanga o Aotearoa*. Te Whanganui ā Tara: Te Pou Taki Kōrero.

Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. (1996). *Te toi i roto i te marautanga o Aotearoa*. Te Whanganui ā Tara: Te Pou Taki Kōrero.

Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga. (1997). *Te whakamahi i te reo Maori i roto i te marautanga o Aotearoa*. Te Whanganui ā Tara: Te Pou Taki Kōrero.

Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, (2004). *Ngā tauaromahi marautanga o Aotearoa. He tauaromahi reo Māori*. Te Whanganui-ā-Tara: Te Pou Taki Kōrero Whāiti.

- Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga, (2007). *Te Reo Matatini: Māori Medium Literacy Strategy*. Te Whanganui-a-Tara: Huia Education.
- Te Tari Taiwhenua. (1990:221). *Ngā Tāngata Taumata Rau 1769-1869*. Wellington: Allen & Unwin.
- Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori. (2002, 21-27 o Mahuru). *Tā ngā ākonga: Te kura whakapakari reo ki Parihaka*. Te Whanganui-a-Tara: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori. (2006). *Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori: Tauākī Whakamaunga Atu 06-07*. Te Whanganui-a-Tara: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Te Tūāoma. (1999) *Te reo Māori: Ngā tapuwae kua takahia*. Pōneke: Te Puni Kōkiri.
- Temara, P. (1991). *Te āhua o te kupu whakaari*. Unpublished Masters Thesis, Victoria University of Wellington, Wellington.
- Templeton, S. (1995). *Children's literacy: Contexts for meaningful learning*. Reno: University of Nevada.
- Tihei mauri ora: Te reo maori mo nga karaehe taitamariki ki te whāriki tuarua. Te marau mo ngā kura*. (1992). Whanganui a Tara: Te Poutaki Kōrero.
- Tobin, E.M. (1995). Te whakangungu tauira kaiako. *Te Hui Taumata reo Māori*(pp. 58-61). Te Whanganui-a-Tara: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Toi te Kupu: He pātengi raraunga mō ngā rauemi reo Māori kua oti te tā. He puka āwhina*. (1999). Whanga-nui-a-Tara: Te Tāhuhu o te Mātauranga.
- Tolich, M., & Davidson, C. (1999). *Starting fieldwork: An introduction to qualitative research in New Zealand*. Auckland: Oxford University Press.

- Tuhiwai-Smith, L. (1999). *Decolonizing methodologies: Research and indigenous peoples*. London: Zed Books; Dunedin: University of Otago Press.
- Tuhiwai-Smith, L. (2005). On tricky ground: Researching the native in the age of uncertainty. In N. Denzin & Y. Lincoln (Eds.), *Handbook of qualitative research* (3rd ed., pp. 85-107). Thousand Oaks California: Sage Publications.
- Tuuta, J. (2005). Te kōwhiringa pōti 2005. *He Muka*, 18, 11. Wellington: Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
- Tynyanov, Y. (2000). The literary fact. In D.Duff (Ed.), *Modern genre theory* (pp. 29-49). United Kingdom: Pearson Education.
- Unsworth, L. (2001). *Teaching multiliteracies across the curriculum: Changing contexts of text and image in classroom practice*. Buckingham: Open University Press.
- Wahine kaituhi: Women writers of Aotearoa*. (1985). Wellington: Spiral.
- Waikerepuru, H. (1995). Tīmatanga kōrero. In R. Hond (Ed.), *He pūranga tākupu a Taranaki*. New Plymouth: Taranaki Polytechnic.
- Waikerepuru, H. (1999). *Wānanga tā moko*. N.p: Taiporohenui Marae.
- Waititi, H.R. (1985). *Te rangatahi elementary 3*. Wellington: GP Print.
- Waititi, H.R. (1991). *Te rangatahi elementary 2*. Wellington: GP Print.
- Waititi, H.R. (1998). *Te rangatahi elementary 1*. Wellington: GP Print.
- Waitomo Caves*. (1953). Wellington: A.H. & A.W. Reed.
- Walker, H. (1997). *Beware the seeker of information and knowledge: Research involving Māori*. Unpublished Research Paper.

- Walker, R. (1990). *Ka whawhai tonu mātou: Struggle without end*. Auckland: Penguin.
- Walsh-Tapiata, W. (1999). Research within your own iwi – what are some of the issues? In Te Pūmanawa Hauora (Ed.), *Te Oru Rangahau: Māori Research and Development Proceedings* (pp. 249-256). Palmerston North: Te Pūtahi-a-Toi.
- Whitehead, M.R. (2002). *Developing language and literacy with young children*. London: Paul Chapman Publishing.
- Widdowson, P. (1999). *Literature*. London: Routledge.
- Wikiriwhi, H.T.M. (c.1955). Proverbial and popular sayings of the Māori: Ngā whakataukī me ngā pepeha Māori. *Te Ao Hou*, 11, 22-23; 12, 48-49; 13, 41-43.
- Williams, H.W. (1988). *A dictionary of the Māori language*. Wellington: GP Books.
- Williams, H. (1995). *He taonga te reo*. Wellington: New Zealand Post.
- Williams, H.W. (2002). *A dictionary of the Māori language*. Wellington: Legislation Direct.
- Williams, K. (2004, Nov.). *Māori genre*. Lecture presented at Waipapa Marae, Auckland University, Auckland.
- Williams, K.R.R (1998). *Te Kura o Rūātoki*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.
- Wilcox, J. (2005). Fiji ki te Māori. [Television Broadcast]. Sports commentary. Auckland: Whakaata Māori.

Wilson, A. (1999). *Language knowledge for primary learners*. London: David Fulton Publishers.

Winch, G., Johnston R., March, P., Ljungdahl, L., & Holliday, M. (Eds.). (2004). *Literacy: Reading, writing and children's literature*. Victoria: Oxford University Press.

Woodard, H. (1994). *Karanga: He tirohanga i te āhua o te karanga*. Unpublished master's thesis, Whare Wānanga o Tāmaki Makaurau, Tāmaki Makaurau.

Yates, G.R.A. (1980). *Ko te whare pora o Hine-te-iwaiwa : He titiro ki ētahi āhuatanga o ngā kākahu o te iwi Māori*. Unpublished master's thesis, University of Waikato, Hamilton.

Young, H. (Ed). (1991). *Te mātāwai tuatahi*. Wellington: Te Tira Ahu Iwi; Daphne Brasell Associates Press.

Young, H. (Ed). (1993). *Te mātāwai tuatoru*. Wellington: Te Tira Ahu Iwi; Daphne Brasell Associates Press.

He Rārangi pae tukutuku

Archer, J. (2007). *Tuini Ngawai*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Folksong i te 26 o Whiringa-a-nuku i te tau 2007,
<http://folksong.org.nz/etehokowhitu/index.html#Tui>

Ceferin, A. (2000). *Slovinianlinx: Slovinian languge resources*. Thezaurus. He mea tiki atu i te paetukutuku o Thezuarus i te 29 o Maehe, 2004,
<http://www.thezaurus.com/slovenianlinx/csftextypes.html>

Creative New Zealand (2003). *Te Waka Toi Awards celebrate achievements in Māori arts*. He mea tiki atu i te paetukutuku o Arts Council of New Zealand, i te tuangahuru o Mahuru, 2007,
www.creativenz.govt.nz/node/2884

(2006). Hansard. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Parliament i te tekau o ngā rā i te tau 2007.
http://www.hansard.parliament.govt.nz/hansard/Final/FINAL_2006_07_27.htm

- Himona, R. (2006). *Whakapapa*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Māori.com i te tuaono o Poututerangi 2005,
<http://maori.com/whakapapa/whakpap2.htm#Introduction>
- Keegan, T. (2004). 234 Paper Guideline. University of Waikato. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Whare Wānanga o Waikato te 18 o Maehe, 2004,
[2004http://www.cs.waikato.ac.nz/Teaching/COMP234A/](http://www.cs.waikato.ac.nz/Teaching/COMP234A/)
- Keegan, T. (2004). Jaradites Kuaka. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Kete Ipurangi i te 22 o Maehe, 2004,
http://www.tki.org.nz/r/maori/kuaka/hewhaka_m.php
- (2004). Language other than English. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Modern Languages' Association of Victoria i te 29 Maehe 2004,
<http://www.lotelinx.vic.edu.au/>
- Lee, D.Y.W. (2001). *Genres, registers, text types, domains, and styles: Clarifying the concepts and navigating a path through the BNC jungle. Language learning and technology*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Language Learning and Technology i te marama o Mei, 2002,
<http://lt.msu.edu/vol5num3/lee>
- Massey Library (2006). Māori thesis. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o KEA i te tau 2006,
http://library.massey.ac.nz/doiit/downloads/brochures/maori_theses.pdf
- National Library (2002). *Te Puna*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Puna Mātauranga o Aotearoa i te marama o Paenga-whāwhā, 2002,
<http://aotea.natlib.govt.nz/cgi-bin/Pwebrecon.cgi>
- New Zealand Digital Library (2006). Niupepa: Māori Newspapers,
<http://www.nzdl.org/cgi-bin/niupepalibrary>
- New Zealand Post Primary Teachers Association (2007). *PPTA Manu Kōrero Rules Document*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Hill Morton School i te marama o Maehe, 2007,
<http://www.hillmorton.school.nz/manukorero.htm>
- New Zealand Qualifications Authority. (2005). He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o NZQA i te tau 2006,

<http://64.233.167.104/search?q=cache:QGGVL5yoGxsJ:www.nzqa.govt.nz/formaori/resource/s/reo-maori/word-docs/Section-4/14-resources.pdf+huahuatau&hl=en&ct=clnk&cd=10&gl=nz>

New Zealand Qualifications Authority. (2006). Indicators of te reo Māori pāpāho:

Apply creative writing to reo Māori media, expiry date, 2007. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o NZQA i te tau 2006,

<http://www.nzqa.govt.nz/nqfdocs/units/doc/20703.doc> performance

Ngāti Awa Group Holdings. (2007). *Pū Kāea*.

<http://www.pukaea.co.nz/>

Rau, C., McNaughton, S., Hōhepa, M., & Doherty, L. (2004). The development of the Māori reconstruction. In *He Mātai Mātātupu*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Kia Atamai i te marama o Paengawhawa, i te tau 2004.

<http://www.kiaatamai.org.nz/matatupu/404.htm>

Ruia Mai. (2002). *Program*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Ruia Mai.

<http://www.ruiaimai.co.nz/Program.html>, Paenga-whāwhā, 2002

Statistics NZ. (2006). *National Ethnic Population Projections*. He Mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Statistics New Zealand, i te marama o Hui-tanguru i te tau 2007,

mai [http://www.stats.govt.nz/NR/rdonlyres/D9A5C6F4-ABB3-](http://www.stats.govt.nz/NR/rdonlyres/D9A5C6F4-ABB3-4C6DBC9C8A94C58FA98C/0/nationalethnicpopulationprojections01base21updatehotp.pdf)

[4C6DBC9C8A94C58FA98C/0/nationalethnicpopulationprojections01base21updatehotp.pdf](http://www.stats.govt.nz/NR/rdonlyres/D9A5C6F4-ABB3-4C6DBC9C8A94C58FA98C/0/nationalethnicpopulationprojections01base21updatehotp.pdf)

Statistics NZ. (2006). *Statistics New Zealand: 2001 Census: Māori – reference report*

He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Statistics New Zealand, i te marama o Hui-tanguru i te tau 2007.

<http://www.stats.govt.nz/store/2006/07/national-ethnic-population-projections-01%28base%29-21-update-hotp.htm>

Te Puni Kōkiri (2007). *Kōkiri Paetae*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Puni

Kōkiri,

<http://www.tpk.govt.nz/publications/paetae/default.asp>

Te rōpū whakahau: Māori in libraries and information management. (2001) *MSH draft guidelines*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Rōpū Whakahau:

Māori in Libraries and Information Management i te marama o Poutū-te-rangi, 2002,

<http://www.trw.org.nz/Publications/msh-phase-one-report.asp>

Te Runanga nui o Taranaki Whānui (2006). *Raukura*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Atiawa.com. i te 20 o Maehe i te tau 2006.
<http://www.atiawa.com/raukura.htm>

Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori. (2003). *He Muka*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori i te 29 o Mahuru, 2006,
<http://www.tetaurawhiri.govt.nz/maori/downloads/hemuka/03/Hemuka2003.pdf>

Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori (2006). *Kura Reo*. He Mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Te Taura Whiri i te Reo Māori.
http://www.tetaurawhiri.govt.nz/maori/services_m/immersion.html

Te Wānanga o Raukawa (2004). *Te Reo Programme*. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Raukawa Trust Board, i te marama o Paengawhāwhā, 2004.
<http://www.twor.ac.nz/programmes/tereo/tereointro.htm>

Wikipedia (2007). God Defend New Zealand. He mea tiki atu i te pae tukutuku o Wikipedia.
http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/God_Defend_New_Zealand.